

Middlesex University Research Repository

An open access repository of

Middlesex University research

<http://eprints.mdx.ac.uk>

Hopkinson, Alan (2008) UNIMARC manual. Manual. K.G. Saur, Munich. . [Monograph]

This version is available at: <https://eprints.mdx.ac.uk/2655/>

Copyright:

Middlesex University Research Repository makes the University's research available electronically.

Copyright and moral rights to this work are retained by the author and/or other copyright owners unless otherwise stated. The work is supplied on the understanding that any use for commercial gain is strictly forbidden. A copy may be downloaded for personal, non-commercial, research or study without prior permission and without charge.

Works, including theses and research projects, may not be reproduced in any format or medium, or extensive quotations taken from them, or their content changed in any way, without first obtaining permission in writing from the copyright holder(s). They may not be sold or exploited commercially in any format or medium without the prior written permission of the copyright holder(s).

Full bibliographic details must be given when referring to, or quoting from full items including the author's name, the title of the work, publication details where relevant (place, publisher, date), pagination, and for theses or dissertations the awarding institution, the degree type awarded, and the date of the award.

If you believe that any material held in the repository infringes copyright law, please contact the Repository Team at Middlesex University via the following email address:

eprints@mdx.ac.uk

The item will be removed from the repository while any claim is being investigated.

See also repository copyright: re-use policy: <http://eprints.mdx.ac.uk/policies.html#copy>

CONTENTS

| | | |
|------|---|----|
| 1 | INTRODUCTION..... | 7 |
| 1.1 | Purpose and Scope of UNIMARC | 7 |
| 1.2 | Format Maintenance..... | 7 |
| 1.3 | Definitions..... | 7 |
| 1.4 | Superseded documentation..... | 9 |
| 2. | ORGANIZATION OF THE MANUAL | 10 |
| 2.1 | General Organization | 10 |
| 2.2 | Notation Conventions..... | 11 |
| 3 | FORMAT STRUCTURE..... | 12 |
| 3.1 | General Structure | 12 |
| 3.2 | Record Label | 12 |
| 3.3 | Directory | 12 |
| 3.4 | Variable Fields | 13 |
| 3.5 | Mandatory Fields | 13 |
| 3.6 | Length of Records | 14 |
| 3.7 | Record Linking | 14 |
| 3.8 | Character Sets | 15 |
| 3.9 | Repetition of data | 15 |
| 3.10 | Numerical Subfields..... | 16 |
| 3.11 | Treatment of Different Scripts | 16 |
| 3.12 | Copy Specific Data | 16 |
| 3.13 | Interfield Linking Data..... | 16 |
| 4 | RECORD LABEL AND DATA FIELDS — GENERAL INTRODUCTION | 20 |
| 4.1 | Repetition of Fields and Subfields | 20 |
| 4.2 | Order of Fields | 20 |
| 4.3 | Order of Subfields | 20 |
| 4.4 | Characters..... | 21 |
| 4.5 | Characters for Use in Cases of Ambiguity..... | 21 |
| 4.6 | Non-Filing Control Functions | 22 |
| 4.7 | Form and Content of Data..... | 22 |
| 4.8 | Punctuation..... | 23 |
| 4.9 | National and Local Use | 23 |
| | RECORD LABEL AND DATA FIELDS – FIELD DESCRIPTION | 24 |
| | RECORD LABEL..... | 29 |
| | DATA FIELDS..... | 36 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| APPENDIXES | 589 |
| Appendix A: Language Codes | 589 |
| Appendix B: Country Codes | 597 |
| Appendix C: Relator Codes | 600 |
| Appendix D: Geographic Area Codes | 613 |
| Appendix E: Time Period Code | 709 |
| Appendix F: Cartographic Materials Codes | 712 |
| Appendix G: Subject Systems Codes | 713 |
| Appendix H: Cataloguing Rules and Formats Codes | 716 |
| Appendix I: Table of Values | 721 |
| Appendix J: Character Sets | 729 |
| Appendix K: Documentation to Accompany Exchange Records | 738 |
| Appendix L: Complete Examples | 740 |
| Appendix M: Bibliography | 755 |
| Appendix N: Useful Addresses | 758 |
| Appendix O: Format Changes | 759 |

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose and Scope of UNIMARC

The primary purpose of UNIMARC is to facilitate the international exchange of bibliographic data in machine-readable form between national bibliographic agencies. UNIMARC may also be used as a model for the development of new machine-readable bibliographic formats.

The scope of UNIMARC is to specify the content designators (tags, indicators and subfield codes) to be assigned to bibliographic records in machine-readable form and to specify the logical and physical format of the records. It covers monographs, continuing resources, cartographic materials, music, sound recordings, graphics, projected and video materials, rare books and archival materials and electronic resources.

UNIMARC is intended to be a carrier format for exchange purposes. It does not stipulate the form, content, or record structure of the data within individual systems. UNIMARC does provide recommendations on the form and content of data when it is to be exchanged. Records are usually structured in exchange tape format as the last stage in any conversion process, after form, content, and content designation have been converted to the UNIMARC standard. Those organizations intending to use UNIMARC for data interchange will find it useful to co-ordinate their internal format content designators and field and subfield definitions with those in UNIMARC to reduce the complexity of data conversion when the records are converted into the UNIMARC exchange tape structure.

References are made where applicable to other UNIMARC formats, e.g. *UNIMARC/Authorities*; but no details are given. For that, users of the bibliographic format are referred to the documentation for those formats.

This Manual is both a definitive statement of the bibliographic format and a guide to its use.

1.2 Format Maintenance

UNIMARC is maintained by an IFLA committee, the Permanent UNIMARC Committee (PUC), for which the secretariat is the IFLA UNIMARC Core Activity. Future changes to the format will be primarily defining additional fields, subfields and coded values where needed. Proposals for change usually originate with those creating UNIMARC records or those using UNIMARC records. Changes are made only through the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. UNIMARC will not be modified to accommodate non-ISBD descriptive cataloguing practices or other practices contrary to the international standards on which it is based.

1.3 Definitions

The terms defined below are those used in a special sense in this Manual; terms used in their usual bibliographic sense are not defined. Definitions of ISBD data elements can be found in the ISBD documents.

Access Point – A name, term, code, etc. that is specially intended for searching for and retrieving a bibliographic record.

Content Designator – Codes identifying data elements and/or providing additional information about a data element. Content designators consist of tags, indicators and subfield identifiers.

Data Element – The smallest unit of information that is explicitly identified. Within a variable field, a data element is identified by a subfield identifier and it forms a subfield. Within the record label, directory, and fixed-length subfields, the data elements consisting of codes are identified by their character positions.

Data Element Identifier – *See Subfield Identifier.*

End of Record Mark – A control character used at the end of each record to separate it from the next. Also known as the Record Terminator.

Field – A defined character string, identified by a tag, which contains one or more subfields.

Field Separator – A control character used at the end of each variable field to separate it from the next, and also used at the end of the directory.

Fill Character – A character used in specified character positions to indicate that no data is available to supply the appropriate value in that position, although that character position is applicable. For details of its use see Section 4, 4.5.

Fixed Length Subfield – A subfield whose length is invariant, being determined for all occurrences by provision of this format. A fixed-length subfield may be defined to contain one or more data elements. Fixed-length subfields may occur in both fixed fields, e.g. field 100, subfield \$a, and in variable fields, e.g. field 200, subfield \$z.

Former Titles – All titles of continuing resources earlier than the one by which the resource is currently known.

Hierarchical Level – A value assigned to the primary bibliographic entity (i.e. the item described in the 200 field) in a logical record which indicates the placement of that entity in a predefined hierarchical structure (*see* Hierarchical Level codes in the Record Label). For example the bibliographic description of the individual volumes of a multi-volume set and the bibliographic description of the multi-volume set itself, could be considered at two different hierarchical levels related to each other in that one is a component of the other. Hierarchical levels are used only when bibliographic records have been produced for entire bibliographic entities as well as for bibliographically distinct portions of the entire entity, e.g. articles in a journal, chapters of a monograph, sub-series of a series, and monographs in a series.

Indicator – A character (numeric or alphabetic) associated with a variable field which supplies additional information about the contents of the field, about the relationship between the field and other fields in the record, or about the action required in certain data manipulation processes.

ISBD Data Elements – Those data elements in the description which should be formulated according to the provisions of the International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions.

Preceding Title – For continuing resources which have changed titles, the title immediately preceding the title being catalogued.

Record Terminator – A control character used at the end of each record to separate it from the next, also known as the End of Record Mark.

Source Format – The data format in which a machine-readable record already existed before being converted into UNIMARC.

Subfield – A defined unit of information within a field (*see also* **Data Element**).

Subfield Identifier – A code consisting of two characters identifying individual subfields within a variable field. The first character, the delimiter, is always the same unique character specified in ISO 2709 and the second character, the subfield code, is either numeric or alphabetic.

Tag – A series of three numeric characters used as a label of its associated fields.

Textual Data – Data which is intended to be displayed in a catalogue entry as opposed to coded data.

Variable Field – A field in which the length may vary from one occurrence to the next. A variable field may contain one or more data elements or subfields. The length of the fields in characters includes the number of characters required for the textual data, indicators, subfield identifiers and the field separator.

1.4 Superseded documentation

The UNIMARC format was first published in 1977 under the title *UNIMARC Universal MARC Format*. It was recommended by the IFLA Working Group on Content Designators set up by the IFLA Section on Cataloguing and the IFLA Section on Information Technology. It contained specifications for book and printed serial material and provisional fields for various non-book materials such as music, motion pictures, phonodiscs etc. A second edition *UNIMARC: Universal MARC Format* was published in 1980. This edition added data fields required for cartographic materials and updated several fields relating to continuing resources and monographs. Provisional fields for additional cartographic attributes and for non-book materials were edited and revised.

In 1983, citing the need for the format documentation to be expanded to provide more interpretative guidance, the document was revised and expanded and reissued as the *UNIMARC Handbook*. Following a major UNIMARC maintenance meeting in 1986, a revised document, *UNIMARC Manual*, was issued in 1987. This edition of the format removed the provisional status from and revised fields that were specific to sound recordings, visual projections, video recordings, motion pictures, graphics, printed music, and microforms, in addition to the remaining provisional cartographic fields. Fields for electronic resources were added as provisional.

This edition supersedes the previous ones, the later of which, the second edition, was looseleaf. Since June 1990, additions and changes have been agreed upon by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. Fields added and changed since the fifth update of the second edition are listed in Appendix O. This new bound manual is intended for the time being to be updated on the internet as changes are needed. The editor for the Third Edition is Alan Hopkinson. Previous editions were edited by Brian P. Holt, British Library, and Sally H. McCallum, Library of Congress.

2 ORGANIZATION OF THE MANUAL

2.1 General Organization

Section 1, INTRODUCTION, and Section 2, ORGANIZATION OF THE MANUAL, give introductory material to assist in the use of this Manual. Section 3, FORMAT STRUCTURE, presents basic information concerning the organization of the format. Section 4, RECORD LABEL AND DATA FIELDS – GENERAL INFORMATION, explains conventions that are applicable throughout the format and provides an introduction to Section 5, RECORD LABEL AND DATA FIELDS – FIELD DESCRIPTIONS. The Manual aims in Section 5 to give guidelines for those areas of UNIMARC that are not as well-defined as is needed to permit effective exchange of bibliographic data. This is necessary because, outside those UNIMARC fields that correspond to ISBD data elements, there are often no standard data element definitions for bibliographic data. The data field descriptions are presented according to the following outline.

Definition: the content of each field is briefly defined.

Occurrence: this part notes whether the field is repeatable or not and whether it is mandatory or optional. In a few instances, a statement that explains or qualifies the occurrence is included.

Indicators: The indicator values are explained.

Subfields: The subfields are listed in order, each being followed by a definition and, where applicable, a note as to its repeatability and whether it is mandatory.

Notes on Field Contents: This part discusses the data content of the fields and explains the interrelation between the subfields within the field. It includes notes about ISBD equivalents, where applicable, and about punctuation, as well as making recommendations about the form of the contents of the field.

Related Fields: This part lists fields or data elements that contain data related to the contents of the field. One of the problems that has been encountered by users of UNIMARC is in determining which field in UNIMARC is equivalent to any particular field in a source format, especially in those instances where two or more fields in UNIMARC would seem to be a suitable home for a particular data element occurring in the source. This part lists other fields which under certain circumstances may be used as well as or in place of the field in question. To assist in comparison of fields, a short description of the usage of the other fields is given.

Examples: This part consists of examples, many of which are referred to in the text in the other parts. They illustrate the conditions that are described in the preceding text.

History: This part gives details of major changes to the field.

The final sections of the Manual, the appendices, consist largely of code lists for use in coded data elements. These codes are those that apply to more than one field; codes relating to one field only are usually placed with the description of that field.

2.2 Notation Conventions

The following notation conventions are adopted in Section 5 in the listing of fields, indicators and subfields and in the description and examples relating to them.

subfield identifier: The dollar sign '\$' has been used to represent IS1 of ISO 646 as the first character of the subfield identifier.

blank: The hash sign '#' has been used in the examples to represent 2/0 in ISO 646, the space character. It thus indicates a blank or space where the presence of or necessity for a space in the text of the Manual is not obvious from the context.

field separator: The commercial at sign '@' has been used to represent IS2 of ISO 646 as the field separator in the complete examples. However this is not included in the examples of the use of individual fields although in fact IS2 terminates each field in the UNIMARC record.

end of record mark: The per cent sign '%' has been used to represent IS3 of ISO 646 as the end of record mark in the complete examples.

'not defined': The phrase 'not defined' associated with an indicator position means that no values have been given to that position and the indicator position is filled with a blank.

non-sorting characters: The characters ≠NSB≠ and ≠NSE≠ have been used in some examples as symbols for ISO 6630 Bibliographic Control set positions 08/08 and 08/09 respectively. They enclose characters which are to be ignored for sorting purposes.

3 FORMAT STRUCTURE

3.1 General Structure

UNIMARC is a specific implementation of ISO 2709, an international standard that specifies the structure of records containing bibliographic data. It specifies that every bibliographic record prepared for exchange conforming to the standard must consist of:

- a RECORD LABEL consisting of 24 characters,
- a DIRECTORY consisting of a 3-digit tag of each data field, along with its length and its starting character position relative to the first data field,
- DATA FIELDS of variable length, each separated by a field separator,

with the following layout:

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----|
| RECORD LABEL | DIRECTORY | DATA FIELDS | R/T |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----|

R/T = Record Terminator

ISO 2709 further specifies that the data in fields may optionally be preceded by indicators and subdivided into subfields. UNIMARC, as an implementation, uses the following specific options allowed under ISO 2709.

3.2 Record Label

ISO 2709 prescribes that each record start with a 24-character Record Label. This contains data relating to the structure of the record, which are defined within the standard ISO 2709, and several data elements that are defined for this particular implementation of ISO 2709. These implementation-defined data elements relate to the type of record, its bibliographic level and position in a hierarchy of levels, the degree of completeness of the record and the use or otherwise of ISBD or ISBD-based rules in the preparation of the record. The data elements in the Record Label are required primarily to process the record and are intended only indirectly for use in identifying the bibliographic item itself.

3.3 Directory

Following the Record Label is the Directory. Each entry in the Directory consists of three parts: a 3-digit numeric tag, a 4-digit number indicating the length of the data field and a 5-digit number indicating the starting character position. No further characters are permitted in a Directory entry. The Directory layout is as follows:

| Directory entry 1 | | Directory entry 2 | | Other directory entries | |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--|-------------------------|-----|
| Tag | Length of Field | Starting Position | | | F/T |

F/T = Field Terminator

The second segment of the Directory entry gives the number of characters in that field. This includes all characters: indicators, subfield identifiers, textual or coded data and the end of field marker. The length of field is followed by the starting character position of the field relative to

the first character position of the variable field portion of the record. The first character of the first variable field is character position 0. The position of character position 0 within the whole record is given in character positions 12-16 of the Record Label.

The tag is 3 characters long, the 'length of the data' fills 4 characters and the 'starting character position' fills 5 characters. After all of the 12-character directory entries corresponding to each data field in the record, the directory is terminated by the end of field marker IS2 of ISO 646 (1/14 on the 7-bit code table). For an example of a directory illustrating its position in relation to data fields see the complete examples in Appendix L. The directory entries should be ordered by the first digit of the tag, and it is recommended that order by complete tag be used where possible. The data fields themselves do not have a required order as their positions are completely specified through the directory.

3.4 Variable Fields

The variable length data fields follow the directory and generally contain bibliographic as opposed to processing data.

Data (Control) Field (00-) layout:

| | |
|------|-----|
| Data | F/T |
|------|-----|

Data Field (01- to 999) layout:

| Indicators | | Subfield Identifier | Other Subfields | | | |
|------------|-------|---------------------|-----------------|------|-------|-----|
| Ind 1 | Ind 2 | \$a (etc.) | Data | Data | | F/T |

Tags are not carried in the data fields but appear only in the directory, except for tags which are in embedded fields (see 4 -- block). Fields with the tag value 00- (e.g. 001) consist only of the data and an end of field character. Other data fields consist of two indicators followed by any number of subfields. Each subfield begins with a subfield identifier that is composed of a subfield delimiter, ISI (1/15 of ISO 646), and a subfield code (one alphabetic or numeric character) to identify the subfield. The subfield identifiers are followed by coded or textual data of any length unless stated otherwise in the description of the field. The final subfield in the field is terminated by the end of field character IS2 (1/14 of ISO 646). The last character of data in the record is followed as usual by the end of field character IS2 which in this instance is followed by the end of record character IS3 (1/13 of ISO 646).

3.5 Mandatory Fields

3.5.1 Fields Which are Mandatory in All Records

- 001 RECORD IDENTIFIER
- 100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA
- 200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY (\$a title proper is the only mandatory subfield)
- 801 ORIGINATING SOURCE FIELD

3.5.2 Fields Which are Mandatory for Certain Types of Record

Records with Text

101 LANGUAGE OF THE WORK

Cartographic Records

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GENERAL

123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – SCALE AND CO-ORDINATES

206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS MATHEMATICAL DATA

Electronic Resources Records

230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Music etc. Records

125 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS AND PRINTED MUSIC

3.5.3 Mandatory Fields and Retrospective Conversion

Where earlier records do not have sufficient information for mandatory fields a default value should be used where possible. Where this is not possible the fill character should be used when allowed. As a last resort, the field should be omitted and the fact noted in the Documentation to Accompany Exchange Records (see Appendix K).

Example:

101 l#\$aund

The conversion program cannot create the correct Language of the Work details.

3.6 Length of Records

The length of records, which is limited by the format to 99,999 characters, is a matter of agreement between parties to an exchange.

3.7 Record Linking

In practice there are situations when it may be desirable to make a link from one bibliographic entity to another. To give two examples: when a record describes a translation, a link may be made to the record that describes the original; or a link may be made between records relating to different titles of a continuing resource when a change of name occurs. A technique is provided in UNIMARC for making these links. A block of fields (the 4-- block) is reserved for this purpose and more information can be found at the description of those fields and in the introduction to the 4-block.

A linking field will include descriptive information concerning the other item with or without information pointing to a separate record that describes the item. A linking field is composed of subfields, each of which contains a UNIMARC field made up of tag, indicators, and field content including subfield markers. Note that these embedded fields are not accessible through

the Directory, since only the entire linking field has a directory entry. The tag of the linking field denotes the relationship of the item identified within it to the item for which the record is being made.

3.8 Character Sets

For data interchange in UNIMARC, ISO character set standards should be used. The record label, directory, indicators, subfield identifiers, and code values specified in this document should be encoded using the control functions and graphic characters of ISO 646 (IRV), which is considered the default set for the record. The code extension techniques specified in ISO 2022 are used when multiple sets are required in a record. Character positions 26-29 and 30-33 of subfield \$a in field 100 are used to designate the default and additional graphic character sets used in the record. Character sets should be those established or registered by ISO but may also be the subject of agreement by parties to an exchange.

The control functions of ISO 646 are permitted in the UNIMARC record and the following are always used:

IS1 of ISO 646 (position 1/15 in the 7-bit code table): the first character of the two-character subfield identifier.

IS2 of ISO 646 (position 1/14 in the 7-bit code table): field separator, found at the end of the directory and each data field.

IS3 of ISO 646 (position 1/13 in the 7-bit code table): record separator, found at the end of each record.

When additional character sets are needed, the control function ESC of ISO 646 is frequently used. Two control functions from ISO 6630 used for sorting are also allowed in UNIMARC data. Appendix J gives more information on character sets used with UNIMARC.

3.9 Repetition of Data

There are four possible situations where data could be repeated in different forms:

Data appear in both coded and textual, display and non-display forms. Where possible both forms of data should appear in the record even if the information is held only once in the source format.

The document contains the same information in different languages. The International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions specify when and how parallel data should be transcribed from the item. This is catered for in UNIMARC by the use of different or repeated subfields. For examples, see field 200.

There is more than one language of cataloguing for a multilingual audience. The use of more than one language of cataloguing in, say, notes fields, is useful and in some cases mandatory within a domestic format. For international exchange purposes this facility is less acceptable: unless a receiving agency caters for the same languages as those of the source format it will need to strip out all languages except one. For that reason each record on a UNIMARC exchange tape should have only one language of cataloguing, other languages being catered for by separate records or even separate exchange tapes.

The same information is repeated in different scripts to cater for variations of sophistication of output. Ideally a catalogue entry should record a document using the script of the document. This is not always possible. For that reason, agencies with the facilities should be able to record

both original and transliterated versions in the same catalogue entry to allow the selection of the best possible option by receiving agencies. The mechanism is described in section 3.11 below.

3.10 Numerical Subfields

The following numerical subfields have been defined for use in the bibliographic format:

| Subfield | Definition | Note |
|----------|--|---|
| \$0 | Bibliographic Record Identifier | 4-- block |
| \$1 | Linking data | 4--block (Embedded fields technique); 604 |
| \$2 | Fingerprint System Code | 012 |
| \$2 | Source | 1-- block |
| \$2 | System Code | 0-- block; 5-- block, 6-- block; 801; 886 |
| \$2 | Link text | 856 |
| \$3 | Authority Record Number | 6-- block, 7-- block, 500 |
| \$4 | Relator Code | 7-- block |
| \$5 | Institution or copy identification to which field applies: Used only for copy specific information | 2-- block, 3-- block, 5—block |
| \$6 | Interfield Linking Data | |
| \$7 | Alphabet/Script of field | |
| \$8 | Reserved for Materials Specified | 3-- block; 852 |
| \$9 | Local use | |

3.11 Treatment of Different Scripts

Record alternative graphic representations/scripts in fields 001-099 and 200-899 using content designators appropriate to the data being recorded. All UNIMARC fields will be considered repeatable for recording alternative graphic representations or scripts whether or not so listed in the body of the text. Those fields listed as not repeatable should be used no more than once per alternative graphic representation/script included in the record.

This technique is intended to provide a mechanism for recording romanizations, transliterations and alternative scripts or orthographies prepared by the cataloguing agency according to standard tables, rules, guidelines etc.

In each field repeated for the purpose of recording an alternative graphic representation/script, include both subfield \$6 (Interfield Linking Data) and, if appropriate, subfield \$7 (Alphabet/Script of Field). Specific instruction for the use of \$6 and \$7 are given below in 3.13.

3.12 Copy Specific Data

A bibliographic record may contain copy specific data in fields 012, 141, 316, 317, 318, 481, 482, 560, 600, 601, 602, 606, 610, 621, 702, 712 and 722. Fields may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.

3.13 Interfield Linking Data

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. The subfield also contains a code indicating the reason for the link. The first two elements in the subfield (character positions 0-2) must always be present when the subfield is used; the third element (character positions 3-5)

is optional. Thus the length of this subfield may be either 3 or 6 characters. Subfield \$6 should be the first subfield in the field (unless it is preceded by \$3 Authority Record Number). It should precede any \$7. Note, however, that if the alternative script representations differ also in language from their corresponding headings, then this parallel data should reside in an authority file; alternatively, mutually agreed local fields should be used by participating agencies (EX 5). Not repeatable.

Data entered in subfield \$6 is recorded as follows:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Linking explanation code | 1 | 0 |
| Linking number | 2 | 1-2 |
| Tag of linked field | 3 | 3-5 |

\$6/0 Linking explanation code

This code specifies the reason for the interfield linkage. The following values are defined:

- a = link to alternative graphic representation/script
- b = link associated with a copy
- z = other reason for linking

\$6/1-2 Linking number

This two-digit number is carried in subfield \$6 of each of the fields to be linked together. Its function is to permit matching of linking fields and is not intended in any way to act as a sequence or site number. The linking number may be assigned at random as long as the numbers assigned to each of the fields in the pair or group to be linked together are identical and differ from the number assigned to any other pair (EX 1,2,4) or group (EX 3) within the record.

\$6/3-5 Tag of linked field

This element consists of the three-character UNIMARC tag of the field being linked to. The element is optional: if the tags of both linked fields are identical, it would usually be omitted.

\$7 Alphabet/Script of Field

This subfield contains the code for the alphabet and/or script for the chief contents of the field. Code values are those defined for field 100 character positions 34-35 Script of title. This subfield would usually be omitted in those fields with the same alphabet/script as that coded in 100 character positions 34-35. This subfield should be placed directly before the first data subfield (e.g. \$a) of the field in which it is carried. It will usually follow a subfield \$6 unless no parallel field exists, in which case there will be no \$6. Following the provisions of ISO 2022 Section 1, which states that "The [character set] codes ... are designed to be used for data that is processed sequentially in a forward direction", it is assumed that characters are input in logical order. Where data, such as Arabic or Hebrew, is input in an order that supposes that it will be read right-to-left, this is indicated by 'r' after the code (EX 4). ISO 2022 Section 1 also states that "Use of these codes in strings of data which are processed in some other

way, or which are included in data formatted for fixed-length record processing, may have undesired results or may require additional special treatment to ensure correct interpretation".

It is to be understood that indication of script in \$7 cannot be used as an instruction for the system. To provide correct and unambiguous interpretation of script by the system the mechanism described in Appendix J should be used. Optional. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1: 100 ##\$a character positions 34-35 = ba [Latin]
600 #0\$6a01\$a [Person as subject in romanized form]
600 #0\$6a01\$7ea\$a [Person as subject in Chinese script]
700 #0\$6a02\$a [Person with primary responsibility in romanized form]
700 #0\$6a02\$7ea\$a [Person with primary responsibility in Chinese script]
702 #0\$6a03\$a [Person with secondary responsibility in romanized form]
702 #0\$6a03\$7ea\$a [Person with secondary responsibility in Chinese script]

Three sets of two parallel fields containing the romanized and Chinese forms of the names of the persons. The first field in each case lacks a \$7 because it is in the same alphabet as that coded in 100. The linking numbers follow in sequence, although they could be in random order.

EX 2: 100 ##\$a character positions 34-35 = ka [Korean]
200 1#\$6a01\$a [Title in Korean characters]
200 1#\$6a01\$7ba\$a [Title romanized]

Two parallel title fields containing Korean and romanized versions of the title. The first field lacks a \$7 because it is in the same alphabet as that coded in 100.

EX 3: 100 ##\$a character positions 34-35 = db [Japanese kanji]
701 #0\$6a04\$a [First joint author in kanji]
701 #0\$6a04\$7dc\$a [First joint author in kana]
701 #0\$6a04\$7ba\$a [First joint author romanized]
701 #0\$6a08\$a [Second joint author in kanji]
701 #0\$6a08\$7dc\$a [Second joint author in kana]
701 #0\$6a08\$7ba\$a [Second joint author romanized]

Added entry fields for two joint authors, each recorded in Japanese kanji, Japanese kana and in romanized form. The fields recorded in kanji contain no subfield \$7 because field 100 shows that kanji is the script of title. The linking numbers have been assigned at random.

EX 4: 100 ##\$a character positions 34-35 = ba [Latin]
700 #0\$6a03\$a [Romanized author]
700 #0\$6a03\$7ha/r\$a [Author in Hebrew. Name reads right-to-left]

EX 5: 100 ##\$a character positions 26-29 = 0102, character positions 34-35 = ba [Latin]
710 02\$6a05791\$a National Library of Russia
791 02\$6a05710\$7ca\$a Российская национальная библиотека

The Russian form of name (in Cyrillic) has been added using a local field.

Since character positions 26-29 of 100\$a contain code 02 (basic Cyrillic set), there is no need to use the shift-mechanism in 791\$a.

EX 6: 100 ##\$a character positions 26-29 = 0103, character positions 30-31 = 05, character positions 34-35 = ga [Greek]
200 1#\$a01/11 07/13Ελληνικά01/11 07/14 Windows XP01/11 07/13 - ο εύκολος τρόπος01/11 07/14

Title in Greek includes embedded phrase in English. Indicating script in \$7 would not provide appropriate instructions for the system to handle combination of scripts in the field. Mechanism described in ISO 2022 should be used.

ISO 5426 (extended Latin set) has been designated the G1 set, ISO 5428 (Greek set) has been designated the G2 set. The G2 set is invoked into columns 10-15 when needed using LS2R (bit combination 01/11 07/13), displacing the G1 set. At the end of the use of the Greek set in the field the default G1 set is restored to columns 10-15 using LS1R (bit combination 01/11 07/14).

4 RECORD LABEL AND DATA FIELDS – GENERAL INFORMATION

4.1 Repetition of Fields and Subfields

Fields and subfields within a record may be repeated in line with the instructions given under Occurrence in each data field description and under the definitions of the subfields. Fields embedded in 4-- linking entry fields have the same repeatability within that field as they have within a record.

At every field a decision has been made as to whether data which recurs should be repeated by means of a repetition of the whole field or a repetition of the subfield within a non-repeatable field. This must be followed to ensure consistency of the use of UNIMARC between users. The designation of fields as mandatory has been kept to a minimum, since in many instances whether fields can actually be present in a UNIMARC record depends on the practices of the agency that prepared the source record.

4.2 Order of Fields

There is no specified order required for fields in a record. The order of their respective directory entries which is specified is not necessarily the physical order of the fields.

4.3 Order of Subfields

There is no specified order implied in the values of the subfield identifiers. In certain instances recommendations are made concerning the position of particular subfields. In the ISBD fields, the data is transcribed in the order specified in ISBD and this determines the ordering of the subfields.

Numeric subfields have specific values throughout the format as follows:

| | | |
|-----|---|--|
| \$0 | Bibliographic Record Identifier | See 4—block |
| \$1 | Linking data | See 4—block and 604 |
| \$2 | Fingerprint System Code | 012 |
| \$2 | Source | 1—block |
| \$2 | System Code | 0-- block; 5--, block, 6-- block; 801; 856 |
| \$2 | Link text | 886 |
| \$3 | Authority Record Number | 6-- block, 7-- block, 500 |
| \$4 | Relator Code | 7-- block, |
| \$5 | Institution or copy identification to which field applies | 2-- block, 3-- block, 5--block |
| \$6 | Interfield Linking Data | (see section 3) |
| \$7 | Alphabet/Script of field | (see section 3) |
| \$8 | Reserved for Materials Specified | 3-- block; 852 |
| \$9 | Local use | |

Numeric subfields precede or follow the part to which they refer according to the following rules.

Subfields \$0, \$6, \$7 precede all other subfields and \$2, \$4, \$5 follow all other subfields. Each set preceding or following is in ascending numerical order.

In the case of subfield \$3 when it is repeated in one 6-- field, each \$3 precedes the subfield(s) corresponding to the heading contained in the authority record linked by this \$3. For the use of \$1 see the 4-- block.

Examples:

```
605 ##$aBible$xCommentaries$2lc
710 02$3n##801234567b$aPittsburgh Research Center
702 #1$aIrvine$bThomas Francis$4440.
012 ##$adete nkck vess lodo 3 Anno Domini MDCXXVI 3$5CA/U-1
600 #0$601$aPlato [and] 600 #0$601$7ga$aPλάτων
```

4.4 Characters

Within the data fields of UNIMARC any character is permitted that corresponds to a graphical character when the data is textual. Within the coded subfields of UNIMARC and in the indicator positions, the characters permitted are as specified in the appropriate field/subfield.

4.5 Characters for Use in Cases of Ambiguity

The fill character is intended to be used in those circumstances where it is not possible to assign the correct value to a coded data item. This may occur, for example, when there is no corresponding value at all in the source format. The fill character is a graphic character in ISO 646: "|" (vertical line), position 7/12 in the 7-bit code table.

The fill character may not be used in the Record Label, Directory, tag or textual data. It may not be used to replace a mandatory coded data element, a subfield identifier, punctuation or other special characters, or all codes in an optional coded field (the field should not be used).

Fill Character in Coded data

The fill character is used when the agency never assigns values to a particular type, e.g. field 100 (General processing data) character positions 17-19 (Target audience codes) where the agency does not use any code to describe the target audience.

This use of the fill character should be contrasted with the use of other general codes such as #, u, v, x, y, z in certain areas. The following is a description of the commonest use of these codes:

- # (blank) *No more values.* Used in fixed-length fields where there are fewer values than there are characters allotted, e.g. field 105 (Coded data field: books and other monographic printed language materials) character positions 4-7 (form of contents codes), when, of all the possibilities, only "i" (statistics) applies the character positions will be "i###".
- u *Unknown.* Used when the data could not be discovered by the cataloguer but a definite code would have been given if possible.
- v *Combination.* Used when a combination of the individual coded characteristics appear in the item.
- x *Not applicable.* The characteristic is not appropriate to the type of material being presented, e.g. field 115 (Projected and video material codes) character position 9 (technique for motion pictures and video recordings) when the item is a slide set.
- y *Not present.* Used when the characteristic being coded is not present for the particular item e.g. field 100 (General processing data) character position 20 (Type of government publication).
- z *Other.* Used when codes are being assigned and the characteristics of the item are known, but none of the defined codes is appropriate (e.g. see field 105, character

position 11, and field 110, character position 1). This code is occasionally also used for Unknown when code u is not in the list for that category or has been used for a specific type.

Fill Character in Indicators

For indicators, the fill character is also used when the agency never assigns values to a particular type, e.g. field 710 (Corporate body name) indicator 1 (Meeting indicator). It is also used when situations arise that, for codes, would be dealt with using u, v, or z, i.e. unknown, combination or other. The fill character is also used when UNIMARC has a specific indicator which cannot be derived from any value in the source format.

4.6 Non-Filing Control Functions

Characters in data that do not have filing value may be so designated using the non-filing control functions in the Bibliographic Control set (ISO 6630). The NSB, Non-Sorting Characters Beginning, is inserted in the data immediately before the characters without filing value and the NSE, Non-Sorting Characters Ending, is inserted in the data immediately after the non-sorting characters. The Bibliographic Control set is described in Appendix J. In the examples, NSB and NSE are represented by ≠NSB≠ and ≠NSE≠.

4.7 Form and Content of Data

UNIMARC is primarily an exchange format and the intention is that it should carry data originating from agencies and systems that use different formats. Because this data may originally have been recorded according to the provisions of different cataloguing codes, it is not always possible to prescribe exactly the form of the data in a UNIMARC record or to list the data elements that must be present in a UNIMARC record. However, since by their very nature bibliographic records produced by different agencies tend to have a great deal in common, there are a large number of areas where practices are similar. One such area is in the descriptive portion of the record for which the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) has been developed. UNIMARC recommends that the descriptive elements of a record be formulated according to the provisions of ISBD. For details of the relevant ISBDs see Appendix M.

Since ISBD concerns the presentation of data in a record intended to be read by a user of a catalogue or a bibliography, it makes no provision for conventions to be followed in a record in machine-readable form from which an eye-legible catalogue record in ISBD format may be generated. This Manual recommends certain practices in order to assist users of the format to make decisions in these areas and to establish as much consistency as possible between records converted into UNIMARC by different agencies. More information on specific practices related to ISBD can be found in 2-- DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION BLOCK and in individual fields within that block. In other areas where no standard practices are being developed, this Manual generally recommends a choice of approaches based on existing practices. The examples used in the Manual have been based on recommended definitions and practices, but are in no way prescriptive or exhaustive.

In some cataloguing codes data related to several variant issues or editions of one title may be carried in a single record. This may be encoded by various means in UNIMARC including use of a note field, repetition of field 010 ISBN or field 011 ISSN with a note in the qualification or terms of availability subfields or use of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK fields.

Given the variations in practice described above, it is recommended that documentation accompanying exchange tapes explains these variations. For details see Appendix K.

4.8 Punctuation

In the interests of consistency between users of UNIMARC, this Manual also makes certain recommendations with regard to punctuation. It recommends that, with a small number of exceptions, ISBD punctuation be omitted at subfield boundaries, since it can be supplied automatically from the subfield codes. Specific directions for this are included with the field specifications.

Punctuation in other parts of the record is recorded according to the practice of the agency preparing the record. Such punctuation should be entered consistently by each agency so that the source of the record will indicate for a recipient the processing required to provide any punctuation needed. Many agencies do not carry punctuation at subfield boundaries in access point fields (e.g., in the 7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK) in their own MARC records, since that punctuation can be supplied when the record is printed out in the same way as in the ISBD fields. The examples in these fields illustrate both use and omission of punctuation.

4.9 National and Local Use

All fields with tags containing a 9, i.e. 9--, -9-, --9, are reserved for national and local use; their definitions and indicator and subfield values remain undefined by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. This is also true of indicator value 9 and subfield \$9.

RECORD LABEL AND DATA FIELDS – FIELD DESCRIPTION

Field list

Each field listed on the following pages is explained following the eight-item outline described in Section 2.1. Occasionally an item is not needed in which case it is omitted or no information is indicated. The following is a complete list of fields, including obsolete and reserved fields.

0 - - IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Record Identifier |
| 005 | Version Identifier |
| 010 | International Standard Book Number (ISBN) |
| 011 | ISSN |
| 012 | Fingerprint identifier |
| 013 | International Standard Music Number (ISMN) |
| 014 | Article identifier |
| 015 | International Standard Report Number (ISRN) |
| 016 | International Standard Recording Code (ISRC) |
| 017 | Other Standard Identifier |
| 018 | [Reserved for other International Standard Numbers] |
| 020 | National Bibliography Number |
| 021 | Legal Deposit Number |
| 022 | Government Publication Number |
| 035 | Other Systems Control Numbers |
| 036 | Music Incipit |
| 040 | CODEN |
| 071 | Publisher's Number |
| 072 | Universal Product Code (UPC) |
| 073 | International Article Number (EAN) |

1 - - CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

| | |
|-----|--|
| 100 | General Processing Data |
| 101 | Language of the Item |
| 102 | Country of Publication or Production |
| 105 | Coded Data Field: Textual Language Material, Monographic |
| 106 | Coded Data Field: Form of Item |
| 110 | Coded Data Field: Continuing Resources |
| 111 | Coded Data Field: Serials: Physical Attributes [Obsolete] |
| 115 | Coded Data Field: Visual Projections, Video Recordings and Motion Pictures |
| 116 | Coded Data Field: Graphics |
| 117 | Coded Data Field: Three-dimensional Artefacts and Realia |
| 120 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – General |
| 121 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Physical Attributes |
| 122 | Coded Data Field: Time Period of Item Content |
| 123 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Scale and Co-ordinates |

- 124 Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Specific Material Designation
- 125 Coded Data Field: Sound Recordings and Music
- 126 Coded Data Field: Sound Recordings – Physical Attributes
- 127 Coded Data Field: Duration of Sound Recordings and Printed Music
- 128 Coded Data Field: Form of Musical Work and Key or Mode
- 130 Coded Data Field: Microforms – Physical Attributes
- 131 Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Geodetic, Grid and Vertical Measurement
- 135 Coded Data Field: Electronic Resources
- 140 Coded Data Field: Antiquarian – General
- 141 Coded Data Field – Copy Specific Attributes
- 145 Coded Data Field: Medium of Performance

2 - - DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION BLOCK

- 200 Title and Statement of Responsibility
- 204 General Material Designation [Obsolete]
- 205 Edition Statement
- 206 Material Specific Area: Cartographic Materials – Mathematical Data
- 207 Material Specific Area: Continuing Resources – Numbering
- 208 Material Specific Area: Printed Music Specific Statement
- 210 Publication, Distribution, etc.
- 211 Projected Publication Date
- 215 Physical Description
- 225 Series
- 230 Material Specific Area: Electronic Resource Characteristics

3 - - NOTES BLOCK

- 300 General Note
- 301 Notes Pertaining to Identification Numbers
- 302 Notes Pertaining to Coded Information
- 303 General Notes Pertaining to Descriptive Information
- 304 Notes Pertaining to Title and Statement of Responsibility
- 305 Notes Pertaining to Edition and Bibliographic History
- 306 Notes Pertaining to Publication, Distribution, etc.
- 307 Notes Pertaining to Physical Description
- 308 Notes Pertaining to Series
- 310 Notes Pertaining to Binding and Availability
- 311 Notes Pertaining to Linking Fields
- 312 Notes Pertaining to Related Titles
- 313 Notes Pertaining to Subject Access
- 314 Notes Pertaining to Responsibility
- 315 Notes Pertaining to Material (or Type of Publication) Specific Information
- 316 Note Relating to the Copy in Hand
- 317 Provenance Note
- 318 Action Note
- 320 Internal Bibliographies/Indexes Note
- 321 External Indexes/Abstracts/References Note
- 322 Credits Note (Projected and Video Material and Sound Recordings)
- 323 Cast Note (Projected and Video Material and Sound Recordings)
- 324 Facsimile Note
- 325 Reproduction Note

- 326 Frequency Statement Note (Continuing Resources)
- 327 Contents Note
- 328 Dissertation (Thesis) Note
- 330 Summary or Abstract
- 332 Preferred Citation of Described Materials
- 333 Users/Intended Audience Note
- 334 Awards Note
- 336 Type of Electronic Resource Note
- 337 System Requirements Note (Electronic Resources)
- 345 Acquisition Information Note

4 - - LINKING ENTRY BLOCK

- 410 Series
- 411 Subseries
- 412 Source of Excerpt or Offprint
- 413 Excerpt or Offprint
- 421 Supplement
- 422 Parent of Supplement
- 423 Issued with
- 424 Is Updated by
- 425 Updates
- 430 Continues
- 431 Continues in Part
- 432 Supersedes
- 433 Supersedes in Part
- 434 Absorbed
- 435 Absorbed in Part
- 436 Formed by Merger of
- 437 Separated From
- 440 Continued by
- 441 Continued in Part by
- 442 Superseded by
- 443 Superseded in Part by
- 444 Absorbed by
- 445 Absorbed in Part by
- 446 Split into
- 447 Merged with xxx to form
- 448 Changed back to
- 451 Other Edition in the Same Medium
- 452 Edition in a Different Medium
- 453 Translated as
- 454 Translation of
- 455 Reproduction of
- 456 Reproduced as
- 461 Set Level
- 462 Subset Level
- 463 Piece Level
- 464 Piece-Analytic Level
- 470 Item reviewed
- 481 Also Bound With this Volume

- 482 Bound With
- 488 Other Related Works

5 - - RELATED TITLE BLOCK

- 500 Uniform Title
- 501 Collective Uniform Title
- 503 Uniform Conventional Heading
- 510 Parallel Title Proper
- 511 Half Title
- 512 Cover Title
- 513 Added Title-Page Title
- 514 Caption Title
- 515 Running Title
- 516 Spine Title
- 517 Other Variant Titles
- 518 Title in Standard Modern Spelling
- 520 Former Title (Continuing Resources)
- 530 Key-Title
- 531 Abbreviated Title (Continuing Resources)
- 532 Expanded Title
- 540 Additional Title Supplied by Cataloguer
- 541 Translated Title Supplied by Cataloguer
- 545 Section Title

6 - - SUBJECT ANALYSIS BLOCK

- 600 Personal Name Used as Subject
- 601 Corporate Body Name Used as Subject
- 602 Family Name Used as Subject
- 604 Name and Title Used as Subject
- 605 Title Used as Subject
- 606 Topical Name Used as Subject
- 607 Geographical Name Used as Subject
- 608 Form Heading
- 610 Uncontrolled Subject Terms
- 615 Subject Category (Provisional)
- 616 Trademark Used as Subject
- 620 Place and Date Access
- 626 Technical Details Access (Electronic Resources) [Obsolete]
- 660 Geographic Area Code (GAC)
- 661 Time Period Code
- 670 PRECIS
- 675 Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)
- 676 Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)
- 680 Library of Congress Classification
- 686 Other Class Numbers

7 - - RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

- 700 Personal Name – Primary Responsibility
- 701 Personal Name – Alternative Responsibility
- 702 Personal Name – Secondary Responsibility

- 710 Corporate Body Name – Primary Responsibility
- 711 Corporate Body Name – Alternative Responsibility
- 712 Corporate Body Name – Secondary Responsibility
- 716 Trademark
- 720 Family Name – Primary Responsibility
- 721 Family Name – Alternative Responsibility
- 722 Family Name – Secondary Responsibility
- 730 Name – Responsibility
- 740 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts –
Primary Responsibility
- 741 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts –
Alternative Responsibility
- 742 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts –
Secondary Responsibility

8 - - INTERNATIONAL USE BLOCK

- 801 Originating Source
- 802 ISSN Centre
- 830 General Cataloguer's Note
- 850 Holding Institution
- 856 Electronic Location and Access
- 886 Data Not Converted from Source Format

9 - - NATIONAL USE BLOCK

RECORD LABEL

Definition

This area of the record contains general information which may be needed in processing the record, constituted according to the provisions of ISO 2709.

Occurrence

The record label occurs at the beginning of every record. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Tag, Indicators, and Subfields

The record label has no tag, indicators, or subfield identifiers.

Fixed-length Data Elements

These data elements are identified by character position within the label. The label as a whole is always 24 characters in length. Conventionally the character positions are numbered 0 to 23.

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Record length | 5 | 0-4 |
| Record status | 1 | 5 |
| Implementation codes | 4 | 6-9 |
| Indicator length | 1 | 10 |
| Subfield identifier length | 1 | 11 |
| Base address of data | 5 | 12-16 |
| Additional record definition | 3 | 17-19 |
| Directory map | 4 | 20-23 |

Notes on Field Contents

The Record Label (also known as leader) is found at the beginning of each UNIMARC record and contains data for processing the record. Character positions 9, 10, 11, 20-23 contain specific fixed values at this time and may be generated programmatically by the computer. Character positions 0-4 and 12-16 contain numerical data indicating the number of characters in certain areas of the record; these can be calculated by the computer when the record is formatted. Values for the character positions 5, 6-8, 17-19 may be translated from data in the source record by conversion program or, where UNIMARC is being used as the source format, assigned manually.

0-4 Record length

Five decimal digits, right justified, with zero fill where necessary, representing the number of characters in the entire record, including the label itself, the directory, and the

variable fields. This data element is normally calculated automatically when the total record is assembled for exchange.

5 Record status

A single character, denoting the processing status of the record.

c = corrected record

A record to which changes have been made to correct errors, one which has been amended to bring it up to date, or one where fields have been deleted. However, if the previous record was a pre-publication record (e.g.; CIP) and a full record replacement is now being issued, code 'p' should be used instead of 'c'. A record labelled 'n', 'o' or 'p' on which a correction is made is coded as 'c'.

d = deleted record

A record which is exchanged in order to indicate that a record bearing this control number is no longer valid. The record may contain only the label, directory; and 001 (record control number) field, or it may contain all the fields in the record as issued; in either case GENERAL NOTE 300 field may be used to explain why the record is deleted.

n = new record

A new record (including a pre-publication record, e.g., CIP). If code 'o' applies, it is used in preference to 'n'.

o = previously issued higher level record

A new record at a hierarchical level below the highest level for which a higher level record has already been issued (see also character position 8).

p = previously issued as an incomplete, pre-publication record

A record for a published item replacing a pre-publication record, e.g., CIP.

6-9 Implementation codes

Implementation codes are so called because the codes in character positions 6 to 9 are not defined in the standard format ISO 2709 but are dependent on the individual implementation of the standard. One such implementation is UNIMARC, and the use of these codes in UNIMARC is defined as follows.

6 Type of record

Needed by certain agencies. The domestic format assigns different functions to the same fields, subfields etc. depending on the type of record. Some are the equivalent of General Material Designations; but this is not always the case.

a = language materials, except manuscript

Includes printed, microform, and electronic language material

b = language materials, manuscript

Includes microform, and electronic language material

c = notated music, except manuscript

Includes printed, microform, and electronic notated music

d = notated music, manuscript

Include microform, and electronic manuscript music

e = cartographic materials, except manuscript

Includes maps, atlases, globes, digital maps, and other cartographic items

f = cartographic materials, manuscript

Includes microform, and electronic manuscript maps

g = projected and video material (motion pictures, filmstrips, slides, transparencies, video recordings)

Includes digital video material (do not use for non-projected two-dimensional graphics: see code 'k' below)

i = sound recordings, non-musical

j = sound recordings, musical

k = two-dimensional graphics (pictures, designs etc.)

Examples include: activity cards, charts, collages, computer graphics, drawings, duplication masters, flash cards, paintings, photonegatives, photoprints, pictures, photo CDs, postcards, posters, prints, spirit masters, study prints, technical drawings, photomechanical reproductions, and reproductions of any of these.

l = electronic resource

Includes the following classes of electronic resources: computer software (including programs, games, fonts), numeric data, computer-oriented multimedia, online systems or services. For these classes of materials, if there is a significant aspect that causes it to fall into another Record Label/6 category, the code for that significant aspect is used instead of code 'l' (e.g. vector data that is cartographic is not coded as numeric but cartographic). Other classes of electronic resources are coded for their significant aspect, e.g. language material, cartographic material, sound recording, projected and video material. In case of doubt, use this code.

m = multimedia

Contains a mixture of components from two or more types of items, none of which is the predominant constitution of the kit.

r = three-dimensional artefacts and realia

Includes man-made objects, such as models, dioramas, games, puzzles, simulations, sculptures and other three-dimensional art works and their reproductions, exhibits, machines, clothing, toys, and stitchery, and naturally occurring objects, such as microscope specimens and other specimens mounted for viewing.

The code should be in accordance with the actual type of material being catalogued rather than with its secondary physical format which is coded in field 106, subfield \$a. Hence there is no code for microforms: a microform containing printed text would be coded as "language materials; except manuscript" and as "microform" code "t" in field 106, subfield \$a. An atlas bringing together manuscript maps on CD-ROM would have code "f" (cartographic materials, manuscript) and code "s" (electronic) in field 106, subfield \$a. A sound recording released on an analogue medium would here be coded "i" or "j".

7 Bibliographic level

Five possible values are defined:

a = analytic (component part) – bibliographic item that is physically contained in another item such that the location of the component part is dependent upon the physical identification and location of the containing item. A component part may itself be either monographic or serial.

The following are examples of materials that are coded 'a': an article in a journal; a continuing column or feature within a journal; a single paper in a collection of conference proceedings.

i = integrating resource – bibliographic item / resource that is added to or changed by means of updates that do not remain discrete and are integrated into the whole. Integrating resources may be finite or continuing.

The following are examples of materials which are coded 'i': updating loose-leaves, databases and updating Web sites

m = monographic – bibliographic item complete in one physical part or intended to be completed in a finite number of parts.

The following are examples of materials which are coded 'm': a single part item (monograph); a multipart item (multi-volume monograph); a separately catalogued single part of a multipart item; a book in a series; a separately catalogued special issue of a newspaper; a sheet map in a series; a complete series of maps, assuming the series was intended to be completed in a finite number of parts; a single globe.

s = serial – a continuing resource issued in a succession of discrete parts, usually bearing numbering, that has no predetermined conclusion.

The following are examples of materials which are coded 's': journals, magazines, electronic journals, continuing directories, annual reports, newspapers; and monographic series.

c = collection – bibliographic item that is a made-up collection.

The following are examples of materials which are coded 'c': a collection of pamphlets housed in a box; a set of memorabilia in various formats kept together as a collection; all the manuscripts of an individual author.

This code is used only for made-up collections.

The bibliographic level of a record relates to the main part of the record, or the primary bibliographic entity described in that record, the title for which appears in the 200 field.

Some cataloguing codes may not make a clear distinction between a multi-part item (multi-volume monograph) and a monographic series. In such cases an agency should use whichever of the values is more appropriate in the majority of cases. Where such a distinction is made, but cannot be determined in a particular instance, the item should be coded as a serial.

8 Hierarchical level code

This code indicates the hierarchical relationship (if any) between the record and other records in the file. The following codes are used:

- # = hierarchical relationship undefined
- 0 = no hierarchical relationship
- 1 = highest level record
- 2 = record below highest level (all levels below)

Organisations never creating records related hierarchically should always enter #.

Organisations making links between records which are related hierarchically should enter the appropriate code 0, 1 or 2. In this context, code 0 indicates that, although the system does use hierarchical linking, the particular record is not related to others in the file. Codes 1 and 2 should be used only if records at other levels actually exist; records linked in this way must all be present in the same file.

If character position 5 contains 'o' then '2' should be entered in character position 8.

See also the information given in section 46- Levels.

9 Undefined

Contains a blank.

10 Indicator length

One numeric digit giving the length of the indicators. This is invariably 2 in UNIMARC.

11 Subfield identifier length

One numeric digit giving the length of the subfield identifier; e.g. '\$a'. This is invariably 2 in UNIMARC.

12-16 Base address of data

Five numeric digits, right justified with leading zeros, indicating the starting character position of the first data field relative to the beginning of the record. Since the first character of the record is numbered 0 (zero), the number entered as the base address of data will be equal to the total number of characters in the label and directory including the field separator that terminates the directory. In the directory, the starting character position for each field is given relative to the first character of the first data field which will be field 001, rather than the beginning of the record. The base address thus gives the base from which the position of each field is calculated. This number will generally be supplied automatically by the computer when the UNIMARC record is finally assembled.

17-19 Additional record definition

Three character positions containing codes giving further details necessary for processing the record:

17 Encoding level

A one-character code indicating in general the degree of completeness of the machine record, and whether or not the item was examined when the record was created.

= (blank) full level. The item represented in the record was examined when the record was prepared for inclusion in a machine-readable database.

1 = sublevel 1. The item represented in the record was not examined when the record was prepared for inclusion in a machine-readable database. For example, this may mean

that the record was taken from a catalogue card and when tags, indicators and subfield identifiers were applied it was not always possible to add them with the same certainty of accuracy as it would have been if the original item had been examined.

2 = sublevel 2. The record is a pre-publication (Cataloguing In Publication) record. These records will generally be less than complete, e.g., the collation field may be absent or incomplete.

3 = sublevel 3. The record contains less than full cataloguing and may or may not be subsequently upgraded to a full level record by the issuing agency. For CIP records use sublevel 2.

18 Descriptive cataloguing form

A one-character code indicating the form of the descriptive cataloguing used in the record. It indicates whether the descriptive fields 200-225 have been constructed according to the provisions of the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD). The code values are as follows:

= (blank) record is in full ISBD form: all the ISBD data elements present in the record are in accordance with the provisions of ISBD.

i = record is in partial or incomplete ISBD form: some of the fields but not all conform to the provisions of ISBD. If this value is input, it is essential that an explanation of usage is included in documentation accompanying files for exchange. See Appendix K.

n = record is in non-ISBD form: none of the ISBD data elements present in the record are necessarily in accordance with the provision of ISBD.

An agency that catalogues its books in accordance with ISBD(M) but its continuing resources only partially in accordance with ISBD(CR) may enter code '#' in all records of books and 'i' in all records of continuing resources, even though many of the continuing resource records might by chance conform to ISBD(CR) completely.

19 Undefined

Contains a blank.

20-23 Directory map

This provides details of the length and structure of the directory entry for each of the UNIMARC fields. The four positions are as follows:

20 Length of 'Length of field'

One decimal digit giving the number of characters in the 'length of field' part of each directory entry. The value in UNIMARC is 4. This allows a maximum field length of 9,999 characters

21 Length of 'Starting character position'

One decimal digit giving the number of characters in the 'starting character position' of each directory entry. The value in UNIMARC is 5. This allows a maximum record length of approximately 100,000 characters.

22 Length of implementation-defined portion

A decimal digit giving the number of characters in the implementation-defined portion of each directory entry. As a UNIMARC directory entry does not contain such a portion, the value in UNIMARC is 0.

23 Undefined

Contains a blank.

Related fields

The data elements found in the record label are not found elsewhere in UNIMARC. Although some of the values of the implementation codes 'type of record' and 'bibliographic level' appear to overlap with other coded data, in fact the codes in the record label refer to attributes of the record and not directly to attributes of the bibliographic item itself.

0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains those numbers that identify the record or the item recorded in it.

Occurrence

The following fields are defined:

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Record Identifier |
| 003 | Persistent Record Identifier |
| 005 | Version Identifier |
| 010 | International Standard Book Number (ISBN) |
| 011 | ISSN |
| 012 | Fingerprint Identifier |
| 013 | International Standard Music Number (ISMN) |
| 014 | Article Identifier |
| 015 | International Standard Technical Report Number (ISRN) |
| 016 | International Standard Recording Code (ISRC) |
| 017 | Other Standard Identifier |
| 020 | National Bibliography Number |
| 021 | Legal Deposit Number |
| 022 | Government Publication Number |
| 035 | Other Systems Control Numbers |
| 036 | Music Incipit |
| 040 | CODEN |
| 071 | Publishers' Number |
| 072 | Universal Product Code (UPC) |
| 073 | International Article Number (EAN) |

Field 001 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered only when data is available.

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains characters uniquely associated with the record, i.e. the control number for the record of the agency preparing the record.

Occurrence

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Subfields

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Notes on Field Contents

There are no restrictions on the form of the record identifier.

When the record identifier consists of or incorporates any form of an International Standard Number, other identifiable number such as a national number, or other data such as country of publication, this information is nevertheless to be entered in the field specified for that data in addition to recording it as the record identifier in this field.

Related Fields

An agency may be using other separately identified numbers such as ISBN or National Bibliography Number as a Record Identifier. See Notes on Field Contents above for treatment in these cases.

Examples

EX 1: 001 2002-00000000011

A number in the Joint Catalogue file of the South African State Library.

EX 2: 001 B7512345

The record number of a record from the *British National Bibliography* is the National Bibliography Number B7512345. In addition, the number is entered in field 020: NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER.

EX 3: 001 02512645

The record number used for a record in a file of continuing resources is the ISSN without its hyphen. In addition, the ISSN with hyphen is entered in field 011, ISSN.

EX 4: 001 83.041470.3

The record number allocated to a Deutsche Bibliothek record. This is not identical with the national bibliography number.

EX 5: 001 ###73002284##/r752

The control number of a record issued by the Library of Congress. The basic control number has a fixed length of 12 characters which in this instance requires blank fill. This number also includes revision information in a suffix.

003 PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains the persistent identifier of the record assigned by the agency which creates, uses or issues the record. This is the persistent identifier for the bibliographic record, not for the resource itself.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Subfields

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Notes on Field Content

Persistent identifiers are specific internet addresses which allow one to reference an electronic item with the aid of a hypertext link, while making sure that this link will not change. There are several systems which allow the creation of persistent identifiers.

A bibliographic record appearing in an OAI repository can also be referenced through a persistent identifier. Thanks to this tool, it is possible to add this bibliographic record to one's own bookmarks or to quote it on a Web site, in an e-mail, on a blog or in a forum, simply by using the address which is displayed in the browser during an on-line session.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

The persistent identifier is the equivalent on the web of the system control number for the record in the database.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

The persistent identifier for the resource described by the record is entered in field 856.

Example

EX 1: 001 FRBNF401336220000001

003 <http://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb40133622z/PUBLIC>

005 VERSION IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

The field contains the date and time of the last record transaction. It allows machine systems to determine whether the version of the record being processed is later, earlier or the same as one previously processed.

Occurrence

Optional, recommended. Not repeatable.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field has no indicators.

Subfields

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field has no subfield identifiers.

Notes on Field Contents

The date is entered in ISO standard form (ISO 8601-2004) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month and DD the day of the month. The time is entered in the form HHMMSS.T where HH represents the hour using the twenty four hour clock, MM the minutes, SS the seconds and .T tenths of a second. In all cases a leading 0 is added if necessary.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA (CHARACTER POSITIONS 0-7)

This is the date of original creation of the record and will not change even if the record is corrected or exchanged.

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE FIELD subfield \$c

This subfield gives solely year, month and day of modification, transcription and/or issue.

Examples

EX 1: 005 20050901141236.0

The date of last transaction was 1st September 2005 at 14:12:36 hours (i.e. 2:12:36 p.m.). In accordance with ISO 8601, '1st' is entered as '01' not '1', 'September' as '09' not '9', to preserve the format.

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Book Number and a qualification which distinguishes between ISBN when more than one is contained in a record. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain an ISBN.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when more than one valid ISBN etc. is to be recorded. If it is desired to make links between a 13-digit and a 10-digit ISBN, \$6 subfields can be used in each 010 field.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number (ISBN)

A correctly applied ISBN including hyphens. The ISBN are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the ISBN in subfield \$a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the item, or an indication of the relationship of an ISBN to a set or to a particular volume. (EX 3, 5, 6, 7). Repeatable.

\$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the item and any comment on its availability (EX 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8). Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous ISBN

An ISBN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled (EX 8), or it may have been incorrectly printed (EX 9). Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield is described in field 3.11. Optional. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISBN structure:

From 1 January 2007, national ISBN agencies are providing only ISBNs that consist of 13 digits, comprising the following elements:

- Prefix element
- Registration group element
- Registrant element
- Publication element
- Check digit

When printed, the ISBN is always preceded by the letters 'ISBN'. In field 010, these are generated automatically from a UNIMARC record and should not be entered into the text whether the agency uses Latin or local script for this abbreviation. The ISBN is divided into 5 elements, 3 of them of variable length. The elements must each be separated clearly by hyphens when displayed in human readable form: it is recommended hyphens be used in UNIMARC records. The first and last elements are of fixed length. The number of digits varies in the second, third and fourth elements of the ISBN. The length of the registration group element and of the registrant element is relative to the expected publishing output of the registration group or registrant. When these elements are short in length it indicates that the output is expected to be large.

Prefix element The first element of the ISBN is a 3-digit number that is made available by EAN International. Currently two prefixes are used 978 and 979.

Registration Group element The second element of the ISBN identifies the country, geographical region or language area in the ISBN system. Some members in the ISBN system form language areas (e.g. registration group number 3 is the German language group); others form regional groups (e.g. registration group number 982 is South Pacific); The length of the element varies between 1 and 5 digits.

Registrant element The third element of the ISBN identifies a particular publisher or imprint within a registration group. The length of this element varies in relation to the anticipated output of the publisher concerned and varies between 2 and 7 digits.

Publication element The fourth element of the ISBN identifies a specific edition of a publication by a specific publisher. The length of this element varies in relation to the length of the registration group and registrant elements which precede it and varies between 1 and 6 digits. To ensure the correct length of ISBN is maintained, the number is filled with leading zeroes.

Check digit The fifth element of the ISBN is the check digit. This is calculated using a modulus 10 algorithm. Each of the first 12 digits of the ISBN is alternately multiplied by 1 and 3. The check digit is equal to 10 minus the remainder resulting from dividing the sum of the weighted products of the first 12 digits by 10 with one exception: if the calculation results in a remainder of 10 the check digit is 0.

Here is a sample calculation for the ISBN 978-0-11-000222-?

Step 1: determine the sum of the weighted products for the first 12 digits of the ISBN according to the table below

| | Prefix | | | Registration Group | | Registrant | | Publication | | | | | Check Digit | Sum |
|---------|--------|----|---|--------------------|---|------------|---|-------------|---|---|---|---|-------------|-----|
| ISBN | 9 | 7 | 8 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 2 | ? | |
| Weight | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | | |
| Product | 9 | 21 | 8 | 0 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 6 | 2 | 6 | | 56 |

Step 2: Divide the sum of the weighted products by 10: $56 / 10 = 5$ remainder 6

Step 3: Subtract the remainder calculated in step 2 from 10. This is the check digit (unless the remainder is 10 in which case the check digit is 0). In the example, $10 - 6 = 4$, so the result is ISBN 978-0-11-222-4

The 10-digit ISBN, no longer applied to new items consists of four distinct parts, each of which is separated by a hyphen or space. Hyphens are recommended in UNIMARC. For the sake of completeness, the description of the 10-digit ISBN follows.

The four parts are:

Group identifier: Allocated to each country or group of countries or language groups by the International ISBN Agency. International organizations, e.g., the UN, also have their own group identifier.

Publisher identifier: Allocated to each publisher by a National or Regional ISBN Agency.

Title identifier: Allocated to each title (and each edition and format of each title) by the publisher.

Check digit: calculated using a modulus 11 algorithm.

All digits of the ISBN are numeric except the check digit which may be numeric or a roman numeral X (capital X, representing a numeric value of 10). ISO 2108 gives the standard specifications of the form of the ISBN.

Verification of check digit:

To check for accuracy of a ten-digit ISBN: take each digit and multiply by a number whose value depends on the position of the digit (the 'weight'), add the results and divide by 11. If the remainder is not zero then one or more of the digits is wrong. Using EX 9 as an example:

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----|---|---|----|----|----|---|----|---|-----------------|
| ISBN | 0 | 1 | 1 | 8 | 8 | 4 | 0 | 9 | 4 | X (i.e. 10) |
| 'Weight' | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| Result | 0 | 9 | 8 | 56 | 48 | 20 | 0 | 27 | 8 | 10 -- total 186 |

186 is not exactly divisible by 11, so the ISBN is incorrect.

Data format:

The letters ISBN, which are usually found printed with an ISBN on the item, should not be entered in field 010.

Any ISBN which is found to be wrongly printed on the item can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISBN, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number appearing on the item.

Hyphens are inserted to separate the distinct parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISBN is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISBN is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm if the range of publisher identifiers which have been allocated is known. When records are exchanged internationally the recipient of records may not always know the range of publisher identifiers allocated within the group represented by the first part of the ISBN. Therefore it is recommended that hyphens always be included in the ISBN in field 010 to ensure their display on output.

Strictly, each book has one ISBN. However, there are circumstances in which a single record may need to include more than one ISBN, depending on the policy of the cataloguing agency. Examples of situations in which multiple ISBN might appear in a record are: where a publisher issues a work in more than one binding or physical format, each with a different ISBN, and a single record is created by the agency encompassing more than one of these 'editions', where a single record is created for a multipart item (multi-volume monograph) and different ISBN have been assigned by the publisher to each volume, or to each volume and to the set as a whole; where a single item is published, or published and distributed, by more than one entity, each of which has assigned a separate ISBN to the item.

In order to distinguish between ISBN when there is more than one in a record, qualifications may be added to one or more of them, according to the practice of the agency preparing the record.

Terms of availability and price are often related to each ISBN. Thus this information is recorded in the same field. Punctuation is included with the data as required.

The field should be repeated for each valid ISBN. It should also be repeated for an invalid ISBN unless that invalid ISBN clearly relates to a known valid equivalent entered in the record, in which case the invalid ISBN will be entered in the same field as its corresponding valid ISBN (EX 8, 9).

Some agencies use the ISBN as record identifier and enter it in the field 001. In those cases the ISBN should be entered additionally in field 010.

A converter to convert 10-digit ISBNs to 13-digit ISBNs is available at <http://www.isbn-international.org/converter/converter.html>

Related Fields

011 ISSN

A number similar in use to the ISBN but applied to continuing resources.

013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)

A number similar in use to the ISBN but applied to printed music.

Examples

EX 1: 010 ##\$a0-246-11007-4\$d£2.95

A book published in England and cloth bound priced at £2.95 with the ISBN on the document as follows: 0 246 11007 4.

EX 2: 010 ##\$a963-592-149-7\$d\$25.00 (outside Hungary)

A book published in Hungary and sold outside the country for \$25.00.

EX 3: 010 ##\$d£3.50
010 ##\$bpbk\$d£2.50

A book published in both cloth and paper covers. No ISBN is available.

EX 4: 010 ##\$a0-85997-276-3\$d£5.20 (£3.90 to members of the Library Association)

A book is published with a discount to members of the Library Association.

EX 5: 010 ##\$a0-915408-15-5\$dUnpriced
010 ##\$a0-915408-16-3\$bSigned ed.\$dUnpriced

A book is available in cloth bound form with the option of purchasing it in a cased edition signed by the translator. The alternatives each have their own ISBN.

EX 6: 010 ##\$a0-306-35054-8\$d£22.05
010 ##\$a0-306-35050-5\$bSet of six vols\$d£97.29

The record is for volume 4 of a monograph Treatise on solid state chemistry published in 6 volumes, each with its own ISBN. The set also has an ISBN and a price is available for the set.

EX 7: 010 ##\$a0-563-12887-9\$b(B.B.C.)
010 ##\$a0-233-96847-4\$b(Deutsch)

A book is jointly published by the British Broadcasting Corporation and Deutsch.

EX 8: 010 ##\$a0-95045-372-2\$d£0.55\$z0-95045-711-6

A publisher erroneously gives the same ISBN to all the items he publishes. The national ISBN agency provides correct ones for each. In the record for each of the items, the correct one is found in subfield \$a and the wrongly applied one is \$z.

EX 9: 010 ##\$a0-11-884094-0\$z0-11-884094-X

ISBN 0-11-884094-0 is incorrectly printed with an X as the check digit.

EX 10: 010 ##\$a2-87900-777-1\$bParis-Musées
010 ##\$a2-7118-4723-3\$bRéunion des musées nationaux\$brel.\$d30 EUR

\$b is repeatable because there is more than one type of qualifier

EX 11: 010 ##\$a978-2-7073-1326-3\$bbr.\$d8,30 EUR
 200 1#\$aDu nerf\$bTexte imprimé\$fRobert Pinget
 Simple example of ISBN-13

EX 12 010 ##\$a978-2-220-04854-3\$bvol. 1
 010 ##\$a2-220-04854-3
 010 ##\$a978-2-220-04855-0\$bvol. 2
 010 ##\$a2-220-04855-1\$z2-220-04854-1
 010 ##\$bsous étui\$d57,21 EUR (les 2 vol.)
 200 0#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Bible et sa culture\$bTexte imprimé\$f sous la direction de
 Michel Quesnel et Philippe Gruson
 215 ##\$a2 vol. (575 p.-XII p. de pl. en coul., 606 p.-XII p de pl. en coul.)\$cill.\$d24 cm

An example of a multi-volume monograph

Alternative method using \$6 subfields:

010 ##\$6z01\$a978-2-220-04854-3\$bvol. 1
 010 ##\$6z01\$a2-220-04854-3
 010 ##\$6z02\$a978-2-220-04855-0\$bvol. 2
 010 ##\$6z02\$a2-220-04855-1\$z2-220-04854-1
 010 ##\$bsous étui\$d57,21 EUR (les 2 vol.)
 200 0#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Bible et sa culture\$bTexte imprimé\$f sous la direction de
 Michel Quesnel et Philippe Gruson
 215 ##\$a2 vol. (575 p.-XII p. de pl. en coul., 606 p.-XII p de pl. en coul.)\$cill.\$d24 cm

011 ISSN

Field Definition

This field contains the ISSN as assigned by an ISSN Centre, any ISSN which has been assigned and cancelled, details of terms of availability and/or price. It corresponds to the ISBD(CR) Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area, although the Key Title is entered in field 530.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if the record includes more than one continuing resource title, or medium.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Level of Interest Indicator

This indicator specifies the level of interest of the continuing resource as being of international and national interest as opposed to local interest as defined in the ISSN manual. Refer to ISSN Centres for further information.

Level not specified / Not applicable

0 Continuing resource of international or national interest

1 Continuing resource of local interest

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number (ISSN)

A correctly applied ISSN including the hyphen between the fourth and fifth digits. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualification

Used to distinguish between ISSN if a record contains more than one. Not repeatable. Not used by the ISSN International Centre.

\$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the item and any comment on its availability (EX 3,6). Repeatable.

\$f ISSN-L or linking ISSN

An ISSN designated by the ISSN network to link together various medium versions of a continuing resource (EX 10,11). Not repeatable.

\$g Cancelled ISSN-L

This includes an ISSN-L incorrectly designated to a continuing resource (EX 12). Repeatable.

- \$y Cancelled ISSN
This includes any ISSN that was formerly valid but which has been cancelled by an ISSN centre (EX 2). Repeatable.
- \$z Erroneous ISSN or ISSN-L
This includes any incorrect ISSN or ISSN-L other than those recorded in \$g or \$y. Most often this will be the result of a printing error. Repeatable (EX 5).

Notes on Field Contents

The ISSN is a unique and unambiguous identification number for continuing resources assigned in accordance with ISO 3297. The system for allocating ISSN is controlled by the ISSN International Centre based in Paris. National Centres allocate ISSN to new continuing resources from a batch of numbers allocated to them by the ISSN International Centre, and communicate them to the Centre.

Data format:

An ISSN consists of eight digits. These are the Arabic numerals 0 to 9, except in the case of the last or check digit where a roman numeral X (capital X) can occur. Since ISSN are likely to be used in the same context as codes designed for other purposes, such as the International Standard Book Number (ISBN) or control numbers, a distinction must be preserved in the form of presentation when printed or displayed. An ISSN is, therefore, preceded by the letters 'ISSN' and a space, and appears as two groups of four digits separated by a hyphen, for example: ISSN 1234-5679. The check digit is always located in the extreme right position, and is calculated on a modulus 11 basis using weights 8 to 2. The letters ISSN are not included in field 011 in the UNIMARC record, though the hyphen is. Detailed specifications for the ISSN and calculation of its check digit are found in ISO 3297.

Punctuation:

A hyphen should separate the fourth and fifth digits of a valid or cancelled ISSN or ISSN-L. No other punctuation should be present. Punctuation for the \$b, \$f, \$g and \$d subfields is entered in these subfields according to the practices of the agency preparing the record.

ISSN-L or linking ISSN:

This functionality of the ISSN is defined in the International Standard ISO 3297:2007, Information and documentation – International Standard Serial number (ISSN). The purpose of the ISSN-L is to provide a mechanism for grouping, or collocating the various medium versions of a resource, for instance, the print and online versions of a journal.

Multiple ISSN:

Any ISSN or ISSN-L that is wrongly assigned and then cancelled or wrongly printed is entered in subfield \$g if it is a cancelled ISSN-L or subfield \$y Cancelled ISSN or \$z Erroneous ISSN respectively. Such ISSN should be entered in the same field as the correctly assigned ISSN.

Those agencies following ISSN International Centre practices for making records of continuing resources will always have only one valid ISSN in field 011 of their records. Those agencies with different practices for making records of continuing resources may have records which contain more than one valid ISSN in repeated 011 fields.

Some agencies use the ISSN as record identifier and enter it in field 001. In these cases the ISSN should also be entered in field 011.

Related Fields

- 010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
A number similar in use to the ISSN but applied to books.
- 013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)
A number similar in use to the ISBN but applied to printed music.
- 040 CODEN
An additional identification system for continuing resources.
- 225 SERIES
An ISSN for a series to which the item being catalogued belongs may be entered in subfield 225 \$x.
- 530 KEY TITLE
The Key title part of the ISBD(CR) Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area is entered in field 530.
- 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK
An ISSN that is assigned to a higher level bibliographic item (series) or a lower level bibliographic item (sub-series) that is related to the continuing resource being catalogued, may be entered in an 011 field embedded in the appropriate linking entry field (4--) or in a \$x if the embedded field technique is not used..

Examples

EX 1: 011 ##\$a0003-9756

The ISSN for Archives européennes de sociologie is ISSN 0003-9756.

EX 2: 011 ##\$a0105-0064\$y0036-5646

Scandinavian times and Scandinavian times magazine were allocated the same ISSN, 0036-5645. This number is cancelled and a new number allocated to each. The example gives the contents of the ISSN field in the record of the Scandinavian times.

EX 3: 011 ##\$a0260-7743\$dFree to members of the federation only

The Newsletter of the London Federation of Museums and Art Galleries has the ISSN 0260-7743. Details of terms of availability are included in the record.

EX 4: 011 ##\$a0009-3947\$d£1.00\$d£13.25 yearly

Both a single issue price and a subscription rate are given on the item.

EX 5: 011 ##\$a0263-3264\$z0226-7223\$z0068-2691

Two different ISSN are given on the Yearbook of European law, 1984 edition. Both are wrong. The correct and the two incorrect ISSN are listed in the field.

EX 6: 011 ##\$d£2.95

The Moomins annual has a price; but no ISSN has been assigned.

EX 7: 011 0#\$a0011-1643

ISSN of the continuing resource Croatica chemical acta, which is of international interest

EX 8: 011 1#\$a1144-9853

ISSN of the continuing resource Bulletin – Académie musicologique du Forez, which is of local interest

EX 9: 011 1#\$a0884-402X

ISSN of the continuing resource The racing report, which is of local interest

EX 10: 011 0#\$a1819-1371\$f1819-1371

ISSN and ISSN-L of the continuing resource Construction law international, which is published in printed form, with no other medium form

EX 11: Record for printed version

011 0#\$a1818-5894\$f1818-5894

Record for online version

011 0#\$a1818-5940\$f1818-5894

ISSNs and ISSN-L of the continuing resource Social policy highlight, which is published in printed and online forms

EX 12: (Fictitious examples)

Record for printed version

011 0#\$a1234-1231\$f1234-1231

Record for online version

011 #a1560-1560\$f1234-1231\$g1560-1560

The medium versions of the resource were identified separately and not immediately linked together, by mistake.

012 FINGERPRINT IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains the Fingerprint Identifier for older monographic publications (antiquarian) and a code for the institution to which the field applies which distinguishes between Fingerprint Identifiers when more than one is contained in a record. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area.

Occurrence

Optional, recommended. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Fingerprint

Calculated Fingerprint Identifier. The Fingerprint is assigned by the agency creating a record. Not repeatable.

\$2 Fingerprint System Code

An identification in coded form of the system from which fingerprint identifier is derived. Not repeatable.

\$5 Institution and copy to which Field Applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A fingerprint is a means of identifying older monographic publications constructed by taking groups of characters from certain pages in order to make each publication uniquely identifiable.

Since no definitive formula for fingerprint has been determined by international agreement, various forms of fingerprint will be considered acceptable. It is recommended to use a method of fingerprint construction found in Fingerprints =

Empreintes = Impronte. Paris : Institut de Recherche et d'Histoire des Textes in association with the National Library of Scotland, 1984.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER

The field contains the International Standard Book Number.

301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS

The field contains a note on the fingerprint identifier.

Examples

EX 1: 012 ##\$aocon humi nche covn 3 MDLXXX\$2fei\$5CiZaNSB: R II F-8° -307

Fingerprint for *Opera di Marco Marulo da Spalato Circa L'Institutione del buono e beato vivere*. In Venetia, 1580. Fingerprint taken from a copy in the National and University Library (Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka), Zagreb, pressmark R II F-8° - 307, using the rules of *Fingerprints = Empreintes = Impronte*.

EX 2: 012 ##\$a165512 - a1 *2 dol : a2 *6 m\$ - b1 A r : b2 2E7\$quid\$\$2stcn\$5NeHKB

Fingerprint for Erasmus' Colloquia. Amstelodami, 1655. Fingerprint taken from a copy in the Royal Library (Koninklijke Bibliotheek), Den Haag, using the system devised for the Short Title Catalogue (Netherlands). The dollar signs of 'm\$' and '\$quid\$' form part of the fingerprint and are not subfield identifiers.

013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Music Number and a qualification which distinguishes between ISMNs when more than one is contained in a record. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain an ISMN.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when more than one valid ISMN is to be recorded.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

- \$a Number (ISMN)
A correctly applied ISMN including hyphens. The ISMNs are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable.
- \$b Qualification
An indication of the scope of the ISMN in subfield \$a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the item, or an indication of the relationship of an ISMN to a set or to a particular volume (EX 1, 2). Not repeatable.
- \$d Terms of Availability and/or Price
The price of the item and any comment on its availability. Where there is an 010 International Standard Book Number field and the contents of this subfield would simply repeat what is in 010\$d then the subfield can be omitted. Not repeatable.
- \$z Erroneous ISMN
An ISMN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed (EX 3). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISMN structure:

The ISMN is used to identify music publications, whether available for sale, hire, gratis or for copyright purposes only, according to the provisions of ISO 10957.

Each separately available constituent part of a publication must receive its own ISMN. An ISMN consists of the letter M followed by nine digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by letter ISMN. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISMN.

The ISMN is divided into four elements, two of which are of variable length, each of which is separated by a hyphen or space.

Distinguishing element: The letter M distinguishes the ISMN from the ISBN.

Publisher identifier: Designates the publisher of a given music publication. It is allocated to each publisher by a national or regional ISMN agency.

Item identifier: Identifies an edition of a work and the various items within it. An *item*, in the terms of the Standard, is one separately saleable or available or obtainable constituent part of a music publication.

Check character: This is a single digit at the end of the ISMN that provides an automatic verification of the correctness of the ISMN. It is computer calculated.

Verification of check character: The check character is calculated on a modulus 10 with alternating weights of 3 and 1 assigned from left to right beginning with the letter M prefix. The letter M counts as 3.

This means that each of the first nine characters of the ISMN – i.e. excluding the check digit itself – is multiplied by an alternating sequence of the numbers 3 and 1 from left to right and that the sum of the products thus obtained, plus the check digit, must be divisible without remainder by 10.

For example:

| | Publisher prefix | | | Title Number | | | | | | Check digit |
|----------|------------------|---|----|--------------|---|---|----|---|---|-------------|
| ISMN | M | 3 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 0 | 5 |
| Weight | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | |
| Products | 9 | 3 | 12 | 5 | 6 | 4 | 18 | 8 | 0 | = 65 |

Total: 65 + 5 (check digit) = 70

As 70 can be divided by 10 without remainder M-345-24680-5 is a valid International Standard Music Number.

Data format:

The letters ISMN, which are usually found printed with an ISMN on the item, should not be entered in field 013.

Any ISMN which is found to be wrongly printed on the item can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISMN, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number appearing on the item.

Hyphens are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens or spaces in the ISMN is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISMN is displayed in a catalogue entry the

inclusion of the hyphens or spaces is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens or spaces in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm if the range of publisher identifiers which have been allocated is known. When records are exchanged internationally the recipient of records may not always know the range of publisher identifiers. Therefore it is recommended that hyphens always be included in the ISMN in field 013 to ensure the display output.

Strictly speaking, each music publication has one ISMN. However, there are circumstances in which a single record may need to include more than one ISMN, depending on the policy of the cataloguing agency. Examples of situations in which multiple ISMNs might appear in a record are: where a publisher issues a work in more than one binding or physical format, each with a different ISMN, and a single record is created by the agency encompassing more than one of the 'editions', where a single record is created for a multi-volume publication and different ISMNs have been assigned by the publisher to each individual volume in the set and to the set as a whole; where a single item is published, or published and distributed, by more than one entity, each of which has assigned a separate ISMN to the item.

In order to distinguish between ISMNs when there is more than one in a record, qualifications may be added to one or more of them, according to the practice of the agency preparing the record.

Terms of availability and price are often related to each ISMN. Thus this information is recorded in the same field. Punctuation is included with the data as required.

The field should be repeated for each valid ISMN. It should be repeated for an invalid ISMN unless that invalid ISMN clearly relates to a known valid equivalent entered in the record, in which case the invalid ISMN will be entered in the same field as its corresponding valid ISMN (EX 3).

Some agencies may use the ISMN as record identifier and enter it in the field 001. In those cases the ISMN should be entered additionally in field 013.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)

The field contains the International Standard Book Number. It is sometimes difficult to decide whether a publication is a music edition or a "normal" book, or both. In these cases both an ISMN and an ISBN may be assigned.

011 ISSN

There are only a few periodicals of printed music, but many music publications are issued in series. Both categories should be assigned, an ISSN for the title of a continuing resource and an ISMN for each individual item in the series.

Examples

EX 1: 013 ##\$aM-706700-00-7\$b(HDS)
013 ##\$aM-705701-00-4\$b(MIC)

The item is published jointly by Hrvatsko drustvo skladatelja and Muzicki informativni centar.

EX 2: 013 ##\$aM-9005202-2-7\$b(bound)
013 ##\$aM-9005202-3-4\$b(pbk)

The publication is available both in bound and in paperback edition.

EX 3: 013 ##\$aM-9005202-1-0\$zM-9005202-1-X

ISMN M-9005202-1-0 is incorrectly printed with an X as the check digit.

014 ARTICLE IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains a unique, unambiguous code assigned to journal articles.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Article Identifier

Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Article Identifier

Repeatable.

\$2 System Code

The subfield contains an identification of the system under which the identifier was constructed. Not repeatable.

Codes:

biblid Bibliographic Identification of Contributions in Serials and Books (ISO 9115)

Note: ISO 9115 has been withdrawn and the use of the biblid is not recommended.

sici Serial Item and Contributor Identifier (ANSI/NISO Z39.56)

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the number formatted according to the systems identified in subfield \$2.

Serial Item and Contribution Identifier (SICI – ANSI/NISO Standard Z39:56-1996)

The SICI is a variable length code that provides unique identification of serial issues (SII) and serials (SCI) contributions (<http://sunsite.berkeley.edu/SICI/>). The elements of the SICI are separated by punctuation. Retain punctuation in the UNIMARC record.

Serial Issue Identifier components:

ISSN

Issue Date

Issue Numbering

SICI Standard Version Number

Check Character

Serial Contribution Identifier (additional elements)

Contribution location (e.g. page number)

Contribution title code (e.g. if more than one contribution title begins on a single page)

The barcode version of the number will differ from the eye-readable version.

Examples

EX 1: 014 ##\$a0024-2519/91/6103-0003\$01.00\$2sici

The article identifier for "Core Journal Networks and Cocitation Maps: New Bibliometric Tools for Serials Research and Management" in *Library Quarterly*, v.61, no.3. The second \$ is part of the citation and not a subfield mark.

EX 2: 014 ##\$a0015-6914(19960101)157:1<62:KTSW>2.0.TX;2-F\$2sici

An example of a SICI for the Item: Hutheesing, Nikhil, "Keeping the seats warm" *Forbes*, 1 January 1996, vol. 157 no. 1 p. 62.

015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TECHNICAL REPORT NUMBER (ISRN)

Field Definition

This field contains the ISRN as assigned by a national ISRN Centre. It corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Blank (not defined)

Subfields

- \$a** Number (ISRN)
A correctly applied ISRN including hyphens. The ISRN are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable.
- \$b** Qualification
An indication of the scope of the ISRN in subfield \$a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the item, or an indication of the relationship of an ISRN to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.
- \$d** Terms of Availability and/or Price
The price of the item and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.
- \$z** Cancelled/Invalid/Erroneous ISRN
An ISRN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the number formatted according to ISO 10444. This number has a maximum of 36 characters.

Related Fields

- 010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
A number similar in use to the ISRN but applied to books.

011 ISSN

A number similar in use to the ISRN but applied to continuing resources.

014 ARTICLE IDENTIFIER

A code assigned to journal articles.

040 CODEN

An additional identification system for continuing resources.

Example

EX 1: 015 ##\$aKU-CL-TR--6-96--GB

Kent University Computing Laboratory Technical Report 6-96. An ISRN assigned by the issuing agency in the United Kingdom (country code GB).

EX 2: 015 ##\$aCEA-DAS-STAS-SPI--88/1-FR

Commissariat à l'Energie Atomique, Département d'Analyse de Sûreté, Service Technique d'Analyse de Sûreté, Section Protection Incendie. 1988, rapport n° 1. An ISRN assigned by the issuing agency in France.

016 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Recording Code and a qualification which distinguishes between ISRCs when more than one is contained in a record. The ISRC identifies sound recordings and music video recordings and not physical products. There is no conflict with existing product catalogue numbering systems (EAN, publisher's number) with which it coexists.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when more than one valid ISRC is to be recorded.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

- \$a Number (ISRC)
A correctly applied ISRC including hyphens. The ISRCs are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.
- \$b Qualification
An indication of the scope of the ISRC in subfield \$a (if present), usually an indication of the relationship of an ISRC to a particular expression. Not repeatable.
- \$d Terms of Availability and/or Price [Obsolete]
The ISRC does not identify a manifestation.
- \$z Erroneous ISRC
An ISRC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a recording or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different recordings and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISRC structure:

The ISRC is used to identify an audio, video or audio-visual recording, according to the provisions of ISO 3901.

Each separately available constituent part of a publication must receive its own ISRC. An ISRC consists of twelve digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is

preceded by the letters ISRC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISRC.

The ISRC is now divided into four elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen. The former fourth and fifth elements are now one element without hyphen.

Country code: A two-letter country code assigned from ISO 3166-1.

Registrant code: An alphanumeric 3 character code assigned by nominated agencies.

Year of reference: The last two digits of the year in which the ISRC was allocated to the recording.

Designation code: This consists of five digits, assigned by the registrant.

Data format:

The letters ISRC, which are usually found printed with an ISRC on the item, should not be entered in field 016.

Any ISRC which is found to be wrongly printed on the item can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISRC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number appearing on the item.

Hyphens are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISRC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISRC is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm.

In order to distinguish between ISRCs when there is more than one in a record, qualifications may be added to one or more of them, according to the practice of the agency preparing the record.

Terms of availability and price are not related to ISRC. This information is recorded in another field of the identification block (010, 071, etc.).

The field should be repeated for each valid ISRC. It should be repeated for an invalid ISRC unless that invalid ISRC clearly relates to a known valid equivalent entered in the record, in which case the invalid ISRC will be entered in the same field as its corresponding valid ISRC.

Unlike the ISBN the ISRC cannot be used as record identifier and entered in field 001.

Related Fields

- 010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
- 011 ISSN
- 071 PUBLISHERS' NUMBER
- 073 INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)

Examples

EX 1: 016 ##\$aFR-Z03-91-01231

An ISRC for Phonogram France allocated in 1991, now written in four elements

017 OTHER STANDARD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains a standard number or code, published on an item which cannot be accommodated in another field and a qualification which distinguishes between numbers when more than one number of the same type is contained in a record. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable with different first indicator values when more than one type of standard identifier is used; repeatable with the same first indicator value when more than one instance of a specific type of standard number is to be recorded.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of standard number or code

- 7 Source Specified in Subfield \$2
- 8 Unspecified type of standard number

Indicator 2: Difference indicator

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether there is a difference between a scanned number or code and the same number or code in eye readable form.

- 0 No information provided
- 1 No difference
- 2 Difference

Subfields

\$a Standard Number

A correctly formatted standard number or code. Numbers or code are formatted according to type. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the number or code in subfield \$a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the item, or an indication of the relationship of a number or code to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

\$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the item and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Number or Code

A number or code that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications or products and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

\$2 Source of code

Type of code. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

- 010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
 - 011 ISSN
 - 013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)
 - 014 ARTICLE IDENTIFIER
 - 020 NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER
 - 021 LEGAL DEPOSIT NUMBER
 - 022 GOVERNMENT PUBLICATION NUMBER
 - 040 CODEN
 - 071 PUBLISHERS' NUMBER
 - 072 UNIVERSAL PRODUCT CODE (UPC)
 - 073 INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)
- These fields are used for specific numbers.

020 NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER

Field Definition

This field contains the number allocated to the record of a bibliographic item by the national bibliographic agency, and an indication of the country of the agency.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Country Code

An identification of the country of the national bibliography (EX 1-4). Two characters. Not repeatable.

\$b Number

The number as assigned by the agency (EX 1-4). Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Number

A number erroneously assigned to a record (EX 2). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The preferred form of the national bibliography number entered in subfield \$b is the form in which it is assigned by the agency including spaces, hyphens and other punctuation and following capitalization, etc. The country code of the country of the national bibliography is entered in subfield \$a as a two-character, upper case alphabetic code from ISO 3166. For details see Appendix B. When a country has more than one national bibliography, it is suggested that the agencies providing the bibliographies agree on a numeric code suffix to add to the country code to differentiate them .

An erroneous number may be entered in subfield \$z. When only an erroneous number is known, the field will contain a subfield \$z without subfield \$b being present.

When the national bibliography number is used as the record identifier in field 001, it should be entered additionally in field 020.

Related Fields

None.

Examples

EX 1: 020 ##\$aAU\$b67-6
An Australian National Bibliography Number.

EX 2: 020 ##\$aCA\$bCM73-6722XF
020 ##\$aCA\$zCM78-6722XF
A correct and an erroneous Canadian number.

EX 3: 020 ##\$aDD\$b83,A16,0553
020 ##\$aDD\$b82,N46,0092
The record for an item in the *Deutsche Bibliographie* contains a repeated 020 field since the item has appeared twice in the *Deutsche Bibliographie*; the earlier version of the record was a CIP record. Though the record containing the repeated fields is simply an upgrade of the CIP record, it includes the earlier number since this is the practice of the agency preparing the record.

EX 4: 020 ##\$aGB\$bB81-15605
A number from the British National Bibliography.

021 LEGAL DEPOSIT NUMBER

Field Definition

This field contains the number assigned to the item being recorded by the legal deposit or copyright office in each country.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Country Code

An identification of the country of the legal deposit agency assigning the number. Two characters. Not repeatable.

\$b Number

As assigned by the agency. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Number

A number erroneously assigned to an item. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The preferred form of the legal deposit number is the form in which it is assigned by the agency, including spaces, hyphens and other punctuation, and following original capitalization, etc. The country code of the country of legal deposit assigning the number is entered in subfield \$a as a two-character, upper case alphabetic code from ISO 3166. For details see Appendix B.

An erroneous number may be entered in subfield \$z. When only an erroneous number is known the field will contain a subfield \$z without subfield \$b being present.

If the legal deposit number is used as the record identifier in field 001, it should be entered additionally in field 021.

Related Fields

None.

Example

EX 1: 021 ##\$aUS\$bA68778

A United States legal deposit number.

022 GOVERNMENT PUBLICATION NUMBER

Field Definition

This field contains the number assigned to one of its own publications or to an item published on its behalf by a government body.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Country Code

An identification of the country in which the item is published (EX 1-3). Two characters. Not repeatable.

\$b Number

The number as assigned by the government body. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Number

A number erroneously assigned to a government publication. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used for numbers on government documents at any level. It may be used for the publications of any level of governmental authority and for international and intergovernmental organizations. In the case of international and intergovernmental organizations, subfield \$a is omitted (EX 4). The country code entered in subfield \$a is a two-character, upper case alphabetic code from ISO 3166. For details see Appendix B. The number is entered in the form in which it appears on the document including spaces, hyphens and other punctuation.

An erroneous number may be entered in subfield \$z. When only an erroneous number is known, the field will contain subfield \$z without subfield \$b being present.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Government Publication Code (character position 20)

This character position indicates whether the item is a government publication and the level of government responsible for it.

Examples

EX 1: 022 ##\$aZA\$bRP64/77

South African government publication number.

EX 2: 022 ##\$aUS\$bE17.302.W58/91

United States government publication.

EX 3: 022 ##\$aGB\$bECC.56/81

A publication of Essex County Council, United Kingdom.

EX 4: 022 ##\$bPGI/81/WS/22

A UNESCO publication.

035 OTHER SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBERS

Field Definition

This field contains the control number of records obtained from other sources.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a System Control Number

A code for the organisation in parentheses followed by the system control number for the record in that organisation's database. Since there are no internationally accepted codes, the codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations* are recommended. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. Not repeatable.

\$z Cancelled or Invalid Control Number

Repeatable.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

The control number used as the unique identifier by the agency preparing the record.

Examples

EX 1: 001 b9301298
035 ##\$a(CiZaNSB)920701098
801 #0\$aHR\$bCiZaNSB\$c960507\$gPPIAK\$2unimyu
801 #2\$aGB\$bUk\$c960702

The original control number of a record derived from one created by the National and University Library, Zagreb.

EX 2: 035 #\$a(FrPBN)frBN001148436
801 #0\$aFR\$bFrPBN\$c951105\$gAFNOR\$2intermarc
801 #2\$aUS\$bDLC\$c970212

The control number originally assigned by the Bibliothèque nationale in France.

036 MUSIC INCIPIT

Field definition

This field contains data describing the musical incipit for music in partially coded form. This field is widely used to identify music manuscripts but it can be applied for printed music or other music material as well (sound recordings, etc.).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank

Indicator 2: blank

Subfields:

\$a Number of work

A two-digit code indicates the work to which the incipit refers, if a set of compositions (e.g. six sonatas) is entirely described in a single record, without the use of piece-analytic level records. If the record describes only one work use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable.

E.g. An incipit describing the second sonata of a set of six: 036 \$a = 02

\$b Number of movement

A two-digit code indicates the movement within a work to which the incipit refers. If the work has only one movement use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable.

E.g. An incipit describing the third movement of a symphony: 036 \$b = 03

\$c Number of incipit

A two-digit code distinguishes different incipits referring to the same movement. If there is only one incipit for a movement use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable.

E.g. In an aria needing an incipit for the instrumental introduction and one for the vocal part the two incipits will have respectively 036 \$c = 01 and 036 \$c = 02

\$d Voice/instrument

The voice or instrument coded in 036 \$p. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present. Not repeatable.

\$e Role

The name of the character singing the incipit coded in 036 \$p. Optional. Not repeatable.

- \$f** Movement caption/heading
Caption or heading of the movement, as it appears on the source. Optional. Repeatable.
- \$g** Key or mode
The key or mode of the movement, if applicable. Use capital letters A-G to indicate major keys, lowercase a-g to indicate minor keys, "x" for sharps and "b" for flats, numbers 1-12 for gregorian modes. Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$m** Clef
Three-character code. Use capital "F" or "C" or "G" to indicate the clef shape, then "-" as separator, then number 1-5 to indicate the clef position on the staff, starting from the bottom line. Use "+" as separator to indicate mensural notation. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present, otherwise void. Not repeatable.
E.g. to indicate the bass clef 036 \$m = F-4
- \$n** Key signature
Use "x" to indicate sharps and "b" to indicate flats, followed by capitals F,C,G,D,A,E,B or B,E,A,D,G,C,F respectively to indicate sharpened or flattened notes. Optional. Not repeatable.
E.g. an incipit in A major with three sharps: 036 \$n = xFCG
- \$o** Time signature
The time value or mensuration sign reported on the staff is transcribed with a symbol (c, c/, c., o, etc.) and/or a number (3, 2, c3, etc.) or a fraction (4/4, 12/8, etc.). Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$p** Musical notation
Use the notation symbols of Plaine & Easie Code or DARMS code to transcribe the first notes of the selected staff. Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$q** Comments (free text)
Free-text note. Optional. Repeatable.
- \$r** Codified note
A one-character code indicates a comment note. Use "?" to indicate a mistake in the incipit, not corrected, "+" to indicate a mistake in the incipit, corrected, "t" to indicate that the incipit has been transcribed (e.g. from mensural notation). Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$t** Text incipit
The literary text (if present) as it appears on the source. If the source has multiple texts each one is transcribed in a separate occurrence of 036 \$t. Optional. Repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example, a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data to an incipit in digital format, e.g. audio (Midi, MP3 or .wav etc. files), graphic (jpeg, gif, tiff etc.) or notational (enigma, niff, etc.). This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be repeated only if one location of the digital object has multiple identifiers (URIs). The field is repeated if the digital object has multiple locations. Optional. Repeatable.

\$z Language of text

Coded identification of the language of the incipit. Use if text is different or may be misinterpreted from 101 LANGUAGE OF THE ITEM. When the subfield is repeated, the order of language codes should reflect the extent and significance of the languages within the work. If this is not possible, enter the language codes in alphabetical order. Code 'mul' may be entered when a large number of languages applies in the subfield. See Appendix A for list of codes. Optional. Repeatable.

\$2 System code for musical notation

A code that specifies the system used to code the musical notation.

A two-character code indicates the code used to transcribe in 036 \$p. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present. Not repeatable.

pe = plaine & easie code

Available online at http://www.iaml.info/files/plain_and_easy_code.pdf

da = DARMS code

Beyond MIDI : The Handbook of Musical Codes / edited by Eleanor Selfridge-Field.
– Cambridge, Mass. [etc.], MIT Press, 1997. –xviii, 630 p. : mus. ; 24 cm. ISBN 0-262-19394-9.

Also available on line at

<http://www.ccarh.org/publications/books/beyondmidi/online/darms/>

Note: graphic images are not available.

Examples

EX 1: 036 ##\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dSS\$fAria\$ge\$mC-1\$oc

\$p'2B4B8BB/4G8GxF4FF/4xA8AA4.At8B/4B\$tRei d'impuniti eccessi\$2pe

Coding of the following incipit:

1.1: Aria, S



Rei d'impuniti eccessi

EX 2: 036 ##\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dvl1\$fScena. Largo\$mG-2\$nbBEA\$oc
 \$p8{'C'+8(3{CDEFG};5)}8{GC}{,nB'G}4(-)"/2G+6{GnB""C"E}6{DCAG}\$2pe
 036 ##\$a01\$b01\$c02\$dS\$eSara\$fScena. Largo\$mC-1\$nbBEA\$oc
 \$p=5/4-"6C3CC6DEgF6CC8-6ED/q8D4C8C'nB"4D-/2-/tChi per pietà mi dice il
 figlio mio che fa\$2pe
 036 ##\$a01\$b02\$c01\$dvl1\$fAria. Allegro\$mG-2\$nbBEA\$oc
 \$p6{'EDEF}{GABG}{EDEF}{GABG}/{"C'BAG}{FEDC},4B-/2pe
 036 ##\$a01\$b02\$c02\$dS\$eSara\$fAria. Allegro\$mC-1\$nbBEA\$oc
 \$p2-/2-"4.F8D/gC'8BB4-2(-)/=2/"2E'G/"4.C'8A4F-/Fq8B4A8GF/
 \$tDeh parlate che forse tacendo\$2pe

Coding of the scena ed aria Deh parlate che forse tacendo by D.Cimarosa

EX 3: 036 ##\$a01\$b01\$c01\$d1st violin\$fAndante\$mG-2\$nxFC\$o4/4
 \$p4-8'A/{6'DA}gG{6F3ED}{6EB}gA{6G3FE}8F4D8C/{6DA}\$2pe
 036 ##\$a01\$b02\$c01\$fAllegro\$gD\$o4/4
 036 ##\$a01\$b03\$c01\$fAllegretto\$gD\$o3/4
 Coding of C.A.Campion's trio for 2 violins and bass in D major in three movements

EX 4: 036 ##\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dOb. 1\$mG-2\$nbB\$oc
 \$p RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) / 4S((3 2 3)) /
 \$u<http://www.classicalarchives.com/cgi-bin/n.cgi/prep/6/jsbbrcl1.mid>\$2da
 DARMS coding and URL of MIDI source of J.S.Bach's Brandenburg Concerto nr.1
 BWV 1046, 1st oboe part:



K Oboe 1 \$

!!I !G !K1- !MC,12@Ob. 1\$ RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) / 4S((3 2 3)) /

040 CODEN

Field Definition

This field contains a unique, unambiguous code formerly assigned to titles of continuing resources by the International CODEN Service.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a CODEN

The six character code of which the last character is an alphanumeric digit. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous CODEN

A CODEN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

CODEN is a unique six-character code for a title which was formerly assigned by the International CODEN Service to scientific and technical continuing resources.

The first five characters of the CODEN are alphabetic and based on the title of the item, the last is an alphanumeric check digit, e.g. JACSAT for Journal of the American Chemical Society, where T is the check digit.

The CODEN is no longer assigned to new continuing resources.

Related Fields

011 ISSN

A numeric code applied to continuing resources to identify them uniquely. This field should be used in preference to CODEN.

Examples

EX 1 040 ##\$aANPYA2

The CODEN for *Annalen der Physik*.

EX 2: 040 ##\$aJPHYA7

The CODEN for *Journal of Physiology* (London).

EX 3 040 ##\$aKREBAG

The CODEN for *Krebsarzt*.

071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER

Field Definition

This field contains a publisher's number not governed by an international standard. These are generally used for sound recordings, publications of music, video recordings and electronic resources. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a publisher's number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of Publisher's Number

This indicator specifies the type of publisher's number contained in the field. It may be used to generate introductory text if a note is to be displayed from this field (EX 2, 4, 5).

- 0 Sound recording: Issue number
- 1 Sound recording: Matrix number
- 2 Printed music: Plate number
- 3 Printed music: Other publisher's number
- 4 Video recording number
- 5 Other type of publisher's number
- 6 Electronic resource number (e.g. CD-ROM)

Indicator 2: Note Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the agency supplying the record would use the data to display a note. If a generated note is not required (perhaps because the agency has also entered details in a 300 or 301 field (EX 3)) then this number should be set to 0.

- 0 Do not make a note
- 1 Make a note

Subfields

\$a Publisher's Number

The number as assigned by the publisher. Not repeatable.

\$b Source

The publisher which assigned the number. Not repeatable.

- \$c** Qualification
Used to distinguish between numbers if a record contains more than one publisher number. Not repeatable.
- \$d** Terms of availability and/or price
The price of the item and any comment on its availability Not repeatable.
- \$z** Erroneous publisher's number
A publisher's number that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or otherwise invalid. For example, it may have been applied to two publications and in this instance cancelled or it may have been incorrectly printed. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The issue or label number is the number used to identify the issue designation or serial identification assigned by a publisher to a specific sound recording, to a side of a sound recording, to a performance on a sound recording, or to a group of sound recordings issued as a set. The issue number normally appears on the label and often on the packaging for these recordings. For a set of recordings there may be issue numbers on each disc and an additional set number on the packaging.

The matrix number is used to identify the master from which the specific recording was pressed, usually appearing inscribed in the wax disc. It may be used for identification of a sound recording in the absence of an issue or label number.

The plate number is a serial number assigned by a publisher to a specific music publication. It is usually printed at the bottom of each page of music and sometimes appears also on the title page.

Other publishers' numbers are numbers similar to plate numbers but not appearing on each page of the publication. They may appear on the title page, the cover, and/or the first page of music.

Related Fields

- 010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
- 011 ISSN
- 013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)
- 015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TECHNICAL REPORT NUMBER (ISRN)
- 016 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)
- 017 OTHER STANDARD IDENTIFIER
- 301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS
Unformatted publisher's numbers are recorded solely in this field.

If the number as recorded in field 071 can be used in the same form, indicator 2 is set to 1 and a note will be generated. Otherwise indicator 2 is set to 0 and a note is added in field 301.

Examples

EX 1: 071 01\$aSTMA 8007\$bTamla Motown

An issue designation for a sound recording published by Tamla Motown. A note will be generated, e.g.: Tamla Motown: STMA 8007

EX 2: 071 21\$aA 880 V\$bArs Viva Verlag

A plate number for printed music. A note will be generated, e.g.: Pl. no.: A 880 V

EX 3: 071 20\$aB. & H. 8797\$bBreitkopf & Härtel

071 20\$aB. & H. 8798\$bBreitkopf & Härtel

071 20\$aB. & H. 8799\$bBreitkopf & Härtel

071 20\$aB. & H. 8800\$bBreitkopf & Härtel

071 20\$aB. & H. 8801\$bBreitkopf & Härtel

301 ##\$aPlate no.: B. & H. 8797-8801

A sequence of plate numbers for printed music. Notes are not to be generated from the 071 fields; because a summary note is made in field 301. This example and example 2 illustrate differing practices in abbreviating "Plate number" by different agencies.

EX 4: 071 31\$aN.M. 170\$bNova Music

A publisher's number for printed music. A note will be generated, e.g.: Publisher's no.: N.M. 170

EX 5: 071 41\$a990103\$bTAG films production\$scoûte

200 1#\$aSculptez vos cuisses et vos fessiers\$bImages animées\$fCatherine Jeannin,
Alain Derenne, réal.\$gNancy Marmorat, concept., présent.\$gSandra Macedo, voix

A publisher's number for a video recording.

EX 6: 071 61\$aSLES 51203\$bPlayStation 2

200 1#\$aEnter the Matrix\$bRessource électronique\$f written and directed by the
Wachowski brothers \$g developed by Shiny entertainment

A publisher's number for an electronic resource.

072 UNIVERSAL PRODUCT CODE (UPC)

Field Definition

This field contains the Universal Product Code. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Difference indicator

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether there is a difference between a scanned number or code and the same number or code in eye readable form.

0 No information provided

1 No difference

2 Difference

Subfields

\$a Standard Number

A correctly formatted standard number or code. Number or code is formatted according to type. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the number or code in subfield \$a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the item, or an indication of the relationship of a number or code to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

\$c Additional codes following standard number or codes.

Contains any coded suffix to the identifier. Not repeatable.

\$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the item and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Number or Code

A number or code that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications or products and in this instance cancelled or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents**UPC structure: (UCC-12)**

The UPC appears as a bar-code symbol with 12 digits printed below it. Hyphens or spaces usually separate the elements of the number on the item, but these are not input in the UNIMARC record. For further information visit the Uniform Code Council Website, at <http://www.uc-council.org/>. The code has three basic parts:

Number System Character (NSC) is the first digit (Subfield \$a: Character position 0), which appears on the left side of the symbol outside of the bars

Identifier is the next ten digits (Subfield \$a: Character positions 1-10). These are shown below the bars.

Check digit is the twelfth digit (Subfield \$a: Character position 11) ,and usually appears at the bottom right of the symbol.

The composition of the "Identifier" varies for different categories of material:

Audio/Video. The 10 digit "identifier" consists of three elements:

Manufacturer's Designation (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 1-5). The Uniform Code Council (<http://www.uc-council.org>) assigns this designation.

Selection Number (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 5-9). Note that the first digit of the selection number is also the last digit of the manufacturer's designation.

Configuration Number (Subfield \$a: Character Position 10). The format of the product is indicated by the configuration number.

Continuing Resources

Publisher/Distributor Identifier (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 1-5)

BIPAD title identification number (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 6-10)

Issue identifier (Subfield \$c: Character positions 0-1) optional suffix

Paperback Books

For paperback books there are two models:

Model A

Publisher Identifier (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 1-5)

Title Portion of ISBN (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 6-10)

Model B

Publisher or Bookline Identifier (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 1-5)

Cover price/price category (Subfield \$a: Character Positions 6-10)

Title Portion of ISBN (Subfield \$c: optional suffix)

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)

The ISBN is a component in other standard numbers

011 ISSN

The ISSN is a component in other standard numbers.

Examples

EX 1: 072 #1\$a070993005955\$c35740

A UPC for a paperback book using Model B. The cover price/price category is represented by 00595. The title element of the ISBN is stored in subfield \$c.

EX 2: 072 #1\$a070993357405

A UPC for the same item as EX 1, using Model A.

073 INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)

Field Definition

This field contains the International Article Number. The field corresponds to the ISBD Standard Number (or Alternative) and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Difference indicator

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether there is a difference between a scanned number or code and the same number or code in eye readable form.

0 No information provided

1 No difference

2 Difference

Subfields

\$a Standard Number

A correctly formatted standard number or code. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the number or code in subfield \$a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the item, or an indication of the relationship of a number or code to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

\$c Additional codes following standard number or codes.

Contains any coded suffix to the identifier. Not repeatable.

\$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the item and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Number or Code

A number or code that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an item or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications or products and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The EAN-13 is a 13 digit number (EAN-14 is being developed). The format of the number varies according to the type of material being identified.

Continuing Resources

Prefix (Subfield \$a: Character positions 0-2). The prefix is 977 and identifies the item as a continuing resource.

Continuing Resource Identifier (Subfield \$a: Character positions 3-9). The identifier is either the ISSN or a nationally administered standard number, such as BIPAD in North America. The final digit and the hyphen are omitted from the ISSN, if used..

Sequence Variant (Subfield \$a: Character positions 10-11). This is a two digit number. It is used to indicate price changes. It does not include the actual price.

Check Digit (Subfield \$a Character position 12). This is a single digit, calculated from the preceding 12 digit number.

Issue identifier (Subfield \$c: Character position 0-1)

Paperback Books

Prefix (Subfield \$a: Character positions 0-2). The prefix is 978 and identifies the item as a paperback book.

Book Identifier (Subfield \$a: Character positions 3-11). The identifier is the first 9 characters of the ISBN, omitting the final ISBN check digit. All punctuation is omitted from the ISBN.

Check Digit (Subfield \$a: Character position 12). An all numeric Modulus -10 check digit is the 13th character of the EAN.

Supplement (Subfield \$c, Character positions 0-4). The supplement may contain a five digit code, representing additional data, e.g. price.

Related Fields**010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)**

The ISBN is a component in other standard numbers

011 ISSN

The ISSN is a component in other standard numbers.

Examples

EX 1: 073 #0\$a9780838934326\$c90000

An EAN-13 for a paperback book, including a price code in subfield \$c.

EX 2: 073 #0\$a9771466258007\$c08

The prefix 977 indicates that it is a continuing resource. The suffix in \$c is the code for the issue number.

EX 3: 073 #0\$a9780306350542\$bvol. 4\$c2205
073 #0\$a9780306350504\$bSet\$c9729

Examples of EAN-13. The record is for volume 4 of a monograph *Treatise on solid state chemistry* published in 6 volumes, each with its own ISBN. The set also has an ISBN and a price is available for the set. The EAN-13 does not contain any indication that it relates to a set, but this information may be conveyed in Product Metadata, e.g. ONIX International.

EX 4: 073 #1\$a97895045722\$z9780950457116

Example of an incorrect EAN-13, superseded by the correct EAN.

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains coded fixed-length data elements.

Notes on Field Contents

Data in these fields is defined in terms of the position of the character, counting the first character following the subfield identifier as zero. If a bibliographic agency does not supply any coded information in a given field, the field will be omitted unless mandatory. If some data in a field is supplied but not all, the omitted data element positions will contain fill characters.

The following fields are defined:

| | |
|-----|--|
| 100 | General Processing Data |
| 101 | Language of the Item |
| 102 | Country of Publication or Production |
| 105 | Coded Data Field: Textual materials, Monographic |
| 106 | Coded Data Field: Textual materials – Physical Attributes |
| 110 | Coded Data Field: Continuing Resources |
| 115 | Coded Data Field: Visual Projections, Videorecordings and Motion Pictures |
| 116 | Coded Data Field: Graphics |
| 117 | Coded Data Field: Three-dimensional artifacts and realia |
| 120 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – General |
| 121 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Physical Attributes |
| 122 | Coded Data Field: Time Period of Item Content |
| 123 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Scale and Co-ordinates |
| 124 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Specific Material Designation |
| 125 | Coded Data Field: Sound Recordings and Printed Music |
| 126 | Coded Data Field: Sound Recordings – Physical Attributes |
| 127 | Coded Data Field: Duration of Sound Recordings and Printed Music |
| 128 | Coded Data Field: Musical Performances and Scores |
| 130 | Coded Data Field: Microforms |
| 131 | Coded Data Field: Cartographic Materials – Geodetic, Grid and Vertical Measurement |
| 135 | Coded Data Field: Electronic resources (Provisional) |
| 140 | Coded Data Field: Antiquarian – General |
| 141 | Coded Data Field: Antiquarian – Copy Specific Attributes |
| 145 | Coded Data Field: Medium of Performance |

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA

Field Definition

This field contains fixed-length coded data applicable to records of materials in any media.

Occurrence

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a General Processing Data

All data entered in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 35. The character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Date Entered on File (Mandatory) | 8 | 0-7 |
| Type of Publication Date | 1 | 8 |
| Publication Date 1 | 4 | 9-12 |
| Publication Date 2 | 4 | 13-16 |
| Target Audience Code | 3 | 17-19 |
| Government Publication Code | 1 | 20 |
| Modified Record Code | 1 | 21 |
| Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory) | 3 | 22-24 |
| Transliteration Code | 1 | 25 |
| Character Set (Mandatory) | 4 | 26-29 |
| Additional Character Set | 4 | 30-33 |
| Script of Title | 2 | 34-35 |

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0-7 Date entered on file

Eight numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601-1988) for dates: YYYY MMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

The date will usually be the date when the record was originally created and entered into machine-readable form, to give some idea of the age of the record. A record corrected because of errors in keying or editing will not have a change of date. On exchange, the record should also retain its original date.

EX 1: Character positions 0-7: 19671005

The record was originally entered into a machine-readable data file on 5th October 1967.

\$a/8-16 Type of Publication Date; Publication Dates 1 and 2

A one-character code indicates the type of date according to eleven categories which take into account the issuing status of the item being recorded. This code defines the types of dates which appear in Publication Date 1 (character positions 9-12) and Publication Date 2 (character position 13-16). These dates are always entered as a four character representation of the year.

Note: It may not be possible always to provide blanks as required for dates from source formats where any digit has been supplied as an approximation in a corresponding field.

Related field: the date of publication is also entered in field 210, Publication, Distribution, etc.; the date of coverage if different from the date of publication may be entered in field 122 Time Period of Item Content (see EX 4 in field 122)

a = currently published continuing resource

Publication date 1 contains the beginning year of publication or coverage if coverage differs from publication (EX 1). If the beginning date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank (EX 2).

Publication date 2 contains 9999.

b = continuing resource no longer being published

Publication date 1 contains the beginning year of publication or coverage if coverage differs from publication. If the beginning date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank.

Publication date 2 contains the year publication ceased (EX 3). For works known to have ceased but whose final date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank. (EX 4)

c = continuing resource of unknown status

A continuing resource about which it is not known whether publication is continuing or whether publication has ceased (EX 5).

Publication date 1 contains the beginning year of publication or coverage if coverage differs from publication. If the beginning date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank.

Publication date 2 contains four blanks.

d = monograph complete when issued, or issued within one calendar year

A monograph published in one volume/part or in a number of volumes/parts all published at one time or with the same date of publication, i.e. published within the same calendar year (EX 6-9). If the date is uncertain use code 'f'. If the monograph was published over a span use code 'g'.

Publication date 1 contains the date of publication.

Publication date 2 contains blanks.

e = reproduction of a document

The item being catalogued is a reproduction, i.e. a reprint, facsimile, reissue, etc. but not a new edition (EX 10). If the reproduction is of a continuing resource, or if either the original or the reproduction was published over a span of years, the beginning year of reproduction and publication are used (EX 11).

Publication date 1 contains the date of publication of the reproduction.

Publication date 2 contains the date of publication of the original.

If either date is uncertain and cannot be expressed as a single year, any digit may be replaced by a blank (EX 12).

f = monograph, date of publication uncertain.

Publication date 1 contains the earliest possible date of publication.

Publication date 2 contains the latest possible date of publication (EX 13-16).

g = monograph whose publication continues for more than a year

Publication date 1 contains the beginning year of publication (EX 17-19). If the beginning year of publication is uncertain, any unknown digit may be replaced by a blank.

Publication date 2 contains the date of final publication (EX 17) or 9999 if publication is still in progress (EX 18). If the final date of publication is uncertain, the unknown digits contain blanks (EX 19).

h = monograph with both actual and copyright/privilege date

The item's date of publication differs from the copyright/privilege date quoted in the item (EX 20). If the date of publication is unknown, use 'd' (EX 8). Privilege is defined as a monopoly granted by a government body to an author or a bookseller for an edition over a fixed period of time.

Publication date 1 contains the date of publication.

Publication date 2 contains the copyright/privilege date.

i = monograph with both release/issue date and production date

Used for films, music, etc. when there is a gap between the production/recording of an item and its distribution/release (EX 21).

Publication date 1 contains the release/issue date.

Publication date 2 contains the production date.

j = document with detailed date of publication

Use when it is considered important to record the month (and possibly day) of publication (EX 22).

Publication date 1 contains the year of publication.

Publication date 2 contains the detailed date in the form "MMDD", with month and day right-justified with zero fill. If the day positions are not used, they hold blanks (EX 23).

k = monograph published in a certain year and printed in a different year

Most commonly found in antiquarian materials (EX 24, 25).

Publication date 1 contains the year of publication.

Publication date 2 contains the year of printing

u = date(s) of publication unknown

Use when no date at all can be assigned to the item (EX 26, 27).

Publication date 1 contains blanks.

Publication date 2 contains blanks.

EX 1: a19599999

A continuing resource was first published in 1959 and is still being published.

EX 2: a192#9999

A continuing resource was first published at a date somewhere between 1922 and 1925 and is still being published.

EX 3: b18101860

A continuing resource began in 1810 and finished in 1860.

EX 4: b1890191#

A continuing resource began in 1890 and finished somewhere between 1910 and 1915.

EX 5: c1980####

A continuing resource began in 1980; but issues are no longer arriving and the publisher cannot be traced.

EX 6: d1750####

An item actually or probably published in 1750. The date may be recorded in subfield 210\$d variously as 1750, [1750] or [1750?].

EX 7: d1972####

A monograph was published in three volumes in 1972.

EX 8: d1972####

An item where only the copyright date is known. Code 'h' is therefore not used.

- EX 9: d1995####
An item with a publication date of 1416 according to the Muslim calendar, known to have been published in 1995 C.E.
- EX 10: e19681952
A document originally published in 1952 was reprinted in 1968.
- EX 11: e19561835
A continuing resource published from 1835 to 1914 was reprinted in 1956-1958.
- EX 12: e1983183#
A book originally published in the 1830s (date uncertain) was reprinted in 1983.
- EX 13: f19621966
A monograph has no date of publication but its contents reveal it was published no earlier than 1962 and it was acquired in 1966. It is assumed it was published between 1962 and 1966.
- EX 14: f17801789
A monograph believed to have been published in the 1780s; the date is given in subfield 210\$a as [178-?].
- EX 15: f19941995
An item with an imprint date of 5755 according to the Jewish calendar; the precise year C.E. has not been determined; but it must be either 1994 or 1995.
- EX 16: f####1510
The item was published in or before 1510.
- EX 17: g19751976
A monograph was published in 3 volumes in 1975 and 1976.
- EX 18: g19839999
A monograph is to be published in 5 volumes, the first in 1983 and the rest at future dates. The record is an open-ended record since the bibliographic details of the as yet unpublished volumes are not known.
- EX 19: g1962196#
A monograph began publication in 1962. The date of the final volume is uncertain, but is believed to be 1968 or 1969.
- EX 20: h19851983
A document published in 1985 has 1983 as copyright date.
- EX 21: i19501943
A film made in 1943 but not released until 1950.
- EX 22: j19850412
A technical report published 12 April 1985.

EX 23: j198511##

A report published in November 1985. The day of publication is not known or is considered unimportant.

EX 24: k15861587

210 ##\$aRomae\$cex officina Bartholomaei Grassi\$d1586\$eRomae\$gapud
Iacobum Ruffinellum\$h1587

A document published in 1586 and printed in 1587.

EX 25: k15221521

210 ##\$a[Milano]\$capud fratres de Lignano ad signum Angeli\$d1522
\$eMediolani\$gapud Iohannem Angelum Scinzenzeler\$h1521 die XXX mensis
Iulii.

A document published in 1522 and printed in 1521

EX 26: u#####

200 1#\$aViola Springs Limestone\$bObject

300 ##\$aMid-Ordovician

The item is a rock. Character positions 9-16 cannot be coded for a date range of 478 to 458 million years; so code 'u' is assigned.

EX 27: u#####

210 ##\$aParisii\$cGourm\$d[s.d.]

The record is the result of unedited retrospective conversion; it is not possible to derive even approximate dates from the data in the source file.

\$a/17-19 Target Audience Code

There are three positions for target audience codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks.

a = juvenile, general

Use instead of b, c, d or e when these codes have not been used or cannot be used.

b = pre-primary, ages 0-5

c = primary, ages 5-10

d = children, ages 9-14

e = young adult, ages 14-20

k = adult, serious

m = adult, general

u = unknown

\$a/20 Government Publication

A one-character code indicates whether the record is for a government publication or not and the level of government issuing the publication. A government publication is defined as one issued or financed by a government agency. Academic institutions are not to be regarded as government agencies.

a = federal/national

Sovereign states and territories with some measure of self-government, for example having their own legislature.

b = state/province

An administrative subdivision at one level below the federal or national level, having some measure of internal self-government and legislative control, though with no responsibility for external affairs, e.g. provinces of Canada, Länder in the Federal Republic of Germany.

c = county/department

A middle-level administrative subdivision, generally without any legislature, e.g. départements in France, counties in the United Kingdom.

d = local (municipal, etc.)

An administrative unit at the lowest level of jurisdiction, e.g. a city, town, or village.

e = multi-local (interstate departments, etc. below the national level)

Any administrative unit below the national level combining or crossing more than one jurisdiction, e.g. a joint computer unit which is shared by a number of municipal authorities or a transport authority that crosses several municipalities.

f = intergovernmental

International organisations and their agencies, e.g. those entities which are capable of making treaties with sovereign states such as the International Monetary Fund or the United Nations.

g = government in exile or clandestine

A non-official government such as the government of France in exile from 1941-1944.

h = level not determined

Used when the record is for a government publication but the level of government cannot be determined from the information at hand.

u = unknown

Used when it is impossible to determine whether the work is a government publication.

y = not a government publication

This code is entered in all cases when the document is not a government publication.

z = other government level

Used when the record is for a government publication at a particular level of government but this level does not fit into any of categories a-g.

\$a/21 Modified Record Code

This one-character code indicates whether the character set available is sufficient to transcribe the data as found on the item. Due to limitations of the machine character set, the transcription may have to be modified to accommodate, for example, special scripts (i.e. by transliteration) or special mathematical formulae, e.g. a Greek letter or other notation written out in full. A record would not be considered modified, however,

if the title page cannot be transcribed because it contains symbols or pictures which obviously would be found in no other character set.

0 = unmodified record

1 = modified record

\$a/22-24 Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory)

A three-character code indicating the language used in cataloguing. For the list of codes see Appendix A. If a source record is completely multi-lingual, i.e. all information not from the title page is repeated in more than one language, it is recommended that a separate UNIMARC record should be produced, as required, for each language.

UNIMARC has no mechanism to denote the language of individual fields throughout the format.

\$a/25 Transliteration Code

UNIMARC assumes the utilisation of international standards. However, in the area of conversion of scripts, international standards are not yet completely adequate, and other schemes may be used. This code indicates whether or not an ISO transliteration scheme is used in the record.

a = ISO transliteration scheme

b = other

c = multiple transliterations: ISO or other schemes

y = no transliteration scheme used

\$a/26-29 Character Sets (Mandatory)

Two two-character codes designating the principal graphic character sets used in communication of the record. Positions 26-27 designate the G0 set and positions 28-29 designate the G1 set. If a G1 set is not needed, positions 28-29 contain blanks. For further explanation of character coding see Appendix J. The following two-character codes are to be used. They will be augmented as required.

01 = ISO 646, IRV version (basic Latin set)

02 = ISO Registration # 37 (basic Cyrillic set)

03 = ISO 5426 (extended Latin set)

04 = ISO 5427 (extended Cyrillic set)

05 = ISO 5428 (Greek set)

06 = ISO 6438 (African coded character set)

07 = ISO 10586 (Georgian set)

08 = ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 1

09 = ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 2

10 = [Reserved]

11 = ISO 5426-2 (Latin characters used in minor European languages and obsolete typography)

50 = ISO 10646 Level 3 (Unicode, UTF-8)

Note that ISO 10646 contains all necessary characters. When positions 26-27 contain '50' this will be used for the C0, C1 and all G sets. Positions 28-33 will contain blanks.

\$a/30-33 Additional Character Sets

Two two-character codes indicate up to two additional graphic character sets used in communication of the record. The two-character codes specified for character positions 26-29 are used. Positions 30-31 designate the G2 set and positions 32-33 designate the G3 set. If no additional character sets are needed the bytes contain blanks.

\$a/34-35 Script of Title

A code indicating the script of the title used as the title proper. This refers to the script in the source item, not the character set of the record.

The following codes are recommended for use in UNIMARC. ISO codes have been developed in ISO 15924, but are not yet implemented in UNIMARC.

ba = Latin

ca = Cyrillic

da = Japanese – script unspecified

db = Japanese – kanji

dc = Japanese – kana

ea = Chinese

fa = Arabic

ga = Greek

ha = Hebrew

ia = Thai

ja = Devanagari

ka = Korean

la = Tamil

ma = Georgian

mb = Armenian

zz = Other

The script code is optional if the script is the usual one relating to the language found in field 101 \$g or in the absence of subfield \$g, \$a.

Related Fields

Related fields are noted in connection with the individual codes above.

Examples

EX 1: 100 ##\$a19601104a19599999m##c0engy0103####ba

The record was originally entered into a machine-readable data file on 4th November 1960. The continuing resource was first published in 1959 and is still being published. The target audience is "general adult". The continuing resource is an annual report published by Hampshire County Council; it is an unmodified record, catalogued in English, using no transliteration scheme.

| Character position | Value | Notes |
|--------------------|----------|--|
| 0-7 | 19601104 | Date entered on file. |
| 8 | A | Currently published continuing resource. |
| 9-12 | 1959 | Commencement of publication. |
| 13-16 | 9999 | Continuing resource still being published. |
| 17-19 | m## | Target audience general adult. |
| 20 | c | A subdivision of a sovereign state, without any legislature. |
| 21 | 0 | Unmodified record. |
| 22-24 | eng | English language of cataloguing. |
| 25 | y | No transliteration scheme used. |
| 26-29 | 0103 | ISO 646 (IRV) and ISO 5426 8-bit codes used |
| 30-33 | #### | No additional character set. |
| 34-35 | ba | Latin alphabet of title. |
| | | |

EX 2: 100 ##\$a19830202b1810186011y0frey0103####ba

The record was originally entered into a machine-readable data file on 2nd February, 1983. The continuing resource was first published in 1810 and ceased publication in 1860. The target audience code is not used, and therefore contains fill characters. The record has not been modified, no transliteration scheme is used, and French is the language of cataloguing.

| Character Positions | Value | Notes |
|---------------------|----------|--|
| 0-7 | 19830202 | Date entered on file. |
| 8 | b | Continuing resource no longer being published. |
| 9-12 | 1810 | Beginning of publication. |
| 13-16 | 1860 | End of publication. |
| 17-19 | 111 | Target audience not designated. |

| Character Positions | Value | Notes |
|---------------------|-------|--|
| 20 | y | Not a government publication. |
| 21 | 0 | Unmodified record. |
| 22-24 | fre | French language of cataloguing. |
| 25 | y | No transliteration scheme used. |
| 26-29 | 0103 | ISO 646 (IRV) and ISO 5426 8-bit codes used. |
| 30-33 | #### | No additional character sets. |
| 34-35 | ba | Latin alphabet of title. |

101 LANGUAGE OF THE ITEM

Field Definition

This field contains coded information relating to the language of an item, its parts, and its title, as well as an indication of the language of the original if the item is a translation.

Occurrence

Mandatory if work has language. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Translation indicator

This indicator specifies whether or not the item is a translation or contains translations.

0 Item is in the original language(s) of the work (EX 3, 5, 7, 12)

1 Item is a translation of the original work or an intermediate work (EX 1, 2, 4, 6)

2 Item contains translations other than translated summaries (EX 8-11)

If it is not possible to allocate this indicator in records converted from a source format, the fill character should be used in place of the values outlined above. Value '2' should not be used if the only translations in the document are summaries of articles, etc., in the document.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Language of Text, Soundtrack etc.

The language of the text, soundtrack etc. Repeatable when the text is in more than one language (EX 5).

\$b Language of Intermediate Text when Item is Not Translated from Original

The language of any intermediate translation (EX 2, 4, 6). Repeatable when the text is translated from more than one intermediate language (EX 6), or when the translation has occurred via more than one intermediate language (e.g. Greek – Latin – French – English).

\$c Language of Original Work

The language of the original work when the item being recorded is a translation (EX 1, 2, 4, 6, 8). Repeatable when the original is in more than one language.

- \$d** Language of Summary
- The language of any summaries or abstracts of the item or of works, articles, etc. contained within it. Repeatable when the item contains summaries in more than one language (EX 7).
- \$e** Language of Contents Page
- This subfield is reserved for the language of the table of contents when this differs from the language of the text (EX 3). Repeatable for each language of the contents page(s).
- \$f** Language of Title Page if Different from Text
- The language of the title page when it differs from the language or languages of the text (EX 8). Repeatable for each language of the title page.
- \$g** Language of Title Proper if Not First Language of Text, Soundtrack, etc.
- This subfield contains the language of the title proper when it differs from that in the first or only occurrence of subfield \$a (EX 1). This is not repeatable since the title proper is by definition in one language. Any repeats of the title proper in other languages are parallel titles and their language is indicated in a subfield \$z in field 200.
- \$h** Language of Libretto, etc.
- The language or languages of the text when the item being catalogued includes the vocal/textual content of the work(s) printed as text, whether as accompanying material or printed with the item. Note that this subfield is not limited to librettos as such. Repeatable. (EX 9)
- \$i** Language of Accompanying Material (Other than Summaries, Abstracts or Librettos)
- The language or languages of accompanying material, such as programme notes, prefaces, commentaries, instructions etc. Repeatable. (EX 10)
- \$j** Language of Subtitles
- The language(s) of subtitles (overprinted titles) of moving pictures when different from the language of the soundtrack. Repeatable (EX 11, 12)

Notes on Field Contents

Each subfield contains a three-character language code. See Appendix A for list of codes. When a subfield is repeated, the order of language codes should reflect the extent and significance of the languages within the work. If this is not possible, enter the language codes in alphabetical order. Code 'mul' may be entered when a large number of languages applies in any subfield (EX 8).

Related Fields

- 100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Language of Cataloguing (character positions 22-24)

In these character positions is entered a code indicating the language used by the cataloguer for those parts of the record such as the notes which do not depend on the language of the item.

- 200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

The language(s) of the parallel title(s) proper appearing in this field may be indicated in the \$z subfield(s) in field 200.

- 510-541 RELATED TITLES

Various title fields have a subfield indicating the language of the title contained in the title subfields. These are used when a title is in a language other than the main language of the work.

Examples

- EX 1: 101 1#\$fre\$eng\$eng

A book entitled *Guidebook to Henry VIII's Palace of Hampton Court* is a French translation of an English original. The title proper is in English, and is followed by a parallel title in French; the rest of the text is in French.

- EX 2: 101 1#\$fre\$beng\$rus

A scientific research paper published in Russian is translated by an international agency into English. This intermediate text is then used by a national research institute in France to produce a French translation.

- EX 3: 101 0#\$jpn\$eng\$eng

A Japanese government publication contains a table of contents and an added title page in English; the rest of the text is in Japanese.

- EX 4: 101 1#\$aeng\$bger\$rus

A traveller's diary is published as *Journey to Khiva through the Turkoman country* by Nikolay Murav'yov, translated from the German by W S A Lockhart, and originally published in Russian.

- EX5: 101 0#\$aeng\$aWel

A local government publication from Gwent County Council consists of a parallel Welsh-English text.

- EX6: 101 1#\$aeng\$bger\$bfre\$cakk

A text in Akkadian, an ancient language, has been translated parts into German and parts into French. An English translation is made based on the German and French translation.

EX 7: 101 0#\$aeng\$afre\$aager\$deng\$dfre\$dger

IFLA Journal contains abstracts of all its contributions in English, French and German. The majority of the contributions are in English followed equally by French and German which are entered in alphabetical order.

EX 8: 101 2#\$aenl\$sceng\$ffre

A book intended for a French readership and having a French title page consists mostly of one act of a play of Shakespeare translated from the English into 25 languages.

EX 9 101 2#\$afre\$hfre\$hger

A sound recording sung in French with accompanying text in French and German.

EX 10 101 2#\$ieng

A non-language sound recording with programme notes in English.

EX 11 101 2#\$aswe\$jfre

A copy of Bergman's "Tystnaden" with French subtitles.

EX 12 101 0#\$jeng

A copy of Chaplin's "Modern times" with English subtitles.

102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION

Field Definition

This field contains codes for one or more countries of publication or production of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Country of publication

Contains a code representing the country in which the item was published or produced. The codes are to be taken from the two-character codes of ISO 3166-1 (see Appendix B). Repeatable if an item is published in more than one country or in more than one locality in the same country (EX 3).

\$b Locality (non-ISO)

A code representing the locality, where a more specific code is required. Repeatable if there is more than one country code. The codes are taken from code lists other than ISO 3166-2. Details of the code list are given in subfield \$2.

\$c Locality (ISO)

A code representing the locality, where a more specific code is required. Repeatable if there is more than one country code. The codes are to be taken from ISO 3166-2.

\$2 Source of non-ISO code

The source of the code used in subfield \$b. For a list of code sources see Appendix G. Repeatable if there is more than one country code.

Notes on Field Contents

Any locality code should follow immediately after the country code to which it refers. When it is necessary to record more than one locality within the same country, it is recommended for ease of processing that the country code be repeated in each case, i.e. that each subfield \$b or \$c be preceded by a subfield \$a. It is recommended that a code be recorded for each place of publication or production present in the 210 field.

Due to the fact that in older monographic publications the name and location of the printer are given equal status to those of the publisher or distributor, the country and

locality of a printer, publisher or distributor is given here in a coded form. For older monographic publications the country or locality of publication or production is coded according to the present state of country borders.

Additional codes

- XX Country unknown (UNIMARC user-assigned code element)
ZZ International or multiple countries (i.e. more than three)

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

This field carries the place of publication or production in textual form.

620 PLACE AND DATE ACCESS

This field carries the place of publication or production in structured textual form.

Examples

EX 1 102 ##\$aHU

The item is published in Hungary

EX 2: 102 ##\$aGB\$cSCT

The item is published in Scotland

EX 3: 102 ##\$aUS\$cca\$aUS\$cn

The item is published in California and New York.

EX 4: 102 ##\$aIT

The item was published in Venice in 1485.

EX 5: 102 ##\$aAL\$bkx\$2local

The code used for the subdivision of Albania is a local one.

EX 6: 102 ##\$aXX

It is not possible to determine the country of publication of the item described in the record

105 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to monographic language material.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. It is recommended that it is always present in records of monographic Printed language materials

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Monograph Coded Data

All data entered in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 12. All character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

Table of Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | No. of Characters | Character Positions |
|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Illustration codes | 4 | 0-3 |
| Form of contents codes | 4 | 4-7 |
| Conference or meeting code | 1 | 8 |
| Festschrift indicator | 1 | 9 |
| Index indicator | 1 | 10 |
| Literature code | 1 | 11 |
| Biography code | 1 | 12 |

Notes on Field Contents

If no attempt is made to assign a data element value, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for that data element.

\$a/0-3 Illustration codes

There are four character positions available for illustration codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than

four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order they appear on the list below. Note that blanks are used in preference to 'y' in unused character positions.

These codes usually relate to terms in the physical description of the item (in field 215). If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 0-3; if they are used but fewer than four types of illustration are present, then remaining positions contain blanks.

a = illustrations

Use for types of illustrations which are not covered below, e.g., diagrams, graphs, or when types of illustrations are not being specifically coded.

b = maps

c = portraits

Individual or group portraits.

d = charts

Special purpose maps designed for the use of navigators.

e = plans

E.g. ground plans of buildings.

f = plates

A leaf containing illustrative matter with or without explanatory text, which does not form part of any sequence of pages or leaves.

g = music

In monographic textual-language material. For sound recordings accompanying materials use code 'm'.

h = facsimiles

Reproductions of a part of or the whole of a document not only reproducing the text but also simulating the original appearance of the work.

i = coats of arms

j = genealogical tables

k = forms

l = samples

m = sound recordings

E.g. a sound disc in a folder in a book.

n = transparencies

E.g. a set of transparencies in a pocket attached to a book.

o = illuminations

Manuscript embellishments of a letter or writing with colours etc.

y = no illustrations

To be used only once, i.e. y###.

= value position not needed

\$a/4-7 Form of contents codes

There are four character positions available for the form of contents codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order in which they appear in the list below.

These codes should be used whether the item contains this form of material or consists completely of this form of material except in the case of code 'c', index, which should be used only if the item is an index. Thus, if an item is a catalogue, code 'b' will be used; if it contains a catalogue within it, along with other material, again, 'b' will be used. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 4-7. If a form not listed is required, code 'z' is used.

a = bibliography

A list of the bibliographic items sharing one or more common features such as subject, place of publication.

b = catalogue

A list of bibliographic items in a collection or exhibition or available from a particular agency such as a publisher or bookshop.

c = index

An alphabetical list of terms, i.e. names or subject giving the locations where they can be found elsewhere. For an index to the text of the book itself use Index indicator character position 10.

d = abstract or summary

Includes descriptive, indicative, and informative abstracts.

e = dictionary

Alphabetical listings of words with a short description of their meaning and usage or with equivalents in another language.

f = encyclopaedia

Listing of names or terms on a given subject with an extensive description usually alphabetically arranged.

g = directory

Ordered list of persons, organizations or places, with information about each.

h = project description

i = statistics

Numerical facts on a subject systematically collected and usually arranged in tabular form.

j = programmed text book

A text book in which material is presented to be learnt immediately before passing on to the next section.

k = patent

A document including a specification of a new invention giving the right to make or sell it for a certain number of years. Includes patent applications.

l = standard

A document produced by an official body specifying a recommended way of producing an object with a view to achieving high quality.

m = dissertation or thesis (original)

A statement of investigation or research presenting the author's findings and any conclusions reached, submitted by the author in support of his candidature for a higher degree, professional qualification or other award. Use code "v" for a thesis that has been revised or reproduced for commercial publication.

n = laws and legislation

Items including texts of laws. For treaties use code 's'.

o = numeric table

Numerical information presented in a tabular form. Use code 'i' if the data is statistical.

p = technical report

A document containing the findings of an investigation or study of a scientific or technical subject.

q = examination paper

A set of questions printed for use in an examination.

r = literature surveys/reviews

Narrative surveys, often critical, of activity in a specific field as documented in the literature, often linked to a bibliography. Also known as current publication surveys.

s = treaties

Formally concluded and ratified agreements between states. For other laws use code 'n'.

t = cartoons or comic strips

Books published as cartoons for children or adults.

v = dissertation or thesis (revised)

A thesis or dissertation reproduced or revised for commercial publication. Use code "m" for the original.

w = religious text

Language material containing religious, liturgical or sacred text and/or music (i.e. Bible stories, catechisms, devotional literature, hymns, indulgences, litanies, religious plays, sermons, service books, antiphonaries, breviaries, missals, etc.)

z = other

= value position not needed.

\$a/8 Conference or meeting code

A one-character code indicating whether the item contains the proceedings, reports, or summaries of a conference, meeting or symposium. This may be used whether or not the conference, etc., is given a formal entry.

0 = not a conference publication

1 = conference publication

\$a/9 Festschrift indicator

A one-character code indicating whether the item is a festschrift. A festschrift is defined as a complimentary or memorial publication in the form of a collection of essays, addresses or bibliographical, scientific or other contributions often embodying the results of research, issued in honour of a person, institution or society, usually on the occasion of an anniversary celebration.

0 = not a festschrift

1 = festschrift

\$a/10 Index indicator

A one-character code indicating whether the item contains an index to its text. If the item is an index to a different work see character positions 4-7 Form of contents codes, code 'c'.

0 = no index

1 = index present

\$a/11 Literature code

When the work is a literary text a one-character code indicates the type of literary text.

a = fiction

b = drama

Includes television plays, scenarios, etc.

c = essays

d = humour, satire

For cartoons, etc. see character positions 4-7 Form of contents codes, code 't'

e = letters

As a literary form. For correspondence see character position 12 Biography code

f = short stories

g = poetry

Includes non-literary works in verse

h = speeches, oratory

i = libretto

A book giving the literary text, both sung and spoken, of an opera or other musical work

y = not a literary text

z = multiple or other literary forms

The item is known to be literary but the precise form is not known, e.g. because of lack of specificity in the source format or more than one code applies.

\$a/12 Biography code

When the work is biographical a one-character code indicates the type of biography.

a = autobiography

Includes letters, correspondence

b = individual biography

c = collective biography

E.g. works containing biographies of more than one person or of a family

d = contains biographical information

E.g. directory, who's who

y = not biographical

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Implementation Codes (character positions 6 and 7)

Character position 6 in the RECORD LABEL designates whether the item is text material and character position 7 indicates whether it is monographic.

106 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF ITEM

This field holds further coded data pertaining specifically to the physical form of the item.

215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

The codes relate to terms in the physical description of the item

328 DISSERTATION (THESIS) NOTE

This field can hold free text on items coded 'm' or 'v' in \$a/4-7.

Examples

EX 1: 105 ##\$abf##a###001yb

A document contains maps and plates. It has a bibliography and an index. It is about the life and travels of one individual. The components of the example 105 field are as follows:

| Character position | Value | Notes |
|--------------------|-------|--|
| 0-3 | bf## | Item contains maps and plates but no other illustrated material |
| 4-7 | a### | Item has a bibliography but no other distinctive form of contents. |
| 8 | 0 | Not a conference publication. |
| 9 | 0 | Not a festschrift. |
| 10 | 1 | Item has an index. |
| 11 | y | Not a literary text. |
| 12 | b | Individual biography. |

106 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF ITEM

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to the form of an item.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfield

\$a Form of Item: Coded Data:Medium Designator

A one character code indicates the physical medium of the item. The following codes are used:

d = large print

e = newspaper format

f = Braille or Moon script

g = microprint

h = hand-written

i = multimedia (e.g. an item in regular print with a microfiche supplement)

j = mini-print

r = regular print

s = electronic

Item is intended for manipulation by a computer. The item may reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer. This code is not used for items that do not necessarily require the use of a computer (e.g. music compact discs, videodiscs)

t = microform

z = other form of material

Notes on Field Contents

Where the textual material is regular print, the field may contain code 'r' or be omitted altogether.

Related fields

RECORD LABEL, character position 6, Type of Record

- 1-- CODED DATA FIELDS for other types of materials
- 130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS: PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
- 135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES
- 200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY subfield \$b, General Material Designation
- 451 OTHER EDITION IN SAME MEDIUM
- 452 EDITION IN A DIFFERENT MEDIUM
 Used to link the current record to the original physical medium of the item.
- 500 UNIFORM TITLE subfield \$b, General Material Designation

Examples

- EX 1: 106 ##\$ae
 The item is a newspaper.
- EX 2: 106 ##\$as
 The item is a remotely-accessed electronic resource.
- EX 3: 106 ##\$at
 The item is a microform.

110 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to continuing resources including monographic series catalogued as series rather than as individual monographs.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. It is recommended that it should always be present in records of continuing resources.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Continuing Resource Coded Data

All data entered in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 10. All character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|--|----------------------|---------------------|
| Type of continuing resource designator | 1 | 0 |
| Frequency of issue | 1 | 1 |
| Regularity | 1 | 2 |
| Type of material code | 1 | 3 |
| Nature of contents code | 3 | 4-6 |
| Conference publication indicator | 1 | 7 |
| Title page availability codes | 1 | 8 |
| Index availability code | 1 | 9 |
| Cumulative index availability code | 1 | 10 |

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted on a data element, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for that data element.

\$a/0 Type of continuing resource designator

A one character code indicating the type of serial or continuing resource.

a = periodical

A type of continuing resource in which the parts (called issues) are generally characterised by variety of contents and contributors, both within the issue and from one issue to another. With the general exception of newspapers and some other types of popular periodicals, issues are commonly designed and numbered as constituents of a volume which is completed at determined intervals, usually annually, at which point a volume title page, contents page and index may be issued.

b = monographic series

A type of continuing resource characterised by each part having a distinctive title and often individual authorship in addition to the series having a constant title. Each part will usually contain only a single work or a closely related group of works. Systematic or sequential numbering of parts is a common but not invariable further characteristic.

c = newspaper

A type of periodical characterised by the fact that it contains topical information and is usually printed in columns down each page.

e = updating loose-leaf

A bibliographic resource that consists of a base volume(s) updated by separate pages which are inserted, removed, and/or substituted.

f = database

A collection of logically interrelated data stored together in one or more computerised files, usually created and managed by a database management system.

g = updating Web site

Use this code for Web sites that are updated but do not fit into one of the other codes, such as periodical, newspaper, or database.

z = other

\$a/1 Frequency of issue

A one-character code indicating the frequency of a continuing resource.

a = daily

k = annual

b = semiweekly (twice a week)

l = biennial (every two years)

c = weekly

m = triennial (every three years)

d = biweekly (every two weeks)

n = three times a week

e = semimonthly (twice a month)

o = three times a month

f = monthly

p = continuously updated

g = bimonthly (every two months)

u = unknown

h = quarterly

y = no frequency (i.e. irregular).

i = three times a year

See also character position 2 below

j = semiannual (twice a year)

z = other

\$a/2 Regularity

A one-character code indicating the regularity of a continuing resource

a = regular

Continuing resource is issued at regular intervals

b = normalised irregular

Continuing resource is not completely regular, but is irregular in a predictable pattern (e.g. monthly except July-August)

u = not known

y = irregular

\$a/3 Type of material code

A one-character code indicating whether a continuing resource, as a whole, is one of certain frequently used types of reference materials. One character position only is available and the category most prominent in the item should be selected.

a = bibliography

The continuing resource consists of a bibliography, e.g., a national bibliography

b = catalogue

A list of bibliographic items in a collection or exhibition or available from a particular agency such as a publisher or bookshop, e.g. a publisher's catalogue in serial form.

c = index

E.g. a continuing resource index to a continuing resource. For the availability of an index to the continuing resource itself see character position 9.

d = abstract or summary

Includes descriptive, indicative and informative abstracts.

e = dictionary

Continuing resource consisting of an alphabetical listing of words with a short description of their meaning and usage or with equivalents in another language.

f = encyclopaedia

Continuing resource listing names or terms in a given subject with an extensive description usually alphabetically arranged.

g = directory

Ordered list of persons, corporate bodies or places with information about each

h = yearbook

Continuing resource designed to present a body of reference matter intended to be revised at annual intervals, or reporting or reviewing the year's work or the main events of the year in a particular field of interest.

i = statistics

Numerical facts on a subject systematically collected and usually arranged in tabular form, e.g. statistical reports.

j = programmed texts

Continuing resource in which material is presented to be learnt immediately before passing on to the next section.

k = reviews

i.e. a continuing resource consisting of book reviews and/or reviews of moving pictures, etc.

l = laws and legislation

Documents including texts of laws.

m = law reports and digests

Regular reviews of legal proceedings.

n = legal articles

Articles in a journal dealing with general legal topics.

o = legal cases and case notes

Reports and discussions on legal cases.

p = biography

Used when a continuing resource consists of an individual bibliography, collective biographies or contains biographical information, e.g. a who's who.

r = literature surveys/reviews

Narrative surveys, often critical, of activity in a specific field as documented in the literature, often linked to a bibliography. Also known as state-of-the-art reviews.

t = cartoons or comic strips

Continuing resources published as cartoons for children or adults.

z = other kinds of contents

= position value not needed

\$a/4-6 Nature of contents code

Three characters indicating whether a continuing resource contains one or more frequently-used types of reference materials, to be distinguished from Type of material code which indicates what the continuing resource is. Up to three codes can be used (left justified); unused positions contain blanks. If more than three codes are appropriate, their order in the list determines which are recorded. The codes given for character position 3 above are used.

\$a/7 Conference publication indicator

A one-character code indicating whether the continuing resource contains the proceedings, reports or summaries of a conference, meeting or symposium, e.g. annual conference proceedings.

0 = not a conference publication

1 = conference publication

\$a/8 Title-page availability code

A one-character code indicating the existence of a title page for separate volumes of a continuing resource and the method of acquisition.

- a = in last issue of volume—loose
- b = in last issue of volume—attached
- c = in first issue of next volume—loose
- d = in first issue of next volume—attached
- e = published separately—free upon request
- f = published separately—free—sent automatically
- g = published separately—purchase—request
- u = unknown at time of record creation
- x = not applicable
- y = no title-page issued
- z = other

\$a/9 Index availability code

A one-character code indicating the availability of an index or a table of contents for separate volumes of a continuing resource and the method of acquisition. A continuing resource which is an index is indicated by code 'c' in character position 3.

- a = each issue contains an index to its own contents—loose
- b = in last issue of volume—loose— separately paged
- c = in last issue of volume—unpaged
- d = in last issue of volume—attached
- e = in first issue of next volume—loose—separately paged
- f = in first issue of next volume—loose—unpaged
- g = in first issue of next volume—attached
- h = published separately—free—sent automatically
- i = published separately—free upon request
- j = published separately—bound from publisher—free—sent automatically
- k = published separately—bound from publisher—free upon request
- l = published separately—bound from publisher—purchase upon request
- m = this continuing resource is a supplement or subseries indexed in its parent continuing resource
- u = unknown at time of record creation
- x = not applicable
- y = index is not available
- z = other

\$a/10 Cumulative index availability code

A one-character code indicating whether a cumulative index or table of contents is issued

0 = no cumulative index or table of contents

1 = cumulative index or table of contents available

Related fields

RECORD LABEL, Bibliographic level (character position 7)

Bibliographic level in the RECORD LABEL designates whether the item is a continuing resource, hence whether this field would be expected to be present.

Examples

EX 1: 110 ##\$aakahg##1zzl

The yearbook of a learned society includes mainly its conference proceedings and a directory of its members. Each volume is bound with title page and index. An index is published every five years. The components of this field are as follows.

| Character position | Value | Notes |
|--------------------|-------|---|
| 0 | a | Periodical |
| 1 | k | Annual |
| 2 | a | Regular |
| 3 | h | Yearbook |
| 4-6 | g## | Contains directory information |
| 7 | l | Contains annual conference proceedings |
| 8 | z | Other (title page is part of annual volume) |
| 9 | z | Other (index is part of annual volume) |
| 10 | 1 | Cumulative index available |

111 CODED DATA FIELD – SERIALS: PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES – [OBSOLETE]

Field Definition

This field contained coded information on the physical attributes of serials.

Occurrence

Not repeatable. Obsolete.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

115 CODED DATA FIELDS: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEORECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES

Field Definition

This field contains fixed-length coded data applicable to visual projections, videorecordings and motion pictures as defined by ISBD(NBM).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable. a

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

All data entered in the subfields is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0.

\$a Coded Data – General. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|
| Type of material | 1 | 0 |
| Length | 3 | 1-3 |
| Colour indicator | 1 | 4 |
| Sound indicator | 1 | 5 |
| Media for sound | 1 | 6 |
| Width or dimensions | 1 | 7 |
| Form of release – visual projection, motion picture | 1 | 8 |
| Technique – video-recording, motion picture | 1 | 9 |
| Presentation format – motion picture | 1 | 10 |
| Accompanying material | 4 | 11-14 |
| Form of release – videorecording | 1 | 15 |
| Presentation format – video- recording | 1 | 16 |
| Base of emulsion material – visual projection | 1 | 17 |
| Secondary support material – visual projection | 1 | 18 |
| Broadcast standard – videorecording | 1 | 19 |

\$b Motion Picture Coded Data Archival. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$b Fixed-length Data Elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|--|----------------------|---------------------|
| Generation | 1 | 0 |
| Production elements | 1 | 1 |
| Refined categories of colour for moving pictures | 1 | 2 |
| Film emulsion (polarity) | 1 | 3 |
| Film base | 1 | 4 |
| Kind of sound for moving images | 1 | 5 |
| Kind of film stock or print | 1 | 6 |
| Deterioration stage | 1 | 7 |
| Completeness | 1 | 8 |
| Film inspection date | 6 | 9-14 |

Notes on Field Contents

All character positions must appear in the subfield; if coding is not attempted on a data element, the fill character () should be used.

\$a Coded Data – General

\$a/0 Type of material

A one-character code indicates the type of material.

- a = motion picture
- b = visual projection
- c = videorecording

\$a/1-3 Length

Three numeric characters give the length of the material indicated in the preceding character, Type of material. Length for motion pictures, videotapes, or electronic videorecordings will be expressed in minutes; length for filmstrips, slides, or transparencies will be expressed in number of frames, number of slides, or number of transparencies, respectively. If the length is not known or the type of material is not specific, this data element contains three blanks (###). If the length exceeds three characters, this data element contains three zeros (000). The number is right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Examples:

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Motion picture that is 19 minutes long | Filmstrip that is 44 frames in length |
| Type of material: a | Type of material: b |
| Length: 019 | Length: 044 |

\$a/4 Colour indicator

A one-character code indicates the colour characteristics.

- a = black and white
- b = colour
- c = combination of black & white and colour
- u = unknown
- z = other (sepia, tinted, etc.)

\$a/5 Sound indicator

A one-character code indicates whether the sound is on the medium or separate.

- a = sound on medium
- b = soundtrack separate
- u = unknown
- y = no sound

\$a/6 Media for sound

A one-character code indicates the medium used to carry the sound, when sound is present.

- a = optical sound track on motion picture film
- b = magnetic sound track on motion picture film
- c = magnetic audio tape in cartridge
- d = sound disc
- e = magnetic audio tape on reel
- f = magnetic audio tape in cassette
- g = optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film
- h = videotape
- i = videodisc
- u = unknown
- x = no sound
- z = other

\$a/7 Width or dimensions

A one-character code indicates the width of films or the dimensions of slides, transparencies, and videotapes.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Motion pictures and filmstrips</i> a = 8mm b = Super 8mm c = 9.5mm d = 16mm e = 28mm f = 35mm g = 70mm | <i>Videotapes</i> a = 8mm m = ¾ in. (2 cm.) n = ¼ in. (½ cm.) o = ½ in. (1 1/3cm.) p = 1 in. (2½ cm.) q = 2 in. (5 cm) |
| <i>Slides</i> k = 2¼ x 2¼ in. (5½ x 5½ cm.) l = 2 x 2 in. (5 x 5 cm.) | <i>Transparencies</i> r = 8 x 10 in (20 x 25 cm.) s = 4 x 5 in. (10 x 12½ cm.) t = 5 x 7 in. (12½ x 17½ cm.) |

| | |
|--|--|
| | u = 7 x 7 in. (17½ x 17½ cm.) v = 8 x 8 in. (20 x 20 cm) w = 9 x 9 in. (22½ x 22½ cm.) x = 10 x 10 in (25 x 25 cm.) |
|--|--|

z = none of these

\$a/8 Form of release – visual projection, motion picture

A one-character code indicates the form of release.

a = film reel
b = film cartridge
c = film cassette
d = other film type
g = filmstrip cartridge
h = filmslip
i = other filmstrip type
j = film strip roll
k = slide, slide set, stereograph
l = transparency
u = unknown
x = not a motion picture or visual projection
z = other forms of release. See character position 15 for form of release for videorecording.

\$a/9 Technique videorecording, motion picture

A one-character code indicates the technique used for motion pictures and videorecordings.

a = animation
b = live action
c = animation and live action
u = unspecified/unknown
x = not a motion picture or video recording
z = other

\$a/10 Presentation format – motion picture

A one-character code indicates whether a motion picture has used a standard or special presentation format.

a = standard sound aperture (reduced format)
b = non-anamorphic (wide screen)
c = 3D
d = anamorphic (wide screen)
e = standard silent aperture
f = other wide screen format
x = not a motion picture
u = unknown
z = other

\$a/11-14 Accompanying material

Alphabetic character codes indicate the types of material that accompany the material. Up to four codes can be used (left justified), unused positions contain blanks. If more than four codes are appropriate, their order on the following list determines which are recorded.

- a = stills
- b = script material
- c = posters
- d = programmes and pressbooks
- e = lobby cards
- f = instructional materials
- g = score or other music format
- h = set or costume designs
- z = other accompanying material

\$a/15 Form of release – videorecording

- a = videocartridge
- b = videodisc
- c = videocassette
- d = videoreel
- e = electronic videorecording (EVR)
- x = not a videorecording
- z = other videotype

NOTE: 'Electronic videorecording (EVR)' is an obsolete form of video recording on 16mm film.

\$a/16 Presentation format – videorecording

- a = Beta (videocassette). home video format introduced in 1975 by Sony Corporation
- b = VHS (videocassette)

Home video format developed by Japan Victor Corporation (JVC) and marketed in 1977.

- c = U-matic (videocassette)

Video format using Sony's trademark name, referring to its tape threading path in a U-shape. Also known as "U type standard"

- d = EIAJ (reel)

The standard ½-inch reel-to-reel helical scan videotape format. Named for the Japanese standards committee (the Electronics Industries Association of Japan) which set the standard for ½ inch video tape recorders manufactured since 1969.

- e = Type C (reel)

Video format using one recording head, with tape speed at 9.61 inches per second. This is the broadcast standard in most countries. Type C equipment and technology is made by Sony, RCA, and others.

- f = Quadruplex (reel)

Video system using four recording heads, developed by Ampex in the 1950s.

g = Laser optical (Reflective) videodisc

A grooveless, smooth round plastic disc with a mirror-like surface, usually 12" in diameter, on both sides of which is stored video information. The disk is read by a weak laser beam. This system became available to the public in 1978 and is currently used in home and industrial applications.

h = CED (capacitance electronic disk) videodisc

A grooved, plastic disk, usually 12" in diameter, containing information recorded as deep pits in the bottom of the grooves, and played by an electronic stylus. In 1984 RCA, the manufacturer of CED videodisc players, announced its decision to cease production.

i = V2000 (videocassette)

Home video format developed in Europe by Philips since 1980. Reversible.

j = Video8 (videocassette)

Home video format.

k = DVD-Video

Digital Versatile Disc

u = unknown

x = not a videorecording

z = other

\$a/17 Base of emulsion material – visual projection

A one-character code is used to specify the type of material for the base of the emulsion. The following values are used:

a = safety film

b = film base other than safety film

c = synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.)

u = unknown

v = mixed collection (containing more than one type of base)

x = not a visual projection

z = other

\$a/18 Secondary support material – visual projection

A one-character code is used to specify the type of material used for the mounting.

a = cardboard

b = glass

c = synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.)

d = metal

e = metal and glass

f = synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.) and glass

u = unknown

x = not a visual projection

y = not present (no secondary support)

z = other

\$a/19 Broadcast standard – videorecording

A one-character code indicates the number of lines (and the system where necessary).

a = 405

b = 525 (e.g. NTSC)

c = 625 PAL

d = 625 SECAM

g = 1125

= Not a videorecording (EX 3)

\$b Motion Picture Coded Data – Archival

\$b/0 Generation

A one-character position indicates the generation of the film.

a = original

b = master

c = duplicate

d = reference print/viewing copy

u = unknown

x = not applicable

z = other

\$b/1 Production elements

A one-character code indicates the production elements of the film. If more than one production element is present, code for the element considered most important.

a = workprint

b = trims

c = outtakes

d = rushes

e = mixing tracks

g = title bands/intertitle rolls

h = production rolls

u = unknown

x = not applicable

z = other

\$b/2 Refined categories of colour for moving pictures

A one-character code indicates the colour category.

a = 3 layer colour

b = 2 colour, single strip

c = undetermined 2 colour

d = undetermined 3 colour

e = 3 strip colour

f = 2 strip colour

g = red strip

h = blue or green strip

i = cyan strip

j = magenta strip
k = yellow strip
l = S E N 2
m = S E N 3
n = sepia tone
o = other tone
p = tint
q = tinted and toned
r = stencil colour
s = handcoloured
u = unknown
x = not applicable (item not a colour film)
z = other

\$b/3 Film emulsion (polarity)

A one-character code indicates the film emulsion polarity of the film.

a = positive
b = negative
u = unknown
x = not applicable
z = other

\$b/4 Film base

A one-character code indicates the type of film base.

a = safety (triacetate)
b = nitrate
c = safety (diacetate)
d = polyester base (e.g. ester)
u = unknown
v = mixed base (nitrate and safety)
z = other

\$b/5 Kind of sound for moving images

A one-character code indicates the number of channels for sound reproduction the item is designed to support.

a = monaural
b = stereophonic
c = multichannel, surround or quadraphonic
u = unknown
v = mixed
x = not applicable (item is silent)
z = other

\$b/6 Kind of film stock or print

A one-character code indicates the type of colour film stock or colour print.

a = imbibition dye transfer
b = three layer stock
c = three layer stock (low fade)
d = duplitised stock

u = unknown
 x = not applicable (not a colour film)
 z = other

\$b/7 Deterioration stage

A one character code indicates the amount of deterioration of the film stock. If more than one condition is present, use the code for the most serious condition.

b = nitrate – suspicious odour
 c = nitrate – pungent odour
 d = nitrate – brownish, discoloration, fading, dusty
 e = nitrate – sticky
 f = nitrate – frothy, bubbles, blisters
 g = nitrate – congealed
 h = nitrate – powder
 k = non-nitrate – detectable deterioration (e.g. diacetate odour)
 l = non-nitrate – advanced deterioration
 m = non-nitrate – disaster
 y = no deterioration

\$b/8 Completeness

A one-character code indicates whether film is judged to be complete or not.

a = incomplete
 b = complete
 u = unknown
 x = not applicable (when it is impossible or inapplicable to determine completeness, e.g. home movies, unedited footage, out-takes, unidentified material)

\$b/9-14 Film inspection date

A six-character code records the most recent film inspection date. The components of the date are:

(a) Year. Four numeric characters
 (b) Month. Two numeric characters, right justified. Unused positions contain zeros.

EX 1: 198109
 Last inspection date was September 1981.

EX 2: 198300
 Last inspection date was in 1983. The month is not known

Examples

EX 1: 115 ##\$ac185baizxbx####bkxxc

A DVD videorecording (\$a/16: k, \$a/0: c) of The Last samurai is 185 minutes long (\$a/1-3: 185). It is in colour (\$a/4: b) and has sound (on the disc) (\$a/5: a, \$a/6: i). Dimensions are not coded for videodiscs (\$a/7: z). The form of release is videodisc

(\$a/8: x, \$a/15: b), and the presentation format is DVD-Video (\$a/16: k). There is no accompanying material (\$a/11-14: #####), broadcast standard is 625 PAL (\$a/19: c).

EX 2: 115 ##\$ac050cahoxbx####cbxxc

A videocassette (\$a/16: c) with a documentary film *Smaragdna reka*, in combination of black-and-white and colour (\$a/4: c), has sound on videotape (\$a/5: a, \$a/6: h), width is 1 1/3 cm (\$a/7: o), and there is no accompanying material.

EX 3: 115 ##\$ab042byxrlxx####xxcy#

A set of 42 transparencies (\$a/0: b, \$a/8: l) Geografija I, coloured (\$a/4: b), without sound (\$a/5: y, \$a/6: x), dimensions 20 x 25 cm, without accompanying material.

116 CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS

Field definition

This field contains coded data relating to non-projected graphics as defined by ISBD(NBM) (e.g. prints and photographs) needed for library and museum-based cataloguing.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if more than one type of graphic material is covered by the same catalogue record.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Coded Data for Graphics

All data entered in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. The subfield is currently always 18 characters in length. Conventionally the character positions are numbered 0-17. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Specific material designation | 1 | 0 |
| Primary support material | 1 | 1 |
| Secondary support material | 1 | 2 |
| Colour | 1 | 3 |
| Technique (drawings, paintings) | 6 | 4-9 |
| Technique (prints) | 6 | 10-15 |
| Functional designation | 2 | 16-17 |

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted for a data element, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for the data element. If all seven data elements are not coded, the field should not be present.

\$a/0 Specific material designation

A one-character code is used to record the specific material designation that describes the special class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which the item belongs. The following codes are used:

a = collage

An original work created by affixing various materials (paper, wood, newspaper, cloth, etc.) to a surface.

b = drawing

An original visual representation (other than a print or painting) made with pencil, pen, chalk, or other writing instrument on paper or similar non-rigid support.

c = painting

An original visual representation produced by applying paint to a surface.

d = photomechanical reproduction

Any picture produced in imitation of another picture through the use of a photographic process to transfer the image to a printing surface. Hence, a snapshot made to document a painting or a Xerox copy of a print are considered photomechanical reproductions. Art reproductions, postcards, posters, and study prints are included here.

e = photonegative

A piece of film, a glass plate, or paper on which appears a "negative" image, i.e. directly opposite to a "positive" image (photoprint), slide, or transparency. Used to produce a positive print. Does not include negative photoprints, photoprints that are a combination of negative and positive images, photographs or solarized prints, all of which are considered to be techniques used when making photoprints.

f = photoprint

A positive image made either directly or indirectly on a sensitised surface by the action of light or other radiant energy. The term "photoprint" is used here as a more precise term than "photograph", which technically can cover both the print and the negative. Radiographs and opaque stereographs are included here.

h = picture

A two-dimensional visual representation accessible to the naked eye and generally on an opaque backing. This term is used when a more specific designation is unknown or not desired.

i = print

A design or picture transferred from an engraved plate, wood block, lithographic stone, or other medium. Generally, there are four types: planographic print, relief print, intaglio print, and stencil print.

k = technical drawing

A cross section, detail, diagram, elevation, perspective, plan, working plan, etc., made for use in an engineering or other technical context.

m = master

Any plate, mould, matrix, die etc. which allows the reproduction of the same impression.

z = other non-projected graphic type

Other types not included in the above. Includes mixed media productions made by a combination of freehand and printing techniques when one or the other does not predominate. In some cases, where mixed media are applied, one must decide whether the creator intends the item to be a photoprint (even though it is painted over the photographic image). Hand colouring is considered a technique applied to a printing process; this aspect is covered by a character position 3. Computer-produced graphics and the various duplication masters (including spirit masters and transparency masters) are included here.

\$a/1 Primary support material

A one-character code is used to specify the type of material used for the primary support (i.e., the support or base on which an image is printed or executed) of a non-projected graphic. The following codes are used:

- a = canvas
- b = bristol board
- c = cardboard/illustration board
- d = glass
- e = synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.)
- f = skins (leather, parchment, vellum, etc.)
- g = textiles (including man-made fibres)
- h = metal
- i = paper
- j = plaster
- k = hardboard
- l = porcelain
- m = stone
- n = wood
- u = unknown
- v = mixed collection
- z = other

\$a/2 Secondary support material

A one-character code is used to specify the type of material (other than normal museum matting) to which the primary support is attached (mounting).

This character position is coded only when the mount or mat is of historical, informational, aesthetic, or archival importance. (In other cases code "y" is used.) The

same codes are used within this element as with Primary support material (Character position 1), with the following additional code:

y = no secondary support

\$a/3 Colour

A one-character code is used to specify the colour of the non-projected graphic item. The following codes are used:

a = one-colour, monochrome

The image is printed or executed in one colour. Code "a" is used for monochrome art works. It is not used with photographic materials.

b = black-and-white

The image is printed or executed in black and white.

c = multicoloured

The image is printed or executed in more than one colour.

d = hand coloured

The image, produced by a printing or photographic process, is hand coloured.

u = unknown

v = mixed

The work or collection is a combination of one-colour, black-and-white, coloured, hand-coloured, and/or other images.

x = not applicable

The characteristic is not appropriate to the type of material being presented.

z = other

The image has colour characteristics other than specified above, e.g. stained, tinted, toned (e.g. sepia).

\$a/4-9 Techniques (Drawings, Paintings)

A two-character code is used to specify the technique in which drawing and paintings are executed. There are three two-character positions for technique codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If a graphic is not a drawing or painting, the first character positions contain xx (Not Applicable) and the remaining positions contain blanks. The following codes are used:

aa = pencil

ab = graphite

ac = colour pencil

ad = India ink

ae = lavierung India ink

af = coal

ag = chalk

ah = black chalk
ai = sanguine
aj = water colour
ak = tempera
al = gouache
am = pastel
an = oil
ba = felt-tip pen
bb = stain
bc = crayon
bd = sepia
be = writing ink
bf = casein
bg = golding
bh = encaustic
bi = acrylics
bj = collage
bk = silver point
bl = air brush
uu = unknown
vv = mixed
xx = not applicable
zz = other

\$a/10-15 Technique (Prints)

A two-character code is used to specify the technique in which prints are executed. There are three two-character positions for technique codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If a graphic is not a print, the first two character positions contain xx (Not Applicable) and the remaining positions contain blanks. The following codes are used:

ba = woodcut
bb = chiaroscuro woodcut
bc = white-line woodcut
bd = camaieu
be = heliogravure
bf = chromolithography
bg = lino-cut

bh = etching
bi = lithography
bj = photolithography
bk = zincography
bl = algraphy
bm = aquatint
bn = reservage (sugar aquatint)
ca = vernis-mou (soft ground etching or tracing)
cb = engraving
cc = engraving in the crayon manner
cd = burin engraving
ce = drypoint
cf = mezzotinta (mezzotint)
cg = monotype
ch = silkscreen
ci = steel engraving
cj = computer graphics
ck = photocopying
uu = unknown
vv = mixed
xx = not applicable
zz = other

\$a/16-17 Functional Designation

A two-character code is used to describe the functional form of the item. If the code does not apply, the two character positions contain xx (Not Applicable). The following codes are used:

aa = architectural drawing

Graphic delineation made for the design and construction (or documentation of design and construction) of sites, structures, buildings, details, fixtures, furnishings, and decorations, as well as other objects designed by an architect or architectural office.

ab = item cover

Cover forming the binding or outer enclosure of an item, i.e. hardback or paperback book covers, record sleeves, etc. Covers may be detached or attached to the item.

ac = sticker

Message or design on slips of paper that are gummed or otherwise treated to adhere to a surface. Also included book owners' identification labels (ex libris); usually intended for attaching inside a book. Book plates may be attached or detached.

ad = poster

Single or multi-sheet chiefly pictorial notice made for posting, usually in a public place, to attract attention to events, activities, causes, goods, or services. The purely decorative posters made since about 1960 are included.

ae = postcard

Card with a graphic scene on one side, on which a message may be written or printed for mailing without an envelope.

af = greetings card

Card sent or given on special occasions; usually bearing messages of good will.

ag = chart

An opaque sheet that exhibits information in a graphic or tabular form, e.g. a wall chart.

ah = playing cards

Cards made in sets of a designated number of cards and marked for use in playing one or more games or telling fortunes; marks may follow a standard suit and rank system or may be special designs.

ai = flash card

A card or other opaque material printed with words, numerals, or pictures and designed for rapid display. Activity cards are included here.

aj = ephemera

Transient everyday items, usually printed and on paper, that are manufactured for a specific limited use, then often thrown away. Also included everyday items that are meant to be saved, at least for a while. Code as ephemera if no more specific code is suitable.

an = calendar

A table showing the months, days, of the week, and dates of a given year.

as = place card

Decorated card that marks a place reserved for occupancy.

au = santino

Printed card which has, on one side, the picture of a holy or sacred subject and, on the other side a prayer or an appeal formula.

uu = unknown

vv = mixed

xx = not applicable

zz = other

117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA

Field definition

This field contains coded data relating to three-dimensional artefacts and realia as defined by ISBD(NBM) for library and museum-based cataloguing.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if more than one type of three-dimensional artefacts and realia material is covered by the same catalogue record.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Coded Data for Three-Dimensional Artefacts and Realia

All data entered in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. The subfield is currently always nine characters in length. Conventionally the character positions are numbered 0-8. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Specific Material Designation | 2 | 0-1 |
| Material | 6 | 2-7 |
| Colour | 1 | 8 |

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted for a data element, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for the data element. If all three data elements are not coded, the field should not be present.

\$a/0-1 Specific Material Designation

A two-character code is used to record the specific material designation that describes the special class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which the item belongs. The following codes are used:

aa = study kit

ab = laboratory and construction kits

ac = specimens (biological etc.)

ad = fauna
ae = flora
af = minerals
ag = microscope slides
ah = jigsaws
ai = tools and equipment
aj = arms
ak = containers
al = furniture
am = transport
an = textiles
ao = clothes
ap = games and recreation
aq = toys
ar = dolls
as = models
at = models for making
az = seals

1) A piece of wax or some other plastic or adhesive substance fixed on a folder letter or document, etc. in such a way that an opening cannot be effected without breaking it.

2) A piece of wax, lead etc. with an individual design stamped into it, attached to a document as a guarantee of authenticity.

ba = dioramas
bb = replicas
bc = sculptures
bd = design objects
be = industrial production
bf = machines
bg = coins
bh = medals
bi = jewellery
bj = artefacts
uu = unknown
vv = mixed
zz = other

\$a/2-7 Material

A two-character code is used to specify the type of material the three-dimensional artefact or realia is made of. There are three two-character positions for type of material codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. The following codes are used:

- aa = terra-cotta
- ab = wax
- ac = clay
- ad = majolica
- ae = porcelain
- af = ceramic
- ag = plaster
- ah = glass
- ba = wood
- ca = ivory
- da = stone
- db = precious stones
- dc = marble
- dd = basalt
- de = [obsolete; where used, recode as da]
- df = porphyry
- ea = paper
- eb = cardboard
- fa = precious metals
- fb = metal
- fc = bronze
- fd = copper
- ga = synthetics
- ha = textile
- ia = plastic
- uu = unknown
- vv = mixed
- zz = other

\$a/8 Colour

A one-character code is used to specify the colour of the three-dimensional artefact and realia. The following codes are used:

a = one-colour, monochrome

The item is executed in one colour (monochrome).

b = black-and-white

The item is executed in black and white.

c = multicoloured

The item is executed in more than one colour.

d = hand coloured

The item is hand coloured.

u = unknown

v = mixed

The work or collection is a combination of one-colour, black-and-white, coloured, hand-coloured, and/or other images.

x = not applicable

The characteristic is not appropriate to the type of material being presented.

z = other

The item is other than specified above.

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GENERAL

Field Definition

This field contains fixed-length coded data generally applicable to cartographic material.

Occurrence

Mandatory for cartographic materials. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Cartographic Material Coded Data (General)

All data is entered in subfield \$a and identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 12. All character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Colour indicator | 1 | 0 |
| Index indicator | 1 | 1 |
| Narrative text indicator | 1 | 2 |
| Relief codes | 4 | 3-6 |
| Map projection | 2 | 7-8 |
| Prime meridian | 4 | 9-12 |

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Colour indicator

A one-character code indicates the use of colour on the item.

a = one colour

b = multi-colour

\$a/1 Index indicator

A one-character code indicates whether the item carries an index or name list.

- a = index or name list on cartographic item itself
- b = index or name list accompanying cartographic item in booklet, pamphlet, unattached cover, etc.
- c = index or name list present but location not specified
- y = no index or name list

\$a/2 Narrative text indicator

A one-character code indicates whether the item has text.

- a = text on cartographic item itself
- b = text accompanying cartographic item in booklet, pamphlet, unattached cover, etc.
- y = no narrative text

\$a/3-6 Relief codes

Alphabetic character codes indicate the types of relief. The list is intended to encode only the most commonly found types of relief representation. Up to four codes can be used (left justified); unused positions contain blanks, when no relief code is applied, the four character positions contain blanks. The types are recorded in the record in order of their importance to the material being described.

- a = contours
- b = continuous tone shaded relief
- c = hypsometric tints – layer method
- d = hachures
- e = bathymetry – soundings
- f = form lines
- g = spot heights
- h = other methods in colour (e.g. in the style of Imhof)
- i = pictorially
- j = landforms (e.g. in the style of Lobeck, Raisz, Fenneman)
- k = bathymetry – isolines
- x = not applicable
- z = other methods of relief representation

\$a/7-8 Map projection

A two-character code indicates the type of projection if the projection is on the item.

Azimuthal projections: Conic projections:

- aa = Aitoff
- ca = Albers equal area

ab = gnomonic
cb = Bonne
ac = Lambert's azimuthal equal area
cc = Lambert's conformal conic
ad = orthographic
cd = conic (simple)
ae = azimuthal equidistant
ce = Miller's bipolar oblique conformal conic
af = stereographic
cf = De Lisle
ag = azimuthal equal area
cg = projection of the International Map
au = azimuthal, specific type unknown
az = azimuthal, other known specific type
ch = Tissot's conformal conic
cp = polyconic
cu = conic, specific type unknown
cz = conic, other known specific type

Cylindrical projections:

ba = Gall
bb = Goode's homolographic
bc = Lambert's cylindrical equal area
bd = Mercator
be = Miller
bf = Mollweide
bg = sinusoidal
bh = transverse Mercator
bi = Gauss
bj = Plate Carree
bk = Cassini's
bl = Laborde
bm = Oblique Mercator
bu = cylindrical, specific type unknown

Other projections:

da = armadillo
db = butterfly
dc = Eckert
dd = Goode's homolosine
de = Miller's bipolar
df = Van der Griten
dg = dimaxion
dh = cordiform
di = polyhedric

bz = cylindrical, other known specific type
 uu = type of projection unknown xx = not applicable
 zz = other known type

\$a/9-12 Prime meridian

A two-character code indicates the prime meridian of the item when it is mentioned or is easily determined. Up to two prime meridians can be specified (left justified); unused positions contain blanks.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| aa = Greenwich, United Kingdom | ba = Madrid, Spain |
| (International prime meridian) | bb = Mexico City, Mexico |
| ab = Amsterdam, Netherlands | bc = Moscow, Russia |
| ac = Athens, Greece | bd = Munich, Germany |
| ad = Batavia (Djakarta) Indonesia | be = Naples, Italy |
| ae = Berne, Switzerland | bf = Oslo (Christiania) Norway |
| af = Bogota, Colombia | bg = Paris, France |
| ag = Bombay, India | bh = Peking, China |
| ah = Brussels, Belgium | bi = Philadelphia, USA |
| ai = Cadiz, Spain | bj = Pulkova, Russia |
| aj = Capetown, South Africa | bk = Rio de Janeiro, Brazil |
| ak = Caracas, Venezuela | bl = Rome, Italy |
| al = Copenhagen, Denmark | bm = Santiago, Chile |
| am = Cordoba, Argentina | bn = Stockholm, Sweden |
| an = Ferro, Canary Islands | bo = Sydney, Australia |
| ao = Helsinki, Finland | bp = Tirana, Albania |
| ap = Istanbul, Turkey | bq = Tokyo, Japan |
| aq = Julianehaab, Greenland | br = Washington, DC, USA |
| ar = Lisbon, Portugal | |
| as = London, United Kingdom | uu = unknown |
| at = Madras, India | zz = other |

Related Fields

131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT

This field describes other physical attributes.

206 CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS : MATHEMATICAL DATA

Contains statements of projection in the form required by ISBD(CM).

215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

This field also contains data about an item's colour.

Examples

EX1: 120 ##\$abyaa###bdaa##

A coloured map has text on it but no index. The projection is Mercator's, relief is shown by contours and the prime meridian is Greenwich.

121 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS: PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to the physical attributes of cartographic materials.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Cartographic Material Coded Data: Physical attributes (General) Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Physical dimension | 1 | 0 |
| Primary cartographic image | 2 | 1-2 |
| Physical medium | 2 | 3-4 |
| Creation technique | 1 | 5 |
| Form of reproduction | 1 | 6 |
| Geodetic adjustment | 1 | 7 |
| Physical form of publication | 1 | 8 |

\$b Aerial Photography and Remote Sensing Coded Data: Physical Attributes. Not repeatable

Subfield \$b Fixed-length Data Elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Altitude of sensor | 1 | 0 |
| Attitude of sensor | 1 | 1 |
| Spectral bands | 2 | 2-3 |
| Quality of image | 1 | 4 |
| Cloud cover | 1 | 5 |
| Mean value of ground resolution | 2 | 6-7 |

Notes on Field Contents

\$a Cartographic Material Coded Data: Physical Attributes (General)

\$a/0 Physical dimension

A one-character code indicates the physical dimensions of the item.

a = 2-dimensional

b = 3-dimensional

\$a/1-2 Primary cartographic image

One-character codes indicate the techniques used for the creation of the primary cartographic image. Up to two techniques can be recorded (left justified); unused positions contain blanks.

a = manually and plotted

E.g. maps produced by plotting instruments such as stereo plotters with or without computer assistance; maps drawn or painted by hand.

b = photographically

E.g. cartographic items produced by conventional (visible spectrum) aerial photographic techniques such as aerial photography, photo maps, orthophotos.

c = by computer

E.g. maps produced by a computer line printer.

d = by active remote sensing techniques

Excludes techniques covered by codes a, b, or c.

e = by passive remote sensing techniques

Excludes techniques covered by codes a, b, or c.

Examples:

Printed line map is coded: a#

Photomap enhanced with line map features is coded: ba

MSS satellite remote sensing image is coded: e#

Radar remote sensing image is coded: d#

\$a/3-4 Physical medium

A two-character code indicates the physical medium of the cartographic item. The first character of the code indicates the general type of physical medium. The second character gives the specific type. This code is used to show that the cartographic item is made of the material indicated, e.g. when the cartographic item is a metal plate, a lithographic stone, a scribed plate on a plastic base, etc. Non-photographic medium:

aa = paper

ab = wood

ac = stone

ad = metal
 ae = synthetics (e.g. plastics, vinyl)
 af = skin (e.g. parchment, vellum)
 ag = textile including man-made fibre textiles (e.g. silk, cloth, nylon)
 ah = magnetic storage medium – computer compatible
 ai = magnetic storage medium – not computer compatible
 aj = tracing paper
 ak = cardboard
 ap = plaster
 au = unknown
 az = other non-photographic medium

Photographic medium:

ba = transparent or opaque flexible base positive
 bb = transparent or opaque flexible base negative
 bc = transparent or opaque non-flexible base positive
 bd = transparent or opaque non-flexible base negative
 bz = other photographic medium

\$a/5 Creation technique

A one-character code indicates the final step creation technique of the original cartographic item.

a = manuscript
 Hand drawn, including constructions of unique items such as stone carvings, models, etc.

b = printing
 Offset, engraving, wood block print, lithographed, stamped, Braille, relief, etc.

c = photocopying
 All macroform hard copy produced directly on opaque material by radiant energy through contact or projection.

d = microphotography
 All microform copy on transparent material produced either by filming or by computer output.

u = unknown

y = the cartographic item is not a final product but is on a pre-production medium as specified in character positions 3-4, Physical medium

z = other

Examples:

Printed photomap enhanced with line map feature: b

Photomap on photographic paper: c

\$a/6 Form of reproduction

A one-character code indicates the form of reproduction of the item.

a = by hand

b = printed

c = photography

d = transfer line print (e.g., Xerox, blueprints, ozalid)

y = not a reproduction

\$a/7 Geodetic adjustment

A one-character code indicates the geodetic adjustment of the item. Further details are given in field 131.

a = no adjustment

b = adjusted but without grid system

c = adjusted with grid system

x = not applicable

\$a/8 Physical form of publication

A one-character code indicates the physical form of publication of the item.

a = single

b = in parts

Published as a series, published as a continuing resource, published in sections

c = atlas including loose-leaf published atlas

d = as a separate supplement to a journal, monograph, etc.

e = bound into a journal, monograph, etc.

z = other

\$b Aerial Photography and Remote Sensing Coded Data: Physical Attributes

\$b/0 Altitude of Sensor

A one-character code indicates the altitude of the sensor's platform for cartographic items.

a = terrestrial

b = aerial

c = space

\$b/1 Attitude of sensor

A one-character code indicates the attitude of the sensed image resulting from the angle of the sensor when recording the image for cartographic items.

- a = low oblique
- b = high oblique
- c = vertical

\$b/2-3 Spectral bands

Two numeric characters indicate the number of spectral bands involved. The number is right justified, unused positions contain zeros. Applicable only to remote sensing.

- 01 to 99 = number of bands
- xx = not applicable

\$b/4 Quality of image

A one-character code indicates the quality of the image.

- a = poor
- b = fair
- c = good
- d = very good

\$b/5 Cloud cover

A numeric character indicates the cloud cover in eighths.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 = 1/8 cover | 5 = 5/8 cover |
| 2 = 2/8 cover | 6 = 6/8 cover |
| 3 = 3/8 cover | 7 = 7/8 cover |
| 4 = 4/8 cover | 8 = completely covered by clouds |

\$b/6-7 Mean value of ground resolution

A two-character code indicates the mean value of the ground resolution. Character position 6 carries either the numeric mean value for the resolution or an indication that it is less than 1 centimetre or greater than 9 kilometres. Character position 7 carries a code for the metric unit used. Applicable only to remote sensing.

\$b/6 Mean ground resolution values

- = less than 1 centimetre
- 1-9 = numeric value
- + = greater than 9 kilometres
- x = not applicable

\$b/7 Metric unit codes

c = centimetres
i = decimetres
m = metres
d = decametres
h = hectametres
k = kilometres
x = not applicable

Examples:

Mean ground resolution of 5 centimetres: 5c

Mean ground resolution of 80 metres: 8d

Mean ground resolution of 10 kilometres: +k

Not remote sensing: xx

Related Fields

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GENERAL

131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GEODETIC, GRID
AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT

These fields are used to code other attributes of cartographic materials.

122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF ITEM CONTENT

Field Definition

This field contains a formatted indication of the period covered by the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable only to distinguish between multiple single dates and a range of dates (EX 1).

Indicators

Indicator 1: Number of Dates Indicator

| | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 0 | Single-dated item |
| 1 | Multiple single dates |
| 2 | Range of dates |

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Time period, 9999 B.C. to present (EX 2,3,4). Repeatable (EX 1)

Notes on Field Contents

Subfield \$a consists of a minimum of 5 characters and a maximum of 11. The components are:

\$a/0 Era identifier

One alphabetic character (Mandatory):

c = date falls before the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. B.C.

d = date falls after the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. A.D.

\$a/1-4 Year

Four numeric characters, right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Mandatory.

\$a/5-6 Month

Two numeric characters, right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Optional.

\$a/7-8 Day

Two numeric characters, right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Optional.

\$a/9-10 Time

Two numeric characters, right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Based on a 24 hour clock, local time, rounded to the nearest whole hour. Optional.

If one optional code is used, all the earlier optional codes must be used.

Related Fields

- 100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Date of publication (character positions 8-16)
This field is used as well as or instead of field 122 where the date of issue is the same as the time period of item content.
- 661 TIME PERIOD CODE
This field contains the Time Period Code, indicating only the decades covered by the item. It may be used as well as or instead of field 122.

Examples

- EX 1: 122 2#\$ad1971\$ad1979
122 0#\$ad1986
Codes for a map surveyed between 1971 and 1979 and then revised to add 1986 information.
- EX 2: 122 0#\$ad16051105
The code for Guy Fawkes' Gunpowder Plot, 5 November 1605
- EX 3: 122 0#\$ad1976080214
The situation date (2 August 1976, 14:08 hours) of a remote sensing image
- EX 4: Full record example
001 990521053
100 ##\$a19990521b19981998 y0scry0191 ba
101 0#\$ascr\$aeng
102 ##\$aHR
110 ##\$aaka 0xx0tx
122 2#\$ad1992\$ad1997
200 0#\$aGodišnje izvješće ...\$fRepublika Hrvatska, Državni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo\$dAnnual report ...\$fRepublic of Croatia, State Intellectual Property Office\$g<glavni i odgovorni urednik Nikola Kopčić>
207 #0\$a1992/97(1998)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cDržavni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo Republike Hrvatske\$d1998
215 ##\$d30 cm
300 ##\$aTekst usporedo na hrv. i engl. jeziku
326 ##\$aGodišnje
510 1#\$aAnnual report / Republic of Croatia State Intellectual Property Office\$zeng
532 13\$aGodišnje izvješće (Državni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo Republike Hrvatske)
712 02\$3990426016\$aDržavni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo Republike Hrvatske\$cZagreb
801 #0\$aHR\$bNSK\$gHR PPIAK

The *Annual Report* published in 1998 for the years 1992 to 1997. The Publication Date 1 and Publication Date 2 in 100\$a/8-16 are 1998 because only one issue was published. The coverage dates are recorded in 122 field.

123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – SCALE AND CO-ORDINATES

Field Definition

This field contains the scale and co-ordinate data as entered in field 206 but in coded form.

Occurrence

Mandatory for cartographic material. Repeatable when an item contains material in different scales and with different co-ordinates.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of Scale Code Indicator

This indicator shows whether single or multiple scales are recorded:

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 0 | Scale indeterminable |
| 1 | Single scale |
| 2 | Multiple scales |
| 3 | Range of scales |
| 4 | Approximate scale |

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Type of Scale (Mandatory)

A one-character code indicating the type of scale with the following values:

a = linear scale

b = angular scale

z = other type of scale (e.g., time scale, quantitative statistical scale)

Not repeatable.

\$b Constant Ratio Linear Horizontal Scale

The horizontal scale in the form of the denominator of a representative fraction. Used for planetary as well as terrestrial cartographic items. Repeatable.

\$c Constant Ratio Linear Vertical Scale

The vertical scale in the form of the denominator of a representative fraction. Used for planetary as well as terrestrial items. Repeatable.

- \$d Co-ordinates – Westernmost Longitude
- \$e Co-ordinates – Easternmost Longitude
- \$f Co-ordinates – Northernmost Latitude
- \$g Co-ordinates – Southernmost Latitude
- Co-ordinates for planetary or terrestrial items. Each subfield is fixed at 8 characters and is not repeatable. Each contains the following data:
- Character position 0
- Hemisphere: one-character code:
- w = west
 - e = east
 - n = north
 - s = south
- Character positions 1 to 3
- Degree: 3 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros
- Character positions 4 to 5
- Minute: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros
- Character positions 6 to 7
- Second: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros
- \$h Angular Scale
- The angular scale of celestial maps in the form of a 4 character number right justified and filled with zeros, giving the scale in terms of millimetres to a degree. Repeatable.
- \$i Declination – Northern Limit
- \$j Declination – Southern Limit
- \$k Right ascension – Eastern Limits
- \$m Right ascension – Western Limits
- Co-ordinates for celestial cartographic items. Subfields are not repeatable. Subfields \$i and \$j are each 8 characters long and contain the same components as subfields \$f and \$g (see above) except that character position 0 contains a plus sign (for the northern celestial hemisphere) or a minus sign (for the southern celestial hemisphere). Subfields \$k and \$m are each 6 characters long and contain the following data:
- Character positions 0 to 1
- Hour: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros
- Character positions 2 to 3
- Minute: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 4 to 5

Second: 2 numeric characters right justified, filled with zeros

\$n Equinox

The equinox for celestial cartographic items with the year entered according to the Gregorian calendar as a four character date right justified with zeros. Not repeatable.

\$o Epoch

The epoch for celestial cartographic items with the year entered according to the Gregorian calendar as a four character date right justified with zeros. Not repeatable.

\$p Planet to which the field applies.

This subfield indicates whether the co-ordinates recorded in subfields \$d-\$g apply to the Earth or to another planet, or to a satellite of these bodies. The planet is expressed in position 0-1, while position 2 indicates whether the body is a satellite of the planet coded on pos. 0-1.

Character positions 0-1: Planet: two-character code:

ea = Earth
ju = Jupiter
ma = Mars
me = Mercury
ne = Neptune
pl = Pluto
sa = Saturn
ur = Uranus
ve = Venus
zz = other

Character position 2: Satellite: one-character code:

s The body whose co-ordinates are recorded in subfields \$d-\$g is a satellite of the planet coded on pos. 0-1.

y Not applicable: the body whose co-ordinates are recorded in subfields \$d-\$g is the planet itself, as coded on pos. 0-1.

This subfield is mandatory, except for cartographic materials relating to the earth and celestial charts. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

When the scale is indeterminable, the field contains only subfield \$a and co-ordinates if they are present.

When the item is multipart and has multiple horizontal and/or vertical scales, all of the scales are given in repeating subfields. However, for three or more scales, the range of scales can be given in subfields \$b or \$c; the smaller denominator is recorded in the first occurrence of the particular subfield and the larger in the second occurrence.

When the co-ordinates for a map or plan are given in terms of a centre point rather than outside limits, the longitude and latitude that form the central axes are each recorded

twice, in subfields \$d and \$e (longitude) and subfields \$f and \$g (latitude). Similarly, when the declination and right ascension for celestial charts are given relative to the centre of the chart rather than to its limits, they are each recorded twice, in subfields \$i and \$j (declination) and subfields \$k and \$m (ascension).

Related Fields

206 CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – MATHEMATICAL DATA

Scale and co-ordinates are recorded in field 206 in the form prescribed by ISBD (CM).

Examples

Flat maps and globes:

EX 1: 123 1#\$aa\$b253440\$de0790000\$ee0860000\$fn0200000\$gn0120000\$peay
A map covering part of India which is 4 inches to the mile (1:253440) longitude 79°E to 86°E, latitude 20°N to 12°N.

EX 2: 123 2#\$aa\$b150000\$b25000\$de0150000\$ee0173045\$fn0013012\$gs0023035\$peay
A map of part of Zaire of linear scale of 1:150000 and 1:25000, longitude 15°E to 17°30'45 E; latitude 1°30'12 N to 2°30'35 S.

Relief models:

EX 3: 123 2#\$aa\$b744080\$c96000\$de1193000\$ee1220000\$fn0250000\$gn0220000\$peay
A relief map of Taiwan with horizontal scale of 1:744080 and vertical scale of 1:96000; longitude 119°30'E to 122°E, latitude 25°N to 22°N.

EX 4: 123 2#\$aa\$b90000\$cl0000\$dw1120000\$ew1090000\$fn0600000\$gn0490000\$peay
A relief map of part of Alberta and Saskatchewan in Canada with a horizontal scale of 1:90000 and a vertical scale of 1:10000; longitude 109°W to 112°W; latitude 60°N to 49°N.

Celestial chart:

EX 5: 123 0#\$ab\$i-0160000\$j-0490000\$k163000\$m193000\$n1950\$o1948
A celestial chart with an angular scale, with declination -16° to -49°, right ascension from 16 hr 30 min to 19 hr 30 min, equinox 1950, epoch 1948.

Map of a planet:

EX 6: 123 1#\$aa\$b2000000\$dw1500000\$ew1350000\$fn0350000\$gn0250000\$pmay
200 1#\$aPlanet Mars, Olympus Mons\$bDocument cartographique\$eNordwestlicher Teil mit Aureole\$ePlanetenbildkarte\$fDeutsche Forschungsanstalt für Luft- und Raumfahrt ; Institut für angewandte Geodäsie
A map of a region of Planet Mars (as indicated in subfield \$p)

124 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS - SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION ANALYSIS

Field Definition

This field contains fixed length coded data relating to the characteristics of photographic, non-photographic and remote sensing image types of cartographic materials.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Character of Image

Contains a one-character code. Not repeatable.

a = non-photographic image

b = photographic image

c = remote sensing image

\$b Form of Cartographic Item

Contains a one-character code. Repeatable.

a = atlas

f = profile

b = diagram

g = remote sensing image

c = globe

h = section

d = map

i = view

e = model

j = plan

z = other

\$c Presentation Technique for Photographic or Non-Photographic Image

Contains a two-character code. Repeatable.

aa = anaglyphic

ab = polarized

ac = planimetric

ad = diagram map
ae = flowline map, flow map
af = dot map
ag = diagrammatic map (i.e. cartogram map)
ah = choropleth
ai = chorochromatic
aj = dasymetric
ak = isopleth
am = anamorphic
an = pictorial map
ao = spatial model on two dimensional surface
ap = mental or cognitive map
aq = views with horizon showing (includes bird's eye views and panoramas)
ar = views without horizon showing (includes bird's eye views and panoramas)
as = map view

da = picto map
db = random dot map
dc = screened
dd = not screened

\$d Position of Platform for Photographic or Remote Sensing Image

Contains a one-character code. Repeatable.

a = terrestrial
b = aerial
c = space

\$e Category of Satellite for Remote Sensing Image

Contains a one-character code. Repeatable.

a = meteorological
b = earth resources
c = space observing

\$f Name of Satellite for Remote Sensing Image
Contains a two-character code. Repeatable.

Meteorological

aa = Tiros

ab = ATS

ac = NOAA

ad = Nimbus

ae = METEOSAT

Earth resources

ga = ERTS

gb = Landsat I

gc = Landsat II

gd = Landsat III

ge = Seasat

gf = Skylab

gg = Spacelab

Space observing

ma = Explorer I

mb = Explorer II

\$g Recording Technique for Remote Sensing Image
Contains a two-character code. Repeatable.

Light emission

aa = video recording

ab = false colour photography

ac = multispectral photography

ad = multispectral scanning

av = combination of various light emission techniques

Thermal infrared scanning

da = infrared line scanning

dv = combination of various thermal infrared scanning techniques

Microwave emission

ga = Sidelooking Airborne Radar (SLAR)

gb = Synthetic Aperture Radar (SAR)

gc = passive microwave mapping

125 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC

Field Definition

This field describes the format of music, notes whether parts exist and codes the type of literary text for non-music performances.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Format of Notated Music

Two characters long. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Type of score | 1 | 0 |
| Parts indicator | 1 | 1 |

\$b Literary Text Indicator (Non-Music Performance)

Two characters long. Not repeatable.

\$c Multiple Musical Formats

Variable length. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Terms used here as examples are suggestive, not exclusive or restrictive.

\$a/0 Type of Score

A one-character code indicates the type of music score.

The choice of the code depends on the item itself and on factors like the number of instruments or voices, the arrangement of the work, the reduction or the absence of the original accompaniment. Statements such as choral score or vocal score may appear in the item or in the cataloguing record with variant meanings and thus should not alone determine the choice of a code. Codes "c" and "d" are assigned strictly on the basis of the presence or absence of accompaniment in the original scoring. If an item includes

the parts, their presence is not considered in this position. "Score and parts" is thus not coded as a multiple format.

a = full score

The item is a full score format, i.e. a series of staves on which all the instrumental and/or vocal parts of a musical work are written, one under the other in vertical alignment, so that they can be read simultaneously. Works for a single voice or instrument cannot be rendered in score format (and should be coded "z").

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|-----------|---|
| English | score, full score, performance score, playing score |
| French | partition, partition d'orchestre, grande partition |
| German | Partitur, Orchesterpartitur, Spielpartitur |
| Italian | partitura, parte con guida |
| Spanish | Partitura |
| Hungarian | partitúra, vezérkönyv |
| Russian | партитура, partitura |

b = score (miniature or study size)

A musical score not primarily intended for performance use, with the notation and/or text reduced in size

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|-----------|---|
| English | pocket score, study score, miniature score |
| French | partition de travail, partition de poche, partition miniature, petite partition |
| German | Studienpartitur, Taschenpartitur, kleine Partitur |
| Italian | partiturina, partitura tascabile |
| Spanish | partitura de bolsillo |
| Hungarian | Zsebpártitúra |
| Russian | карманная партитура, karmannaja partitura |

c = vocal score, accompaniment reduced for keyboard

Accompaniment is reduced for keyboard instrument(s), and the voice and/or instrumental solo part(s) remain unaltered.

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|--|
| English | vocal score, chorus score |
| French | partition chant et piano, partition vocale |
| German | Klavierauszug, Sparte |
| Italian | Spartito |
| Spanish | partitura vocal |

d = voice score, chorus score, accompaniment has been dropped

The accompaniment to vocal or choral parts has been omitted and only the voice parts remain. Vocal and choral works originally unaccompanied are assigned other codes as appropriate.

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| English | voice score, choral score |
| French | partition des chœurs |
| German | Singpartitur, Chorpartitur |
| Italian | partitura vocale |
| Spanish | partitura de coro |
| Hungarian | kóruspartitúra, karpartitúra |
| Russian | хоровая партитура, horovaja partitura |

e = condensed score, piano-conductor score

Format presenting only the principal musical parts on a minimum number of staves, and generally organized by instrumental sections. A conductor score is a performance part for a particular instrument of an ensemble work to which cues have been added for the other instruments to permit the performer of the part also to conduct the performance.

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|--|
| English | condensed score, [piano / violin, etc.] conductor score |
| French | partition condensée, [piano / violon, etc.] conducteur |
| German | Direktion, Direktionsstimme, Klavierpartitur |
| Italian | partitura condensata, parte di [pianoforte / violino, etc.] conduttore |
| Spanish | partitura guión, particela de [piano / violín, etc.] director |

f = graphic score

Notation including non traditional graphic elements.

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|---------------------|
| English | graphic score |
| French | partition graphique |
| German | Graphische Partitur |
| Italian | partitura grafica |
| Spanish | partitura gráfica |

g = close score

Format giving all the parts on a minimum number of staves, normally two, as with hymnals.

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|--------------------------|
| English | close score, short score |
| French | partition réduite |
| Italian | partitura ristretta |
| Spanish | partitura reducida |

h = tablature

A music notation where letters, numbers or graphic symbols indicate the finger position on the instrument or the name of the notes.

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| English | tablature, finger notation |
| French | tablature |
| German | Tabulatur |
| Spanish | Cifra, tablatura |
| Italian | Intavolatura |
| Hungarian | tabulatúra |
| Russian | табулатура, tabulatura |

i = choir-book

Format giving the different vocal parts on two facing pages of the book

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| English | choir-book |
| French | livre de chœur |
| German | Chorbuch |
| Spanish | libro de coro |
| Italian | libro corale |
| Hungarian | kóruskönyv |

j = compressed score

Score of only voices and continuo, omitting the other instruments

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|----------------------------------|
| English | vocal/chorus score with continuo |
| French | particella |

| | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| German | Cembalo-Partitur, Generalbaßpartitur |
| Spanish | partitura de coro y continuo |
| Italian | particella |

k = pseudo-score

Score without vertical coincidence of voices

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|------------------|
| English | pseudo-score |
| French | pseudo-partition |
| German | Pseudo-Partitur |
| Spanish | Pseudopartitura |
| Italian | Pseudopartitura |

l = solo part

A part containing only one solo for a voice of a choir

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|---------------------------|
| English | solo part |
| Spanish | particela (parte) solista |
| Italian | Cartina |

m = multiple formats. Indicate individual formats in subfield \$.

n = score with only homogeneous groups of instruments of the orchestra

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|---------------------|
| French | parties en accolade |
| German | Partitino |
| Italian | Spartitino |

o = condensed score with text and chord symbols

Frequently used in modern pop music, it consists generally in a melodic line with letters and/or graphic symbols representing chords or finger positions on the guitar. ~;

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|------------------|
| English | text and chords |
| French | texte et accords |
| Italian | testo e accordi |

p = table book

Parts written with different orientation on facing pages, so as to enable reading by players standing around a table

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|---------|---------------------|
| English | table book |
| Italian | partitura da tavolo |

u = unknown

x = not applicable

The item is not printed or manuscript music. All sound recordings will receive this code.

z = other

Format of music for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate. Usually it signifies that the item is not a score. Music for any single instrument (even if written on two staves, e.g. keyboard music), music for a single voice and compositions that consist only of instructions for performance receive this code. Four-hands piano music presented on facing pages receives this code as well. Sets of parts are also assigned code "z" if they are not accompanied by another format.

\$a/1 Parts Indicator (character position 1)

A one-character code indicates the existence of parts for a score.

a = parts exist (instrumental and vocal)

b = instrumental parts

c = vocal parts

u = unknown

x = not applicable (including compositions for single instrument or voice)

y = parts not present

Use code a to indicate the presence of one or more fascicle(s) containing the music destined to a single performer in an ensemble. Music composed for a single instrument or a single voice should be coded "x".

Use for the following musical presentation statements:

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| English | part(s), part book(s) |
| French | partie(s), partie(s) séparée(s) |
| German | Stimme(n), Stimmbuch/-bücher |
| Spanish | particela(s), parte(s) |
| Italian | parte/i, parte/i staccata/e |
| Hungarian | Szólamkönyv |
| Russian | тетрадь, tetrad' |

\$b Literary Text Indicator

Alphabetic character codes indicate the type of literary text for a non-music performance. Up to two one-character codes can be used (left justified); unused positions contain blanks. If more than two codes are appropriate, their order on the following list determines which are recorded. Not repeatable.

- a = poetry
- b = drama
- c = fiction (novels, short stories, etc.)
- d = history
- e = lectures, speeches
- f = instructions (How to ...)
- g = sounds
- h = autobiography
- i = biography
- j = essays
- k = reporting
- l = memoirs
- m = rehearsals
- n = interviews
- o = advertising texts
- p = instruction (language)
- q = conference proceedings
- r = comedy
- s = folktales
- t = sacred texts
- z = other types of literary text

\$c Multiple Musical Format

A one-character code specifies individual musical formats when 125 \$a/0 = m (multiple formats). The subfield contains as many codes as are necessary. Not repeatable

- a = full score
- b = score (miniature or study size)
- c = vocal score, accompaniment reduced for keyboard
- d = voice score, accompaniment has been dropped
- e = condensed score, conductor score (piano, violin, etc.)
- f = graphic score

g = close score
h = tablature
i = choir-book
j = compressed score, short score
k = pseudo-score
l = solo part
n = score with only homogeneous groups of instruments of the orchestra
o = condensed score with text and chord symbols
p = table book
u = unknown
x = not applicable
z = other
= not used

Related Fields

208 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: PRINTED MUSIC SPECIFIC STATEMENT

Examples

- EX 1: 125 #a#\$ama\$cadl
A manuscript including score, chorus score, parts for choir solos and parts
- EX 2: 125 ##\$azx
A missal for solo voice
- EX 3: 125 ##\$axx\$ba#
A recording of poetry

126 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to the physical attributes of sound recordings.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Sound Recording Coded Data (General)

15 characters long. Optional. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Form of release | 1 | 0 |
| Speed | 1 | 1 |
| Kind of sound | 1 | 2 |
| Groove width | 1 | 3 |
| Dimensions (sound recordings) | 1 | 4 |
| Tape width | 1 | 5 |
| Tape configuration | 1 | 6 |
| Accompanying textual material | 6 | 7-12 |
| Recording technique | 1 | 13 |
| Special reproduction characteristics | 1 | 14 |

\$b Sound Recording Coded Data (Detail)

3 characters. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$b fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Kind of disc or cylinder | 1 | 0 |
| Kind of material | 1 | 1 |

Kind of cutting

1

2

Notes on Field Contents

Subfield \$a – Sound Recording Coded Data (General)

\$a/0 Form of release

A one-character code indicates the form of release.

a = disc

b = tape (open reel)

c = tape (cassette)

d = tape (cartridge)

e = wire recording

f = cylinder

g = roll (player-piano or player organ)

h = film (sound film)

z = other

\$a/1 Speed.

A one-character code indicates the speed.

u = unknown

x = not applicable

z = other (e.g. non-standardized speed for microgrooves before 1906)

Discs

a = 16 2/3 rpm

b = 33 1/3 rpm

c = 45 rpm

d = 78 rpm

e = 8 rpm

g = 1.4 m. per second (compact discs)

Cylinders:

h = 1 in. per second (120 rpm)

i = 160 rpm

Tapes

k = 1 7/8 in. per second

l = 15/16 in. per second

m = 3 3/4 in. per second

n = 7 1/2 in. per second

o = 15 in. per second

p = 30 in. per second

q = 8/10 in. per second

r = 4/10 in. per second

\$a/2 Kind of sound

A one-character code indicates the recording mode of the recording.

a = monaural

b = stereophonic

c = quadraphonic

u = unknown

z = other

\$a/3 Groove width

A one-character code indicates the width of the grooves on discs.

a = coarse/standard

b = microgroove/fine

u = unknown

x = not applicable

z = other

Coarse/standard: Discs issued at 78 rpm are usually coarse. Cylinders issued at 120 rpm (which have 100 grooves per inch) are usually standard.

Microgroove/fine: Discs issued at 16 2/3, 33 1/3, and 45 rpm are usually issued as microgroove. Cylinders issued at 160 rpm (which have 200 grooves per inch) are usually issued as fine.

Not applicable: This includes compact discs, which do not have grooves.

\$a/4 Dimensions (sound recordings)

A one-character code specifies the diameter of an open reel tape or a disc, or the dimensions of a cassette, cartridge or cylinder.

a = 3 in.

b = 5 in.

c = 7 in.

d = 10 in.

e = 12 in.

f = 16 in.

g = 14 in.
h = 4¾ in. (compact disc)
j = 3 7/8 x 2½ in. cassette
o = 5¼ x 3 7/8 in. cartridge
s = 2¾ x 4 in. cylinder
u = unknown
x = not applicable
z = other

\$a/5 Tape width

A one-character code specifies the width of a tape.

a = ¼ in.
b = ½ in.
c = 1 in.
d = 1/8 in.
e = 2 in.
f = 1/3 in. (8 mm.)
u = unknown
x = recording not a tape
z = other

\$a/6 Tape configuration

A one-character code indicates the tape configuration.

a = full (1) track
b = half (2) track
c = quarter (4) track
d = eight track
e = twelve track
f = sixteen track
g = twenty-four track
h = six track
u = unknown
x = recording not a tape
z = other

\$a/7-12 Accompanying textual material

Alphabetic character codes indicate the contents of programme notes and other accompanying text. Up to six one-character codes can be used (left-

justified); unused positions contain blanks. If more than six items are present, the importance of the items in relationship to the work determines which are included.

a = discography

b = bibliography

c = thematic index

d = libretto or text

e = biography of composer

f = biography of performer or history of ensemble

g = technical or historical information on instruments

h = technical information on music

i = historical information about music

j = other historical information

k = ethnological information

l = biography of arranger or transcriber

r = instructional material

s = score

z = other accompanying textual material

\$a/13 Recording technique

A one-character code indicates the recording technique

a = acoustic

b = electric

c = digital

u = unknown

z = other

\$a/14 Special reproduction characteristics

A one-character code indicates the reproduction characteristics.

a = NAB standard

b = CCIR/IEC standard

c = DBX processed

d = digital (compact disc)

e = Dolby-A encoded

f = Dolby-B encoded

g = Dolby-C encoded

h = CX encoded

x = not applicable

u = unknown

z = other

Subfield \$b Sound Recording Coded Data (Detail)

\$b/0 Kind of disc, cylinder or tape

A one-character code indicates the type of disc, cylinder or tape.

a = instantaneous (unique, cut on the spot)

b = mass produced (most commercial discs or tapes)

c = master tape

d = tape duplication master

e = disc master (negative)

f = mother (positive)

g = stamper (negative)

h = test pressing

u = unknown

x = not applicable

z = other

\$b/1 Kind of material

A one-character code specifies the kind of material for discs, cylinders or tapes.

u = unknown

x = not applicable

z = other

Discs:

a = lacquered (e.g. acetate)

b = metal (e.g. aluminium)

c = shellac pressing (mass produced)

d = plastic pressing (mass produced)

e = metal and plastic (compact discs)

Cylinders:

g = wax (instantaneous)

h = plastic (mass produced)

Tapes:

i = paper backed

j = acetate

k = pvc

l = polyester

\$b/2 Kind of cutting

A one-character code specifies the kind of cutting. Since all cylinders have hill and dale cutting, use of this position for cylinders is optional.

a = lateral or combined cutting

b = vertical (hill and dale) cutting

u = unknown

x = not applicable

Examples

EX 1: 126 ##\$aagbzhxxe#####cd\$bhex

A compact disc containing digitally recorded music and accompanied by a biography of the composer.

127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION OF SOUND RECORDINGS AND PRINTED MUSIC

Field Definition

The field contains one or more six-character numbers corresponding to the duration of a sound recording, of a portion of a sound recording, or of the estimated duration of a composition as stated on a printed music score.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Duration

This subfield contains a six-character numeric string representing the duration of a sound recording, or of a section of a sound recording, or of the estimated duration of a performance of printed music. The time is divided into three sub-elements, each two characters long, representing the number of hours, minutes, and seconds. Each sub-element is right justified; unused positions contain blanks or zeros. Repeatable.

Notes on field contents

The durations of sound recordings and printed and manuscript music are recorded in coded form in field 127. The durations may also be found in eye-readable form in a general note (EX 3) or a contents note (EX 4).

Examples

EX 1: 127 ##\$a003100\$a001839

The duration of a sound recording with two compositions, one lasting 31 minutes, the other lasting 18 minutes and 39 seconds.

EX 2:: 127 ##\$a024600

The duration of a sound recording lasting 2 hours and 46 minutes.

EX 3: 127 ##\$a001356\$a002005

300 ##\$aDurations: 13:56; ca. 20:05

A printed music score with two pieces, the first lasting 13 minutes and 56 seconds, the second lasting approximately 20 minutes and 5 seconds. A note is also present in field 300.

EX 4: 127 ##\$a001635\$a000957\$a001049

327 ##\$aQuadrain II (16:35)\$aWater ways (9:57)\$aWaves (10:49)

A sound recording with three selections. The durations are also present in a contents note.

128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE

Field Definition

This field describes the form and the key or mode of a musical work.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

- \$a** Form of Musical Work
Contains a code indicating the form of a musical work. Optional. If more than one form is present the subfield is repeated. Use the code lists at the end of this field.
- \$b** [Obsolete] Instruments or Voices for Ensemble
This subfield has been replaced by field 145.
- \$c** [Obsolete] Instruments or Voices for Soloists
This subfield has been replaced by field 145.
- \$d** Key or Mode of Musical Work
Contains a code indicating the key or church mode of the musical work, if significant. Major keys are indicated with a letter 'a'-'g', minor keys with a letter 'a'-'g' followed by 'm'; sharps with 'x', flats with 'b' following the key code. "Gregorian" church modes are indicated with a number '01'-'13' (EX 4). Use the code lists at the end of this field. Not repeatable.

Related fields

145 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE

Examples

EX 1: 128 ##\$afg#
145 0#\$ab\$b03tgu###
200 1#\$aFour fugues for guitar trio

EX 2: 128 ##\$avr#
 145 0#\$ab\$b01kpf###
 145 0#\$ab\$b01kpf###\$b01svl###\$b01svc###
 145 0#\$ab\$b01kpf###\$b01svl###\$b01sva###\$b01svc###
 200 1#\$aVariations for solo piano, piano trio and piano quartet

EX 3: 128 ##\$aco#\$ddm
 145 0#\$ab\$b02wfl##a\$c01ost###
 200 1#\$aConcerto for two flutes & string orchestra in D minor

In the former 128 EX 3, the agency considered it unnecessary to state that there is only one orchestra; converting the example, the number 01 in 145 \$c has been added by default.

EX 4: 128 ##\$ams#\$d01
 145 0#\$b01vso###\$b01val###\$b01vte###\$b01vbs###\$c01cmi###\$e004x
 200 1#\$aMissa quatuor vocibus primi toni

EX 5: 128 ##\$asnd\$deb
 145 0#\$b01wob##a\$b01ost###
 145 1#\$b01wob###\$b01kpf###
 200 1#\$aSerenata per oboe e archi ridotta per oboe e piano
 500 10\$aSerenate\$roboe e archi\$umi bemolle maggiore\$wriduzione

Code Lists

Code lists are maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Music Documentation Centres), and available online at the following address: <http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/forms>

1. CODES FOR FORM OF MUSICAL WORK

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|-------------------|--|
| abs | absolutio | |
| acc | accademia | |
| acl | acclamatio | Use also for laudes regiae or similar |
| acm | actus musicus | |
| agn | agnus dei | |
| ai# | Air | Use also for ayre; for instrumental air prefer ain – air, instrumental |
| ain | air, instrumental | |
| aka | akathistos | |
| ala | alba | |
| alb | albumleaf | |
| all | alleluia | |
| alm | allemande | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--------------------|---|
| ame | amener | Use also for passeggiata |
| an# | anthem | |
| ana | anagramma | |
| ane | ante evangelium | |
| ant | antiphon | |
| app | applauso | Use also for Singedicht |
| ar# | aria | For instrumental forms prefer arn – aria, instrumental |
| ara | arabesque | |
| ari | ariette | |
| ark | auresku | Use also for baile real, desafio, eskudanza, and similar |
| arn | aria, instrumental | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|-----------------------|---|
| ars | arioso | |
| aub | aubade | Use also for instrumental alba, aube and alborada |
| azm | azione musicale | Use for 20th cent. works so designated; use also for azione lirica and similar |
| azs | azione sacra | Mostly Viennese, 17th cent.; use also for trattenimento sacro |
| azt | azione teatrale | |
| bac | baccanale | |
| bad | badinage | Use also for badinerie |
| bag | bagatelle | |
| bai | baiao | |
| bal | ballo | Use for social gatherings and professional stage choreographies |
| bar | barcarole | |
| bat | battaglia | |
| bbp | bebop | |
| bcs | berceuse | Use for art form lullaby, Wiegenlied, etc. |
| bd# | ballad | Other than folk ballad; use for the art form of the 19th-20th century; for folk or popular balladry use fm# – folk music |
| bde | ballade, vocal | 14th-15th cent. |
| bdi | ballade, instrumental | 19th-20th cent. |
| bea | beat | |
| beg | béguine | |
| ben | benedictus | |
| bfm | barform | |
| bg# | bluegrass | |
| bgk | bugaku | Use also for gagaku |
| bhn | bergreihen | |
| bic | bicinium | |
| bkb | black bottom | |
| bkg | bänkelgesang | Use also for Moritat |
| bkm | black music | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|----------------------|--|
| bl# | blues | |
| blc | cuban bolero | |
| bll | ballata | 13th-15th cent. |
| blo | ballad opera | |
| blt | bluette | |
| bol | bolero | |
| bou | bourrée | |
| bra | branle | |
| brg | bergamasque danse | |
| brr | barriera | |
| brt | bergerette | |
| bru | brunette | |
| bsd | basse danse | |
| bst | boston | Use also for three step |
| bt# | ballet | Use for theatrical exhibitions of dance and pantomimic action, ballet de cour and similar |
| btd | boutade | |
| bto | balletto | Use for vocal / instrumental forms of the 16.-17.th cent. |
| btq | batuque | |
| bur | burlesque | |
| bwg | boogie-woogie | |
| byc | byzantine canon | |
| cab | cabaletta | |
| cac | caccia | |
| cad | cadenza | |
| cal | calata | |
| can | can-can | Use also for chahut |
| cav | cavatina | |
| cb# | chant, non-Christian | Except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| cc# | chant, Christian | Use for plainchant, Gregorian chant, and similar, except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|----------------------|--|
| cch | catch | |
| ccl | canticle | |
| ecn | canción | |
| cdg | chanson de geste | |
| cdo | children opera | |
| edt | chanson de toile | |
| cfr | confractorium | |
| cg# | concerto grosso | |
| cga | conga | |
| ch# | choral | |
| cha | cha-cha-cha | |
| chc | chaconne | |
| chh | cachucha | |
| chn | charleston | Use also for spirù |
| cho | chamber opera | |
| chp | character piece | Includes bozzetto, esquisse, leggenda, pensée, souvenir and similar |
| chr | choir | |
| chs | children's song | |
| cht | chanson sentencieuse | Use also for dit, Spruch |
| chz | chiarenzana | |
| ckw | cakewalk | |
| cl# | choral prelude | |
| cld | colinda | |
| cli | choral, instrumental | |
| cll | carosello | |
| clu | clausula | |
| cly | calypso | |
| cmg | carmagnole | |
| cmm | communion | |
| cmn | carmen | |
| cmp | completorium | |
| cn# | canon | Compositions employing strict imitation throughout; for vocal rounds prefer rde – rondeau |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| cnd | conductus | |
| cnl | cantilena | |
| cnr | canario | |
| cns | canso | |
| co# | concerto | |
| cob | comédie-ballet | |
| cop | concert piece | |
| cou | couplet | |
| cow | competition / examination work | |
| cp# | chanson, polyphonic | Use for French polyphonic songs of the late Middle ages and Renaissance |
| cpl | copla | |
| cpm | commedia per musica | |
| cpr | caprice | |
| cr# | carol | |
| cra | carola | |
| cre | credo | |
| cri | carioca | |
| err | corrido | |
| crt | corant | |
| cs# | chance composition / aleatoric music | |
| csa | csárdás | |
| cse | chasse | |
| csg | carnival song | |
| csn | chanson, monodic | Lyric compositions set to French words. Use for the works of the French chansonniers or for the 19th-20th century forms. For earlier periods prefer more specific terms; for chansons populaires use fso – folk song |
| css | chanson spirituelle | |
| cst | cassation | |
| csy | chamber symphony | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| ct# | cantata | |
| ctc | contacio | |
| ctd | contredance | |
| ctf | contrafactum | Use also for travestimento spirituale |
| ctg | cantiga | |
| cti | cantio | |
| ctl | cotillon | Use also for contredance française |
| cto | cento | |
| ctp | counterpoint | |
| cue | cueca | |
| cy# | country music | |
| cyd | country dance | Includes longways and square dance, and instrumental round |
| <b b="" cz#<=""> | canzona | Instrumental music so designated |
| czn | canzone | Use for the works of the Italian songs so defined during the 19th-20th centuries. For earlier periods use more specific terms |
| czp | canzone, polyphonic | 16. cent.; except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| czs | canzonetta spirituale | |
| czt | canzonetta | 16th-19th cent. |
| dbl | double | |
| dec | decimino | |
| des | descort | |
| dev | devozione | |
| df# | dance form | Except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| dia | dialogue | |
| dim | disco music | |
| din | dramatic introduction | |
| dix | dixieland | |
| dmk | dumka | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|----------------|--|
| dod | dance of death | Use for danse macabre, Totentanz and similar |
| dox | doxology | |
| drh | dreher | |
| drs | drinking song | Use for brindisi, chanson à boire and similar |
| dsg | disguisings | |
| dtr | dithyramb | |
| due | duet | Vocal form |
| dui | duo | Instrumental form |
| dv# | divertimento | Instrumental music so designated; includes divertissements of the 18th century; for serenades and cassations prefer specific codes |
| eco | écossaise | |
| egl | eglogue | |
| ele | elevatio | |
| ely | elegy | |
| ens | ensalada | |
| ent | entrée | |
| enw | english waltz | |
| epo | epos | |
| ept | epithalamium | |
| est | estampie | Use also for ductia |
| ext | extravaganza | |
| fad | fado | |
| faf | fanfare | |
| far | farce | |
| fax | fauxbourdon | |
| fea | feast | |
| fg# | fugue | Instrumental music from the 17th century and later so designated; contrapuntal compositions built on a subject which is introduced at the beginning in imitation and recurs throughout interspersed with other contrapuntal materials, from the 17th century and later |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|-------------------|--|
| fin | finale | |
| fla | flamenco | Includes cante chico, cante hondo, seguriya and similar |
| fls | flagellant song | Use also for Geisslerlied |
| fm# | folk music | Includes folk songs, ballads, etc.; if existing prefer a more specific code |
| fmm | masonic music | |
| fnd | fandango | Includes granadina, rondeña and similar |
| fnk | funk | |
| fns | funeral song | |
| fol | folie | |
| for | forlana | |
| fox | foxtrot | Use also for quickstep and slowfox |
| frd | farandole | |
| frj | free jazz | |
| fro | frottola | Use also for barzelletta, capitulo and similar |
| frs | fricassée | Use also for medley |
| fso | folk song | |
| ft# | fantasia | Instrumental music so designated; includes fantasies, etc.; and includes nonfugal ricercars of the 16th and 17th centuries |
| fum | funeral march | |
| fur | furiant | |
| fus | fusion | |
| fvm | favola per musica | |
| gai | gaillard | Use also for sink-a-pace and similar |
| gal | galop | Use also for Rutscher and Schnell-Polka |
| gas | gassenhauer | |
| gav | gavotte | |
| gch | genero chico | |
| gig | gigue | |
| gle | glee | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|----------------------------|--|
| glo | gloria | |
| gm# | gospel music | |
| gop | gopak | Use also for hopak |
| gos | goliard song | |
| gra | gradual | |
| gre | greghesca | |
| gro | grand opéra | |
| gym | gymel | |
| gyp | gypsy song | Use also for Roma song |
| hab | habanera | |
| had | hadutanc | |
| hal | halling | |
| hem | heavy metal | |
| hip | hip-hop | |
| hit | hit | Use for commercial popular songs, canzonetta leggera, Schlager, etc. |
| hoq | hoquetus | |
| hpp | hornpipe | |
| hrk | hard rock | |
| hum | humoresque | |
| hy# | hymn | |
| hym | hymenaios | |
| idy | idyll | |
| imp | imploratio | |
| imu | impromptu | Use also for improvviso |
| in# | intermezzo | |
| inc | invocatio | |
| ind | intrada | |
| ing | ingressa | |
| inm | incidental / theatre music | |
| int | introduction | Chiefly associated with instrumental music of the classical period including instrumental music of operatic genre; for introductions including voices use din – dramatic introduction |
| inv | invention | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|-----------------------|--|
| iph | iporchema | |
| ipp | improperia | |
| iru | interlude | |
| itd | intermedio | |
| itn | intonation | |
| itt | introit | |
| ivu | invitatorium | |
| jep | jeu parti | |
| jgg | jigg | Stage entertainment |
| jig | jig | Dance form |
| jot | jota | |
| jub | jubilee | |
| jus | justiniane | Use for giustiniana, vinitiana, etc. |
| jz# | jazz | Except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| kld | koleda | |
| kol | kolo | |
| kra | krakowiak | Use also for cracovienne, flisak, volta polonica and similar |
| kuj | kujawiak | |
| kyr | kyrie | |
| lai | lai | |
| lam | lament | Use also for dirge |
| lau | lauda | |
| lby | lullaby / cradle song | For the art form use bcs – berceuse |
| lds | liederspiel | |
| ldy | lindy | Use also for breakaway, jitterburg and similar |
| lec | lectio | |
| les | leise | |
| lgu | langaus | |
| li# | lied | |
| lic | licenza | Use also for epilogue and similar |
| lid | liturgical drama | |
| lir | lirica | Work mainly for solo voice and piano |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--------------------------|---|
| lmz | lamentations | |
| lnd | ländler | Includes Bayrischer, tyrolienne and similar |
| lod | lauds | |
| lou | loure | |
| lty | litany | |
| luc | lucernario | |
| lyh | liturgy of the hours | Use also for Officium, divine office, etc. |
| mat | matin | |
| maz | mazur | |
| mbm | mambo | |
| mc# | musical revue and comedy | For musical revue prefer rev – revue |
| mcc | macchietta | |
| md# | madrigal | |
| mda | melodrama | Use for monodrama, melologo and similar |
| mdc | madrigal comedy | Use for madrigale rappresentativo and similar |
| mds | morceau de salon | |
| mdy | melody | Vocal / instrumental music so designated |
| mgg | maggiolata | |
| mgs | madrigale spirituale | |
| mi# | minuet | |
| mim | military march | |
| mld | mélodie | French mid-19th cent. vocal form |
| mlg | malagueña | |
| mls | melos | |
| mmd | mimodramma | |
| mme | musique mesurée | |
| mmm | mumming | |
| mmo | multimedia opera | |
| mng | milonga | |
| mnh | modinha | |
| mo# | motet | |
| mod | morris dance | |
| mon | monferrina | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|-------------|----------------------|---|
| mor | morality | |
| mp# | moving picture music | Use for soundtracks, film music, etc. |
| mph | metamorphosis | |
| mqu | masque | |
| mr# | march | |
| ms# | mass | |
| msc | moresca | |
| msq | masquerade | Use also for divertimento carnevalesco, trionfo and similar |
| mst | mistery | |
| mtb | matachins buffens | |
| meth | method | Use for didactic tutors |
| mtp | moto perpetuo | |
| mtz | mutanza | |
| mu# | multiple forms | |
| mum | musical moment | |
| mun | muñeira | |
| mus | musette | |
| mxx | maxixe | |
| mym | military music | |
| mz# | mazurka | |
| nat | national anthem | |
| nau | nauba | |
| nc# | nocturne | |
| nen | nenia | |
| noe | noël | |
| nom | nomos | |
| non | nonet | |
| nov | novellette | |
| nry | nursery-rhyme | Use also for filastrocca and similar |
| ntz | nachtanz | |
| nwa | new age | |
| nww | new wave | |
| obk | oberek | |
| oct | octet | |
| ode | ode | |
| ofd | officium defunctorum | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--------------------------|--|
| off | offertorium | |
| ogm | organum | |
| ons | onestep | Use also for castle walk, turkey trot and similar |
| op# | opera | Includes melodrama, drame-lyrique and similar, and where an individual code has not been assigned to a specific form |
| opb | opéra-ballet | |
| opc | opéra comique | Use also for comédie mêlée d'ariettes |
| opf | opéra bouffe | French late 19th cent. humorous and satiric form |
| opm | opera semiseria | Includes dramma semiserio and similar |
| ops | opera seria | Includes dramma per musica, melodramma tragico and similar |
| opt | operetta | |
| opu | opera buffa, comic opera | Includes dramma giocoso, opéra-bouffon, azione comica and similar |
| or# | oratorio | Includes melodramma sacro, opera spirituale and similar |
| ora | oratio | |
| orm | organ mass | |
| ov# | overture | |
| pad | pastoral drama | Includes Hirtenstück, dramma boschereccio and similar dramatic forms |
| paе | paeon | |
| pbr | pibroch | |
| pch | pastiche | |
| pco | postcommunio | |
| pdd | pas de deux | |
| pdv | padovana | |
| pdy | parody | |
| pev | post evangelium | |
| pf# | prelude and fugue | Use preferably two individual codes |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--------------------|--|
| pg# | programme music | |
| pgl | pavaniglia | |
| phy | patriotic hymn | |
| piv | piva | |
| plc | planctus | |
| ple | post lectionem | |
| plk | polka | |
| pll | penillon | |
| plo | palotas | |
| plr | plaisanterie | |
| pls | plantation song | |
| plt | plainte | |
| plu | postlude | |
| pm# | passion music | |
| pmk | polka mazurka | |
| pmm | pantomime | |
| pnk | punk | |
| po# | polonaise | |
| pol | polo | |
| pot | potpourri | |
| pp# | popular music | Except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| pph | paraphrase | |
| ppo | puppet opera | |
| prd | prelude | Use also for praeambulum and similar |
| pre | preghiera | Use for non-liturgical prayers |
| prf | praefatio | |
| prg | périgourdine | |
| prl | prologue | |
| prm | processional march | |
| pro | prooemium | |
| prt | partimento | |
| prz | prophecie | |
| ps# | passacaglia | Instrumental music so designated; includes all |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|-----------------|--|
| | | types of ostinato basses, except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| psa | psalm | |
| psd | paso doble | |
| psl | pastourelle | |
| psp | passepied | |
| psr | pas redoublé | |
| pst | pastoral | Use for the non-dramatic forms |
| pt# | part-songs | |
| ptn | pater noster | |
| ptt | partita | |
| pv# | pavan | |
| pzz | passamezzo | |
| qdl | quadrille | |
| qua | quartet | |
| qui | quintet | |
| quo | quodlibet | |
| rad | rada | |
| rao | radio opera | |
| rap | rap | |
| rc# | rock music | |
| rct | récit | |
| rd# | rondo | Includes instrumental rondeau |
| rde | rondeau | Use for medieval vocal forms; use also for rondellus, round, and similar |
| rdv | ranz des vaches | Use also for Kuhreigen and similar |
| rdw | redowa | |
| rec | recitative | |
| ree | reel | |
| rej | réjouissance | |
| rem | réminiscence | |
| rer | rêverie | |
| res | responsorium | |
| rev | revue | Use also for rivista |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|------------------------|---|
| rg# | ragtime | |
| rgg | reggae | |
| rgl | reigenlied | |
| rgr | ruggiero | Form of basso ostinato |
| rhb | rhythm and blues | |
| rhl | rheinländer | Use also for Bayerische Polka and similar |
| ri# | ricercare | Nonfugal ricercars of the 16th and 17th centuries are coded as fantasias |
| rig | rigaudon | |
| ris | rispetto | |
| rit | ritornello | Use also for refrain, reprise and similar |
| rjk | rejdivak | |
| rmc | romance | Instrumental form |
| rmy | religious melody | |
| rmz | romanza | Vocal form |
| rot | rota | Italian dance form, 14th cent.; for the canon form use rde – rondeau |
| rp# | rhapsody | |
| rq# | requiem mass | |
| rsc | romanesca | |
| rsp | raspa | |
| rtg | rotruenge | |
| rtt | rotta | |
| rue | rueda | |
| rug | ruggiero | Italian folk dance |
| rum | rumba | |
| sad | sacred drama | Use for the works so designated |
| sae | saeta | |
| sai | sainete | |
| san | sanctus | |
| sar | sacra rappresentazione | Renaissance form; includes mistero, auto sacramental and similar |
| scc | sacred cantata | |
| scd | scholastic drama | |
| sce | scene | |
| sch | scherzo | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--------------------|--|
| scp | schuhplattler | |
| scs | sacred song | Non-liturgical song |
| sct | scat | |
| sdh | schnadahüpfl | Use also for Gstanzl, lâtär and similar |
| sdr | scherzo drammatico | Use for the works so designated |
| sep | sepolcro | |
| seq | sequence | |
| sev | sevillana | |
| sex | sextet | |
| sft | sinfonietta | |
| sg# | song | Except where an individual code has been assigned to a specific form |
| sgl | seguidilla | |
| sha | shanty | |
| shm | shimmy | |
| si# | sinfonia | Use for works so designated from the late Renaissance for a variety of performing media, usually instrumental ensembles, commonly part of a larger framework |
| sic | siciliana | |
| ska | ska | |
| skt | sketch | |
| sll | sallenda | |
| slq | soliloquy | Use also for monologue |
| sls | salsa | |
| slt | saltarello | Use also for pas de Brabant and similar |
| smb | samba | |
| sml | psalmellus | |
| sn# | sonata | |
| snd | serenade | Instrumental form, use also for Nachtmusik, Ständchen and similar |
| snt | serenata | Vocal form |
| sol | solfeggio | |
| sou | soul | |
| sp# | symphonic poem | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|--|---|
| spi | spiritual | |
| sps | social and political song, prison song, emigrant song, work song | |
| spt | septet | |
| sq# | square dance | |
| srb | sarabande | |
| srd | sardana | |
| srn | sarum | |
| srv | sirventes | |
| ssp | singspiel | |
| sss | seises | |
| st# | study / exercise | |
| ste | schottische | Use also for German polka, Ecossaise valzer and similar |
| sth | schottish | Use also for seven step polka and similar |
| sto | stornello | |
| str | strambotto | |
| sts | strathspey | |
| stt | saltarello tedesco | |
| su# | suite | Use also for ordre |
| swi | swing | |
| sww | song without words | |
| sy# | symphony | Use for an extended and autonomous work for orchestra |
| syc | sinfonia concertante | |
| syd | symphonie dramatique | Use for the works so designated, use also for drame symphonique |
| sym | symbolum | |
| syo | syomyo | |
| tar | tarantella | |
| tc# | toccata | Instrumental music so designated |
| tcn | trecanum | |
| tct | tricotet | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------------|------------------|--|
| tdn | triōdion | |
| tem | techno music | |
| ten | tenso | |
| ter | terzet | Vocal form |
| tex | tex-mex | |
| tfn | tafelmusik | |
| thr | threnos | |
| ths | third stream | |
| tir | tirana | |
| tmb | tambourin | |
| tnc | trenchmore | |
| tng | tango | |
| tod | torch dance | |
| tom | tombeau | |
| ton | tonadilla | |
| tou | tourney | |
| tra | tract | |
| trd | tourdion | |
| trg | trishagion | |
| tri | trio | Instrumental form |
| trl | tragédie lyrique | |
| trm | tricinium | |
| tro | trope | |
| trq | traquenard | |
| trs | treatise | |
| trt | transitorium | |
| trz | trezza | |
| ts# | triosonata | |
| tft | tattoo | |
| tum | tumba | Use also for contradanza criolla |
| tvo | television opera | |
| two | two-step | |
| vau | vaudeville | |
| vir | virelai | |
| vlc | villancico | |
| vln | villanella | Use also for canzone alla napoletana and similar |
| vlt | villotta | |

| Code | Term | Notes |
|------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| vly | voluntary | |
| vnz | veneziana | |
| voc | vocalise | |
| vol | volta | |
| vr# | variation | Includes division, ground and similar |
| vra | verse, alleluia | |
| vrg | verse, gradual | |
| vri | verse, introit | |
| vrl | versicle | |
| vrr | verse, responsorium | |
| vrs | verse | |
| vsp | vespers | |
| vvn | varsovienn | |
| wem | wedding march | |
| wom | world music | |
| wsg | war song | |
| wz# | waltz | |
| yar | yaraví | |
| zam | zamacueca | |
| zap | zapateado | |
| zar | zarzuela | |
| zmb | zamba | |
| zop | zoppa | |
| zor | zortziko | |
| zwi | zwiefacher | |
| zz# | other form | |

2. CODES FOR KEY OR MODE OF MUSICAL WORK

Keys

| Code | Key |
|------|---------------|
| a | A major |
| am | A minor |
| ab | A flat major |
| abm | A flat minor |
| axm | A sharp minor |
| b | B major |

| Code | Key |
|------|---------------|
| bm | B minor |
| bb | B flat major |
| bbm | B flat minor |
| c | C major |
| cm | C minor |
| cb | C flat major |
| cx | C sharp major |
| cxm | C sharp minor |
| d | D major |
| dm | D minor |
| db | D flat major |
| dxm | D sharp minor |
| e | E major |
| em | E minor |
| eb | E flat major |
| ebm | E flat minor |
| f | F major |
| fm | F minor |
| fx | F sharp major |
| fxm | F sharp minor |
| g | G major |
| gm | G minor |
| gb | G flat major |
| gxm | G sharp minor |

Modes

| Code | Mode | Mode Name (Greek) | Mode Name (Latin) |
|------|------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 01 | 1. | Protus authentic | Dorian |
| 02 | 2. | Protus plagal | Hypodorian |
| 03 | 3. | Deuterus authentic | Phrygian |
| 04 | 4. | Deuterus Plagal | Hypophrygian |
| 05 | 5. | Tritus authentic | Lydian |
| 06 | 6. | Tritus plagal | Hypolydian |
| 07 | 7. | Tetrardus authentic | Mixolydian |

| Code | Mode | Mode Name (Greek) | Mode Name (Latin) |
|------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 08 | 8. | Tetrardus plagal | Hypomixolydian |
| 09 | 9. | | Aeolian |
| 10 | 10. | | Hypoaolian |
| 11 | 11. | | Ionian |
| 12 | 12. | | Hypoionian |
| 13 | Tonus Peregrinus | | |
| zz | Other | | |

130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to microforms.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when more than one microform is described in a single bibliographic record.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Microform Coded Data – Physical Attributes

All data entered in \$a are identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 10. All character positions must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Specific Material Designation | 1 | 0 |
| Polarity | 1 | 1 |
| Dimensions | 1 | 2 |
| Reduction ratio | 1 | 3 |
| Specific reduction ratio | 3 | 4-6 |
| Colour | 1 | 7 |
| Emulsion on film | 1 | 8 |
| Generation | 1 | 9 |
| Base of film | 1 | 10 |

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Specific Material Designation

a = aperture card

b = microform cartridge

c = microfilm cassette

d = microfilm reel

e = microfiche

f = microfiche cassette

g = micro opaque

h = microfilm slip

u = unspecified

z = Other

\$a/1 Polarity

a = positive

b = negative

d = mixed polarity

u = unknown

\$a/2 Dimensions

a = 8 mm (microfilm)

d = 16 mm (microfilm)

f = 35 mm (microfilm)

g = 70 mm (microfilm)

h = 105 mm (microfilm)

l = 3x5 in. (8x13 cm) (microfiche or micro opaque)

m = 4x6 in. (11x15 cm) (microfiche or micro opaque)

o = 6x9 in. (16x23 cm) (microfiche or micro opaque)

p = 3 1/4 x 7 3/8 in. (9x19 cm) (aperture card)

u = unknown

z = other

\$a/3 Reduction ratio

a = low reduction

b = normal (16x – 30x)

c = high (31x – 60x)

d = very high (61x – 90x)

e = ultra-high (91x –)

u = unknown

v = varies

\$a/4-6 Specific reduction ratio

The magnification needed to make the microform legible. Normally stated on the item. If value given, right justified with zero fill. If single digit missing, replaced by 'u'. If ratio unknown, filled with blanks.

\$a/7 Colour

- a = monochrome
- b = colour
- u = unknown
- v = varies
- z = other

\$a/8 Emulsion on film

- a = silver halide
- b = diazo
- c = vesicular
- u = unknown
- v = mixed emulsion
- x = not applicable
- z = other

\$a/9 Generation

- a = first generation (Master)
- b = printing master
- c = service copy
- u = unknown
- v = mixed generations

\$a/10 Base of film

- a = safety base, undetermined
- b = not a safety base (e.g. nitrate)
- c = safety base, acetate undetermined
- d = safety base, diacetate
- e = safety base, polyester
- f = safety base, mixed, mixed safety base films spliced together, no nitrate film
- g = safety base, triacetate
- u = unknown
- x = not applicable

Example

EX 1: 130 ##\$aebmb024aaca

e microfiche

b negative polarity

m 4x6 inches

b normal reduction ratio of:024 24:

a monochrome

a silver halide base

c service copy

a on a safety base

131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS: GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to the geodetic, grid and vertical measurement details of cartographic materials.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Spheroid

A two-character code indicates the spheroid used to construct the map. Repeatable.

\$b Horizontal Datum

A three character code used to indicate the horizontal datum(s) named on the cartographic material. Repeatable for each datum.

\$c Grid and Referencing System

A two-character code indicating the main grid or referencing system. This code (and those in subfields \$d and \$e) includes the spheroid of construction of the grid (as opposed to the spheroid of construction of the map given in subfield \$a). Repeatable.

\$d Overlapping and Referencing System

A two-character code indicating a subsidiary grid or referencing system which extends across the face of the cartographic material. Repeatable.

\$e Secondary Grid and Referencing System

A two-character code indicating a subsidiary grid or referencing system which appears in the form of marginal ticks. Repeatable.

\$f Vertical Datum

A two-character code used to indicate the vertical datum(s) named on the cartographic material. Repeatable for each datum.

\$g Unit of Measurement of Heighting

A two-character code indicating the unit of measurement of heighting. Repeatable.

- \$h** Contour Interval
- Up to four characters indicating the value of interval of the main contours (i.e. those contours which always appear when applicable) in the unit of measurement given in subfield \$g. Up to one decimal place may be recorded, values of more than one decimal place should be rounded up to one. Repeatable for each value when, for example, the value changes with height.
- \$i** Supplementary Contour Interval
- Up to four characters indicating the value of the interval of supplementary contours, i.e. contours used between main contours to increase the topographic expression of the area (e.g. in areas of low relief) or contours whose value is not repeated on the surface of the map. The unit of measurement is that given in subfield \$g. Up to one decimal place may be recorded, values of more than one decimal place should be rounded up to one. Repeatable.
- \$j** Unit of Measurement of Bathymetry
- \$k** Bathymetric Interval
- \$l** Supplementary Bathymetric Interval
- The oceanographic equivalent of subfields \$g to \$i. The rules for these subfields apply to subfields \$j to \$l.

Notes on Field Contents

For a list of codes see Appendix F.

Related Fields

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GENERAL

121 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

These fields are used to code other attributes of cartographic materials.

Examples

EX 1: 131 ##\$auu\$baqh\$spe

The spheroid used to construct the map is unknown. The horizontal datum is the European Datum. The map uses the Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, International Spheroid.

EX 2: 13l ##\$auu\$bbpm\$cpd\$fnk\$gab\$h40\$i20

The spheroid used to construct the map is unknown. The horizontal datum is the North American Datum 1927. The map uses the Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, unknown spheroid. The vertical datum is the Sea Level Datum 1929, USA. The heighting is in feet. Main contour intervals are at 40 feet, with other intervals at 20 feet.

135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES

Field Definition

This field contains coded data relating to electronic resources.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when more than one type of file/software program is described in the same record.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Coded Data for Electronic Resources

All data in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered 0-12. Not repeatable.

Table of Subfield \$a Fixed-length Data Elements

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Type of electronic resource | 1 | 0 |
| Special material designation | 1 | 1 |
| Colour | 1 | 2 |
| Dimensions | 1 | 3 |
| Sound | 1 | 4 |
| Image bit depth | 3 | 5-7 |
| Number of file formats | 1 | 8 |
| Quality assurance target(s) | 1 | 9 |
| Antecedent/Source | 1 | 10 |
| Level of compression | 1 | 11 |
| Reformatting quality | 1 | 12 |

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted for this data element, the field should not be present.

\$a/0 Type of electronic resource

A one-character code indicates the type of data file.

a = numeric

A data file that contains mostly numbers or representation by numbers, such as records containing information on student test scores, information on football team statistics,

etc. The information may be original surveys or information that has been summarized or statistically manipulated.

b = computer program(s)

A data file that contains an ordered set of instructions directing the computer to perform basic operations and identifying the information and mechanisms required. This category includes videogame and microcomputer software and computer models.

c = representational

A data file that contains pictorial or graphic information that can be manipulated in conjunction with other types of files to produce graphic patterns that can be used to interpret and give meaning to the information.

d = text

A data file that contains mostly alphabetic information (words or sentences) converted into a coded format that can be processed, sorted, and manipulated by machine, and then retrieved in many optional formats. This category includes such information as bibliographic files and files containing literary texts, and (in records created before the introduction of code e) bibliographic files.

e = bibliographic data

Code **e** indicates that the resource consists of data with bibliographic citations. This includes data from library catalogues or citation databases. The data may be in a structured or unstructured form.

f = font

Code **f** indicates a resource contains information for a computer to produce fonts.

g = game

Code **g** indicates that the resource is a game, intended for recreational or educational use. Generally games consist of text and software. Videogames are included here.

h = sound

Code **h** indicates that the resource consists of data encoding sounds produced by the computer.

i = interactive multimedia

Code **i** indicates that the resource described by the record supports navigation through and manipulation of many kinds of media (i.e. audio, video, etc).

j = online system or service

Code **j** indicates that the described resource is an online system or service and may contain non-bibliographic information. An online system or service supports system-based user interaction. Examples of these are: online library systems; FTP sites; electronic bulletin boards; discussion groups/lists; World Wide Web sites, network information centres.

u = unknown

The type of data file is not known.

v = combination

A data file with different types of content.

z = other

A type of data file for which no specific code has been assigned.

\$a/1 Special material designation

A one-character code indicates the type of data carrier.

a = cartridge magnetic tape

b = computer chip in cartridge

c = computer optical disc cartridge

f = computer magnetic cassette tape

h = magnetic tape for main-frame computers

j = computer floppy disk

m = computer magneto-optical disk

o = computer optical disk

r = online systems

u = unknown

z = other

\$a/2 Colour

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the colour characteristics of an electronic resource.

a = One colour

b = Black-and-white

c = Multicoloured

g = Grey scale

m = Mixed

n = Not applicable

u = Unknown

z = Other

\$a/3 Dimensions

A one-character alphabetic code used to indicate the dimensions of the medium used to encode the electronic resource . Only the most common dimensions are indicated. In many cases, the dimensions apply to the container in which a magnetic or optical medium is encased.

a = 3½ in.

e = 12 in.

g = 4¾ in. or 12 cm.

i = 1 1/8 x 2 3/8 in.

j = 3 7/8 x 2 1/2 in.

n = Not applicable

o = 5¼ in.

u = Unknown

v = 8 in.

z = Other

\$a/4 Sound

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the production of sound is an integral part of an electronic resource.

= No sound (silent)

a = Sound on medium

u = Unknown

\$a/5-7 Image Bit Depth

This character position includes a three-character numeric code which indicates the exact bit depth of the scanned image(s) that comprise the electronic resource, or a three-character alphabetic code which indicates that the exact bit depth cannot be recorded. Bit depth is determined by the number of bits used to define each pixel representing the image.

The proposed definitions for bit depth require that if the exact bit depth is not known, or if there are multiple images with varying bit depths comprising the electronic resource, either '---' (unknown) or 'mmm' (multiple) is used. Only exact bit depth information should be given.

001-999 = Exact bit depth

mmm = Multiple (more than one image type)

nnn = Not applicable

--- = Unknown

\$a/8 Number of File Formats

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the file(s) which comprise(s) the electronic resource are of the same format or type for digitally reformatted materials.

a = One file format

m = Multiple file formats

u = Unknown

\$a/9 Quality Assurance Target(s)

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether quality assurance targets have been included appropriately at the time of reformatting/creation of the electronic resource. Commonly found quality control targets for scanning include the Kodak Q13 or Q14 Color Separation Guide and Gray Scale; Kodak Q60 Color Input Target; AIIM Scanning Test Chart #2; and the RIT Alphanumeric Resolution Test Object.

Commonly found quality assurance targets for re-recording/transfer of audio files include reference and azimuth tones.

a = Absent

n = Not applicable

p = Present

u = Unknown

\$a/10 Antecedent/Source

When an item is coded 'a', "original" refers to a non-reformatted original. This could be a book, a manuscript, a sheet of paper or vellum, etc. When applying this byte to photography, the concept of "original" must take the creator's intention into consideration; because it is often the photographic print which is the finished piece and not the camera negative.

a = File reproduced from original

b = File reproduced from microform

c = File reproduced from electronic resource

d = File reproduced from an intermediate source other than microform

m = Mixed

n = Not applicable

u = Unknown

\$a/11 Level of Compression

A one-character alphabetic code indicates what level of compression the electronic resource has been subjected to.

a = Uncompressed

b = Lossless

d = Lossy

m = Mixed

u = Unknown

\$a/12 Reformatting Quality

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the general physical features and intended use of a reformatted electronic resource, distinguishing between files intended for access to original items from those intended to preserve (and possibly replace) the original item.

Reformatting quality information is similar to that conveyed in the 130 "Coded Data Field: Microforms -- Physical Attributes" subfield \$a/9 (Generation) where distinctions are made between master, printing, service, and mixed copy microforms.

a = Access

Indicates that the electronic resource is of a quality that will support current, electronic access to the original item, but not sufficient to serve as a preservation copy.

n = Not applicable

p = Preservation

Indicates that the electronic resource was created via reformatting to help preserve the original item.

r = Replacement

Indicates the electronic resource is of very high quality and, when printed out, viewed on screen or played via a listening device, could serve as a replacement should the original be lost, damaged, or destroyed.

u = Unknown

Examples

EX 1: 135 ##\$adrbn#---aaaaa

An online (\$a/1: r) text (\$a/0: d) file, which is black and white (\$a/2: b). It has no physical dimensions (\$a/3: n) and no sound (\$a/4: #). Image bit depth is unknown (\$a/5-7: ---). It is in one file format (\$a/8: a). Quality assurance targets are absent (\$a/9: a). The file was reproduced from an original (\$a/10: a). It is uncompressed (\$a/11: a). It is for access only (\$a/12: a).

EX 2: 135 ##\$acrmn#mmmmucda

An institution is running a scanning project related to the birds of North America. The books scanned in this project have both black and white and colour images. Master files of the books are being created, but the institution has also made a decision to create separate "access versions" for easy accessibility via the Internet. To accomplish this, the decision has been made to make the text pages available as bitonal (b/w) images, but because the colouring of the birds is important to capture and make available, the colour plates will be made available as true-colour, compressed images. The 135 field is for an access version derived from an electronic resource of a digitally reformatted original, stored remotely, and accessed over a computer network. The access file is comprised of both 24-bit colour and 8-bit bitonal images (no sound) which have been compressed using JPEG (a lossy compression system). It is not known if this access version contains quality control targets.

EX 3: 135 ##\$adugn#008apabr

A research library is reformatting a set of high-use, but brittle, early nineteenth-century books as a preservation project. Because the poor physical condition will likely withstand only one preservation action, the bibliographer, in consultation with the preservation staff, has decided that these text-only (\$a/0: d) volumes would be best replaced (\$a/12: r) via high-quality digitisation (\$a/10: a). The institution will create a master file for preservation purposes, which it has committed to storing, refreshing and migrating over time. The original volumes will be discarded after digitisation and quality control has been completed. The image files will be greyscale images (\$a/2: g), 8 bpp (\$a/7: 8), and saved as TIFF images (a lossless compression scheme (\$a/11: b)). Quality control targets (a Kodak Grayscale bar and resolution targets) will be included at the time of scanning (\$a/9: p). The 135 field for the master files of the set reflects the digitised version of the original, reformatted (and replaced) during preservation. The electronic resource comprises greyscale TIFF images only (no sound (\$a/4: #)) which

were scanned at a bit depth of 8 bits per pixel (\$a/5-7: 008), including quality control targets and is compressed using lossless compression. Because this file was created to replace the original volumes, the medium on which the file is stored will vary as it is refreshed and migrated to new systems to remain accessible (\$a/1: u).

EX 4: 135 # \$ahrnnannnaadn

An on-line MPEG3 file consisting of sound only.

EX 5: 135 ## \$adoag#001aambr

A digitised version of a journal, reformatted from microform and partly from original (135\$a/10: m) for access and preservation; its quality justifies using it as replacement of the original (135\$a/12: r). The electronic resource is comprised of bitonal (\$a/2: a) TIFF images only (135 \$a/8: a) (no sound) (\$a/4: #) which were scanned at a bit depth of 1 bit per pixel (135 \$a/5-7: 001), not including quality control targets (135 \$a/9: a) and is compressed using lossless compression (135\$a/11: b). The master file is stored on CD-ROM (\$a/1: o; \$a/3: g) and may be migrated to new systems to remain accessible.

EX 6: 135 ## \$adumn#mmmmmpabp

A digitised book, reformatted from original (135\$a/10: a) for preservation (135\$a/12: p). The electronic resource is comprised of grayscale and colour (\$a/2: m) images (135 \$a/08: m) (no sound) (\$a/4: #) which were scanned at multiple bit depths (135 \$a/5-7: mmm), including quality control targets (135 \$a/9: p) and is compressed using lossless compression (135\$a/11: b). The master file is stored on changing servers (\$a/1: u; \$a/3: n) while being migrated to new systems to remain accessible.

140 CODED DATA FIELD: ANTIQUARIAN – GENERAL

Field Definition

This field contains fixed-length coded data relating to the physical form of older monographic publications (antiquarian) and also later materials described in similar bibliographic detail.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Antiquarian Coded Data – General

All data entered in \$a is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 27. All character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

Table of Subfield \$a Fixed-Length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Illustration Codes – Book | 4 | 0-3 |
| Illustration Codes – Full Page Plates | 4 | 4-7 |
| Illustration Code – Technique | 1 | 8 |
| Form of Contents Code | 8 | 9-16 |
| Literature Code | 2 | 17-18 |
| Biography Code | 1 | 19 |
| Support Material – Book | 1 | 20 |
| Support Material – Plates | 1 | 21 |
| Watermark Code | 1 | 22 |
| Printer's Device Code | 1 | 23 |
| Publisher's Device Code | 1 | 24 |
| Ornamental Device Code | 1 | 25 |
| Unassigned | 2 | 26-27 |

Notes on Field Contents

Table of Subfield \$a Fixed-Length Data Elements:

\$a/0-3 Illustration Codes – Book

There are four character positions available for illustration codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than

four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order they appear in the list below. Note that blanks are used in preference to 'y' in these character positions.

These codes usually relate to terms in the physical description of the item. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 0-3; if they are used but fewer than four types of illustrations are present, then remaining positions contain blanks.

a = illustrations (use for types of illustrations which are not covered below, or when types of illustrations are not being specifically coded)

b = illuminations

c = ornamental letter

d = miniature

e = rubric (i.e. heading etc. in special lettering)

f = vignette (i.e. ornament round capital letter etc. or in blank space)

g = frontispiece

h = portrait

i = vedute (i.e. panoramic view of a city etc. with important features identified)

j = maps

k = charts (i.e. maps for navigation)

l = plans

m = music

n = coats of arms

o = genealogical tables

y = no illustrations

z = other

= value position not needed

\$a/4-7 Illustration Codes – Full Page Plates

There are four character positions available for illustration codes for full page plates and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order they appear in the list below. Note that blanks are used in preference to 'y' in these character positions.

These codes usually relate to terms in the physical description of the item. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 4-7; if they are used but fewer than four types of illustrations on full page plates are present, then remaining positions contain blanks; if there are no full page plates in the item and that fact is known, then all positions contain blanks.

a = illustrations

m = music

g = frontispiece

n = coats of arms

h = portraits

o = genealogical tables

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| i = vedute | y = no illustrations |
| j = maps | z = other |
| k = charts (i.e. maps for navigation) | # = value position not needed |
| l = plans | |

\$a/8 Illustration Code – Technique

A one-character code indicating a technique in which the illustration is executed.

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| a = woodcut | u = unknown |
| b = lithography | v = mixed |
| c = etching | z = other |
| d = aquatint | # = value position not needed |
| e = engraving | |

\$a/9-16 Form of Contents Code

There are four two-character codes indicating the form of contents codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the alphabetical order of the codes' first letter as they appear in the list below.

These codes should be used whether the item contains this form of material or consists completely of this form of material. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 9-16. If a form not listed is required, code 'zz' is used.

aa = religious work (use for Bible stories, catechism, devotional literature, hymn, indulgences, litany, miracle narrative, religious plays, sermons, service books, etc. If specific designation is needed for catechism, devotional literature, sermon and service books use codes 'ab', 'ac', 'ad' and 'ae' respectively)

ab = catechism

ac = devotional literature (i.e. books of hours, devotional calendars, novenas, prayer books, psalters, etc.)

ad = sermon, i.e. apocalyptic sermons, children's sermons, occasional sermons, etc.

ae = service books, i.e. liturgical books: antiphonary, breviary, evangelistary, gradual, hymnal, missal, pontifical, ritual, sacramentary, etc.

ba = scientific work, i.e. scientific atlas, herbal, laboratory note, pharmacopoeia, etc.

bb = discussion, dissertation, thesis

ca = social customs, i.e. courtesy books, festival books, fraternity and lodge rituals, etc.

da = legal work, i.e. laws, acts, bills, charters, treaties, regulations, etc.

db = political work

ea = ephemera, i.e. advertisements (booksellers', printers', publishers' advertisements), sales catalogues (auction, booksellers', manufacturers', etc.), broadsides, programs, etc.

fa = reference work (use for academic catalogue, library catalogue, museum catalogue, almanac, bibliography, calendar, directory, index, wordbook, thesaurus, schematisms, etc. If specific designation is needed for library catalogue, bibliography, calendar, index, dictionary and encyclopedia use codes 'fb', 'fc', 'fd', 'fe', 'ff' and 'fg' respectively)

fb = library catalogue

fc = bibliography

fd = calendar

fe = index

ff = dictionary

fg = encyclopedia

ga = historical work, i.e. chronicles, annals, biography, genealogy, family, local, oral and military history, etc.

ha = polemical treatise

ia = discursive work, i.e. addresses, dialogue, interview, letters, questions and answers, etc.

ja = commemorative work, i.e. Festschrift, album, epitaph, eulogy, memorial, etc.

ka = instructional work (use for instructional work in general. If specific designation is needed for manuals and textbooks use codes 'kb' and 'kc' respectively)

kb = manual, i.e. handbook

kc = textbook, i.e. alphabet, anthology, chrestomathy, primer, reader, grammar, etc.

la = record-keeping work, i.e. certificate, price list, subscribers' list, voting register, etc.

ma = recreations, i.e. colouring book, games, puzzles, etc.

na = version of a work, i.e. adaptation, abridgement, parody, expurgated edition, scenario, etc.

zz = other

= value position not needed

\$a/17-18 Literature Code

When a work is a literary text a two-character code indicates the type of literary text.

aa = poetry

ab = romance, e.g. gesta, pastoral romance

ca = drama

da = libretto

ea = fiction (use for fiction in general. If specific designation is needed for novel, novella, fable, fairy tale, allegory, legend, parable and short story use appropriate codes given below)

eb = novel

ec = novella
ed = fable
ef = fairy tale
eg = allegory
eh = legend
ei = parable
ej = short story
fa = essay, feuilleton
ga = humour, satire
ha = letters
ia = miscellanea
ja = maxim, aphorism, proverb, anecdote
ka = juvenile literature
la = other (use for chronicle, memoir, diary, biography, hagiography, travelogue, erotica, mystic literature, etc. If specific designation is needed for these, use appropriate codes given below)
lb = chronicle
lc = memoir
ld = diary
le = biography
lf = hagiography
lg = travelogue
lh = erotica
li = mystic literature
ma = oratory, speeches
yy = not a literary text
zz = multiple or other

\$a/19Biography Code

When a work is biographical a one-character code indicates the type of biography.

a = autobiography (use for memoir and confession)
b = individual biography
c = collective biography
d = contains biographical information
y = not biographical
z = multiple or other form

\$a/20 Support Material – Book

A one-character code indicating a support material on which the work is printed or written.

- a = paper, general
- b = hand-made paper
- c = rice paper
- d = wood-pulp paper
- e = parchment, vellum
- z = other

\$a/21 Support Material – Plates

A one-character code indicating a support material on which the plates are executed. If there are no plates in the item and that fact is known, then this position contains blank.

- a = paper, general
- b = hand-made paper
- c = rice paper
- d = wood-pulp paper
- e = parchment, vellum
- z = other

= value position not needed

\$a/22 Watermark Code

A one-character code indicating whether the paper contains watermark.

- 0 = paper does not contain watermark
- 1 = paper contains watermark

\$a/23 Printer's Device Code

A one-character code indicating whether the book contains printer's device.

- 0 = printer's device not present
- 1 = printer's device present

\$a/24 Publisher's Device Code

A one-character code indicating whether the book contains publisher's device.

- 0 = publisher's device not present
- 1 = publisher's device present

\$a/25 Ornamental Device Code

A one-character code indicating whether the book contains ornamental device.

- 0 = ornamental device not present
- 1 = ornamental device present

\$a/26-27 Unassigned

These character positions contain blanks.

Related Fields

105 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC

This field contains coded data relating to monographic language materials not considered antiquarian.

Examples

EX 1: 140 ##\$abc#####azz#####aaya#0000##

Coded information for C. Valerius Catullus's *Carmina*. Venetiis, Andreas de Paltascichis, XVIII kal. Jan. [15. XII] 1487 et 1. II 1488.

EX 2: 140 ##\$acfhnajihega#####lebaa0000##

Coded information for Natale solum magni ecclesiae doctoris sancti Hieronymi in ruderibus Stridonis occultatum... ac brevis Illyricanae chronologiae adjunto erutum atque cum vita ejusdem purpurati Dalmatae per Josephum Bedekovich, Neostadii Austriae, Ex Typographeo Muelleriano, 1752.

EX 3: 140 ##\$acn##y####ega#####layb#1000##

Coded information for *Itinerario da Terra Sancta e suas particularidades* compostos por frey Pantaliam Daviero. Em Lisboa, 1593.

EX 4: 140 ##\$an#####adagana#yyyb#1000##

Coded information for Capitulações da paz feita entre el Rey nosso senhor & o Serenissimo Rey da Gram Bretanha as quaes se concluryram pelos deputados que nellas se diz, em Madrid a 15 de Novembre de 1630. Em Lisboa, 1633.

141 CODED DATA FIELD — COPY SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition

This field contains fixed-length data relating to the specific attributes of the binding and body of a copy of a book.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if the record contains details of more than one copy.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Coded data – Copy specific attributes

All data entered in \$a are identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 7. All character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Not repeatable.

\$b Binding specific characteristics

If necessary, the binding material specified in subfield \$a/0-2, may be described further in subfield \$b.

All data entered in \$b are identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 7. All character positions defined must appear in the subfield. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$c Age

The century relating to the binding of the copy. Not repeatable.

\$d Binding State of Preservation Code – specific

If necessary, the binding material specified in subfield \$a/5, may be described further in subfield \$d, three character positions defining the types of binding conditions. Not repeatable.

\$e Body of the Book specific characteristics

All data entered in \$e are identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0 to 5. All character positions defined must appear in subfield. Optional. Not repeatable.

- \$f Body of the Book State of Preservation Code – specific
Three character positions defining the types of body of the book conditions. Not repeatable.
- \$5 Institution and Copy to which the Field Applies
Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Table of Subfield \$a Fixed-Length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|
| Binding Material Code – general | 3 | 0-2 |
| Types of Binding Code | 1 | 3 |
| 'Bound with' code | 1 | 4 |
| Binding State of Preservation Code – general | 1 | 5 |
| State of Preservation Code – body of the book general | 2 | 6/7 |

\$a/0-2 Binding Material Code – General

There are three character positions for codes indicating the main type of binding material used. They should be entered from left to right, and unused positions should be filled with blanks. For more detailed specification use \$b Characteristics of binding.

- a = parchment, vellum
- b = leather
- c = wood
- d = cloth
- e = synthetics
- f = cardboard
- g = paper
- h = unbound
- u = unknown
- z = other
- # = information not required

\$a/3 Types of Binding Code

A one-character code indicating the type of binding.

a = original binding, i.e. primary

b = non-original, i.e. rebound

c = modern

d = restored, facsimile

e = restored, imitation

f = work bound with another (use for publisher's, distributor's and/or owner's binding)

h = in sheets, unbound

j = facsimile

k = restored original

l = restored non-original

u = unknown

z = other

= information not available

\$a/4 'Bound with' Code

A one-character code indicating whether the copy in hand is a single item or bound with one or more others.

0 = single item

1 = bound with one or more others

\$a/5 State of Preservation Code – Binding – general

A one-character code indicating the state of preservation of the copy in hand.

a = excellent

b = good

c = worn (by time, heavy or prolonged use, etc.)

d = damaged (by physical and/or mechanical, chemical or biological causes)

e = broken back

f = missing

g = restored

u = unknown

z = other

= information not required

\$a/6-7 State of Preservation Code – Body of the Book – general

Two one-character codes indicating the state of preservation of the body of the book of the copy in hand. They should be entered from left to right, and unused positions should be filled with blanks.

a = excellent

b = good

c = worn (by time, heavy or prolonged use, etc.)

d = damaged (by physical and/or mechanical, chemical or biological causes)

e = lacking leaf/leaves

g = restored

u = unknown

z = other

= information not required

Table of Subfield \$b Fixed-Length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Primary Binding Material | 2 | 0-1 |
| Secondary Binding Material | 2 | 2-3 |
| Binding decoration | 1 | 4 |
| Decoration motifs | 1 | 5 |
| Binding pieces | 1 | 6 |
| Boards | 1 | 7 |

\$b/0-1 Primary binding material

Two-character codes indicate the material used to cover the item: the stiff boards, etc., over which the leather, cloth, etc. is applied, are coded in \$b/7. The most specific codes available should always be used.

If the item has two significant binding materials, the second one is coded in positions 2-3. For example, a book with a carved ivory covers and morocco leather spine would be coded "biah". If three or more materials are used, code the most prominent or significant in positions 0-1, and use code 'tt' (Mixed) in positions 2-3. If there is no secondary binding material, positions 2-3 are filled with two blanks (##).

If the item is unbound, use xx##

If the code in subfield \$a/0-2 is 'a' or 'b' more specific codes below could be used.

Skins/Leathers

aa = Parchment

ab = Vellum

ac = Calfskin

ad = Sheepskin
ae = Basil, basan, bazan
af = Roan
ag = Goatskin
ah = Morocco
ai = Niger
aj = Chamois
al = Pigskin
am = Alum tawed, white leather, hungarian leather
an = Shagreen
ao = Horse- or ass-skin, etc.
ap = Fish and marine mammals: ray, shark, sealskin, etc.
aq = Snakeskin
ar = Other animal skins
as = Unidentified leathers and animal skins

Other animal materials

bi = Ivory
bm = Mother-of-pearl, nacre
bt = Tortoiseshell
bz = Other materials from animal shells, tusks, etc.

If the code in subfield \$a/0-2 is 'f' or 'g' more specific codes below could be used.

Paper and by-products

ca = Cardboard
cb = Paper
cc = Marbled paper
cd = Papier mâché

If the code in subfield \$a/0-2 is 'c' or 'd' more specific codes below could be used.

Other natural materials

da = Cloth, book cloth
db = Buckram
dc = Calico
dd = Canvas
de = Linen
df = Moiré

dg = Silk
dh = Watered silk (moiré effect)
dj = Satin
dl = Velvet
dm = Other fabrics made of natural materials
dw = Wood

If the code in subfield \$a/0-2 is 'e' more specific codes below could be used.

Artificial materials

ep = Plastic coverings
es = Synthetic fibres

If the code in subfield \$a/0-2 is 'z' more specific codes below could be used.

Metals

Usually found only in fixtures (clasps, etc.): ignore unless use is very significant.

fb = Brass, bronze
fg = Gold
fs = Silver
tt = Mixed

Used in positions 2-3 if there are more than two significant binding materials.

uu = Unknown
xx = Not applicable

The item is unbound. Use ## in positions 2-3

zz = Other binding materials

\$b/2-3 Secondary binding material

Two-character codes indicate the secondary binding material. The two-character codes specified for character positions 0-1 are used.

\$b/4 Binding decoration

= Information not available
a = Gold tooling
b = Silver tooling
c = Blind tooling
u = Unknown
x = Not applicable
z = Other

\$b/5 Decoration motifs

= Information not available

a = geometric

b = anthropomorphic

c = floral

d = animal

e = heraldic

f = monograms

g = mixed

u = Unknown

x = Not applicable

z = Other

\$b/6 Binding pieces

= Information not available

a = Toggles or ties

b = Buckles

c = Fastenings

d = Bosses

e = Metal decorative pieces

f = Stiffeners

u = Unknown

x = Not applicable

z = Other

\$b/7 Boards

= Information not available

a = Wood

b = Paper

c = Pasteboard

u = Unknown

x = Not applicable

z = Other

\$c Age

- # = Information not available
- a = earlier than 10th Century
- b = 10th-14th Century
- c = 15th Century
- d = 16th Century
- e = 17th Century
- f = 18th Century
- g = 19th Century
- h = 20th Century
- i = 21st Century
- u = Unknown
- z = Other

\$d/0-2 Binding State of Preservation Code – specific

- a = chemical damage (use for types of chemical damage which are not covered below, or when types of chemical damage are not being specifically coded)
- b = acidification
- c = foxing
- d = biological damage (use for types of biological damage which are not covered below, or when types of biological damage are not being specifically coded)
- e = wormholes
- f = rodent damage
- g = mould
- h = physical and/or mechanical damage (use for types of physical and/or mechanical damage which are not covered below, or when types of physical and/or mechanical damage are not being specifically coded)
- i = water stain
- j = fire damage
- k = deformation
- l = torn leaf/leaves
- u = unknown
- # = information not required

\$e/0-2 Hand-made Illustration Code

There are three character positions available to distinguish the types of illustrations executed by hand.

Table of Subfield \$e Fixed-Length Data Elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Hand-made Illustration Codes | 3 | 0-2 |
| Marks in Book Codes | 3 | 3-5 |

a = illustrations (use for types of illustrations which are not covered below, or when types of illustrations are not being specifically coded)

b = hand-coloured illustrations (also use for drawn or printed illustrations coloured by hand)

c = illuminations

d = pencil or pen made ornamental drawing

e = paint-brush made illustrations

u = unknown

= information not required

\$e/3-5 Marks in Book Code

There are three character positions available to distinguish the types of marks in the copy in hand.

a = annotated copy (use for types of hand written notes which are not covered below, or when types of hand written notes are not being specifically coded)

b = glosses, marginal notes

c = *manunculae*

d = provenance notes

e = book plates (i.e. *ex libris*)

f = former locations

g = hand written indications of data

h = non-ornamental sketches or drawing

u = unknown

= information not required

\$f/0-2 Body of the Book State of Preservation Code – specific

a = chemical damage (use for types of chemical damage which are not covered below, or when types of chemical damage are not being specifically coded)

b = acidification

c = foxing

d = biological damage (use for types of biological damage which are not covered below, or when types of biological damage are not being specifically coded)

e = worm holes

f = rodent damage
 g = mould
 h = physical and/or mechanical damage (use for types of physical and/or mechanical damage which are not covered below, or when types of physical and/or mechanical damage are not being specifically coded)
 i = water-stain
 j = fire damage
 k = deformation
 l = torn leaf/leaves
 u = unknown
 # = information not required

Related Fields

318 ACTION NOTE

This field is used to record preservation information and treatment. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

Examples

EX 1: 141 ##\$ab##a0ab#\$5CiZaNSB: BZ 364

Coded information for *Regole generali di architettura* di Sebastiano Serlio. In Venetia, 1544.

EX 2: 141 ##\$abdf0aa#\$5CiZaNSB: R IV-4° -5b

Coded information for *Die Ehre deß Hertzogthums Crain...* von Johann Weichard Valvasor. Laybach, 1589

EX 3: 141 ##\$ah##h0fde\$5CiZaNSBIIC-8° primj. b

The second copy of *Dictionarium quinque nobilissimarum Europae linguarum*. Venetiis, 1595 in the National and University Library, Zagreb. The copy is unbound, it is a single item, the binding is missing, and the state of preservation of the body of the book is damaged and incomplete.

EX 4: 141 ##\$ab##a0bd#\$badxxxxda\$cb\$5PTBN: ALC. 244

Coded information for [Expositio in Ecclesiasticum / attributed to Hugh of Saint Victor]. – [12--]

Original binding of the 13th century, consisting of leather (sheepskin) covering the wooden boards in the form of an envelope, used in the Middle Ages, by the monastic binders.

Iron bosses as binding pieces.

EX 5: 141 ##\$afgbb0cb#\$bacc#####\$cg\$d###\$e###ef#\$fl##\$5BE0036 BER : C.D.16

Coded information for one instance of *De dissectione partium humani libri tres, a Carolo Stephano [...] editi. Una cum figuris, et incisionum declarationibus, a Stephano Riveri chirurgo co[m]positis*, Parigi, Simon de Colines, 1545.

EX 6: 141 ##\$aa##a0db#\$baa#####\$cd\$dh##\$e###deg\$f###\$5GE0036 BER : C.C.272

Coded information for one instance of *La anatomia del corpo umano composta da [...]. Giovanni Valverde, nuovamente ristampata [...]*, Venezia, Luca Antonio Giunta, 1586.

EX 7: 141##\$afgba0bb#\$bacc#####\$cg\$d###\$e###e##\$fb##\$5GE0036 BER :
B.S.XIX.A.248

Coded information for one instance of *L'astronomie enseignée en vingt-deux leçons Ouvrage traduit de l'anglais ... par Ph. C.r* [Thomas Squire], Parigi, Audin ..., 1823

EX 8: 141 ##\$aa##a0dde\$cd\$dbc#\$e###d##\$fbc#\$5TO0741 MOS : A 116

Coded information for one instance of *Tutte l'opere d'architettura di Sebastiano Serlio bolognese; doue si trattano in disegno, quelle cose, che sono piu necessarie all'architetto; et hora di nuouo aggiunto, oltre il libro delle porte, gran numero di case priuate nella citta, & in villa, et vn indice*, In Venetia, presso Francesco de Franceschi senese, 1584.

EX 9: 141 ##\$ab##a0cd#\$cd\$dh##\$e###dfh\$fbc#\$5TO0741 MOS : SV 672

Coded information for one instance of *Le diverse et artificiose machine del capitano Agostino Ramelli ... Nellequali si contengono uarij et industiosi mouimenti, degni digrandissima speculatione, per cauarne beneficio infinito in ogni sorte d'operatione; composte in lingua italiana e francese*, A Parigi, in casa dell'autore, 1588.

145 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE

Field definition

This field gives details of the instruments and/or voices, devices and other performers which make up a musical work.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Arrangement indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes the original or the arranged medium of performance.

0 original composition

1 arranged composition

Indicator 2: Alternative medium indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes a medium of performance that can be used in place of another occurrence of the field.

not applicable

1 alternative medium of performance

Subfields

\$a Type of performance medium

A one-character code defines the type of performance medium. Optional. Not repeatable

a = vocal a capella music (EX 15)

b = instrumental music (EX 1-2, 9-10, 16-19)

c = vocal-instrumental music (EX 3, 5-7, 8, 13, 14)

d = electroacoustic music

e = electroacoustic-mixed music (EX 4, 8, 11-12)

u = undefined, variable

\$b Instrument/voice, conductor, other performer or device

Each repeated \$b subfield contains an eight-character code indicating a voice or instrument category and the total number of real parts for that category. Use the abbreviations listed in Code list A/1-9, A/12-13, maintained by the IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Documentation Centres)

and available online at <http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium>. For suffixes use codes from Code List B-C, also maintained by the IAML and available online at the same address. Optional. Repeatable.

\$c Type of ensemble

Each repeated \$c subfield contains an eight-character code indicating one type of vocal/instrumental ensemble and only the total number of that type of ensemble. Use the abbreviations listed in Code list A/10-11. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list B-C. Optional. Repeatable. (EX 2-3, 5-9, 14-15, 19).

Subfields \$b and \$c fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| No. of instruments or voices | 2 (with leading zero) | 0-1 |
| Type of instrument or voice | 3 (see Code list A) | 2-4 |
| Suffix | 3 (see Code list B-C) | 5-7 |

If the number in positions 0-1 is not determined use "uu"

\$d Group within larger ensemble

Each repeated \$d subfield contains an eight-character code describing one vocal/instrumental ensemble included in a larger ensemble, the number of voices/instruments and the sequential/progressive number of that ensemble. Use the abbreviations listed in Code list A/10-11. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list B-C. Optional. Repeatable. (EX 13-15).

Subfield \$d fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| No. of real parts of ensemble | 2 (with leading zero) | 0-1 |
| Type of ensemble | 3 (see Code list A) | 2-4 |
| Suffix | 3 (see Code list B-C) | 5-7 |

If the number in positions 0-1 is not determined use "uu"

\$e Number of parts

Each repeated \$e subfield contains a four-character code indicating the total number of real parts indicated in the suffix. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list D. Optional. Repeatable. (EX 1-3, 5-16, 21).

\$f Number of players

Each repeated \$f subfield contains a four-character code indicating the total number of players for the parts indicated in the suffix. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list D. Optional. Repeatable. (EX 4, 9, 11, 13-14, 20).

Subfield \$e-f fixed-length data elements:

| Name of Data Element | Number of Characters | Character Positions |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| No. of instruments or voices | 3 (with leading zero) | 0-2 |
| Suffix | 1 (see Code list D) | 3 |

If the number in positions 0-2 is not determined use "uuu"

Notes on field contents

The degree of detail of the field may vary according to the local practice, i.e. all instruments playing in the orchestra may or may not be specified (EX 1, 2, 9, 13). The most common examples of non-detailed indication are percussion instruments in ensemble: sometimes only a close analysis of the score allows specification of all instruments; in such cases the indication will more likely be limited to the number of percussion players (EX 13, 14).

Pertinence of instruments to "families" in code lists is specified by the first character of the three-letter code.

The code "a" in subfield \$b/7 to indicate solo should be used to differentiate a soloist in opposition with an accompanying ensemble, be it a choir, an orchestra or a chamber ensemble (EX 2-3, 5-7, 13-14, 18-19).

The order of subfields and of repetitions is in principle not relevant, except when \$b/7 or \$c/7 refers to a preceding occurrence of the same subfield, i.e. has the value of "c" or "d".

Subfield \$d may be used to indicate groups within the main ensemble, such as percussion, choirs, etc., in particular when the cataloguing agency needs to define every instrument or voice taking part in that group (EX 13).

Subfield \$e indicates the number of real parts defined in position 3.

Subfield \$f indicates the number of players for the voices/instrumental family defined in position 3. It is recommended to limit its use to indicate a number of players different from that of real parts, when this distinction is relevant.

Related fields

128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE

Field 145 replaces obsolete subfields 128 \$b and \$c

302 NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION

This note may contain details such as use of different instruments by one performer or pertinence of single instruments to different groups within larger ensembles, etc.

500 UNIFORM TITLE

Examples

EX 1: 145 0#\$ab\$b01svl###\$b01kpf###
200 1#\$aSonata for violin and piano in D

In more detail may be defined as follows:

145 0#\$ab\$b01svl###\$b01kpf###\$e001s\$e001k\$e002a

EX 2: 145 0#\$ab\$b01wfl##a\$b02svl###\$b01sva###\$b01svc###\$c01ost###\$e001w\$e004s
\$e005i
145 1#\$ab\$b01wfl##a\$b01kpf###\$e002i
500 1#\$aConcertos\$rfor flute and strings\$wArr.

A flute concerto arranged for flute and piano; note that flute remains coded as solo also in the arranged version of the field, unlike piano that plays the accompaniment.

In a less detailed way may be coded as follows:

145 0#\$b01wfl##a\$c01ost###

145 1#\$b01wfl##a\$b01kpf###

EX 3: 145 0#\$ac\$b02vso##a\$c01oun###\$e002l\$e001o
145 1#\$b02vso##a\$b01kpf###\$e002l\$e001k
200 1#\$aNella Didone Duetto Sei vinto, e pur non sai Del Sig.r Ferdinando Paer
Ridotto a due voci e pianoforte

A manuscript of a vocal opera duo arranged for voices and piano. In the first occurrence of field 145 the instruments of the orchestra are not listed because they are not in the cataloguer's hand.

EX 4: 145 0#\$b02wfl###\$b02wob###\$b02wcl###\$b04wba###\$b06bho###\$b04btr###
\$b04btb###\$b24svl###\$b08sva###\$b08svc###\$b08sdb###\$b01eta###\$c03oie###\$f0
72a

Luigi Nono's *Per Bastiana Tai-Yang Cheng, L'Oriente è rosso, pour bande magnétique et trois groupes instrumentaux* (instruments in 3 groups, 72 performers). String instruments play in real parts, each one having a different line. Pertinence of every single instrument to each instrumental group is not defined.

If you define in greater detail the pertinence of each instrument to a group and total instruments of every family, the field will be coded as follows:

145 0#\$ae\$b02wfl##1\$b02wcl##1\$b04btr##1\$b08svl##1\$b08sva##1\$b02wba##2
\$b06bho##2\$b16svl##2\$b02wob##3\$b02wba##3\$b04btb##3\$b08svc##3\$b08sdb##3
\$b01eta###\$d24oie##1\$d24oie##2\$d24oie##3\$e010w\$e014b\$e048s\$e001e\$f072a

EX 5: 145 0#\$ac\$b01vso##a\$b01val##a\$b01vte##a\$b01vbs##a\$b01vso###\$b01val###
\$b01vte###\$b01vbs###\$b02woa###\$b02svl###\$b01sva###\$b01mco###\$c01cmi###
\$c01och###\$e004l\$e004x\$e002w\$e003s\$e001m\$e006y\$e014a

Johann Sebastian Bach's cantata *Wohl dem, der sich BWV 139* for 4 solo voices, 4-voice choir, 2 oboe d'amore, 2 violins, viola and continuo. Number of instruments by family, total number of instruments and grand total coded only to detail the example in its highest degree.

EX 6 145 0#Sac\$b02vso##a\$b02val##a\$b02vte##a\$b02vbs##a\$b01vcs##a\$b02vso###
 \$b02val###\$b02vte###\$b02vbs###\$b04wfl###\$b02wrea##\$b04wob###\$b04woa##d\$
 b02woh###d\$b04svl###\$b02sva###\$b02svg###\$b02svc###\$b02sve###\$b01kor###\$b0
 1kor###\$b01khp##c\$b02mco###\$c02cmi###\$c02ofu###\$e0091\$e008x\$e010w\$e012s
 \$e002k\$e002m\$e026y

Johann Sebastian Bach's *Matthäuspassion BWV 244* according to the Bärenreiter BA5038 score. As total number of parts is coded and oboists play also oboe d'amore and oboe da caccia, the total number of woodwinds in \$e is 10 instead of 16. A cembalo can be played instead of one organ.

In less detail, this may be coded as follows:

145 0#\$b02vso##a\$b02val##a\$b02vte##a\$b02vbs##a\$b01vcs##a\$c02cmi###
 \$c02ofu###

EX 7: 145 0#Sac\$b02vso##a\$b01val##a\$b01vct##a\$b02vte##a\$b02vbr##a\$b01vcs##a
 \$b01vso###\$b01val###\$b01vte###\$b01vbs###\$b01vcv###\$b04wfl###\$b02wre###
 \$b04wob###\$b04woa##d\$b02woh##d\$b02wba###\$b04svl###\$b02sva###
 \$b02svg###\$b02svc###\$b02sdb###\$b02kor###\$b01qco###\$b01qch###\$c01cmi###
 \$c01cch###\$c01och###\$e0091\$e005x\$e012w\$e012s\$e002k\$e002q\$e026y

Johann Sebastian Bach's *Matthäuspassion BWV 244* according to the Archiv Produktion 427648-2 CD recording. Two conductors (choir conductor and orchestral conductor) are recorded. As in EX 6, the number of wind instruments does not match the number of players (oboes, oboe d'amore and oboe da caccia are played by the same 4 players).

EX 8: 145 1#\$ae\$b01vun##a\$b02wsaa##\$b02wsat##\$b03btr###\$b03btb###\$b01kunx##
 \$b01kpfx###\$b01tgue##\$b01tgube#\$b01pds###\$b01ptb###\$b01pag###\$b01pcg###
 \$c01cun###\$c01obi###\$e004w\$e006b\$e002k\$e002t\$e004p\$e001x\$e018y\$e019a

Cacao meravigliao, a popular song as arranged for big band by Demo Morselli. According to what is written on the score, electronic keyboards are considered keyboard instruments.

EX 9: 145 0#\$ab\$b02wfl###\$b02wob###\$b02wcl###\$b02wba###\$b02bho###\$b02btr###
 \$b01bop###\$b01pti###\$b02svl###\$b01sva###\$b01svc###\$b01sdb###\$c01ofu##
 \$e008w\$e005b\$e005s\$e001p\$e019y
 145 1#\$b01kpfv##\$e001k\$f002a

Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy's *Overture zu Shakespeare's Sommernachtstraum Op.21* arranged for four hands piano.

With less detail, this may be coded as follows:

145 0#\$c01ofu###
 145 1#\$b01kpfv##

EX 10: 145 0#\$ab\$b01wob###\$b01svl###\$b01sva###\$b01svc###\$e001w\$e003s\$e004i
 200 1#\$aQuartetto per oboe e archi

A quartet for oboe and strings.

EX 11: 145 0#\$ae\$b01wflbf#b01eea####\$e001w\$e001e\$f001a
 302 ##\$amicro
 200 1#\$aArsis et Thesis, ou La Chanson du souffle\$epour flûte basse en Ut
 sonorisée\$fMichael Levinas

A piece for amplified bass flute; electronic device is specified in a special note.

EX 12: 145 0#\$ab\$b02wfl####\$e002i
 145 01\$ae\$b01wfl####\$b01eta####\$e002i
 200 1#\$aVoices\$epour deux flûtes (ou pour flûte et bande magnétique)\$fLaszlo Sary

A piece for two flutes or flute and tape. Each alternative is indexed in a separate instance of the 145 field; indicator 2 specifies the alternative medium.

EX 13: 145 0#\$ac\$b01vwol##\$b01wpi####\$b01wflb#d\$b01wsas##\$b01wsab#d\$b01kpfz##
 \$b01ptt1#0\$b01pmd##0\$b01ptil#0\$b01pbd##0\$b01ptel#0\$b03pcr##0\$b01pcy##0
 \$b01pvi##0\$b01sdb####\$d02pun##0\$e001l\$e004w\$e001s\$e010p\$e001k\$e016y
 \$f002w\$f002p\$f001k\$f006a

François Rossé's *Cris de cerise*; performers are: Voix grave féminine, flûte (piccolo et basse), saxophone (soprano et basse), piano (avec préparation), percussion (1 tom grave, 1 caisse claire, 1 timbale grave, 1 grosse caisse, 1 temple-block grave, 3 cymbales suspendues, 1 cymbale, 1 vibraphone, 1 archet de contrebasse) [two players], contrebasse. Highest possible coding. Performers playing more than one instrument coded as such; double bass bow is not codified because it is used in place of percussion sticks. Percussions are detailed as a group of two performers and as single instruments pertaining to a subgroup. Instruments and performers are detailed.

The field may be coded with less detail as follows; in this instance percussions are coded in \$b instead of \$d because single percussion instruments are not detailed:

145 0#\$b01vwol##\$b01wpi####\$b01wflb#d\$b01wsas##\$b01wsab#d\$b01kpfz##
 \$b02pun####\$b01sdb###

EX 14: 145 0#\$ac\$b01vso##a\$b01vms##a\$b01vte##a\$b01vbr##a\$b01vso##1\$b01vso##1
 \$b01vms##c\$b01vct##1\$b01vte##c\$b01vte##1\$b01vbr##c\$b01vbr##1\$b01vbs##1
 \$b01vct##c\$b01vso##2\$b01vms##2\$b01val##c\$b01vte##2\$b01vbr##2\$b01vbs##2
 \$b01tgu##a\$b01svc##a\$b03wfl####\$b02wob####\$b02wcl####\$b01wclb##b\$b02wba####
 \$b01wdb####\$b04bho####\$b03btr####\$b03btb####\$b01btu####\$b01kpf####\$b01tha####
 \$b01pti##3\$b01pbd##3\$b01pmd##3\$b01ptr##3\$b01pboh#3\$b01ptt##3\$b01pbl##4
 \$b01pcw##4\$b01pab##4\$b01ptl##4\$b01pcth#4\$b01pji##4\$b01mwh##4\$b01pbpp#4
 \$b01pbpg#4\$b01phh##4\$b01pcrl#4\$b02pgol#4\$b01pgl##5\$b01pxy##5\$b01pvi##5
 \$b01pwh##5\$b01pgu##5\$b01pwo##5\$b01pcv##5\$b01pmcl#5\$c01owi###
 \$d06cve##1\$d05cmi##2\$d01pun##3\$d01pun##3\$d01pun##4\$d01pun##5\$e010l
 \$e005x\$e002j\$e011w\$e011b\$e001k\$e001t\$e025p\$e049y\$e015v\$e051i\$f010l\$f002j
 \$f003p\$f005p\$f027y\$f048x

Sylvano Bussotti's *The Rara requiem* for four voices, ensemble of six vocal soloists, 5-voice choir (48 singers), solo guitar and cello, wind orchestra, piano, harp and percussions (3 or 5 players). Following the indications of the score, each smaller group in the ensemble is defined; the three percussion players are defined as three separate groups; total number of choir singers and alternative solo voices are specified. Prescribed percussion players may be 3 or 5.

EX 15: 145 0#\$aa\$b01vso##1\$b01val##1\$b01vte##1\$b01vbs##1\$b02vte##2\$b01vbs##2
\$b03vcv##3\$c03cun###\$d04cmi##1\$d03cme##2\$d03cch##3\$e010x

A piece for three choirs: choir 1 for soprano, alto, tenor, bass; choir 2 for two tenors and bass, choir three for three boys voices. All voices and groups are defined.

EX 16: 145 0#\$ab\$b01wfl###\$b01svl##c\$b01wob##c\$b01mco###\$e002i

A piece for flute or violin or oboe and continuo.

EX 17 (converted from former field 128-EX 1)

128 ##\$afg#

145 0#\$ab\$b03tgu###

200 1#\$aFour fugues for guitar trio

EX 18 (converted from former field 128-EX 2)

128 ##\$avr#

145 0#\$ab\$b01kpf###

145 0#\$ab\$b01kpf###\$b01svl##a\$b01svc##a

145 0#\$ab\$b01kpf###\$b01svl##a\$b01sva##a\$b01svc##a

200 1#\$aVariations for solo piano, piano trio and piano quartet

In field 128, EX2 violin, viola and cello are coded as solo instruments.

EX 19 (converted from former field 128-EX 3)

128 ##\$aco#\$ddm

145 0#\$ab\$b02wfl##a\$sc01ost###

200 1#\$aConcerto for two flutes & string orchestra in D minor

In the former field 128 EX 3, the agency considered it unnecessary to state that there is only one orchestra; converting the example, the number 01 in 145 \$c has been added by default.

EX 20: 145 0#\$ab\$b01wrea##\$b01svl##c\$b01mco###\$b01svc###\$b01kun###\$f003i

Jean-Baptiste Loeillet de Gant's *Sonaten op. 4, n° 4-6, für Altblockflöte oder Violine und Basso continuo* (Heinrichshofen's Verlag). Continuo realized for unspecified keyboard, cello part added, thus total performers coded as 3.

EX 21: 145 0#\$b01kpf###\$b02svl###\$b01sva###\$b01svc###\$b01muib##\$b02wfl##b

\$b02bho##b\$e006i\$e010i

200 1#\$aVariations pour le pianoforte avec accomp.t de deux violons, viola, violoncelle et basse (deux flûtes et cors ad libitum) op.97\$fJ.N. Hummel

Subfield \$e repeated to match the use or not of *ad libitum* instruments.

CODE LISTS

Code lists are maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Documentation Centres) and available online at the following address: <http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium>

The lists show a definition term and several other terms using the same code, without distinction between:

- similar instruments, voices or devices having the same code;
- definition in other language(s);
- orthographical variants.

Instruments needing a suffix are shown only when they have a specific name in any language.

Chronological, organological or language specifications are added in brackets if strictly necessary. The pitch of the instruments is specified when necessary (e.g.: A, Bb, F).

A Codes for fields 145 subfields \$b-\$d, positions 2-4

1. Voices
2. Woodwinds
3. Brass instruments
4. Strings, bowed
5. Strings, plucked
6. Keyboard
7. Percussion
8. Electric / electronic instruments and devices
9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments
10. Choruses:
11. Orchestras, ensembles
12. Conductors
13. Other performers

| 1.Voices | | |
|------------|-------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| val | alto | alt altus contralto |
| vbr | baritone | bariton baritono baryton |
| vbs | bass | bajo bas basse basso bassus |
| vca | child alto | alto enfant boy alto contralto voce bianca knabenalt |
| vcl | contratenor altus | contra altus |
| ves | child soprano | boy soprano knabensopran soprano enfant soprano voce bianca |
| vct | countertenor | contra contratenor |

| 1.Voices | | |
|------------|------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | controténore haute-contre |
| vcv | child voice | boy singer boy's voice knabenstimme voce bianca voce di fanciullo voce infantile voix enfantine |
| vma | man's voice | voce maschile voix d'homme |
| vms | mezzosoprano | mezzo (En.) mezzo-soprano |
| vrc | reciting child's voice | voce bianca recitante voix parlée enfant |
| vre | reciting voice | Narrator récitant recitante sprechrolle storico testo text voce recitante |

| 1. Voices | | |
|------------|------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| vrn | reciting man's voice | voce recitante uomo voix parlée homme |
| vrw | reciting woman's voice | voce recitante donna voix parlée femme |
| vso | soprano | cantus descant dessus discanto discantus diskant sopran superius tiple treble |
| vte | tenor | tenore |
| vun | voice — unspecified | canto chant (Fr.) part parte partie stimme voce voix vox voz |
| vvg | vagans | |
| vwo | woman's voice | voce femminile voix de femme |
| vzz | voice — other | |
| | high voice | <i>use suffix: vunh</i> hohe stimme voce acuta voix haute |
| | medium voice | <i>use suffix: vunm</i> voce media voix moyenne |
| | low voice | <i>use suffix: vunl</i> tiefe stimme voce grave voix grave |
| | recorded voice | <i>use suffix: vunk</i> voce registrata voix enregistrée |
| | voice — ethnic | <i>use suffix: vuny</i> |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|-------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| wau | aulos | diaulos doppio aulos tibia |
| wba | bassoon | bajon basson bassono choristfagott fagot fagott fagotto |
| wbh | basset-horn | basset-horn bassetthorn cor de basset corno di bassetto |
| wbn | bassanello | |
| wbp | bagpipe | biniou (Fr.) bladder pipe blaterpfife bock cornamusa cornemuse dudelsack gaita piva piva a vescica platerpfeife platerspiel sackpfeife vesica vèze zampogna (with bag) zampoña |
| wch | chalumeau | calimiau chalemiau chalimo chalimou chalumeau mock trumpet salmò salmòe schalamaux schalumò shalamo |
| wcl | clarinet | clarinete clarinette clarinetto klarinette |
| wcm | ciaramella | calandrone cennamella |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | cornamusina dulzaina oboe degli abruzzi zampogna (without bag) |
| wcr | cromorne | cornamuto torto cromorno crumhorn krumb horn krumhorn orlo (Sp.) piffenhorn piva torta storto sumberhorn tournebout |
| wdb | double bassoon | bassono grosso contrabajon contrabassoon contrafagote contrebasson controfagotto fagottone kontrafagott |
| wdp | doppione | |
| wdu | dulcian | corthol curtaile curtal curtal curthol curtoll dolçaine dolcesuono dolician doliciana doliciano dolzana dolzian dolzone double curtaile dulciana dulcion dulzian kortholt (En.) |
| wdv | dvoynice | dvoynice dvoynice |
| weh | English horn | cor anglais corno inglese englisches horn englischhorn |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | taille de hautbois d'amour |
| wfa | flauto d'amore | flûte d'amour |
| wfg | flageolet | akkordflöte chord flute ciufolo flageolett flageoletto |
| wfi | fife | feldpfeife fiffaro fifre pifano piffaro piffero querpfeife |
| wfl | flute | concert flute cross flute fiauto flauta flauto flauto alemano flauto traverso flöte fluta flûte flûte allemande flûte d'Allemagne flûte traversière flutta german flute grosse flöte querflöte schweizerpfeife schweizerpfeife transverse flute traversa traverse flute traversflöte traversiere traversière traversiero traverso zwerchpfeiff |
| wga | tabor pipe | chirula flabiol flautilla flaviol flûte à trois trous flutet fluviol |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | galoubet holefloyte holler holre pipe schwegel tämerlinpfeife tamarinpfeife tammerinpfeife tämmerlinpfeife txistu |
| wge | gemshorn | cor de chamois corno di camoscio |
| whp | pibgorn | hornpipe pibcorn pibgorn |
| wmo | mouth organ | organo a bocca orgue à bouche |
| wmu | musette | |
| wna | ney | nay |
| woa | oboe d'amore | hautbois d'amour |
| wob | oboe | french hautboy hautbois haut-bois hautboy hoboe |
| woh | oboe da caccia | jagd-hautboy wald hautbois |
| wpi | piccolo | flautín flauto piccolo kleine flöte oktavflöte ottavino petite flûte pickelflöte pikkoloflöte |
| wpo | pommer | bombard bombarda bombarde bombardo bombardone (before the 18th cent.) bombart bomhart calamello chalemelle chalemie chalmeye |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | chirimia cialamella cialamello pumhart rauschpfeife rausspfeife russ pfeife schalmei schalmey shalme shalmie shalmuse shawm |
| wpp | panpipes | ciufolo fistola flauta de pan flauto di pan flauto pastorale flauto policalamo flûte de pan flûte pastorelle pandean pipes panflöte panpfeife siringa syrinx |
| wra | racket | cervelas cervelat cervellato cornaldo cortaldi cortale cortalli faustfagott rackett rackettfagott racquette ragett ragget rankett rogett stockfagott tartöld tartölt wurstfagott |
| wre | recorder | blockflöte common flute english flute flauste (Fr.) flaute (Fr.) flauto a becco |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | flauto diritto flauto dolce flauto dritto flûte à bec flûte à neuf trous flûte d'angleterre langsflöte schnabelflöte zartflöte |
| wro | rothophone | |
| wsa | saxophone | alto-fagotto sassofono sax saxofon saxofono saxophon |
| wsh | shakuhachi | Shakuhashi |
| wsr | sarruso-phone | contrabbasso ad ancia contrabbasso da ancia contrebasse-à-anche flarmonicasarrusofono tritonikon universal-kontrabass |
| wsu | sordun | courtaut kortholtsordone souridine (before the 17th cent.) |
| wvu | voce umana | |
| wun | woodwind — unspecified | holzbläser instruments à vent en bois legni strumentini |
| wzz | woodwind — other | |
| | woodwind — ethnic | <i>use suffix: wuny</i> |
| | bass clarinet | <i>use suffix: wclb</i> basse-guerrière basse-orgue clarone |
| | batyphone | <i>use suffix: wcla</i> bathyphone |
| | piccolo clarinet | <i>use suffix: wclh</i> clarinetto in Lab clarinetto in Mib quartino |

| 2. Woodwinds | | |
|--------------|--------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | flautino | <i>use suffix: wflh</i> |
| | bass flute | <i>use suffix: wflb</i> albisifono albisiphon flauto albisi flauto basso (C) flautone |
| | heckelphone | <i>use suffix: wobr</i> |
| | tenor oboe | <i>use suffix: wobt</i> haute-contre de hautbois taille de hautbois |
| | tenora (Sp.) | <i>use suffix: wpot</i> tiple (Sp.) |
| | tenoroon | <i>use suffix: wbah</i> basson quinte caledonica fagottino fagotti-octavo fagotti-quarto quintfagott tenorfagott |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| bah | Alphorn | alpenhorn cor des alpes corno delle alpi stockbüchel |
| bbb | bombardino | flicorno baritono (Bb) saxhorn baryton (Bb, Fr.) saxtromba baryton (Bb, Fr.) |
| bbd | bombardon | basse impériale (F, Eb) basso in Fa basso in Mib basstromba (Ger.) bombardone (19th-20th cent.) flicorno basso-grave (F, Eb) helicon contrabbasso (F, Eb) kaiserbass (F, Eb) sousaphone basso (Eb) |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|-------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| bbh | bersag horn | Biucolo tromba da fanfara tromba dei bersaglieri |
| bbu | bugle | bugle baryton (Bb, Fr.) bugle horn bugleret clairon cor buglèr cor bugleret corno segnale signalhorn |
| bca | carnyx | Karnyx Lituus |
| bcb | cimbasso | trombone verdi |
| bch | cow horn | corno di toro stierhorn |
| bcl | clarion | Clarien clarin (Ger.) clarín (Sp.) clarino (Ger.) clarino (It.) |
| bco | cornet | cornet à piston corneta (19th-20th cent.) cornetín cornetta cornetta a pistoni cornetto (It., 19th-20th cent.) echo cornet kornett ventilkornett |
| bct | cornett | cornaboux cornet à bouquin corneta (18th cent. and after) cornettino (17th cent. and after) cornetto (17th cent. and after) cornetto muto zink |
| bcu | cornu | |
| bdx | duplex | Bb-C-clairon bombardino-trombone dublophone eufonio-trombone flicorno-cornetta gemelli |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|--|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | genis-tromba highamphone lyrophone tuba-tromba bassa |
| beu | euphonium | baritone (Fr.) barítono (Sp.) baroxyton baryton (Ger.) baryton en Sib barytonhorn baryton-tuba (Bb, Ger.) basse à pistons basse en Sib (Fr.) basse impériale (C, Bb) bassflügelhorn bombarda a quattro pistoni bombardino (Sp.) elicon (Bb) eufonio euphonikon euphonion flicorno basso helicon (Bb) hellhorn kaiserbaryton kaiserbass (C, Bb) phonikon tenor tuba tenorbass (Ger.) tenorbasshorn tuba in Sib (19th cent.) |
| bhh | hunting horn <i>If referred to orchestral horn code bho = horn</i> | cor de chasse (Fr.) corneta de monte (Sp.) corno da caccia (It.) cuerno de caza (Sp.) jagdhorn (Ger.) jägerhorn tromba da caccia (It., 18th cent.) trompa de caza trompe de chasse |
| bho | horn | ballad horn chromatic horn cor cor — solo cor à piston cor d'harmonie cor simple corno corno a macchina |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | corno da tirarsi corno francese corno naturale french horn heerhorn herhorn hiehorn hifthorn horn huchet inventionshorn jäger trommet konzerthorn okyavhorn primhorn trompa (Sp.) trompe (Fr.) ventilhorn waldhorn wic-horn |
| bht | herald's trumpet | bousine buisine busen busine buysine buzine chiarina fanfaren-trompete herolds-trompete tromba d'araldo tromba diritta tromba duttile (19th cent.) tromba lunga |
| bkb | keyed bugle | amorschall bugle à clefs cor à clefs cornetta a chiavi corno a chiavi kent bugle key bugle klappenflügel-horn klappenhorn royal kent bugle taille d'amour trompette à clefs |
| blu | lur | |
| bol | oliphant | buccina (medieval) bucina (antique) cor d'olifant olifante |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| bop | ophicleide | basse à clefs basse d'harmonie basso d'armonia contrebasse d'harmonie figle harmonie-kontrabass oficleide ofleide omnion ophikleide serpentcleide tuba-dupré |
| bph | post horn | clarion (16. cent. and after) cornet de poste cornetta da postiglione corno di posta posthorn |
| brh | russian horn | cor russe corno russo |
| bse | serpent | basse-cor basse-trompette basseuphonium bass-euphonium bass-horn basshorn (Ger.) basson russe basson serpent chromatic bass-horn chromatisches basshorn corno basso corno di basso english bass-horn fagotto russo fagotto serpente hibemicon ofibaritono ophibariton ophibaterion ophimonocleide russian bassoon russisches basshorn russisches fagott schlangenhorn serpan serpent d'église serpent droit serpent militaire serpent-bassoon serpente serponton |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | serpentone |
| bsh | shofar | chofar ram's horn s'ofar schofar shofar hajovel |
| bsx | salpinx | |
| bta | tuba (antique) | |
| btb | trombone | bassaune bimbonifono buccin trombone posaune sacabuche sacbut sackbut sacqueboute saicqueboute saqueboute seykebuds shagbolt shagbutt shakbushe slide trombone tromba contralta in Fa trombón trombone a tiro trombone da tracolla trompette saqueboute zugposaune |
| btr | trumpet | chromatic trumpet clarino (Ger., 16th-18th cent.) echo trumpet inventionstrompete stopftrompete tromba tromba a coulisse tromba da tirare tromba dell'aida tromba diritta (19th-20th cent.) trombeta trompeta trompete trompette valved trumpet |
| btu | tuba | |
| bvb | valved bugle | armeeposaune bügelhorn |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | bugle à piston cornett (Ger., 19th-20th cent.) fiscorno flicorno fliscorno saxcorno saxhorn saxhorno saxtromba sudrophone |
| bwt | Wagner tuba | |
| bun | brass — unspecified | blechbläser brass instruments cuivres ottoni |
| bzz | brass — other | |
| | brass — ethnic | <i>use suffix: buny</i> |
| | contrabass ophicleide | <i>use suffix: bopc</i> kontrastbombardon oficleide-monstre |
| | bass trombone | <i>use suffix: btbb</i> quartposaune quintposaune |
| | contrabass trombone | <i>use suffix: btbc</i> doppelposaune oktavposaune |
| | high trumpet | <i>use suffix: btrh</i> clarintrumpete |
| | bass tuba | <i>use suffix: btub</i> basso tuba (Bb) basstuba tuba (19th-20th cent.) tuba in Sib (20th cent.) |
| | contrabass tuba | <i>use suffix: btuc</i> BBb bass |
| | alt cornett | <i>use suffix: bvba</i> althorn (Ger.) alto en Mib (Fr.) baryton aigu bugle alto (Fr.) clavicor (Eb) clavicorno (Eb) elicon (Eb) genis genis corno helicon (Eb) |

| 3. Brass instruments | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | mellophone tenor cor ténor en Mib (Fr.) tenor horn tenor-tube (Eb, Ger.) tuba alto (Eb, D, Ger.) |
| | pelittone | <i>use suffix: bvbc</i> pellittone sousaphone contrabbasso (Bb) basso in Sib elicon contrabbasso (Bb) helicon contrabbasso (Bb) |
| | pistonino | <i>use suffix: bvbn</i> bugle soprano en Mib (Fr.) cornett piccolo (Eb, D, ger.) cornettino in Mib flicornino petit bugle (Eb) piston pistoncino |
| | oktav kornett (Bb) | <i>use suffix: bvbp</i> petit saxhorn suraigu piccolo cornett (Ab, Bb) |
| | sopran cornett | <i>use suffix: bvbs</i> bugle (Fr.) flicorno (in band scores) flugelhorn flügelhorn |
| | Bb baritone | <i>use suffix: bvbt</i> baritone (En.) bugle ténor (Bb, Fr.) clavicor (Bb) clavicorno (Bb) emboliclave saxhorn ténor (Bb, Fr.) tenorhorn (Ger.) tuba tenore |

| 4. Strings, bowed | | |
|-------------------|------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| sar | arpeggione | bogengitarre bowed guitar |

| 4. Strings, bowed | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | chitarra ad arco guitar violoncello guitare d'amour gitarre-violoncell streichgitarre |
| sba | Baryton | bardone viola di bardone viola di bordone viola paradon |
| sbt | Bassett | bassel basset bassete bassettl (Austr.) bassetto bassl basso da camera bierbass halbass kammerbass |
| sbu | Bumbass | basse à boyau basse de flandre bladder and string bumbasz guimbarde à corde |
| scr | crwth | chrota chrotta crot crott crotta croud crouth crouthe crowd cruit crwthau rhota rota rote rotta rotte |
| sdb | double bass | basse des italiens basse-contre contrabajo contrabass contrabbasso contraviolon contrebasse kontrabass string bass |

| 4. Strings, bowed | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| sfi | fiddle, viol (family) | fedil fedylle fele ffythele fidella fidula fiedel fiele (En.) phidil vialla videl vidula vièle viella vielle vigél vihuela de arco vithele vitula viula (Provenç.) |
| sgu | Gusle | |
| sli | lira da braccio | lira (to the 18th cent.) lira ad arco lira da spalla |
| sln | lirone | accordo arceviolra arciviola di lira arciviolata lira arciviotalalira lira (to the 18th cent.) lira ad arco lira da gamba lira doppia lira grande lirone perfetto lyra lyra perfecta lyre lyrone |
| sny | keyed fiddle | kontrabassharpa löckelje nyckelfiol nyckelgiga nyckelharpa schlüsselfidel silverbasharpa viella a tasti |
| sob | octobass | basse gigantesque octobasse |

| 4. Strings, bowed | | |
|-------------------|----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| spo | Kit | canino kytte linterculus poche pochette pochetto posch sordina sordino sourdine (17th-18th cent.) tanzmeistergeige taschengeige |
| spv | quinton | pardessus de viole quintone |
| sre | Rebec | giga gigue rabé (Sp.) rabec rabecq rabel rebebe rebeca rebecca rebeck rebecke rebecq rebecquet rebecum rebekke rebelle rebequin reberbe rebesbe ribeca ribecca ribibe ribible robecq rubeba rubebe rubella rybybe |
| stm | trumpet marine | tromba marina trombeta marina trompetengeige trompette marine trumscheit violitromba |

| 4. Strings, bowed | | |
|-------------------|----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| sva | viola | alto alto viola altopiano bratsche taille (Fr.) tenor (En.) tenor viola tenor violin (En.) tenorgeige viola da braccio viole (Fr., Ger.) violet violetta |
| svc | cello | bas de violon bas viol de braccio bass violin basse de violon bass-geige violoncel violoncell violoncelle violoncello violoncino |
| svd | viola d'amore | arnolo english violet liebesgeige viole d'amour violetta marina |
| sve | violone | violon (Ger.) |
| svg | viola da gamba | division viol gamba gambe lyra bastarda lyra viol viol viola bastarda viola de gamba viole de gambe |
| svl | violin | geige soprano di viola da braccio violine violino violon (Fr.) violono (Fr.) |
| svp | viola pomposa | pomposa violino pomposo |

| 4. Strings, bowed | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| sun | string — unspecified | archets archi cordes instruments à archet streicher |
| szz | string — other | |
| | string — ethnic | <i>use suffix: suny</i> |
| | basse de viole | <i>use suffix: svgb</i> |
| | quartegeige | <i>use suffix: svlh</i> |

| 5. Strings, plucked | | |
|---------------------|---------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, Variants |
| tal | Archlute | angel lute angelica angelika angélique archilaud archiluth arcileuto arciliuto basslaute liuto attiorbato |
| tat | harp-psaltery | ala (medieval) arpa-citara arpaneta arpanetta arpanette flügel (medieval) harfenett harpanetta psaltery-harp spitzharfe |
| tbb | barbitos | Barbiton lira (antique) |
| tbi | biwa | |
| tbj | banjo | Bangio banjar banjer banjo zither banjolin banza cavaquinho ramkie strum-strum zither banjo |

| 5. Strings, plucked | | |
|---------------------|-------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, Variants |
| tbl | balalaika | balalajka |
| tbo | bouzouki | buzuk |
| tch | chitarraone | citarone erzlaute guitarron |
| tci | cittern | archcittern archicetra archicistre arcicetera arcicetra bandola bandoura bandurria (Sp., Am.) bass cister bijuga cither cedra cetera (16th cent. and after) cetra (16th cent. and after) chitarra inglese chitarra portuguese chitarra tedesca cister (16th cent. and after) cistra cistre citarino cithara cither cithern cithre cithren citrinchen citter citterlein citharn cythar cytharino deutsche gitarre english guitar erzcister guitare allemande guitare angloise guitarra portuguesa mandora (18th cent. and after) mandurria sister sistre terzina |

| 5. Strings, plucked | | |
|---------------------|------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, Variants |
| | | zither (to the 18th cent.) zitrinchen zitter zitterlein |
| tes | colascione | calchedon calichon colachon colascioncino colasciontino colocion galizona gallichone gallishon |
| tct | citole | cetera (to the 15th cent.) cetra (to the 15th cent.) cetula cistola citola zitöl (Ger.) zitole |
| tez | cobza | |
| tgu | guitar | akkordgitarre bordelletto charango chitarra chitarra battente chitarra francese chitarra spagnola chitarriglia chitarrino chiterna gitarre gittern guitare guitare capucine guitare en bateau guitarra guitarre guitarrico guitarrillo guitarro guitern klange terzguitarre |
| tha | harp | arpa arpa a nottolini arpa a uncini arpa cromatica arpa doppia harfe |

| 5. Strings, plucked | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, Variants |
| | | harpe lira barberina lyra barberina |
| thg | hawaiian guitar | chitarra hawaiana guitare hawaïenne hawaiische gitarre steel guitar |
| tkh | kithara | cithara (antique) |
| tko | kora | arpa-liuto |
| tlf | lute (family) | liuto (famiglia) luth (famille) |
| tlg | lyre-guitar | anakreontische leier apollo guitar lira (19th-20th cent.) lira chitarra lyra (19th-20th cent.) lyra guitar lyre (19th-20th cent.) lyre anacréontique lyre-guitarre |
| tlu | lute | laúd laut laute lauto leuto liuto luit luth |
| tma | mandolin | bandolin banjolin liuto romano mandolina mandoline mandolino |
| tmd | mandore | bandora bandürichen mandoër mandoire mandola mandolino lombardo mandolino milanese mandolle mandora (to the 17th cent.) mandorina mandura mandürichen orpharion pandora |

| 5. Strings, plucked | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, Variants |
| | | pandurina penorcon vandola |
| tps | psaltery (plucked) | gusli (Rus.) kantele nebel psalter psaltérion (Fr.) psalterium saltari saltère salterio sautere sautier sautieron |
| tpx | phorminx | |
| tqa | qanum | |
| tth | theorbo | theorb théorbe theorbo lute tiorba tiorbino tuorba tuorbe |
| ttn | tanbur | tanburica |
| tud | 'ud | ud |
| tuk | ukulele | |
| tvi | vihuela | biguela cuatro vihuela de mano viola da mano |
| tzi | zither | accord zither akkordzither alpine zither appalachian dulcimer autoharp banjo harp bell harp bowed zither box zither büche (Fr.) cetra da tavolo chord zither cithare elegiezither epinette des vosges fairy bells hexenscheit |

| 5. Strings, plucked | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, Variants |
| | | hommel humle hummel langeleik langspil scheitholt schwungzither zither (19th-20th cent.) zither harp |
| tun | plucked – unspecified | pizzicati pincés |
| tzz | plucked – other | |
| | plucked – ethnic | <i>use suffix: tuny</i> |
| | electric bass guitar | <i>use suffix: tgube</i> basso elettrico fender bass guitare électrique basse |

| 6. Keyboard | | |
|-------------|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| kab | archicembalo | arcicembalo cembalo enarmonico cembalo omnicordo clavecin parfait accord clavemusium omnitonum clavicymbalum universale enharmonic harpsichord pentecontachordon proteus sambuca lincea |
| kac | accordion | accordéon accordio acordeon aeola armonica a manticino concertina fisa fisarmonica handharmonika harmonieflûte harmoniflûte klavier-harmonika konzertina organetto (19th-20th |

| 6. Keyboard | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | cent.) physharmonika ziehharmonika |
| kba | bandoneon | bandonéon |
| kca | carillon (with keyboard) | beiaard campanelli campanette cariglione carillon di campane jeu de timbres klokkenspel timbres |
| kce | celesta | adiaphone célesta (Fr.) celeste (En.) céleste (Fr.) clavi-lame |
| kch | chordette | |
| kcl | clavichord | clavichorde clavichordium clavicorde clavicordio clavicordo cravo klavichord manicorde manicordio manicordion manicordo monacordio monacordo sordino (with keyboard) |
| kco | claviorgan | clavecin organisé claviorgano epinette organisée organ-harpsichord organo-piano orgelklavier orgelklavizimbel piano-melodium |
| key | clavicytherium | arpa a cembalo arpone cembalo verticale clavecin vertical claviciterio claviciterium clavicyterium klaviziterium |

| 6. Keyboard | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| kfp | fortepiano | cembalo a martelli (18th-early 19th cent.) cembalo pianoforte fortepiano hammerflügel hammerklavier piano forte (Fr.) |
| kgl | glockenspiel (with keyboard) | |
| khm | harmonium | aeoline aeolodion aeolsklavier aerophon akkordeon american organ amerikanisches organ äolsklavier armonio cabinet organ eoline harmoniconde harmonio lap organ melodeon melofono melophone orchestron (18th – early 19th cent.) organophone organo-violine orgue américain orgue expressif physharmonika (Austr.) piano-chanteur poikilorgue reed organ séraphine |
| khp | harpsichord | cembalo cembalo a penna cimbalo clavecin clavecin brisé clavessin clavi simbalum clavicembalo clavicimbalum clavicymbalum flügel (16. cent. and after) gravicembalo kielflügel |

| 6. Keyboard | | |
|-------------|----------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | klavier (to mid-18th cent.) klavizymbel |
| kmp | melopiano | armonipiano piano trémolophone |
| kor | organ | ninfale organetto (10th-19th cent.) organino organo organum orgel orglet orgue orgues portativo positivo |
| kpf | piano | aliquot piano apolliricon apollonion apollonium cabinet piano cottage piano ditanaklasis klavier luthéal lyraflügel pforte pianino piano cottage piano cycloide piano droit piano elliptique piano-console pianoforte piano-forte pianoforte piramidale piano-giraffa piano-luthéal square piano upright pianoforte |
| kps | plucked string keyboard | clavier cordes pincées tastiera a corde pizzicate |
| kre | regals | regal regale régale regallo |
| ksi | sirenion | piano clédi-harmonique piano eutophone |

| 6. Keyboard | | |
|-------------|------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | piano harmonicode piano-doucine |
| ksp | sostenente piano | bogenflügel bogenklavier cembalo ad arco cembalo da arco clavecín à archet clavicembalo ad arco geigenwerck geigenwerk harmonichord piano à archet piano quatuor piano-violon sostinente piano streichklavier |
| kst | spinet | arpicordo bentside spinet cembalo traverso épinette espinetta oktavspinett querflügel spinett spinetta spinettina spinettone |
| kvg | virginal | double virginal virginale virginalls virginals |
| kun | keyboard – unspecified | clavier instrument à clavier instrumento da tasto keyboard keyboard instrument klavierinstrument strumento a tastiera strumento da tasto tasteninstrument tastiera |
| kxx | keyboard – other | |
| | keyboard – ethnic | <i>use suffix: kuny</i> |
| | electronic organ | <i>use suffix: korx</i> casiotone electone electrone hammond organ |

| 6. Keyboard | | |
|-------------|----------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | organo bontempi organo hammond |
| | electric piano | <i>use suffix: kpfe</i> electone neo-bechstein-flügel piano électrique piano elettrico pianoforte elettrico pianotron |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|---------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| pab | aeolian bells | aeolsglocken baguettes de verre campanelle a vento campanelle cinesi a vento chinese wind chimes chinesischer messingpendelrassel cloches de coquille cloches de verre clochette à vent clochette chinoise à vent clochettes éoliennes clochettes suspendues glass chimes glass glocken glass wind chimes glasstäbchen glaswindglocken lastrine a vento di vetro mark-tree metaldelrassel pearly chimes plaquettes de verre shell chimes shell wind chimes türgelaüt wind chimes wind-chimes wood chimes |
| pad | arabian drum | arabische trommel darabucca darabuka darabukka |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | darabukke darbouka darbuka darbukat derabukka derbouka derbuka doubek dumbeg-drum tabourka tambour arabe tamburo arabo tarabonka tarabuka tarbourka tunbuk |
| pag | agogo | agogó agogò ekòn ogàn |
| pan | anvil | amboss ambosse bigornia enclume incudine yunke yunque |
| pbb | boobams | bamboostrommel boo-bams |
| pbd | bass drum | big drum bombo (Sp.) cassa cassa grande catuba einfellige grosse trommel gong bass drum gong drum gran cassa gran tamburo grancassa grancassa gong grand tambour grosse caisse grosse trommel mammoth rollo tambor grande tamburo grande tamburo turco |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | tonnant turkish drum |
| pbe | tambourin de Béarn | altobasso tambourin à cordes tamburina (Basque) tountouna trombe (Fr., 17th-18th cent.) |
| pbl | bells | bell chime campana campane campane tubolari chimes cloche cloches tubes glocke röhrenglocken röhrenglockenspiel röhrenspiel tubular bells tubular chimes |
| pbo | bongos | bongo drums bongoes |
| pbp | metal bells plate | campane a lastra campane a placca cloches à plaque cloches en lame de métal cloches-plaques metalplatten plate bells plattenglocken stahlplatten |
| pbr | bronte | Bronté |
| pca | castanets | castagnette castagnettes castagnetti castagnole castañetas castañuelas castanyoles clappern cliquettes kastagnetten nacchere |
| pcb | cabaca | Afoche afoxe afuche afuche cabaza cabasa |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | cabaza calebasse caqueré casabia kurbisrassel xaqué |
| pcc | chinese cymbals | cymbales chinoises pang cymbals piatto cinese ping cymbals swish cymbals |
| pcg | conga | atabaque (Brazilian) congas tambor (Cuban) tambora (Cuban) tumba tumbadora |
| pch | chains | catene chaînes ketten kettenrassel |
| pci | cimbalom | brettl cymbalum dolcema dolcemela dolcimela doucemelle doulcemelle dowcememere dulce melos dulçema dulcet dulcette dulcimer dulcimor hachbratt hackbrett kymbalon pantaleon psaltari (struck) psalter (struck) psaltérion (Fr., struck) psalterium (struck) psaltery (struck) saltari (struck) saltere (struck) salterio (struck) sautere (struck) sautier (struck) sautieron (struck) |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | timpano (Sp.) tympanon (Fr.) |
| pco | chocalho | chocallo chocolo ganza metal chocalho metal tube metallgefäßrassel shüttenrohr sounding tube tube shaker tube sonore tubo sonoro tubos (Lat. Am.) xocalho |
| pcr | crash cymbal | aufgehängte becken becken auf ständer becken freihängend bounce cymbals crash ride cymbals cymbale suspendue cymbales frappées hängendes becken piatto piatto sospeso ride cymbals rock cymbals snap cymbal splash cymbals suspended cymbals top cymbals zymbal (Ger.) |
| pct | crotales | antike zimbeln antikes becken antique cymbals cimbali antichi crotali crotali antichi cymbales antiques gioco di crotali kleine tanz-becken zimbeln zimbelspiel |
| pcu | cuíca | cuica friction drum cuíca |
| pcv | claves | Baguettes holzstäbe |
| pcw | cowbell | almglocke campanaccio |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | campanaccio a pedale campanaccio alpestre campanaccio da mucca cencerros cloche à vache cloche de vache cow-bell grelot de vache herdenglocke kuhglocke métal bloc vieh glocke viehschellen |
| pcy | cymbals | becken becken teller beckenpaar cimbali cinelli clashed cymbals coppia di piatti cymbales (Fr.) cymbales à main cymbales coquées cymbales cosser cymbales frappées cymbals — pair cymbals clashed gewöhnlich becken hand becken hand cymbals piatti piatti a due piatti a mano piatti in coppia piatti volanti platillos schellbecken tellern tschinellen two cymbals zwei becken gestossen |
| pdr | drum | tabur tambor tambour tamburo trommel trumme |
| pds | drums | bateria batteria batterie équipement de la batterie |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | percusión (Sp.) percussion outfit schlagzeug-garnitur |
| pfc | finger cymbals | castagnette di ferro castagnettes de fer cimbali a dita cliquettes métalliques crotales à doigts crotali a dita cymbales à doigts cymbales digitales finger-zimbel iron castanets metal castanets metallkastagnetten piattini |
| pfd | friction drum | brummtopf caccavella jackdaw lions roar lion's roar löwengebrüll putipù reibentrommel reibtrommel ruggito del leone rummeltopf string drum string-drum tambor de fricción tambour à corde tambour à friction tamburo a corda tamburo a frizione zambomba |
| pfl | flexatone | Flexaton |
| pgl | glockenspiel | bell-lyra strumento d'acciaio lyra glockenspiel metallino militär glockenspiel sistro (18th-19th cent.) stabspiel stahlspiel |
| pgn | gun | cannone canon explosivaerophone |
| pgo | gong | gong a suono indeterminato |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | tam tam tam-tam tamtam |
| pgu | güiro | gracé guayó güira guiro jiruquía reco-reco sapo vis guirra |
| pha | hammer | hammerschlag maglio marteau martello martellone martelo martillo massue mazza sledge-hammer |
| phb | handbell | campanella campanella a mano campanella da chiesa campanilla cloches à main clochette clochette à main clochette de messe clochette pour la messe hand bell handglocke messglöche messklingel sanctus bell tischglocke |
| phh | hi-hat | charleston charleston-cymbals cymbales à pedale cymbales charleston foot cymbals high-hat hi-hat becken hi-hat charleston hi-hat cymbals piatti a pedale piatto a pedale |
| pir | intonarumori | |
| pje | jembe | djembe |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|---------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| pji | jingles | araine bubbolo carquavel cascabel cencerro esquila girellina grelot grelots jingle bells rolle (Ger.) rollschelle schelle sleigh bells sonagli sonagliera sonaglio sonnaile sonneau sonnette |
| pli | lithophone | felsenharmonika lithophon litofo steinharmonika steinspiel |
| plj | lujon | loo-jon |
| pmb | marimba | marimbaphon marimbaphone |
| pmc | maracas | alfandoque asô asson dadu guará huada maracá marraga maruga nasisi sonajas |
| pmd | military drum | basel drum basler trommel caisse caisse claire caisse plate caisse roulante caisse sourde caja cassa chiara cassa rullante drum with strings |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | field drum kleine trommel landsknechtsz-trommel militärtrommel parade drum paradetrommel rolling case rolling drum rolltrommel rührtrommel rullante schnarttrommel side drum snare drum tambour à timbre tambour de Bâle tambour de parade tambour d'empire tambour militaire tambour roulant tambour ténor tambourin de Suisse tamburo con corde tamburo da parata tamburo di Basilea tamburo militare tamburo piccolo tamburo rullante tamburo tenore tenor drum tenortrommel wirbel trommel |
| pme | metallophone | metallofono métalophone |
| pnv | nail violin | eisenvioline melkharmonica metallstabsharfe nagelclavier nagelgeige nagelharmonika stockspiel violino di ferro violon de fer |
| pra | ratchett | bird-scare carraca cog rattle crécelle knallfrosch knarre matraca raganella |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|----------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | ratsche rattle tartevelle |
| prs | rain stick | bâton de pluie |
| prt | roto-toms | rototoms rototomspiel |
| pse | sizzle cymbals | cymbale cloutée nietenbecken piatto chiodato piatto con sizzler piatto jazz |
| pse | sound-effect instrument | objet sonore oggetto sonoro |
| psl | slit-drum | afrikanische schlitztrommel cassa di legno gestimmte hölzer holzblocktrommel log drum rhythm log schlitztrommel slit drum slit gong slit wood drum talking drum tambour à fente tambour à fessure tambour de bois tambour de bois à fente tambour de tronc d'arbre tamburo a fessura tamburo di legno |
| psm | sistrum | crepitaculum sistre sistro (antique) |
| psn | sirene | siren sirena sirène |
| psp | sandpaper | blocchi di carta vetrata blocs à papier de verre carta vetrata papier de verre sandblöcke sandblocks sandpapier sandpapierblöcke |
| pss | sound sculpture | sculpture sonore scultura sonora |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | structure Bascet |
| pst | steel drum | bass pan ping-pong rhythm pan tambour d'acier tamburo d'acciaio tamburo di ferro tamburo di metallo tenor pan trinidad steel drum trinidad-gongtrommel tuned-boom |
| psw | switch whip | fouet de verges frusta di verghe klapper aus bambus pu-ili rute ruthe stab aus bambus twig brush twigs verges |
| pta | tablas | tabla tabla trommel |
| ptb | tabor | frame drum hand drum handtrommel rahmentrommel taberett tabolet taboret tamborcillo tambori tamborim tambour provençal tambour sans cadre tambourin tambourin de provence tambourine (Fr.) tambourine without jingles tamburello senza sonagli tamburino tamburo di provenza tamburo provenzale tammarin |
| ptc | turkish crescent | albero dei sonagli bonnet chinois cappel cinese cappello cinese |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | cappello turco chapeau chinois chinesco chinese pavilion cimbaleiro (Sp.) crescent halbmond jingling johnny mezzaluna mohamedsfahne padiglione cinese pavillon chinois schellenbaum |
| pte | temple block | bloc chinois chinese temple block chorean blocks dragon's mouth tempelblock temple bloc |
| ptg | tuned gong | bossed gong buckelgong button gong chinese gong chinesischer gong chromatic gong gestimmtes gong gong (tuned) gong a bulbo gong a calotta gong a mamellone gong accordé gong ageng gong cinese gong filippino gong (hauteur fixe) gong intonato gong javanese gong thailandese gong-chime kempul |
| pti | timpani | atabal bedon heerpauken kettledrum nacaires pauken timbal timbale timbale chromatique timbales (20th cent.) timbales (Fr.) |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | timbale-trompette timballi timpano timpano a pedale timpano cromatico trompette-timbale tymbales |
| ptl | triangle | acciarino staffa staffetto stegeryff trepie trepit trespié triangel triangolo triangulo tripet |
| ptm | thunder machine | bronteron chapa de trueno donnerblech donnermaschine lamiera del tuono lamina metallica lastra del tuono macchina del tuono machine à tonnerre metal sheet thunder sheet tôle pour imiter le tonnerre |
| pto | tarol | tamburo militare piccolo tamburo tarole tarole tarole drum tarole-trommel |
| ptr | tambourine | basque drum bedon de biscaye pandeiro pandero pantheru penderete piano-basque rahmentrommen schellentrommel tambour de basque tambourine (En.) tamburello tamburello basco tamburello senza pelle |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | tamburin (Ger.) tamburo basco timbrel |
| ptt | tom-tom | tom tomtom |
| pvi | vibraphone | steel marimba vibes vibrafono vibraharp vibraphon |
| pvs | vibra-slap | jawbone kieferknochen mascella d'asino quijada schlagrassel vibraslap |
| pwh | whip | claquette flagello fouet frusta holzklapper peitsche slap stick slapstick |
| pwm | wind machine | aeoliphone eolifono macchina del vento machine à vent windmaschine |
| pwo | woodblocks | bloc chinois bloc de bois cylindrique blocchi blocchi di legno blocs chinois de bois blocs de bois chinese blocks chinese woodblocks chinesische blöcke holzblock röhrenholztrommel tone block tone block cylinder wood block cilindrico wood blocks woodblock |
| pxr | xylorimba | marimba-xylophone xilomarimba xilomarimba xilorimba xylo-marimba |

| 7. Percussion | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| pxy | xylophone | armonica di legno armonica di paglia arpilegno claquebois echelette eschelletes gigelyra hölzernes gelächter holzharmonika holzspiel hülze glechter instrument di legno legnofono orgue de bois patouilles régal de bois silofono sistro d'apulia sticcato straw fiddle strohfiedel tastenxylophon timpano musicale tryphon xilofono xyloharmonika xylophon |
| pza | zarb | |
| pun | percussion – unspecified | percussioni perkussion schlagzeug |
| pzz | percussion – other | |
| | percussion – ethnic | <i>use suffix: puny</i> |
| | electronic percussion | <i>use suffix: punx</i> drum machine electronic drum percussion électronique percussioni elettroniche rythm machine side man |

| 8. Electric / electronic instruments and devices | | |
|--|-------------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| eco | computer | Calcolatore elektronen-rechengerät elektronisches rechengerät ordinateur processeur numérique |
| ecs | computer-ized musical station | postazione informatica musicale station informatique musicale |
| ect | computerized tape | bande réalisée par ordinateur, son fixé nastro realizzato da computer |
| eds | digital space device | dispositif spatial numérique dispositivo spaziale digitale |
| eea | electro-acoustic device | dispositif électro- acoustique dispositivo elettroacustico |
| eli | live electronic | ` |
| ely | lyricon | |
| ema | ondes Martenot | onde martenot |
| eme | meta-instrument | méta-instrument metastrumento |
| emu | multimedial device | dispositif multimédia dispositivo multimediale |
| eos | oscillator | oscillateur oscillatore |
| esp | space device | dispositif spatial dispositivo spaziale |
| esy | synthesizer | minimoog moog odyssey sintetizzatore synclavier synket synthétiseur |
| eta | tape | bande magnétique magnetofono magnettonband nastro magnetico tonband |

| 8. Electric / electronic instruments and devices | | |
|--|--------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| eth | theremin | teremin théréminovox |
| eun | electronic – unspecified | électronique, non spécifié elettronico, non specificato |
| ezz | electronic – other | |
| | electric organ | <i>use suffix: kore</i> |
| | electric piano | <i>use suffix: kpie</i> |
| | electronic organ | <i>use suffix: korx</i> |
| | electronic percussion | <i>use suffix: punx</i> |
| | electronic piano | <i>use suffix: kpix</i> |
| | hammond organ | <i>use suffix: korx</i> |

| 9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments | | |
|--|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| mah | aeolian harp | aéro-clavicorde anémocorde äolsharfe arpa eolia arpa eolica eliocordo harpe éolienne piano éolien windharfe |
| mbo | barrel organ | Drehorgel dutch organ grinder organ hand organ leierkasten organetto a cilindro organetto a manovella organo di barberia organo tedesco orgue à manivelle orgue de barbarie street organ walzenorgel |
| mbr | bullroarer | bull-roarer buzzer |

| 9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments | | |
|--|--------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | dischi sibilanti planchette ronflante rhombe rhombus rombo schwirrholz spinning disc tavoleta sibilante thunder stick waldteufel |
| mbs | bass Instrument | bajo bas basse basso bassus |
| mbw | musical bow | arc musical arco musical arco musicale berimbau birimbao (Lat. Am.) camalpa caramba harpa (Mex.) musikbogen ukeke umcunga |
| mbx | musical box | ariston boîte à musique scatola musicale spieldose tabatière |
| mck | chekker | archiquier echiquier escacherium escaque eschaqueil d'angleterre eschiquier exaquier scacchiere schachtbrett |
| mcl | musical clock | flötenharfenuhr flötenuhr harfenuhr horloge musical orologio musicale spieluhr |
| mco | continuo | bajo continuo bajo fundamental |

| 9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments | | |
|--|----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | basse chiffrée basse continue basse fondamentale basso cifrato basso continuo basso figurato basso fondamentale basso generale basso numerato bassus continuus bezifferten bass figured bass fondamento fondement fundamental bass generalbass grundbass thorough bass |
| mgh | glassharmonika | armonica (En.) armonica (It., 18th cent.) armonica a cristalli rotanti cassa armonica clavicylinder cölison copologo euphon euphone glasharmonika glass harmonica glasschord harmonica (En., 18th cent.) harmonica de verres harmonicon musical glasses verrillon xylharmonicon xylomelodichord xylosistrion |
| mha | harmonica | armonica (It., 19th-20th cent.) armonica a bocca armónica de boca harmonica à bouche mouth organ mundharmonika panharmonicon |
| mhg | hurdy-gurdy | armonie (Fr.) bauernleier |

| 9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments | | |
|--|--------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | bettlerleier chifonie chinforgne cinfonia ciphonie clavecin-vielle ghironda klaviergamba leier lira organizzata lyra mendicorum lyra organica lyra pagana lyra rustica lyra tedesca organistro organistrum orgelleier radleier rotata sambuca sinfonia stampella symphonia symphonie vielle à roue vielle organisée viola da orbo viola de ruedas zampugna zanfona zanfonia |
| mjh | jew's harp | aura birimbao brummeisen guimbarde jaw's harp jew's trump maultrommel rebube scacciapensieri trombula trompe de béard |
| mla | lamellaphone | lamellophone zanza |
| mmc | monochord | canon harmonicus monoorde monocordo tastenmonochord |

| 9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments | | |
|--|-----------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| mme | melodica | |
| mmi | mirliton | bazooka cantophone eunuch flûte à l'oignon flûte eunuque gazooka gazoota kazoo tommy-talker zazah |
| mml | melodic instrument | instrument mélodique melodieinstrument strumento melodico |
| mms | musical saw | lame sonore (Fr.) säge mit bassbogen gestrichen scie musicale sega cantante sega musicale singende säge spielsäge |
| moc | ocarina | vessel flute |
| mpo | polyphonic instrument | instrument harmonique strumento armonico |
| mpp | player piano | ampico autopiano duo-art piano duophonola phonola piano mécanique piano pneumatico pianola reproduktionsflügel |
| mra | rabab | Rebab |
| msw | swanee whistle | flauto a coulisse flûte à coulisse jazz flûte lotosflöte piston flute slide flute slide whistle stempelflöte swanee flute ziehpfefe |
| mtf | tuning-fork | alamire corista |

| 9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments | | |
|--|----------------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| | | diapason |
| mui | instrument – unspecified | instrumento strumento |
| mwd | wind instrument | aerofono blasinstrument strumento a fiato instrument à vent |
| mwh | whistle | fischietto sifflet |
| mun | instrument or voice, unspecified | instrument ou voix, non spécifié strumento o voce, non specificato |
| mzz | other | |

| 10. Choruses | | |
|--------------|---------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| cch | children's choir | chœur d'enfants choeur d'enfants coro di voci bianche |
| cme | men's choir | chœur d'hommes choeur d'hommes coro maschile männerchor |
| cmi | mixed choir | chœur mixte choeur mixte coro misto |
| cre | reciting choir | chœur parlé choeur parlé coro parlato coro recitante |
| cve | vocal ensemble | complesso vocale ensemble vocal |
| cwo | women's choir | chœur de femmes choeur de femmes coro femminile |
| cun | choir – unspecified | chœur choeur chor choro coro |

| 10. Choruses | | |
|--------------|----------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| czz | choir – other | |
| | choir – ethnic | <i>use suffix: cuny</i> |

| 11. Orchestras, ensembles | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| oba | band | banda harmonie |
| obi | big band | |
| obr | brass band | fanfara fanfare |
| och | chamber orchestra | kammerorchester orchestra da camera orchestre de chambre |
| oco | combo | |
| odo | dance orchestra | orchestra da ballo orchestre de danse |
| ofu | full orchestra | grand orchestre orchestra sinfonica orchestre symphonique |
| oga | gamelan | |
| oie | instrumental ensemble | complesso strumentale ensemble instrumental |
| oja | jazz band | complesso jazz ensemble jazz |
| ope | percussion orchestra | orchestra di percussioni orchestre de percussions |
| orb | ragtime band | |
| osb | steel band | |
| ost | string orchestra | orchestra d'archi orchestre à cordes streichorchester |
| owi | wind orchestra | orchestra di fiati orchestre de vents |
| oun | orchestra – unspecified | orchester orchestre |
| ozz | orchestra – other | |
| | orchestra – ethnic | <i>use suffix: ouny</i> |

| 12. Conductors | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| qch | choir conductor, chorus master | chef de chœur direttore di coro |
| qco | conductor | chef d'orchestre direttore direttore d'orchestra |
| qce | live electronic conductor | direttore di live electronic |
| qlc | light conductor | direttore delle luci |
| qzz | conductor – other | |

| 13. Other performers | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|--|
| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
| zab | acrobat | Acrobata acrobate |
| zat | actor | attore comédien acteur |
| zaw | actress | attrice attrice |
| zac | child actor | acteur enfant attore bambino |
| zda | dancer | ballerino danseur |
| zel | light engineer | tecnico delle luci |
| zmi | mime | mimo |
| zas | silent actor | attore muto |
| zes | sound engineer | tecnico del suono |
| zju | juggler | giocoliere jongleur |
| zwp | walk-on part | comparsa figurant figurante |
| zzz | performer – other | interprete, altro interprète, autre |

**B. Codes for fields 145 \$b – \$d,
positions 5, 6**

| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
|----------|------------|--|
| 0 | tenth | decima vox decimo decimus dixième |
| 1 | eleventh | onzième undecima vox undicesima voce undicesimo |
| 2 | twelfth | dodicesima voce dodicesimo douzième duodecima vox |
| 5 | fifth | cinquième quinta vox quinto quintus |
| 6 | sixth | sesto sexta vox sextus sixième |
| 7 | seventh | septième septima vox septimus settimo |
| 8 | eighth | huitième octava vox octavus ottavo |
| 9 | ninth | neuvième nona vox nono nonus |
| a | alto | alt contralto |
| b | bass | bajo bas basse basso |
| c | contrabass | contrebasse contrabbasso kontrabass |
| d | midi | |
| e | electric | électrique elettrico |

| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
|----------|----------------|---|
| f | amplified | amplificato amplifié |
| g | sub-contrabass | basse grave basso grave octobasse sub-contrabbasso |
| h | high | acuto aigu hoch klein petit piccolo small |
| i | six hands | sei mani six mains |
| j | eight hands | huit mains otto mani |
| k | recorded | enregistré registrato |
| l | low | big grand grande grave gross large tief |
| m | medium | medio mittel moyen |
| n | sopranino | |
| o | one hand | una mano une main |
| p | sopracute | garklein sopracuto suraigu |
| q | antiquity | antichità antiquité |
| r | baritone | baritono baryton |
| s | soprano | Dessus pardessus sopran treble |
| t | tenor | ténor tenore |
| u | three hands | drei hände tre mani trois mains |

| Code | Definition | Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants |
|----------|----------------------------------|---|
| v | four hands | vier hände quatre mains quattro mani |
| w | two players on one instrument | deux exécutants sur un instrument due esecutori su uno strumento |
| x | electronic | électronique elettronico |
| y | ethinc, traditional | ethnique, traditionnel etnico, tradizionale |
| z | prepared | préparé preparato |

C. Codes for fields 145 \$b-\$d, position 7

| Code | Definition |
|------------|---|
| # | not specified — position not required |
| 1-9 | internal group identifier |
| 0 | internal group indicator (order of group not specified) |
| a | solo (as opposite to non-solo instruments/voices) |
| b | ad libitum |
| c | may take place of the preceding code / alternative |

| | |
|----------|---|
| d | used by the same player as the preceding code |
|----------|---|

D. Codes for fields 145 \$e, \$f, position 4

| Code | Definition |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| a | total number of performers |
| b | brass instruments |
| c | choirs |
| d | wind instruments |
| e | electro-acoustic instruments |
| g | groups within larger ensemble |
| i | instruments (not specified) |
| j | solo instruments |
| k | keyboard instruments |
| l | solo voices |
| m | miscellaneous, other instruments |
| o | orchestras |
| p | percussion instruments |
| q | conductors |
| s | bowed string instruments |
| t | plucked string instrument |
| v | voices (not specified) |
| w | woodwind instruments |
| x | choral voices |
| y | ensemble instruments |
| z | devices, other performers |

2-- DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION BLOCK

Description and Scope of Fields

This block contains those areas covered by the ISBD with the exception of notes and standard numbers. Definitions and further information on the use on the ISBD data elements are found in the ISBD documents. The following fields are defined:

| | |
|-----|--|
| 200 | Title and Statement of Responsibility |
| 205 | Edition Statement |
| 206 | Material Specific Area: Cartographic Materials Mathematical Data |
| 207 | Material Specific Area: Continuing resources – Numbering |
| 208 | Material Specific Area: Printed Music Specific Statement |
| 210 | Publication, Distribution, etc. |
| 211 | Projected Publication Date |
| 215 | Physical Description |
| 225 | Series |
| 230 | Material Specific Area: Electronic Resource Characteristics |

Notes on Contents of Block

Unless stated otherwise in a particular field, ISBD punctuation is not entered at subfield boundaries or at the end of a field. This rule also applies to parallel data introduced by subfield \$d in fields 200, 205, 208 and 225. In all other positions the equals sign and space ('= ') should be entered explicitly whenever it occurs in the description; '= ' then replaces any other ISBD punctuation that would normally be generated at a subfield boundary.

In certain fields in the 2-- block, guidance is given as to the ISBD punctuation which is generated from the subfield identifier. This is intended only as a rough guide and the appropriate ISBD is in all cases the authority.

Data elements in this block should not be generated automatically from data elements in other parts of a source record in instances where the source record lacks these elements. For example, if the source record does not have a data element 'statement of responsibility as found on the item', the access point fields (equivalent to UNIMARC 7--) should not be used to generate one since there will be no way of ensuring that data in such a generated subfield would add anything to the descriptive area of the record. Similarly a series statement (field 225) should not be generated automatically from a series access point (field 410). Nevertheless, since the 200 \$a subfield is mandatory, a title from the source record must be entered in this subfield whether or not it is in ISBD form.

In cases where the full range of subfields cannot be used (for example, when a record is converted from another format), the accompanying documentation should give details.

205 ##\$a3rd ed., 2nd (corrected) impression [should be 3rd ed.\$b2nd ...]

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, descriptive cataloguing (character position 18)

If a UNIMARC record does not for whatever reason contain data entered according to the provisions of ISBD, then character position 18 of the RECORD LABEL,

descriptive cataloguing form, should contain the code 'n' for non-ISBD form or 'i' for partial or incomplete form, depending on the amount of divergence.

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the title along with any other title information and statements of responsibility relating to the title including any of the preceding repeated in other languages (parallel titles, parallel statements of responsibility, etc.) generally in the form and sequence in which they appear on the item being catalogued. It corresponds to the ISBD Title and Statement of Responsibility area.

Occurrence

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

This specifies whether the agency preparing the record considers that the title proper as specified in the first \$a subfield deserves treatment as an access point. This corresponds to making a title added entry or treating the title as main entry under certain cataloguing codes.

0 Title is not significant

This title does not warrant an added entry.

1 Title is significant

An access point is to be made from this title.

For access points for any title other than the first occurring title proper, see RELATED FIELDS below.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Title Proper

The chief title of the item, includes alternative title but excludes other title information (e.g. subtitles) and parallel titles. Repeatable for additional titles by the same author (EX 5). Mandatory for every record.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of general material designation (EX 3, 11). This subfield contains a term indicating the broad class of material to which the item belongs given in the language and script of the agency preparing the record. It corresponds to the ISBD General Material Designation. Repeatable.

- \$c** Title Proper by Another Author
- The chief title of a work by an author other than the one responsible for the first title when they are both contained in the same item and when there is no collective title. Repeatable for each additional title proper by another author (EX 12).
- \$d** Parallel Title Proper
- The title proper in another language and/or script relating to a title proper appearing in a \$a or \$c subfield (EX 4, 13, 14). Repeatable for each additional parallel title.
- \$e** Other Title Information
- Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the title proper on an item (EX 1, 2, 10). Repeatable for each segment of other title information (EX 10) and for parallel other title information (EX 13, 14). It does not include variant titles such as spine title, cover title, and other titles found outside the principal source of information. It may be subordinate to a title appearing in subfield \$a, \$c or \$d.
- \$f** First Statement of Responsibility
- The first statement of responsibility for a title appearing in subfield \$a, \$c or \$d, or for a numbered or named part of a work appearing in subfields \$h or \$i. Repeatable after each subfield \$a, \$c, \$d, \$h or \$i which has an accompanying statement of responsibility (EX 12) or for each parallel statement of responsibility (EX 6).
- \$g** Subsequent Statement of Responsibility
- A statement of responsibility after the first statement of responsibility and relating to the same title (EX 1, 4, 8, 9). It is repeatable for each additional subsequent statement of responsibility (EX 1, 8, 9) and for each parallel subsequent statement of responsibility (EX 14).
- \$h** Number of a Part
- The section or part numbering for items that are identified by a common name and a subsection name (EX 3, 11). Repeatable for each subsection or lower level division (EX 11) or for a parallel part number.
- \$i** Name of a Part
- The section or part name for items which are identified by a common name and a subsection name (EX 3, 11). Repeatable for each subsection or lower level division (EX 11) or for a parallel part name.
- \$v** Volume Designation
- Used to indicate a particular part of an item that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when a 200 field is embedded in a 4 - - linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4 - - tag. For example, an item may be a volume of a series, in which case the series title and the volume designation are entered in an embedded 200 field (EX 7). Volume designation may be numbers, years, etc. Not repeatable.

\$z Language of Parallel Title Proper

Coded identification of the language of a parallel title that appears in a \$d subfield. If \$d is repeated, this subfield should be repeated, the languages identified reflecting the order of the parallel titles. This subfield and any repeats should always come last in the field (EX 4, 13, 14). See Appendix A for list of codes.

\$5 Institution to Which Field Applies

Name of institution and copy to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. If the institution holds more than one copy, it is recommended that the subfield also contain the shelfmark after a colon. Not repeatable.

This subfield is used only when a 200 field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian) to identify the institution which possesses the item with copy specific information. The case may be of an item bound in an 'artificial' collection (EX 17).

Notes on Field Contents

ISBD information:

The data in the field should be entered as specified in ISBD for the Title and Statement of Responsibility Area. Subfield \$z is not an ISBD data element. The correspondence between this field and the ISBD specification is illustrated below.

| UNIMARC subfield | Element name | ISBD (G) section | Preceding punctuation |
|------------------|--|------------------|------------------------|
| \$a | Title proper | 1.1 | New area |
| \$a (repeated) | Title proper by the same author | 1.6 | ; |
| \$b | General material designation | 1.2 | [] |
| \$c | Title proper by another author | 1.6 | . |
| \$d | Parallel title proper | 1.3 | = |
| \$e | Other title information | 1.4 | : |
| \$f | First statement of responsibility | 1.5 | / |
| \$g | Subsequent statement of responsibility | 1.5 | ; |
| \$h | Number of a part | 1.1.4 ISBD(S) | . |
| \$i | Name of a part | 1.1.4 ISBD(S) | , if after \$h, else . |

The above table illustrates the preceding punctuation which occurs in most situations but not necessarily when parallel data is present. Further information is found in the appropriate ISBD.

When ISBD data is not found in the source record, no attempt should be made to create it from other data elements in a record. For example, if the source record does not have

a data element 'statement of responsibility as found on the item', data from the access point fields of the source record should not be used to create one.

When an item has a collective title consisting of the title of separate works contained within it, any conjunction in the title is included in the subfield of the title it precedes (EX 5).

Parallel data:

Parallel data appearing on the item, i.e. data repeated in other languages or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of equals sign followed by a space '= ' at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier \$d will generate '= ' automatically (EX 4, 13, 14\$d). If '= ' is required by ISBD rules at the start of any other subfield, it must be entered explicitly. The equals sign and space then replace any other ISBD punctuation that would normally be generated at that subfield boundary (EX 6 \$f, EX 14 \$g).

A title translated by the cataloguer is recorded in field 541 unless it is the only title supplied by the source record.

Title access:

The data in 200 \$a will usually be that used to create an access point for the record under the title, if the title significance indicator (indicator 1) is set to 1. There is no other field in the UNIMARC format from which an added entry under title proper can be created when the record is used in the production of a catalogue.

General material designation:

The general material designation is entered in the language of the agency preparing the record. Lists of general material designations are found in ISBDs. For monographs and continuing resources in the usual print form, the designation 'Printed text' may optionally be used. When an item has a collective title proper and comprises more than one interdependent component belonging to distinct material categories, the field will include a subfield for each general material designation.

When displayed, the general material designation is enclosed in brackets []. These are ISBD prescribed punctuation and are not included in the record.

Related Fields

101 LANGUAGE OF THE ITEM

The language of the title proper in the 200 \$a subfield may be indicated in \$g of field 101. However if there is no language entered in 101 \$g, it can be assumed that the language of the title proper is the same as the first language of the text, entered in the first occurrence of \$a in the 101 field. The language of any parallel titles is contained in 200 \$z.

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Used for notes on the contents of field 200.

312 NOTES RELATING TO RELATED TITLES

Used for notes containing the text of and/or comments on related titles.

- 423 ISSUED WITH
Used for added entries for titles contained in additional 200 \$a subfields, for 200 \$c subfields and for titles associated with these (EX 12).
- 5-- RELATED TITLE BLOCK
Used for added entries for parallel titles contained in 200\$d (EX 4) and for variant titles such as spine title.
- 530 KEY TITLE
When the source format carries a key title, which may or may not be the same as the title proper, it is entered in field 530.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Great Fear of 1789\$erural panic in revolutionary France\$f[by] Georges LeFebvre\$gtranslated from the French by Joan White\$gintroduction by George Rudé

The ISBD entry appears as:

The Great Fear of 1789 : rural panic in revolutionary France / [by] Georges LeFebvre ; translated from the French by Joan White ; introduction by George Rudé.

'The ' is marked as having no filing value.

EX 2: 200 1#\$aWhat is modern mathematics?\$sea guide to teachers in further education \$fYorkshire and Humberside Council for Further Education

The ISBD entry appears as:

What is modern mathematics? : a guide to teachers in further education / Yorkshire and Humberside Council for Further Education.

The question mark '?' of the title proper is retained since it is not ISBD prescribed punctuation.

EX 3: 200 0#\$aBulletin signalétique\$bMicroform\$hSection 9\$iSciences de l'ingénieur \$fCentre national de la recherche scientifique

The ISBD entry appears as:

Bulletin signalétique [Microform]. Section 9, Sciences de l'ingénieur / Centre national de la recherche scientifique

EX 4: 200 1#\$aIndustrial steam locomotives of Germany and Austria\$dDampflok auf Industriebahnen der BRD, DDR, und Österreich\$fcompiled by Brian Rumary \$gGerman translations by M. Spellen\$zger
510 1#\$aDampflok auf Industriebahnen der BRD, DDR, und Österreich\$zger

The item has a parallel title that is coded as German. An added entry is required for the parallel title, so it is repeated in field 510.

EX 5: 200 1#\$aFlash and filigree\$aand, The Magic Christian\$fby Terry Southern

The item contains two individual works by the same author, each with its own title but without any collective title.

EX 6: 200 1#\$aBibliographica belgica\$fCommission belge de bibliographie\$f= Belgische Commissie voor bibliografie

The item has a title in Latin with parallel statements of responsibility in French and Dutch. The \$f subfield is repeated and the data is preceded by an equals sign '=' and space.

EX 7: 410 #0\$I2000#\$aSeries de histórica general\$vv.5\$I71001\$aMexico (City).
\$bUniversidad Nacional.\$bInstituto de Investigaciones Históricas.

This example illustrates the use of field 200 embedded in a linking entry field. A link is made between the item being catalogued and the series to which it belongs, using field 410. Embedded within the 410 field are the 710 field containing the name of the corporate body primarily responsible for the series and the 200 field containing the name of the series. The item being catalogued is v.5 of the series, so v.5 is entered in the 200 \$v field.

EX 8: 200 1#\$aThree adventures of Asterix\$iAsterix in Switzerland\$text by Goscinny
\$gdrawings by Uderzo\$gtranslated by Anthea Bell and Derek Hockridge

The item is one of three unnumbered volumes, with a common title for the set of three and individual titles for each volume. The first statement of responsibility is entered in \$f and all others in \$g. Note that a statement of responsibility may contain more than one name (second \$g). Alternatively, the volume could have been treated as in EX 9.

EX 9: 200 1#\$aAsterix in Switzerland\$text by Goscinny\$gdrawings by Uderzo\$gtranslated
by Anthea Bell and Derek Hockridge
461 #1\$I2001#\$aThree adventures of Asterix

The same example as EX 8 but treated differently in the source format of the agency preparing the record.

EX 10: 200 1#\$aLife wish\$ereincarnation\$ereality or hoax\$fMaurice Rawlings

Example of multiple occurrences of other title information.

EX 11: 200 1#\$aBritish standard methods of analysis of fat and fatty oils\$bPrinted text\$hPart
I\$iPhysical methods\$hSection 1.12\$iDetermination of the dilation of fats

A standards document with sections and subsections as recorded in a multi-media bibliography. The general material designation is stated.

EX 12: 200 1#\$aPour les valeurs bourgeoises\$fpar Georges Hourdin\$Ccontre les valeurs
bourgeoises\$fpar Gilbert Ganne
423 #0\$I2001#\$aContre les valeurs bourgeoises\$I700#1\$aGanne,\$bGilbert

The ISBD entry appears as:

Pour les valeurs bourgeoises / par Georges Hourdin. Contre les valeurs bourgeoises /
par Gilbert Ganne

An item contains two works by different authors without common title. Note that subfield \$f First Statement of Responsibility is repeated after each title. In order to provide for author/title and title added entries for the second named work, the author and title are entered in field 423.

EX 13: 200 1#\$aApplications of ecological (biophysical) land classification in Canada\$eproceedings of the second meeting\$dApplications de la classification écologique (biophysique) du territoire au Canada\$ecompte rendu de la deuxième réunion\$fCanada Committee on Ecological (Biophysical) Land Classification, 4-7 April 1978, Victoria, British Columbia\$gcompiled and edited by C.D.A. Rubec\$zfre

The item contains 'blocked' data for title and other title information, but since the statements of responsibility are not parallel, these are outside the block.

EX 14: 200 1#\$aPrinting at Gregynog\$easpects of a great private press\$dArgraffu yng Ngregynog\$eagweddau ar wasg breifat fawr\$fMichael Hutchins\$gtranslated by David Jenkins\$g= y cyfieithiad gan David Jenkins\$zwe1

The source format has not blocked the description by language since the first statement of responsibility belongs to each set of language data; therefore the equals sign precedes each new set of elements in the parallel language.

EX 15: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠western, nouvelle éd.\$cÉvolution et renouveau du western (1962-1968)

The publication is without a collective title and the edition statement for one of the titles thus appears in the title area rather than in an edition area. The source format treated this unusually placed data element like a part of the title proper.

EX 16: 200 0#\$aVol. 3

461 #0\$100183.040221.7\$15010#\$aWorks\$1700#1\$a Shakespeare\$bWilliam

The record is for a part without a distinctive title from a source format that constructs separate records for each level in a bibliographic hierarchy. The 461 contains the control number of the record for a 9 volume set of complete works of Shakespeare without distinctively named individual volumes.

EX 17: 481 #1\$1001930112003\$12000#\$aTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formulis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta \$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1133privez1\$1210## \$aBudae\$d1780

or

481 #1\$0001930112003\$tTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formulis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta. CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1133privez1\$cBudae\$d1780

204 GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATION (GMD) – OBSOLETE

Field Definition

This field contains coded information on the GMD. It corresponds to the ISBD General Material Designation

Occurrence

Repeatable. Obsolete. Data now included at field 200 subfield \$b.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a General Material Designation

Text of General Material Designation. Not repeatable.

205 EDITION STATEMENT

Field Definition

The field contains a statement of the edition of the item along with any additional issue statement and statement of responsibility relating to the edition. It corresponds to the ISBD Edition Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Edition Statement

A word, phrase or group of characters in a formal statement, identifying an item as a member of an edition. Not repeatable: additional edition statements are entered in \$b.

\$b Issue Statement

This subfield contains an edition statement relating to an issue or an additional edition statement which:

- is formally identified as constituting an edition within an edition, or
- has significant differences in content from other issues of the larger edition to which it belongs (EX 5, 8), or
- is an alternative designation for the edition named in subfield \$a (EX 6).

It corresponds to the ISBD Additional Edition Statement. Repeatable for a parallel or additional issue statement.

\$d Parallel Edition Statement

The statement of an edition in a language and/or script other than the edition statement in subfield \$a (EX 9). Repeatable for each edition statement in other languages.

\$f Statement of Responsibility Relating to Edition

The first of any statements of responsibility relating to the edition. May appear following subfields \$a (EX 8, 9), \$b (EX 7), or \$d (EX 9). Repeatable for parallel first statements and first statements relating to additional edition statements.

\$g Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Any subsequent statement of responsibility relating to the edition (EX 7). Follows subfield \$f. Repeatable for additional subsequent statements and parallel subsequent statements.

Notes on field contents

ISBD information:

The data in the field should be entered, as specified in ISBD, in the terms that appear on the item. When data is supplied by the cataloguer, it should be enclosed within brackets []. The correspondence between this field and ISBD specification is illustrated below.

| UNIMARC subfield | Element name | ISBD(G) section | Preceding Punctuation |
|------------------|---|-----------------|-----------------------|
| \$a | Edition statement | 2.1 | New area |
| \$d | Parallel edition statement | 2.2 | = |
| \$f | Statement of responsibility relating to edition | 2.3, 2.5 | / |
| \$g | Subsequent statement of responsibility | 2.3, 2.5 | ; |
| \$b | Issue or additional edition statement | 2.4 | , |

Subfield content:

Statements of responsibility are entered immediately after the edition/issue statement to which they specifically apply. If a statement of responsibility applies to the work as a whole, and not merely to one particular edition or issue, it is entered in subfields 200 \$f or \$g. A single statement of responsibility may contain more than one name in some cases (EX 8).

When a statement relating to an issue or reprint is present in the item and there is no edition statement present, the issue statement is entered in subfield \$a (EX 4). Many cataloguing codes do not transcribe an edition statement when it refers to a first edition.

Parallel data:

Parallel data appearing on the item, i.e. data repeated in another language or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of equals sign followed by a space '= ' at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier \$d will generate '= ' automatically (EX 9). If '= ' is required by ISBD rules at the start of any other subfield, it must be entered explicitly. The equals sign and space then replace any other punctuation that would normally be generated at that subfield boundary.

Related Fields**200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY**

Statements of responsibility relating to the title as a whole are entered in field 200.

305 NOTES RELATING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

Used for notes on the contents of field 205.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

Any names in an edition statement for which access points are required are entered in 7-- fields.

Examples

EX 1: 205 ##\$a16th ed.

EX 2: 205 ##\$aNew and revised ed.

EX 3: 205 ##\$aLarge print ed.

EX 4: 205 ##\$a2nd impression

EX 5: 205 ##\$a3rd ed.\$b2nd (corrected) impression

A title *Ireland* edited by L. Russell Muirhead states 'Third edition. Second (corrected) impression'. Second (corrected) impression is an issue statement and is entered in \$b.

EX 6: 205 ##\$aEnglish full ed.\$b4th international ed.

The English full edition of UDC is also labelled 'Fourth international edition'. The additional edition statement is entered in \$b.

EX 7: 205 ##\$a2nd ed.\$breissued\$fwith a foreword by Magnus Magnusson\$gextra notes by P. Gardner

The second edition of an item is reissued with the addition of a foreword by Magnus Magnusson, with extra notes by P. Gardner.

EX 8: 205 ##\$a4th ed.\$frevised by H.G. Le Mesurier and E. McIntosh\$breprinted with corrections

The 4th edition of *The pocket Oxford dictionary of accurate English* is revised by H.G. Le Mesurier and E. McIntosh. A reprint is issued with corrections.

EX 9: 205 ##\$a2nd ed.\$fedited by Larry C. Lewis\$d2e éd.\$frédigé par Larry C. Lewis

A parallel edition statement.

206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – MATHEMATICAL DATA

Field Definition

The statements of scale, projections, coordinates and equinox of a cartographic item.

Occurrence

Mandatory for cartographic items. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Formatting Indicator

Unstructured

0 Structured

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Mathematical Data Statement

The text of the statements of scale, projection, coordinates, equinoxes and epochs including ISBD punctuation. Not repeatable.

\$b Statement of scale

Includes any equivalency statements, vertical scales or vertical exaggeration statements for relief models and other three-dimensional items. Repeatable.

\$c Statement of projection (Not repeatable)

\$d Statement of coordinates (Not repeatable)

\$e Statement of zone (Not repeatable) Used for celestial charts.

\$f Statement of equinox (Not repeatable)

Notes on Field Contents

The field is equivalent to the ISBD(CM) Mathematical Data Area. The text of the note may use one subfield \$a for the data in unstructured format. In this situation the field is not divided into other subfields and so therefore the specifications for format and punctuation of the data in this field are as contained in the ISBD(CM) and all ISBD specified punctuation is carried in the field. in subfields \$b, \$c, \$d, \$e, \$f as required for the structured data

The correspondence between this field and ISBD(CM) specification is illustrated below.

| UNIMARC subfield | Element name | ISBD (CM) | Preceding punctuation |
|------------------|---|-----------|-----------------------|
| \$b | Statement of scale | 3.1 | New area |
| \$b(Repeatable) | Statement of scale | 3.1.7 | , |
| \$c | Statement of projection | 3.2 | ; |
| \$d | Statement of coordinates | 3.3 | () |
| \$e | Statement of zone used for celestial charts | 3.4 | () |
| \$f | Statement of equinox | 3.5 | (*,*) |

*Note: The statement of zone used for celestial charts and the statement of equinox are transcribed into the same pair of parentheses.

Related Fields

- 120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS
This field contains a code for map projection.
- 122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF ITEM CONTENT
This field contains in coded form the date to which the item applies, it includes the data which is found in the statement of equinox in records relating to celestial charts.
- 123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – SCALE AND COORDINATES
- 131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT

Examples

EX 1: Unstructured information
206 ##\$aScale 1:6 336 000 (W 170°-W 50°/N 80° -N 40°)

Structured information
206 0##\$bScale 1:6 336 000\$dW 170°-W 50°/N 80°-N 40°

EX 2: Unstructured information
206 ##\$aScale 1:250 000. Vertical scale 1:125 000 ; Universal Transverse Mercator proj. (W 124°- W 122°/N 58°-N57°)

Structured information
206 0##\$bScale 1:250 000\$bVertical scale 1:125 000\$cUniversal Transverse Mercator proj.\$dW 124°- W 122°/N 58°-N57°

- EX 3: Unstructured information
 206 ##\$a(RA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30min./Decl. -16° to -49°; eq. 1950, epoch 1948)
- Structured information
 206 0#\$eRA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30min./Decl. -16° to -49°\$feq. 1950, epoch 1948
- Example of a celestial chart.
- EX 4: Unstructured information
 206 ##\$aScale [ca. 1:770.000]
- Includes in field 315, note: Scale given with the calculated value 14.50 cm for the latitude degree
- Structured information
 206 0#\$bScale [ca. 1:770.000]
- Includes in field 315, note: Scale given with the calculated value 14.50 cm for the latitude degree
- EX 5: Unstructured information
 206 ##\$aScale [ca. 1:500.000]. Vertical scale [ca. 1:100.000]
- Structured information
 206 0#\$bScale [ca. 1:500.000]\$bVertical scale [ca. 1:100.000]
- EX 6: Unstructured information
 206 ##\$aScale 1:25.000 ; Gauss-Kruger projection (W 8° 42' 37" W 8° 42' 34" W 8° 31' 03" W 8° 31' 01" / N 41° 55' 01" N 41° 54' 58" N 41° 49' 37" N 41° 49' 34")
- Structured information
 206 0#\$bScale 1:25.000\$cGauss-Kruger projection\$dW 8° 42' 37" W 8° 42' 34" W 8° 31' 03" W 8° 31' 01" / N 41° 55' 01" N 41° 54' 58" N 41° 49' 37" N 41° 49' 34"
- EX 7: Unstructured information
 206 ##\$aScale not given (RA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30 min. / Decl. -16° to -49° eq. 1950, epoch 1948).
- Structured information
 206 0#\$bScale not given\$eRA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30 min. / Decl. -16° to -49°\$feq. 1950, epoch 1948
- Example of a celestial chart.

207 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMBERING OF CONTINUING RESOURCES

Field Definition

This field contains the numbering and/or dates of coverage of the first and last issues of a continuing resource when the numbers and dates are known. It corresponds to the ISBD(CR) Numbering Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Formatted Numbering Indicator

This indicator indicates whether the volume and dates are formatted or structured.

0 Formatted

1 Not formatted

Subfields

\$a Numbering: Dates and Volume Designations

The numbering and/or dates of coverage as defined in the Field Definition above. Repeatable when a new sequence of numbering is started.

\$z Source of Numbering Information

A note on the source of numbering information when it is not taken from the item itself (EX 6). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains numbering and/or dates of coverage. Dates of coverage given in this field do not necessarily coincide with the dates of publication in the record.

Recommendations for formatting this field are contained in ISBD(CM).

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

Subfield \$d contains the date of publication of the item which is entered in field 200 in the prescribed form, whether or not it coincides with any date in field 207.

225 SERIES

When an item is a member of a series and bears a series number within that series (e.g. v.7 of a monographic series), the number within the series should be entered in field 225.

Examples

EX 1: 207 #0\$aVol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1940)-

A continuing resource which is still being published is numbered from volume 1, number 1 onwards. The issues are dated from January 1940.

EX 2: 207 #0\$aVol. 1, no. 1 (1 Apr. 1946)-vol.26, no. 195 (10 Oct.1972) = no. 1-no. 6943

A daily newspaper was published from April 1, 1946 to October 10, 1972 starting with volume 1 number 1 and ending with volume 26, number 195. In addition, each issue was numbered consecutively from 1 to 6943.

EX 3 207 #0\$aApr.1978-July 1983

A continuing resource is published monthly from April 1978 to July 1983 and has no volume or issue numbering

EX 4: 207 #0\$aVol. 1, pt. 1 (June 1845)-vol. 72, pt. 12 (Dec.1916)\$aN.s. vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1917)-

A continuing resource started with volume 1, part 1, in June 1845 and in 1917 after volume 72 part 12 when it changed its format it started renumbering from New series, volume 1, number 1. Each sequence is entered in a separate subfield.

EX 5: 207 #0\$a1951/1-

A continuing resource first published in 1951 is numbered 1951/1 onwards.

EX 6: 207 #l\$aBegan in 1963\$zBUCOP

An unformatted numbering statement, with source of information.

208 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: PRINTED MUSIC SPECIFIC STATEMENT

Field Definition

This field contains a statement, transcribed from the item, relating to the particular format of a printed or manuscript music item. The field corresponds to the ISBD(PM) Printed Music Specific Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Printed Music Specific Statement

The statement related to the particular format of the item in hand, taken from the title page (EX 1, 2). Not repeatable.

\$d Parallel Printed Music Specific Statement(s)#

Any additional statements in a different language and/or script, taken from the title page (EX 2). Repeatable for each additional statement.

Notes on Field Contents

Parallel data:

Parallel data appearing on the item, i.e. data repeated in another language or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of the equals sign followed by a space = at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier \$d will generate '= ' automatically (EX 2).

Related Field

125 CODED DATA: SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSICAL SCORES

Examples

EX 1: 208 ##\$aMiniature score

EX 2: 208 ##\$aOrchester-Partitur\$dFull score

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

Field Definition

This field contains information on the publication, distribution and manufacture of the item including associated dates. It is also used in the case of manuscripts for place and date of writing and name of copyist or scriptorium. It corresponds to the ISBD Publication, Distribution, etc. Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for recording a sequence of publication data in addition to or instead of field 306, Notes pertaining to publication, distribution, etc.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Sequence of publication data

Specifies whether the publisher, distributor, etc, place and date of publication recorded in the field is first/earliest, intervening or current.

Not applicable / Earliest available publisher

For monographic works that are complete as first issued value blank is used. For continuing resources, value blank is used when a continuing resource is first catalogued. Information given as value blank is not changed, unless incorrect or earlier issues of a continuing resource are later available with differing publishing information.

0 Intervening publisher

When the publisher changes, or when the place of publication changes, additional publication statements relating to the earliest and intervening may be recorded with first indicator value 0.

1 Current or latest publisher

When the publisher changes, or when the place of publication changes, the current publication statement may be added with first indicator value 1.

Indicator 2: Type of release

Produced in multiple copies, usually published or publically distributed

1 Not published or publically distributed

Indicates a non-published work, e.g. manuscript (EX 16,17,18,24,25)

Subfields

\$a Place of Publication, Distribution, etc.

The town or other locality where the item is published or distributed or, in the case of a manuscript, written. If the place is not well-known or is incorrectly or archaically

spelled, amplification may be added in brackets according to the provisions of ISBD (EX 2, 3). Repeatable for each place named (EX 7, 12, 13) or for the place of publication in another language (EX 14).

\$b Address of Publisher, Distributor, etc.

The full postal address of a publisher, scriptorium or distributor within parentheses or brackets, usually, in the case of publisher, included only when the publisher is not well-known (EX 4). Repeatable.

\$c Name of Publisher, Distributor, etc.

The name of the publisher or distributor which may be in a shortened form so long as it is readily recognisable (EX 1). When a statement of function of the distributor is included, it is entered in this subfield in brackets (EX 5, 12). In the case of manuscripts, if known, the name of scriptorium or copyist is mentioned (EX 18). Repeatable (EX 8).

\$d Date of Publication, Distribution, etc.

The date or approximate date of publication, the writing of a manuscript, production of an art work, etc., or a copyright date (EX 7) or date of manufacture (EX 11), or the time period that specifies the part of the bibliographic item to which the field applies (EX 19-23). An open date (EX 6) or spanning date (EX 10) is permitted. Repeatable for a date of distribution when included in addition to a date of publication and separated from it by an intervening subfield (EX 12), otherwise not repeatable.

\$e Place of Manufacture

The place of manufacture of an item, e.g. the place of printing of a book (EX 9) or the place where a composite manuscript has been collected or bound together. If the place is not well-known or is incorrectly named, amplification may be added in brackets according to the provisions of ISBD. Repeatable.

\$f Address of Manufacturer

The full postal address of the manufacturer, usually included because the manufacturer is not well known. Repeatable.

\$g Name of Manufacturer

The name of the manufacturer (e.g. printer) (EX 3, 9) or the person or institution collecting different units to produce a composite manuscript. May be in a shortened form so long as it is readily recognisable. Repeatable.

\$h Date of Manufacture

The date of manufacture of an item or assembling of a manuscript, when used to supplement the date of publication (EX 13). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Field repeatability

The field is repeatable for resources that change over time so that both earliest, current and, if desired, intervening publishing information could be included in the record. Resources that change over time include multipart monographs, continuing resources and integrating resources.

Repeatable 210 fields give subsequent information only on the activity of different publishers and/or places of publication for the given period of time.

All names of places and publishers that appear on the first issue of a resource must be transcribed in the first field 210. In the case of a change affecting only one publisher, all names of places and publishers must be transcribed in the subsequent repeatable field 210 (EX 22).

Dates in the first field 210 give the complete publication dates for a resource: start and end years (as given in the field 100\$a/9-16) regardless of the change of publishers and/or place of publication. Information related to start and end dates of the first publisher should be recorded in the first repeatable 210 with the first indicator value 0 (zero).

See EX 19-23.

Subfield contents:

It is recommended that each record should have a field 210. Places, names and dates should where possible be as on the item. Where place and name of publisher are not known, [S.l.] (sine loco) and [s.n.] (sine nomine) or their equivalents in non-roman scripts are entered in subfields \$a and \$c respectively (EX 9). When more than one publisher/distributor is given, each is preceded by its place in separate repeated subfields (EX 5, 8). The rules for the omission or names of places and publishers depend on the practices of the agency.

Dates:

A date is always in subfield \$d. If the date of publication is not known a copyright date or an approximate date may be given. Such a date may be indicated as a copyright date (EX 7) or date of manufacture. A copyright date may be entered in addition to the date of publication; both are entered in the same subfield \$d. When date of manufacture is entered in addition to the date in subfield \$d, it is entered in subfield \$h (EX 13). Parentheses are omitted from this subfield, and are generated at output. For manuscripts, or other non-published items, a date or range of dates (century or portion of century) is permissible.

A spanning date may be entered in any date subfield (EX 10). When an open date is entered (EX 6) it is entered without any following space. If required, such spaces are generated at output.

Parallel data:

Parallel data may be entered in this field, in which case it is entered in a repeated subfield and preceded by an equals sign and space "= " (EX 14).

ISBD information:

ISBD recommend that any full address in \$b or \$f be entered in brackets if it is supplied by the cataloguer or in parentheses if it is taken from the item. Since this is not prescribed punctuation, it should be carried if required for a record even when it occurs at a subfield boundary (EX 4). When a distributor is named, a term such as Distributor or its equivalent may be entered in brackets (EX 5, 12). Although these brackets are prescribed punctuation in the ISBD, they are not dropped at subfield boundaries in the UNIMARC record.

For further information on the data content of this field refer to the relevant ISBD. The correspondence between this field and ISBD specification is illustrated below.

| UNIMARC Subfield | Element name | ISBD (G) section | Preceding punctuation |
|------------------|---|------------------|-----------------------|
| \$a | Place of publication, distribution, etc. | 4.1 | New area |
| \$a (repeated) | Subsequent place of publication, distribution, etc. | 4.1 | ; |
| \$b | Address of publisher, distributor, etc. | 4.2 | |
| \$c | Name of publisher, distributor, etc. | 4.3 | : |
| \$d | Date of publication, distribution, etc. | 4.4 | , |
| \$e | Place of manufacture | 4.5 | (if present |
| \$e (repeated) | Subsequent place of manufacture | | ; |
| \$f | Address of manufacturer | | |
| \$g | Name of manufacturer | 4.6 | : |
| \$h | Date of manufacture | 4.7 | , |

The entire statement of manufacture is enclosed within parentheses.

Related Fields**100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Dates of publication (character positions 9-16)**

Dates of publication are entered in field 100 as well as in 210 \$d. Both should be entered.

102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION

This field contains a code for the country or countries of publication or production and a code for the locality. It is recommended that field 102 be used in addition to field 210.

205 EDITION STATEMENT

A date of printing for a reprint etc. may be included in an edition or issue statement.

- 306 NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.
This field contains a note about publication, distribution, etc. For information on changes of publication distribution, etc., it is optional to use repeatable field 210 as well as field 306.
- 345 ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE
This field contains the full mailing address of a publisher, distributor etc.
- 620 PLACE AND DATE ACCESS
If it is desired to provide an access point for the place of publication, production etc., the place and date of performance, etc., are entered in this field
- 7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK
If it is desired to provide an access point for a publisher or manufacturer, the name of the person or body is entered in a 7-- field.

Examples

- EX 1: 210 ##\$a[Cambridge, Mass.]\$cHarvard Univ. P.\$d1981
The place of publication is not in the chief source of information. The agency abbreviates common words in the publisher's name
- EX 2: 210 ##\$aBrampton [Cumbria]\$cL.Y.T.C.\$d[1978 or 1979]
The place in the imprint is not well-known and a county is added. The date is not certain.
- EX 3: 210 ##\$aNottigham [i.e. Nottingham]\$c[s.n.]\$d1966\$gSherwood Printers
The place name is incorrectly or archaically spelled and no publisher is named.
- EX 4: 210 ##\$aLondon\$b(52, St. George's Avenue, N7)\$cSt George's Church\$d[1975]
The address of the publisher has been included by the agency preparing the record. The date is taken from elsewhere than the chief source of information and is enclosed in brackets.
- EX 5: 210 ##\$aColorado Springs\$cMyles\$aLondon\$cHouseman [distributor]\$d1980
The statement of the function of the distributor is added.
- EX 6: 210 ##\$aLondon\$cMacmillan for the Linnean Society\$d1964-@
The date is an open date. In this example the end of field marker '@' is included for clarity.
- EX 7: 210 ##\$aLondon\$aBoston\$cButterworth\$dcop. 1982
A repeated place of publication is needed for one publisher. The date is a copyright date and indicated as such.

- EX 8: 210 ##\$aIpswich\$cBoydell P.\$aBungay\$cWaveney Publications\$d1976
The item has more than one publisher.
- EX 9: 210 ##\$a[S.l.\$cs.n.]\$d1974\$cManchester\$gUnity Press
The item has only the name of the printer. S.l.and s.n. are supplied.
- EX 10: 210 ##\$aLondon, [etc.]\$cO.U.P.\$d1978-1981
The agency preparing the record enters only the first place of publication. The item was published in separate volumes over a period of time.
- EX 11: 210 ##\$aBombay\$c[s.n.]\$d1980 printing
The date of printing is given in lieu of a date of publication and indicated as such.
- EX 12: 210 ##\$aLondon\$cEducational Record\$d1973\$aNew York\$cEdcorp [distributor]
\$d1975
- EX 13: 210 ##\$aGeneva\$cWHO\$aLondon\$cdistributed by H.M.S.O.\$d1970\$h1973 printing
- EX 14: 210 ##\$aBern\$cBundeskanzlei\$a= Berne\$cChancellerie fédérale\$d1974
Both name and place of publisher are in more than one language.
- EX 15: 210 ##\$aA Paris\$cChez l'auteur\$dAvec Privilège du Roy, 1700
The item has a privilege date.
- EX 16: 210 #1\$aVenezia\$cAntonio Vivaldi\$d1716
A manuscript in Vivaldi's hand, written in Venice in 1716.
- EX 17: 210 #1\$aNapoli\$cLuigi Marescalchi\$d[2nd half of 18th cent.]
The Raccolta di Duettini / Per due Voci di Soprano / Col Basso / Del Sig.r Giuseppe Aprile / In Napoli presso Luigi Marescalchi, manuscript Milan conservatory Mus.tr.ms 1456, of the second half of the 18th century.
- EX 18: 210 #1\$aAlcobaça\$cMosteiro de Santa Maria\$d1495
A manuscript produced in the scriptorium of the Mosteiro de Santa Maria
- EX 19: 210 ##\$aOxford\$cUniversity Press\$aAmsterdam\$cElsevier\$d1970-
210 0#\$aOxford\$cUniversity Press\$aAmsterdam\$cElsevier\$d1970-1975
210 0#\$aLondon\$cPergamon\$aAmsterdam\$cElsevier\$d1975-1979
210 0#\$aOxford\$cPergamon\$aAmsterdam\$cElsevier\$d1980-1990
210 1#\$aAmsterdam\$cElsevier\$d1990-
Repeated publication information on the changes of place of publication, name of publisher and corresponding dates of publication for a continuing resource.
- EX 20: 210 ##\$aKoprivnica\$cMuzej grada Koprivnice\$d1978-
210 0#\$aKoprivnica\$cMuzej grada Koprivnice\$d1978-1980

210 0#\$aKutina\$cMuzej Moslavine\$d1991-1992
 210 1#\$aVaraždin\$cMuzejsko društvo sjeverozapadne Hrvatske\$d1993-

Periodical *Muzejski vjesnik* is currently being published (from 1993) by Muzejsko društvo sjeverozapadne Hrvatske in Varaždin. The first publisher was Muzej grada Koprivnice in Koprivnica from 1978-1980, while the intervening publisher (in this case the one immediately before the current one is only recorded) was Muzej Moslavine in Kutina from 1991 to 1992.

EX 21: 210 ##\$aZagreb\$cDruštvo ljevača NR Hrvatske\$d1954-1986
 210 0#\$aZagreb\$cDruštvo ljevača NR Hrvatske\$d1954-1962
 210 0#\$aZagreb\$cDruštvo ljevača SR Hrvatske\$d 1963-1977
 210 1#\$aRijeka\$cSavez ljevača SR\$d1978-1986

Periodical *Ljevarstvo* is no longer being published. The first publisher was Društvo ljevača NR Hrvatske in Zagreb from 1954-1962, while the current publisher at the time it ceased to be published was Savez ljevača SR from Rijeka in the period 1978-1986. The intervening publisher (only one) was Društvo ljevača SR Hrvatske in Zagreb from 1963 to 1977.

EX 22: 210 ##\$aParis\$cElsevier\$d1989-
 210 0#\$aParis\$cElsevier\$d1989-1999
 210 1#\$aLes Ulis\$cEDP Sciences\$d2000-

EX 23: 210 ##\$aParis\$cCNRS, Centre de documentation sciences humaines\$d1977-
 210 0#\$aParis\$cCNRS, Centre de documentation sciences humaines\$d1977-1981
 210 0#\$aParis\$cSociété française d'histoire des sciences et techniques\$d1982-1997
 210 1#\$aFontenay-aux-Roses\$cENS éd.\$d1998-

EX 24: 210 #1\$aLisbon\$d1980
 An original drawing, or a photography, produced in Lisbon in 1980.

EX 25: 210 #1\$d1 de Junho de 1803
 A dated manuscript with day, month and year of writing

211 PROJECTED PUBLICATION DATE

Field Definition

This field contains the projected date of publication of an item. The field is used for CIP (Cataloguing In Publication) entries and similar advance records created from information provided by the publisher.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Date

The data should be recorded according to ISO 8601-1989 in all-numeric form without separators between year, month, and day, i.e. YYYYMMDD. Where day or month and day are unknown, those positions contain blanks. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This is a temporary field, to be deleted when the record is updated.

History

Prior to Update 3 the recommended form was YYMMDD.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Record Status (character position 5)

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC., subfield \$d

Examples

In the following examples, the Record Label shows only the relevant character position 5, (Record Status).

EX 1: RECORD LABEL ----n-----
210 ##\$aLondon\$cFaber\$d1999
211 ##\$a199911##

A new CIP record for a work scheduled to be published in November 1999.

RECORD LABEL -----p-----

210 ##\$aLondon\$cFaber\$d1999

The 211 field is deleted when the updated record for the work is issued after publication.

EX 2: RECORD LABEL -----n-----

210 ##\$aNew York\$cMacmillan\$d1999

211 ##\$a199912##

A new record for a work scheduled to be published in December 1999.

RECORD LABEL -----p-----

210 ##\$aNew York\$cMacmillan\$d2000

The updated record for the same work. Publication was delayed.

215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

Field Definition

This field contains information on the physical characteristics of the item. This field corresponds to the ISBD Physical Description Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when a separate physical description is needed to each component of a multimedia kit (EX 15).

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Specific Material Designation and Extent of Item

The name of the specific type of material to which the item belongs (EX 3, 6, 7-14) and/or an indication of the number of pieces or constituent parts (EX 1, 2, 5). Repeatable (EX 8).

\$c Other Physical Details

Physical data about an item other than that contained elsewhere in this field or in the notes fields, e.g. details of illustrative matter, whether an item has colour or sound, etc. (EX 9-10). Not repeatable.

\$d Dimensions

The linear measurements of an item and/or (in the case of an item which requires equipment for its use) dimensions relevant to the use of the item (EX 9), and/or the bibliographic format of older printed books (EX 16). This subfield also includes details of any container (EX 15). Repeatable after repeats of \$a (EX 8).

\$e Accompanying Material

A brief description of any material accompanying the item being described, which is intended to be used with the item (EX 4, 8). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The treatment of accompanying material will vary according to the cataloguer's view of its importance. Compare EX 4, 8, 15.

Punctuation at subfield boundaries should not be entered in the field; however, within a subfield, any separating punctuation is entered (see especially EX 4). For further information on the data content of this field, refer to the relevant ISBD. The correspondence between this field and ISBD specifications is illustrated below.

| UNIMARC subfield | Element name | ISBD(G) section | Preceding punctuation |
|------------------|--|-----------------|-----------------------|
| \$a | Specific material designation and extent of item | 5.1 | New area |
| \$c | Other physical details | 5.2 | : |
| \$d | Dimensions | 5.3 | ; |
| \$e | Accompanying material | 5.4 | + |

Related Fields

- 105 CODED DATA FIELD: BOOKS, Illustration Codes (character positions 0-3)
These character positions contain illustration codes that correspond to the illustration data in 215 \$c.
- 126 SOUND RECORDINGS: PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
- 130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS: PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
- 307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION
Any detail concerning physical description which cannot be entered in field 215 may be entered as a note in field 307.

Examples

- EX 1: 215 ##\$a264 p., 24 leaves of plates\$cill., 17 facs.\$d21 cm\$el map
- EX 2: 215 ##\$ax, 32, 73 p., [1] leaf of plates\$cmaps\$d21 cm
- EX 3: 215 ##\$al folder (6 p.)\$cmaps, plans, charts, portraits\$d21 x 30 cm
- EX 4: 215 ##\$a3 vol. (49, 37, 18 p.)\$cill., col.maps\$d22 cm\$esound disk (16 min): 33 1/3 rpm., mono., 17.5 cm
- EX 5: 215 ##\$a35 S.\$c16 graph. Darst.\$d24 cm
- EX 6: 215 ##\$al map\$cbboth sides, col.\$d41 x 84 cm, folded to 22 x 10 cm
- EX 7: 215 ##\$al globe\$ccol., mounted on metal stand\$d31 cm in diam.
- EX 8: 215 ##\$al score(vi, 63p.)\$d20cm.\$al6 parts\$d32 cm.\$el booklet
The main components are a score and 16 parts. The heights of these items differ. There is an accompanying booklet.

EX 9: 215 ##\$al film reel (20 min., 570 m)\$c16 mm

The item is a silent black and white 16mm. 20 minute film reel on a nitrate base. It is 570 metres long. The catalogue entry would appear as follows:

1 film reel (20 min., 570 m) : nitrate, b&w, si. ; 16 mm

EX 10: 215 ##\$al videocassette (U-matic) (30 min.)\$ccol., sd.

The item is a colour videocassette in U-matic format, with sound, lasting 30 minutes.

EX 11: 215 ##\$al sound reel (100 min.)\$c19 cm/s., 4 track, adjacent

The item is a four-track sound reel with a playing time of 100 minutes at a speed of 19 cm./second. The track configuration is given.

EX 12: 215 ##\$al sound reel (50 min.)\$c38 cm/s., 2 track, stereo, Dolby processed

The item is a two-track stereo sound reel with a playing time of 50 minutes at a speed of 38 cm./second. A Dolby noise reduction system has been used.

EX 13: 215 ##\$al sound disc\$c33 1/3 rpm, coarse

The item is a sound disc with a playing speed of 33 1/3 rpm. The groove width is coarse.

EX 14: 215 ##\$al sound disc\$c78 rpm, vertical

The item is a sound disc with a playing speed of 78 rpm. The groove direction is vertical.

EX 15: 215 ##\$a3 filmstrips (96 fr.)\$ccol.\$d35 mm

215 ##\$a1 map\$ccol.\$d25×25 cm folding to 10×18 cm

215 ##\$a13 rocks and minerals\$din container, 14×9×2 cm

215 ##\$a1 wallchart\$ccol.\$d48×90 folding to 24×15 cm

EX 16: 215 ##\$a340 p., 4 leaves of plates\$coll.\$d4to (19 cm.)

The item is a book from the hand-press era.

225 SERIES

Field Definition

This field contains the title of the series along with any other title information and statements of responsibility relating to the title including any of the preceding repeated in other languages, in the form and sequence in which they appear on the item being catalogued. It corresponds to the ISBD Series Area.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when an item is in more than one series.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Form of Title Indicator

The access point form of the series should be recorded in a linking entry 410 field. This indicator specifies whether the series statement is the same as the access point form as recorded in field 410.

0 Not the same as the established form

The agency preparing the record considers the access point form in 410 differs from the series statement in 225 (EX 1, 6).

1 No established form

No access point form has been established: therefore there is no corresponding title in 410 (EX 2).

2 Same as the established form

The agency preparing the record considers the data in field 225 to be equivalent to the established form.

In all cases it is recommended that any established form be entered in field 410.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Series Title

The title of the series in the form in which it appears on the item being recorded. Not repeatable.

\$d Parallel Series Title

The title of the series in another language and/or script relating to the series title appearing in subfield \$a. Repeatable for each additional parallel series title (EX 3).

- \$e** Other Title Information
- Subtitles and other title information that appear on the item subordinate to the series title in \$a or \$d or to the name of a part in \$i (EX 4). Repeatable for each segment of other title information and for parallel other title information.
- \$f** Statement of Responsibility
- The statement of responsibility for a title appearing in \$a or \$d (EX 1) or for a numbered or named part within the series appearing in \$h or \$i (EX 5). Repeatable for additional statements of responsibility and for parallel statements of responsibility.
- \$h** Number of a Part
- The section or part number of the series in \$a. Repeatable for each subsection or lower level division or for a parallel part number (EX 3).
- \$i** Name of a Part
- The section or part name of the subseries when the series entered in \$a is divided into subseries. Repeatable for each lower level of subseries or for a parallel subseries name (EX 3, 5).
- \$v** Volume Designation
- The number of the item being recorded within the series entered in field 225, and any term used in the item to designate it, which may be in abbreviated form (EX 1, 2, 3, 4, 5). Repeatable (EX 3).
- \$x** ISSN of Series
- The ISSN of the series, entered as an 8-digit number with a hyphen between the 4th and 5th digits. The term ISSN is omitted and should be generated on output (EX 1). Repeatable when the series and subseries each has an ISSN.
- \$z** Language of Parallel Title
- Coded identification of the language of a parallel title that appears in a \$d subfield (EX 3). If \$d is repeated, this subfield is repeated, the languages identified reflecting the order of the parallel titles. This subfield and any repetitions of it always come last in the field. See Appendix A for language codes.

Notes on Field Contents

ISBD information:

The data in the field should be entered in the form and sequence as on the piece as specified in ISBD for the Series Area. Subfield \$z is not an ISBD data element. The correspondence between this field and ISBD is illustrated below. The text within the ISBD series area is enclosed within parentheses '()' which are not carried in the UNIMARC record.

| UNIMARC Subfield | Element name | ISBD(G) Section | Preceding punctuation |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| \$a | Series title | 6.1 | New area |
| \$d | Parallel series title | 6.2 | = |
| \$e | Other title information | 6.3 | : |
| \$f | Statement of responsibility | 6.4 | / |
| \$h | Number of a part | 6.1 | . |
| \$i | Name of a part | 6.1 | , if after \$h, else . |
| \$v | Volume designation | 6.6 | ; |
| \$x | ISSN of series | 6.5 | , |

Parallel data:

Parallel data appearing on the item, i.e. data repeated in another language or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of equals sign followed by a space '= ' at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier \$d will generate '= ' automatically (EX 3). If '= ' is required by ISBD rules at the start of any other subfield, it must be entered explicitly. The equals sign and space then replaces any other punctuation that would normally be generated at the subfield boundary.(EX 6).

Subfield content:

This field is used only for the series belonging to the item whose title is entered in field 200. If the record is for an item which is a continuing resource or series, field 225 is used only if that continuing resource or series itself belongs to a series. The title of the continuing resource or series being catalogued is entered in field 200 (see field 200, EX 3).

When the source record does not contain the series title in the form as on the piece, no attempt should be made to create it from an established form of the series title. The established form may be entered in field 410 and a note on the series title may be created from it.

When the record of a series has what may be either a subtitle or a subseries title but it is not possible to determine which of the two it is, prefer to code it as subfield \$e Other title information. Number and name of part are one data element in ISBD and some source formats may not be able to distinguish. In these cases when converting to UNIMARC prefer \$i to \$h.

Related Fields

011 ISSN

The ISSN of a series title entered in field 200 is entered in field 011. 225 \$x relates only to the ISSN of a continuing resource title in 225 \$a or \$i.

410 SERIES

The established form of a series title may be entered in a 200 field embedded in field 410.

411 SUBSERIES

The established form a subseries title may be entered in a 200 field embedded in field 411.

461 SET

Field 461 is used when an agency which uses a record structure that emphasises linking separate records for the data from various levels requires a reference to a record describing a continuing resource.

530 KEY TITLE

If the series has a key title, it should not be entered in field 530 as that contains the key title of the work whose title is in 200\$a. If the series has a key title, it may be noted in field 308.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

If access is required to the name of any persons or bodies entered in subfield \$f, the access form of the name should be entered in a 7-- field or in a 7-- field embedded in a field 410 or 411.

Examples

EX 1: 225 0#\$aOccasional paper\$fBritish Museum\$x0412-4815\$vno. 33
410 #0\$171002\$aBritish Museum\$12000#\$aOccasional papers

EX 2: 225 2#\$aInternational series in the science of the solid state\$vvol. 10
225 1#\$aPergamon international library

X-ray diffraction topology is in two series. The second is not used as an access point, so there is no established form equivalent to it (first indicator set to 1).

EX 3: 225 2#\$aEuropäische Hochschulschriften\$hReihe I\$iDeutsche Literatur und Germanistik\$vBd. 298\$dPublications universitaires européennes\$hSérie I\$iLangue et littérature allemandes\$vvol. 298\$dEuropean university papers\$hSeries I\$iGerman language and literature\$vvol. 298\$zfre\$zeng

An item is vol. 298 of a subseries with parallel information in three languages. The title is the same as the established form.

The ISBD display:

(Europäische Hochschulschriften. Reihe I, Deutsche Literatur und Germanistik ; Bd. 298 = Publications universitaires européennes. Série I, Langue et littérature allemandes ; vol. 298 = European university papers. Series I, German language and literature ; vol. 298)

EX 4: 225 2#\$aExperimental biology and medicine\$emonographs on interdisciplinary topics
\$vvol. 6

EX 5: 225 2#\$aAbhandlungen der Mathematisch-Naturwissenschaftliche Klasse\$fAkademie
der Wissenschaften und der Literatur\$vJahrg. 1976, Nr. 3

EX 6: 225 0#\$aWorld films\$iFrance today\$i= La France aujourd'hui

230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition

This field contains information on the file characteristics pertaining to the type and extent of a electronic resource.

Occurrence

Mandatory for electronic resources. Repeatable when the file characteristics of more than one electronic resource are described in a single record.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Designation and extent of file.

The designation of the file identifies the particular type of file(s) which constitutes the work and is given in the language of the bibliographic agency. Designation of type of file is mandatory.

The extent of file consists of the number of files that make up the content of the data or the program. Additional measures of extent may be added as appropriate. The specific terms for extent of file are in the language of the bibliographic agency. Extent of file is optional.

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field is equivalent to the ISBD(ER) Type and Extent of Resource Area. Each statement of extent is enclosed in parentheses after the designation of the file. The number of files constituting the content of the data or program is given in arabic numerals. The number of records and/or bytes may be given for a data file and the number of statements and/or bytes may be given for a program. When the number of files is given, this further statement of extent is introduced by a colon, space. For a multi-part file, the number of records and/or bytes or the number of statements and/or bytes may be given for each file. The number of records and/or bytes or the number of statements and/or bytes may be approximated (EX 5).

Related Fields

135 CODED DATA FIELDS: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES

This field contains coded data relating to electronic resources.

336 TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE

This field contains notes supplementing field 230.

Examples

EX 1: 230 ##\$aComputer data

EX 2: 230 ##\$aComputer program (1 file: 1958 statements)

EX 3: 230 ##\$aComputer data (5 files) and programs (15 files)

EX 4: 230 ##\$aComputer data (3 files: 800 records, 3150 bytes) and computer data (7 files)

EX 5: 230 ##\$aComputer program (2 files: ca. 650 statements each)

EX 6: 230 ##\$aComputer data (2 files: 729 records each) and programs (3 files: 7260, 3450, 2518 bytes)

3-- NOTES BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains notes — free text statements qualifying and amplifying the description and access points and dealing with any aspect of the physical make-up of the item or its contents.

The following fields are defined:

| | |
|-----|--|
| 300 | General Note |
| 301 | Notes Pertaining to Identification Numbers |
| 302 | Notes Pertaining to Coded Information |
| 303 | General Notes Pertaining to Descriptive Information |
| 304 | Notes Pertaining to Title and Statement of Responsibility |
| 305 | Notes Pertaining to Edition and Bibliographic History |
| 306 | Notes Pertaining to Publication, Distribution, etc. |
| 307 | Notes Pertaining to Physical Description |
| 308 | Notes Pertaining to Series |
| 310 | Notes Pertaining to Binding and Availability |
| 311 | Notes Pertaining to Linking Fields |
| 312 | Notes Pertaining to Related Titles |
| 313 | Notes Pertaining to Subject Access |
| 314 | Notes Pertaining to Responsibility |
| 315 | Notes Pertaining to Material (or Type of Publication) Specific Information |
| 316 | Note Relating to the Copy in Hand |
| 317 | Provenance Note |
| 318 | Action Note |
| 320 | Internal Bibliographies/Indexes Note |
| 321 | External Indexes/Abstracts/References Note |
| 322 | Credits Note (Projected and Video Material and Sound Recordings) |
| 323 | Cast Note (Projected and Video Material and Sound Recordings) |
| 324 | Facsimile Note |
| 325 | Reproduction Note |
| 326 | Frequency Statement Note (Continuing resources) |
| 327 | Contents Note |
| 328 | Dissertation (Thesis) Note |
| 330 | Summary or Abstract |
| 332 | Preferred Citation of Described Materials |
| 333 | Users/Intended Audience Note |
| 334 | Awards Note |
| 336 | Type of Electronic Resource |
| 337 | System Requirements Note |
| 345 | Acquisition Information Note |

Notes on Field Contents

Punctuation:

Certain types of notes may follow ISBD rules for content and form, including punctuation. Although this is not prescribed within UNIMARC, it is recommended that ISBD conventions be followed where possible.

General notes:

Field 300 has two uses: it is for general notes that do not belong under any of the more specific categories of notes; and it is for notes that belong to other categories but which were not so categorized by the source format, or were coded in the source format as belonging to a category which is not present in UNIMARC. If a note belongs to more than one category represented by fields 301 to 315, then the tag earlier in numerical order other than 300 should be used as a general rule. Notes relating to fields 320 onwards should be entered in those specific fields and not in earlier fields. If two notes belong to the same category they should be contained in separate occurrences of the required field.

Notes generated from linking fields:

From the UNIMARC record, a note may be generated from data in other fields, e.g. 4-- linking fields or 5-- related title fields. If such a note is to be generated, it is not entered in a 3-- field.

300 GENERAL NOTES

Field Definition

This field contains a note on any aspect of the bibliographic item or the record relating to it.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable. It may be used in place of any of the note fields 301 to 315 or, when source formats do not provide the same categorization of notes as UNIMARC, in place of any note which cannot be allocated to a more specific notes field.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data in this field can be in any form. See examples for guidance. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 300.

Related Fields

See the other notes fields.

Examples

EX 1: 300 ##\$aSkeleton outline of events contemporary of Lady Margaret Roper (Alexander Alesius) : (1 folded leaf) in pocket

A note on accompanying material.

EX 2: 300 ##\$aIncludes index

Used when the source format has no equivalent of field 320.

EX 3: 300 ##\$aContaining details of hunts, including their countries, histories and former Masters of Foxhounds, Harriers, Staghounds, Draghounds, Beagles, Basset Hounds, Otterhounds and Bloodhounds in the United Kingdom and Ireland; hunts of America, the Commonwealth and Europe, results of hound shows, three maps showing boundaries of foxhounds and one of distribution of hare hunts.

EX 4: 300 ##\$aDrawings executed between 1816 and 1825 are compared with the work of J.M.W. Turner in: George Filbert, his early work / Thomas Johnson. New York : Dow, 1965

A note citing published research based on drawings described in the catalogue record and held by the institution.

EX 5: 300 ##\$aGift of Leavitt Hunt's daughter, Mrs William E. Patterson, 1947

A provenance note, indicating the donor and former owner of a rare book.

301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS

Field Definition

This field contains a note on any identification number appearing on the item or in the record.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may be used for notes relating to any identification number when it appears on the item or when it is known to have been assigned to the item being recorded. It may be used to note the number itself, if it cannot be recorded in any of the fields 010 to 040 which deal with identification numbers, or it can be used to comment on a particular number. If notes about more than one number are to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 301.

Related Fields

0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

Prefer the use of identification block when data from a note field in a source format can be formatted to be entered in a 0-- field.

Examples

EX 1: 301 ##\$a"DOE/EIA-0031/2".

A technical report number appearing on the title page of the item.

EX 2: 301 ##\$aIncorrectly cited as BL R&D Report 5657

A new series of library and information research reports is published, the first of which is *The on-line public library* (LIR Report 1) by A.J. Convey, A. Pearce and A.J. Wood, previously listed as BL R&D Report 5657.

302 NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION

Field Definition

A note relating to data elements which are coded in the 1-- fields.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data in this field can be in any form. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 302.

In most cases a more specific note field can be used. In those instances, prefer the more specific field, e.g. use field 307 rather than 302 for notes on types of illustrations present in the item, even though illustration information is present in coded form in field 105.

Related Fields

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

Data recorded in the CODED INFORMATION BLOCK in coded form may be recorded in field 302 in free text form with or without elaboration.

303 GENERAL NOTES PERTAINING TO DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION

Field Definition

A note relating to the description of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data in this field can be in any form. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 303.

When another more specific note field relates more closely to the nature of the note to be recorded, prefer the more specific field.

Related Fields

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

306 NOTES RELATING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

308 NOTES PERTAINING TO SERIES

310 NOTES PERTAINING TO BINDING AND AVAILABILITY

These fields all provide a more specific place for notes on description and should be used in preference to field 303 where possible.

Examples

EX 1: 303 ##\$aWith a card listing abbreviations and symbols

An accompanying material note.

EX 2: 303 ##\$aIncludes advertising matter

An informal contents note.

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

A note relating to the title and/or statement of responsibility as entered in a field 200 of the record.

Occurrence

Mandatory for records of electronic resources, otherwise optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes on the title or statement(s) of responsibility. It may indicate the source of the title, or extra words in the title which have been omitted from the description. It may also comment or enlarge on the statement of responsibility. For example, if a cataloguing code requires that a statement of responsibility be abbreviated because it consists of more than three names, names that have been omitted from the 200 field may be added in this note field (EX 7). Parallel titles omitted from the title and statement of responsibility may be noted here (EX 5). If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 304.

"The source of the title proper shall be recorded in all cases."—ISBD(ER) 7.1.1.2 (EX 8).

There are no rules for punctuation in this field, but it is recommended that where applicable ISBD punctuation is used (EX 6).

Related Fields

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

Field 305 is used for details of earlier or later titles related to the one entered in field 200.

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

Field 312 is used for details of related title such as another title found on the work or a related uniform title.

314 NOTES PERTAINING TO RESPONSIBILITY

Field 314 is used when the note relates to responsibility not recorded in the 200 field.

Examples

EX 1: 304 ##\$aVol.2 has title: Air Force colours

An item entitled *US Air Force colours* is in two volumes. Volume 2 is entitled *Air Force colours*.

EX 2: 200 1#\$aWho did/done it\$a crime reader for students of English\$fCarlos A.Yoico, L.A. Morse

304 ##\$aThe word 'done' in the title is crossed out.

On the title page appear the words "Who did ~~done~~ it".

EX 3: 304 ##\$aCover title

The title proper is taken from the cover.

EX 4: 304 ##\$aWritten by F.G. Cockman as if by Horace Mann

A document has on its title page the text: Midland engineman by Horace Mann edited by F.G. Cockman. The document is known to have been written in the words of F.G. Cockman who consulted and rewrote the account of Horace Mann.

EX 5: 304 ##\$aParallel title: Les séquestrés d'Altona

A practice of the agency preparing the record is to include parallel titles proper as notes rather than entering them in the descriptive area. (Compare field 312, EX 3.)

EX 6: 304 ##\$aPt. 1 / by George Lee Haskins -- Pt.2 / by Herbert A. Johnson

The record is of volume 2 of *History of the Supreme Court of the United States*. The document is in two parts, each with its own statement of responsibility. This example makes use of ISBD punctuation.

EX 7: 200 1#\$aPhilosophy and literary criticism\$fedited by F.R. Leavis [et al.]

304 ##\$aEdited by F.R. Leavis, A.C. Quine, A. Kenny and R. Quirk

The cataloguing rules do not permit the inclusion of more than one name in the statement of responsibility when there are more than three names of persons responsible on the item. The names are entered in a note.

EX 8: 304 ##\$aTitle from home page

ISBD(ER) mandatory note giving source of title proper for an electronic resource.

EX 9: 200 1#\$aPiano concerto op.39\$aConcerti da camera nos. 1-3\$fAlkan

304 ##\$aTitre pris au recto du boîtier

Title on verso of container and on disc: "Complete works for piano and orchestra"

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

Field Definition

The field contains a note relating to the edition of the item or to its bibliographic history.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes on this edition of the item or on works related to the item when there is no corresponding linking entry field. This includes previous titles of monographs and continuing resources. It may include a note taken from the item itself. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 305.

Although there are no rules on punctuation in this field, it is recommended that any citations made to other works use ISBD punctuation (EX 1,3) unless they are quotations from the text of the document itself. Any such quotations should be enclosed within quotation marks. (EX 5, 6)

Related Fields

300 GENERAL NOTE

Although field 300 can be used as an alternative to 305, it is recommended that 305 be used for bibliographic history notes when possible.

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS

Field 311 is used for bibliographic history notes related to linking fields.

4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK

Certain bibliographic history notes may be generated from 4-fields.

Examples

EX 1: 305 ##\$aV.2. 2nd ed.

The record relates to a monograph in 3 volumes. Volume 2 alone of the item is in its second edition.

EX 2: 305 ##\$aPrevious ed.: 1978

The item was published in 1980. It was previously published in 1978 under the same title.

EX 3: 305 ##\$aOriginally published: London : Constable, 1957.

EX 4: 305 ##\$aSupersedes: British history illustrated

The title *British heritage* supersedes *British history illustrated*. In the UNIMARC record there is no equivalent 4-- field, and so field 311 is not used.

EX 5: 305 ##\$a"A tentative draft for experimental use, not yet approved by the Committee on Administrative Practice" -Pref .

A note is taken from the item itself; the note is entered in quotation marks and the source is noted.

EX 6: 305 ##\$a'Five of the stories were published in the compiler's "T'ai-wan pen-ti tso-chia tuan-p'ien hsiao-shuo hsun", published in 1972' – CIP data

Since the note is taken from the CIP data in the item, the source is acknowledged.

306 NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

Field Definition

This field contains a note about publication, distribution, etc. of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains data relating to publication and distribution of the item which is not entered in field 210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC. When more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 306.

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

Some cataloguing codes relegate distributor and printer to a note, in which case field 306 may be used (EX 1).

620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC

Access point form of the place of publication, distribution, may be entered in field 620.

Examples

EX 1: 306 ##\$aThe imprint is false; printed by Ruddiman on the evidence of the ornaments

EX 2: 306 ##\$aImprint in volume 3: Tring : Lion Press

The imprint in volume 3 of a three-volume work differs from that of the two earlier volumes.

EX 3: 210 ##\$aLeipzig\$cBey Wolfgang Stürmer zu finden.\$d[1610]

306 ##\$aColophon: Leipzig / Gedruckt durch Valentin Am Ende. Im Jahr M.DC.X

307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

Field Definition

This field contains a note about the physical description of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains data relating to the physical description of the item which is not entered in field 215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION. When more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 307

Related Fields

215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

The physical description is recorded in a formalized form in field 215.

Examples

EX 1: 307 ##\$aContains slide set in pocket

EX 2: 307 ##\$aIn slip case

EX 3: 307 ##\$aText on lining papers

EX 4: 307 ##\$aSignatures: A-G⁸, H⁴

The signatures of an early printed book.

EX 5: 307 ##\$aPrinted on acid-free paper.

308 NOTES PERTAINING TO SERIES

Field Definition

This field contains a note pertaining to a series of which the item is a part, or a series in which the item has been issued previously.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains data relating to any series of which the item being recorded is a part. When more than one note is recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 308.

Related Fields

225 SERIES

The title of the series itself is entered in field 225. Any note on this is entered in 308.

410 SERIES

A note may be created by using the series linking entry field.

Examples

EX 1: 308 ##\$aPts 1 and 2 in series: African perspective

A record is made for a multi-volume monograph in four parts of which parts 1 and 2 only are in a series.

EX 2: 308 ##\$aOriginally issued in series: Environmental science series

EX 3: 308 ##\$aEach issue individually numbered in series

310 NOTES PERTAINING TO BINDING AND AVAILABILITY

Field Definition

This field contains a note on any aspect of binding and availability.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes on the binding and availability of the item. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 310.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)

Within the ISBN field, \$b Qualification and \$d Terms of Availability and/or Price are available for entering details of binding and terms of availability respectively. It is recommended that this data be entered in these subfields when the record has one or more ISBN, since each ISBN often corresponds to a particular binding or has a particular availability. If there is no ISBN, this information may be entered in field 310.

Examples

EX 1: 310 ##\$aAlso available in special edition of 50 numbered copies signed by the author

EX 2: 310 ##\$aAvailable only to subscribers

EX 3 310 ##\$aBound in modern vellum

EX 4 310 ##\$aClassified

A note on restrictions of access to the item.

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to one of the linking fields.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes which relate to data found in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK. Data in the 4-- fields may be used to print a note. If the note that would be printed from them would not adequately indicate the relationship and the item that is related, a note can be entered in 311 (and the indicator of the corresponding 4-- field(s) set to 0 so that a note will not be automatically generated by those fields). In particular, specific relationships between the item being catalogued and another item referred in field 488 can be entered here. If more than one note is to be recorded, then each is entered in a repeated field 311.

Related Fields

300 GENERAL NOTE

Although field 300 can be used instead of 311, it is recommended that 311 be used for notes relating to data in linking fields or notes relating to item to which a link is made in a linking field.

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY.

This field is used for bibliographic history notes which are not related to linking fields.

327 CONTENTS NOTE

This field is used for contents notes which are not generated by linking fields.

4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK

Examples

EX 1: 311 ##\$a'Produced in conjunction with the "Bloodstock breeders' annual."'
488 #0\$12001#\$aBloodstock breeders' annual
or
488 #0\$tBloodstock breeders' annual

In the item *The stallion review* it states 'Produced in conjunction with the Bloodstock breeders' annual'. The record for *The stallion review* contains a non-specific link (field 488) to the related work *Bloodstock breeders' annual*; thus it is necessary to make a note corresponding to the link since a specific note cannot be generated from field 488. The note is transcribed from the item in this example.

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to a title of the work, other than the title proper or parallel title proper.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes relating to any title appearing on the item, other than the title proper or parallel title proper (see field 304), or to a title by which the work is commonly known. These include cover title, added title-page title, caption title, running title, spine title, for which the actual text of the title may be entered in the field. Titles of related works should not be noted here. If more than one note is to be recorded, then each is entered in a repeated field 312.

Related Fields

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Field 304 is used for notes relating to the chief title of the work. It may be used for a note on the parallel title when it is part of the title and statement of responsibility area.

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY.

Field 305 is used for notes on titles of related works, which should not be entered in field 312.

5-- RELATED TITLE BLOCK

This block is used for entering a related title in a form suitable as an access point. If it is required to enter a note on any such title, it should be entered in field 312. Notes on parallel titles may be entered in field 304 or field 312 depending on whether or not they are included in the title and statement of responsibility area.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$aAchieving changes\$ea reports\$prepared by the West Virginia Advisory Committee to the U.S. Commission on Civil Rights.

312 ##\$aSubtitle on cover: A report on the 1978 West Virginia Statewide Leadership Conference on Civil Rights.

A subtitle appears on the cover but not on the title page.

EX 2: 312 ##\$aCommonly known as the Guinea catalog.

540 1#\$aGuinea catalog

Commonly known title does not actually appear on the item.

EX 3: 312 ##\$aSecond title page has title: Transfert de l'information

A parallel title appears outside the chief source of information. (Compare field 304, EX 5.)

313 NOTES PERTAINING TO SUBJECT ACCESS

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to subject access to the item described in the record.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may include an indication of the provision of subject indexes or classification provided in the item, as well as other ways in which subject control of the information is available. If more than one note is to be recorded, then each is entered in a repeated field 313.

Related Fields

321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE

This field may be used to record indexes to a work, some of which may be subject indexes, but if a comprehensive note only on the subject approach available is required, field 313 should be used.

Examples

EX 1: 313 ##\$aMain sequence classified by D.D.C. Subject indexing according to PRECIS leading to classified sequence.

A record for the British National Bibliography.

EX 2: 313 ##\$aDocument bears UDC no. 002/050+778.14+001.4

An official standard bears a UDC number describing its subject.

314 NOTES PERTAINING TO RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to the responsibility of the work.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Notes relating to the responsibility of the item other than a note on the statement of responsibility (see field 304). This includes notes on persons or corporate bodies (including meetings) which have responsibility for the item and which may not have been recorded elsewhere in the record. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 314.

Related Fields

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Any note relating to data in the statement of responsibility should be entered in field 304 rather than in field 314.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

A note concerning data in fields in this block is entered in field 314. Many cataloguing codes require that any access point for an item be justified in the notes if it is not present elsewhere in the description of the item. Field 314 may be used for such notes.

Examples

EX 1: 314 ##\$a'Sponsored by the Environmental Mutagen Society'

This information is not present in the 200 field.

EX 2: 314 ##\$aCompiled by Samuel French Ltd.

EX 3: 314 ##\$aDesigned and compiled by the Publication Relations Unit, Melbourne

EX 4: 314 ##\$aText by Denise Hooker

EX 5: 314 ##\$aCompiled by J.W. Jolliffe

EX 6: 314 ##\$aCommissioned by the Royal Australian College of Surgeons

315 NOTES PERTAINING TO MATERIAL (OR TYPE OF PUBLICATION) SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to material specific information, i.e. data relevant only to one or a group of types of material.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Material specific notes (i.e. notes relating to aspects of a type of material, such as scale of maps, numbering of continuing resources) should be entered here. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 315.

Related Fields

206, 207, 208, 230 Material specific area statements

Care must be taken not to enter information in field 315 which may be accommodated elsewhere in the more specific field. For example, statements on scale in cartographic materials and numbering for continuing resources should be entered in fields 206 and 207.

Examples

EX 1: 315 ##\$aSuspended 1939-1945

A note relating to the numbering of a continuing resource explaining why the numbering and dates do not match.

EX 2: 315 ##\$aScale of original ca 1:1,300

A note relating to the scale of the original cartographic work.

316 NOTE RELATING TO THE COPY IN HAND

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to the copy in hand.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic resource through one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used to link to a website. Repeatable.

\$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of institution and copy to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL)*, ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Not repeatable. Mandatory if field is present.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. This may be one of the 7X2 fields for former owners, donors, auctioneers, etc. Not repeatable.

The instructions for the use of this subfield form the first part of Section 3.13. \$6/0 Linking explanation code will always have the value 'b' = Link associated with a copy, unless an alternative graphic representation or script is involved.

Notes on Field Contents

In this note field characteristics of the copy in hand are described, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, artificial titles, numbered copies of an edition, manuscript notes on title page or margins, bound leaves, items, etc. For many older publications it will not be readily ascertainable whether the characteristics of a single copy are shared by other or all copies. Code of the institution and the copy to which the Note Relating to the Copy in Hand field applies are recorded in \$5.

This field can contain the following characteristics of the copy in hand:

- description of works 'Bound with' ('Artificial collections'), if the institution does not use fields 481 / 482 (EX 4, 13)
- copy characteristics (EX 1, 5, 6)
- numbered copies of an edition (EX 3, 12)
- missing page(s), gaps and damages (EX 2, 11, 14)
- state of conservation of item
- binding description and dimensions (EX 7, 8, 9, 13, 14)
- artificial title

Related Fields**141 CODED DATA FIELD: COPY SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES**

This field contains fixed-length data relating to the copy specific attributes of monographic publications.

317 PROVENANCE NOTE

This field contains a note relating to the provenance of the item, e.g. book-plates, author's and/or owner's autographs, seals, etc.

321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE

This field can also be used to record bibliographical references pertaining to the copy in hand (i.e. exhibition catalogues, etc.).

481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME

This field contains description of other items bound in an 'artificial' collection, e.g. not found with the first item as issued. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

482 BOUND WITH

This field contains a description of the item that is bound first in an 'artificial' collection. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to a part of the item described in the record.

Examples

EX 1: 316 # \$aLeaves 15-6 bound between h3 and h4\$5DLC

EX 2: 316 ## \$aWanting all after p. 312\$5CaOONL

EX 3: 316 ## \$aNo. 23 of an edition of 75 copies\$5Uk

EX 4: 316 ## \$aWith: The Boston Edenezer. Boston : printed by B Green & J Allen, for Samuel Phillips, 1698 – The cure of sorrow. Boston : printed by B Green, 1709\$5MAMHi

EX 5: 316 ## \$aA la. fl. contem anotações manuscritas sobre a página de rosto e texto\$5Sp

EX 6: 316 ## \$aMs notes by the author\$5DLC

EX 7: 316 ## \$aGilt-tooled centrepiece binding by Williamson of Eton, ca. 1605\$5UkCU

EX 8: 316 ## \$aEarly 18th century blind-tooled panelled calf binding\$5Uk

EX 9: 316 ## \$aUvezan u marmorirane kartonske korice s kožnatim hrptom
\$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/uvez.html\$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-100 primj. A
316 ## \$aUvezan u bijelu kožu\$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-b/uvez.html
\$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-100 primj. b

The National and University Library owns two copies with different bindings. The digital images of the covers are linked to the Note Relating to the Copy in Hand by URLs in \$u.

EX 10: 316 ## \$aC автографом авт. вступ. ст.\$5NLR

Autograph by the author of introduction.

EX 11: 316 ## \$aЭкз. деф.: отсутствуют с. 1-4\$5NLR

Wanting pages 1-4.

EX 12: 316 ## \$aLimited to 1000 copies signed by the author. Knopf copy is no.281.

\$5TxAuHRH: PR6023 L2 1928B HRC KNOPF

From the edition of *Lady Chatterley's lover* by D.H. Lawrence, privately printed in Florence in 1928. This copy is in the Alfred/Blanche Knopf Library, Harry Ransom Humanities Research Center, University of Texas, which holds many editions and printings of this work.

EX 13: 316 ## \$aAnche legato con: Nuovi esperimenti di Gianbattista Beccaria ... per confermare, ed estendere la meccanica del fuoco elettrico; e con: Della elettricità terrestre atmosferica a ciel sereno\$aLegatura in pelle; dorso ornato; piatti della cop. con cornice dorata; tagli in rosso; (26x20x6 cm)\$5IT-TO0741 MOS : SV 327

EX 14: 316 ## \$aFront. di insieme mancante; libro quinto mancante; p. 121-124 mancanti\$aLegatura in pergamena rigida; (24x18x5 cm)\$5IT-TO0741 MOS : SV 320

EX 15: 316 ##\$aCalf binding (late 17th century?) with arms of Edward Byde of Ware Park, Hertfordshire, (d.1712) in gold on both covers\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124

Binding of a copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654*, in National Library of Wales. Subfield \$5 links this field to other copy-specific fields in the record. See 317 EX 10, 621 EX 3 and 702 EX 5.

EX 16: 316 ## \$aP. 121-135 déchirées avec mq. de texte\$aRel. avec : "Essequie dell'illustre sig. Alessandro abate Pucci... dal M. R. P. M. Arcangelo Giani...", 1601, et "Poesie latine, e toscane nell'essequie del molto illust. e reverendissimo signor Alessandro abate Pucci...", 1601\$aCartonnage plein papier à la colle rose\$aEx-libris ms. : "Bibliotheca Colbertina" ; l'ouvrage a peut-être figuré dans la bibliothèque du vivant de Jean-Baptiste Colbert. Ex-libris ms. : Abbaye de Saint-Germain des Prés, à Paris\$aEstampille de la bibliothèque du Tribunat, à Paris. Estampille de la Bibliothèque royale (1782-1792 et 1815-1817)\$5FR-751131010:YC-1129

The copy presents several characteristics, recorded in repeated \$a with the following order : 1) damages with lacking text ; 2) description of the works bound with the copy ; 3) description of the binding ; 4) ex-libris and 5) stamps.

EX 17: 316 ## \$aPapillon impr. collé sur le vers 11 ("Mes coups furent par tout plus craints que le Tonnerre :"), couvrant une version antérieure\$aRel. dans un recueil de pièces du XVIIe s\$aRel veau, filets sur les plats, chiffres de Nicolas Fouquet et de la compagnie de Jésus au dos, indiquant un achat sur la rente offerte par le surintendant au collège des jésuites de Paris\$aEx-libris ms. : collège Louis-le-Grand, à Paris\$aEstampille de la Bibliothèque du Roi n° 14 sur la première pièce (1735-1782)\$5FR-751131011:RES-m-yc-912 (3)

The copy presents several characteristics, recorded in repeated \$a with the following order : 1) change in the previous printed text by addition of an inset; 2) bound in an artificial collection ; 3) description of the binding ; 4) ex-libris and 5) stamps.

317 PROVENANCE NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note relating to the provenance of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic resource through one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used when an electronic version of the image of a page(s) relevant to the provenance information is available (i.e., a digitized extract of the item described in the record, part of an electronic resource). Repeatable

\$5 Institution and copy to which the field applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. This may be one of the 7X2 fields for former owners, donors, auctioneers, etc. Not repeatable.

The instructions for the use of this subfield form the first part of Section 3.13. \$6/0 Linking explanation code will always have the value 'b' = Link associated with a copy, unless an alternative graphic representation or script is involved.

Notes on Field Contents

It is expected that the record is made for the ideal copy. However, in this note field provenance of the copy in hand is described in the form in which it appears in the book, e.g. book-plates, author's and/or owner's autographs, seals, etc. Code of the institution to which the Provenance Note field applies is recorded in \$5.

Related Fields**316 NOTES RELATING TO THE COPY IN HAND**

This field contains a note relating to characteristics of the copy in hand for older monographic publications, as for example, wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition, etc.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to a part of the item described in the record.

Examples

EX 1: 317 ##\$aInscription on inside of front cover: Theodorinis ab Engelsberg\$5Uk

EX 2: 317 ##\$aInscription on the title page in sixteenth century hand, 'Iohannes Wagge me iure tenet'\$5DB/S-5-KK.555

EX 3: 317 ##\$aZapis na nasl. str: 'Poklonio Narodnom muzeumu Aleksander Shue... Zupnik u Stenjevcu'\$5CiZaNSK: RII F-8° – 1541a
317 ##\$aZapis na nasl. str: 'Colegii Zagrabiensis Soc. Jesu. Inscriptus. 1698'\$5CiZaNSK: RII F-8° – 1541b

Notes on the inscription on the title page of two respective copies of the same item.

EX 4: 317 ##\$aEx libris: 'Nikolai Skerlecz de Lomniza'\$5CiZaNSK: L III H13

EX 5: 317 ##\$aZapis na nasl. str: 'Daruje sveučilištnoj knjižnici Ivan Kukuljević'\$5CiZaNSK: R II C-8° – 100b
317 ##\$aNu vrhu nasl. str. glagoljski zapis\$5CiZaNSK: R II C-8° – 100b
702 ##\$aKukuljević-Sakcinski\$bIvan\$4320\$5CiZaNSK: R II C-8° – 100b

This copy is donated to the National and University Library, Zagreb by Ivan Kukuljević. On the same copy there is a glagolitic inscription written by hand, probably by the donor.

EX 6: 317 ##\$aNu poledini predlista zapisi: Francisci de Ragnina ex dono dni Vincentij Volanti; Velimir Gaj 1873\$u<http://www.nsk.hr/piesni/pol-predlist.html>\$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-75
317 ##\$aNu nasl. str. zapis: Ellena di Gozza Sorgo nta Ragnina\$u<http://www.nsk.hr/piesni/naslstr.html>\$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-75

Digitised pages containing information on the previous owners of the book are linked to the Provenance note by URLs in \$u.

EX 7: 317 ##\$aС эслибрисом Б-ки Голицына\$5NLR

Ex libris of the Golitsyn Library

EX 8: 317 ##\$aFrom the Library of Kenneth Roberts, with his book plate, dated 20 November 1939.\$5ViU:PS3535 .O176 Z42 .S8 G7 1939

317 ##\$aAuthor's inscription: "For Irving Bacheller I am honoured to inscribe this book. John Steinbeck Tos Gator 1939."\$5ViU:PS1054 .B3 Z9 .S74 G7 1939

317 ##\$aGift of C.W. Barrett.\$5ViU:PS1054 .B3 Z9 .S74 G7 1939

Two copies of *Grapes of wrath* in the Clifton Waller Barrett Library of American Literature, University of Virginia library. The second shows two stages in its provenance.

EX 9: *Provenance notes:*

317 ##\$6b01\$aSignature "Aymon", 17e siècle, au f. a2\$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 233

317 ##\$6b02\$aEx libris ms. 16e siècle au titre d'Antoine Gérard. Ex-libris ms. 17e siècle au f. a2 du Collège de la Trinité des Jésuites de Lyon\$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501

Provenance place and date access points:

621 #1\$aFrance\$f16\$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 233

621 #1\$6b01\$aFrance\$f15\$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501

621 #1\$6b02\$aFrance\$cRhône\$dLyon\$eCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus \$f16 \$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501

Personal and corporate name access points:

702 1#\$6b01\$aGérard\$bAntoine\$factif en 15--\$4390\$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501

712 2#\$6b02\$aCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus\$cLyon\$4390 \$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501

The \$6 codes 01-02 link the related fields.

EX 10: 317 ##\$aArms of Edward Bye (d.1712) on both covers. Armorial bookplate of Bye, hand-coloured, with MS inscription: "This book was the property of Edward Bye, of Ware-park, co: Herts, Esq: after whose death, it was purchased, (at the sale by auction of a considerable part of his library;) by Thomas, Baron Dimsdale, MD, FRS &c., who on Dec. 27, 1773. presented it to John Zachary." Beneath this, armorial bookplate: "Talygarn" [seat of G. T. Clark]. On facing page, book stamp: TAL-Y-GARN. If the inscription is correct, the auction must have taken place several years after Bye's death in 1712, the year of Dimsdale's birth.\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124

Provenance for a copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654*, in National Library of Wales. Subfield \$5 links this field to other copy-specific fields in the record. See 316 EX 15, 621 EX 3 and 702 EX 5.

318 ACTION NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used to record preservation information and treatment.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Action. Not repeatable.

\$b Action Identification

A code or designation designed to identify a specific action or identify it in conjunction with time of action, e.g. a project code. Repeatable.

\$c Time of Action

A code for time of action in ISO format (year, month [if applicable], day [if applicable]). Repeatable.

\$d Action Interval

Subfield is used when the time cannot be expressed as a specific date, e.g. at the end of academic term or every five years (EX 7). Repeatable.

\$e Contingency for Action

Subfield is used when the time is linked to an unpredictable event, e.g. upon receipt (EX 3,6). Repeatable.

\$f Authorisation

Subfield contains the text of or a citation to a rule etc. governing the action (EX 4). Repeatable.

\$h Jurisdiction

Subfield contains the name of a person, an institution, or a position or function within an institution, in whom or in which responsibility for an action is vested (EX 7). Repeatable.

- \$i** Method of Action
Subfield refers to the technique by which the action is carried out (EX 6). Repeatable.
- \$j** Site of Action
Subfield describes the location in which the action takes place (EX 8). Repeatable.
- \$k** Action Agent
Subfield contains the person or organisation which performs the action (EX 4, 8). Repeatable.
- \$l** Status
Subfield contains the condition or state of the described materials, sometimes but not always resulting from an action (EX 1,2,4). Repeatable.
- \$n** Extent
Subfield is used when the action affects only part of the item (EX 5). Repeatable.
- \$o** Type of Unit
Subfield is used when the action affects only part of the item (EX 5). Repeatable.
- \$p** Non-public Note
Subfield contains notes pertaining to an action on an item which is not displayed to the public. Repeatable.
- \$r** Public Note
Subfield contains notes pertaining to an action on an item which is displayed to the public (EX 8). Repeatable.
- \$u** Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)
The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic resource through one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used when an electronic version of the image of a page(s) relevant to the preservation or treatment information is available (i.e. a digitized extract of the item described in the record, part of an electronic resource). Repeatable
- \$5** Institution and copy to which the Field Applies
Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

It is considered that the record is made for the ideal copy. However, in this note field preservation information and treatment of the copy in hand is described. Code of the institution to which the Action Note field applies is recorded in \$5.

Related Fields**141 CODED DATA FIELD: COPY SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES**

This field contains fixed-length coded data relating to the copy specific attributes of older monographic publication.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to a part of the item described in the record.

Examples

EX 1: 318 ##\$aCondition reviewed\$c19911121\$ltext stained, binding intact, water damage
\$5QL/P18

EX 2: 318 ##\$aRepaired\$c1991\$loriginal retained, rebacked\$5CA/U-1

EX 3: 318 ##\$aReview condition\$ewhen deposit is complete\$5CA/U66

EX 4: 318 ##\$aCondition reviewed\$c19911121\$lbinding intact\$fSCAN\$kCCM\$5Uk
Condition checked by a member of staff with the initials CCM as part of a review project called SCAN.

EX 5: 318 ##\$aFumigate\$n12\$oarchives boxes\$c19861010\$5LO/N-1

EX 6: 318 ##\$aDispose of\$efive years after closing file\$iincinerate\$5CaQQCT

EX 7: 318 ##\$aReview\$dEvery five years\$hArchives Unit\$5CaQQCT

EX 8: 318 ##\$aExhibit\$c19980401-19981231\$jVictoria & Albert Museum\$kJStC\$rThis item
is on loan to the Victoria and Albert Museum until the end of the year\$5CaQQCT

EX 9: 318 ##\$aPregledano\$c19941031\$I Pojedini listovi izjedeni od crva\$nRestaurirati
\$u<http://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/list28.html>\$u<http://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/list29.html>
\$u<http://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/list30.html>\$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-100
primj. a

Three leaves are damaged by worms. In order to document the restoration process the images of damaged leaves are linked to the Action note.

320 INTERNAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES/INDEXES NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note indicating that the item contains a bibliography or index, optionally including the pagination.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). Repeatable

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item through one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used when an electronic version of the internal bibliography and/or indexes is available (digitized extract of the item described in the record, part of an electronic resource)

Notes on Field Contents

The note may be entered in any form.

Related Fields

105 CODED DATA FIELD: BOOKS

110 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES

These fields contain codes that indicate whether an item contains bibliographies and indexes and describe the availability of a continuing resource index provided by the publisher

321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE

Notes concerning bibliographies and/or indexes available separately from the item should be entered here.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to a part of the item described in the record

Examples

EX 1: 320 ##\$aBibliography: p. 210

EX 2: 320 ##\$aIncludes bibliographical references

EX 3: 320 ##\$aConsists mostly of bibliographies

EX 4: 320 ##\$aBibliography: p.299-306. Index

EX 5: 320 ##\$aIndex published separately every December

A continuing resource with a regular index provided as part of the subscription.

321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note indicating the availability in other documents of indexes and abstracts of the item described in the record. For rare materials it may contain a brief reference to a bibliography, catalogue etc. where the item has been cited or described.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when more than one source is cited or the same source is cited more than once.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of Coverage

Specifies the extent of the description that will be found in the cited document.

No information provided

Indicates that the information in the field is free text or does not require an introductory phrase (EX 1).

0 Indexing, abstracting coverage

Indicates that the information in the field specifies coverage of the item in an indexing or abstracting service (EX 2, 3). A print/display constant equivalent to "Indexed in:" would be appropriate.

1 Bibliography, catalogue citation

Indicates that the information in the field specifies an external source that cites the item (EX 4, 5). A print/display constant equivalent to "Reference:" would be appropriate.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Name of source

Contains the name of the external source where the item is indexed or cited. This may be the title of the source or the name of an organization or company. The Key Title is used when available. Not repeatable.

\$b Dates of coverage

The dates during which the external source indexed or abstracted the contents of the item or the date of publication of the external source where relevant (EX 2,5). Not repeatable.

- \$c** Location within source
The number of page(s) or the internal number of the item citation within the external source (EX 4,5). Not repeatable.
- \$u** Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)
The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic resource through one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used when the source is available in an electronic version (EX 3). Not repeatable.
- \$x** International Standard Number
The ISBN, ISSN or other international standard number of the external source document. Preceded by identifier (EX 5) except in the case of ISSN (EX 2, 3). Not repeatable.
- \$5** Institution to which Field Applies
Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Not repeatable.
- \$6** Interfield Linking Data
This subfield is described in section 3.11. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Notes in this field may be structured (EX 2, 3, 4, 5) or free text (EX 1).

Related fields

- 313** NOTES RELATING TO SUBJECT ACCESS
General notes concerned with the subject approach to a document should be entered in field 313.
- 320** INTERNAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES/INDEXES NOTE
Notes on internal bibliographies and/or indexes should be entered here.
- 856** ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS
This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to an associated resource.

Examples

EX 1: 321 ##\$aFor a list of contents see Heyer. Historical sets, collected editions and manuals of music

A set of musical scores described in an external publication.

EX 2: 321 0#\$aEducation index,\$b1966-\$x0013-1385

A continuing resource that has been indexed in its entirety by an external indexing service from 1966 to date.

EX 3: 321 0#\$aApplied science and technology index\$x0003-6986

321 0#\$aBiography index\$x0006-3053

321 0#\$aChemical abstracts\$x0009-2258\$u<http://www.cas.org/>

321 0#\$aIndex medicus\$x0019-3879

321 0#\$aInternational packaging abstracts\$x0260-7409

321 0#\$aReaders' guide to periodical literature\$x0034-0464

A continuing resource that has been indexed by a number of indexing and abstracting services.

EX 4: 321 1#\$aReuss, E. Bib. Novi. Testamenti Graeci\$cp.35

321 1#\$aRudolphi, E.C. Froschauer\$c336

321 1#\$aDarlow & Moule\$cII, p.586

A rare book cited in several standard bibliographies.

EX 5: 321 1#\$aRism A/II\$b1996\$c450.069.836\$xISBN 3-5984-0372-0

The manuscript of Piccinni's *Le vicende della sorte* (Münster, Stiftsbibliothek, SANT Hs 1580, Nr. 9) as cited in *RISM A/II Répertoire international des sources musicales : Série A/2 : manuscrits musicaux après 1600 : catalogue thématique : CD-ROM*, 5. ed., . München, 1996, ISBN 3-5984-0372-0, item nr. 450.069.836.

322 CREDITS NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)

Field Definition

This field contains the names of persons or organizations, other than cast, who participated in the artistic or technical production of the work.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The term 'Credits' or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically when the note is output. When source formats do not make the same distinction between cast notes and credits notes as UNIMARC, this field should be used for both.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

If persons or organizations which participated in the artistic or technical production of the work are given in field 200 then a 322 field is not necessary (see note on 7-- block below).

323 CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)

This field records details of performers, performing groups etc.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

Many cataloguing codes require that any access point for an item be justified in the notes if it is not present elsewhere in the description of the item. Field 322 may be used for such notes.

Examples

EX 1: 322 ##\$aProducer, Ray Jewell; writer, Don Hall; narrator, Vic Perrin; music, Jack Meakin; editor, Rick Eisman.

EX 2: 322 ##\$aRobert Gugholz, clarinette. Orchestre de la Suisse romande. Ernest Ansermet, directeur.

The source format has only one notes field for all participants. This field is used instead of the general notes field 300.

323 CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)

Field Definition

This field records the names of featured players, performers, narrators, presenters etc. of projected and video material and the names of participants, performers or performing groups and the medium of performance for sound recordings.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for each category of participant, performer, etc. (EX 4).

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

When source formats do not make the same distinction between cast notes and credits notes as UNIMARC, field 322 CREDITS NOTE should be used for both rather than field 300 GENERAL NOTE.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

If persons or organizations performing are given in field 200 then a 323 field is not necessary (see note on 7-- block below)

322 CREDITS NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)

This field records details of persons or organizations other than cast or performers, performing groups etc.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

Many cataloguing codes require that any access point for an item be justified in the notes if it is not present elsewhere in the description of the item. Field 323 may be used for such notes.

Examples

EX 1: 323 ##\$aCast: Mary Pickford, Claire McDowell, Dorothy Bernard, Charles West

EX 2: 323 ##\$aNarrators: Sian Phillips and Nigel Davenport

EX 3: 323 ##\$aMarshall Moss, violin; Neil Roberts, harpsichord

EX 4: 323 ##\$aNarrator: Salome Jens

323 ##\$aCast: Daryl Hannah (Ayla), Pamela Reed (Iza), James Remar (Creb)

There are two 323 fields, one for each category of participant. The second note includes the name of the character played by each member of the cast.

324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note indicating that the item in hand is a reproduction, e.g., facsimile or microform, by including a bibliographic reference to the original item(s). The record describes the reproduction.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on field contents

This field is used when the policy of the cataloguing agency is to describe a reproduction as a reproduction in the 2-- block, with details of the original item from which it has been reproduced being given in the note. The note will usually include a word like facsimile, microform, etc., or its equivalent in other language. It is recommended that any reference to the original should be entered using ISBD punctuation (EX 1). If the source of the reproduction (holding institution, shelfmark) is known, it is strongly recommended that these details be included, especially for older (antiquarian) material.

Related fields

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

Notes indicating the original of a facsimile should be entered in field 324 in preference to field 305.

307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

Notes that the item contains facsimiles should now be entered in field 307.

325 REPRODUCTION NOTE

Note giving details of the reproduction when the item is catalogued as if it were the original.

455 REPRODUCTION OF

This field contains a description of an original or a link to a record describing an original.

456 REPRODUCED AS

This field contains a description of a reproduction or a link to a record describing a reproduction.

Examples

EX 1: 324 ##\$aFacsimile reprint of: 1797 ed. originally published as 'The complaint and the consolation, or, Night thoughts', London : Richard Edwards, 1797

EX 2: 324 ##\$aMicroform reproduction of: Mithridates, or, Mr. Newmans essay on development its own confutation, London : W.J.Cleaver, 1846.

EX 3: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠écrivains français devant le cinéma\$evisualité et problèmes d'écriture dans le roman français contemporain entre 1925 et 1966\$fJeanne-Marie Clerc
210 ##\$aParis\$cBibliothèque Nationale\$d1989\$eParis\$gBibliothèque Nationale, Centre de Sablé
215 ##\$a33 microfiches\$cargentique\$d105 x 148 mm
324 ##\$aEd. microfiche: [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1983

A microfiche reproduction (1989) by the Bibliothèque Nationale of an item previously issued, also in microfiche (1983), place and publisher unknown.

EX 4: 200 1#\$aWilliam Shakespeare sonnets
210 ##\$aLondon\$cNoel Douglas\$d1926
215 ##\$a[84] p.\$d23 cm
225 2#\$aNoel Douglas replicas
324 ##\$aFacsimile of: Shake-speare's sonnets. Neuer before imprinted. – At London : By G. Eld for T.T. and are to be solde by John Wright... , 1609. "Reproduced from the copy in the British Museum".

History

Before 1994 this field also contained notes that the item contained facsimiles. Such notes should now be contained in field 307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION.

325 REPRODUCTION NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note indicating that EITHER the item in hand is a reproduction of the item described in the body of the record OR there is an available reproduction of the item described in the body of the record. The rest of the record describes the original.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Original / Reproduction indicator

The item in hand is a reproduction; the note describes that reproduction

1 The item in hand is an original; the note describes an available reproduction

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on field contents

This field is used when (a) the policy of the cataloguing agency is to describe a reproduction in the 2—block as if it were the original, the details of the reproduction being given in the note (EX 1-5), or (b) the cataloguing agency uses the note to draw attention to the availability of a reproduction of an original item described in the record (EX 6). In both cases the 2—block contains the description of the original. The introductory text of the note is used to make clear the distinction between the two uses of the field. It is recommended that any reference to the reproduction should be entered using ISBD punctuation.

Related fields

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

Notes indicating the original of a facsimile should be entered in field 324 in preference to field 305.

324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE

Note giving details of the original item(s) of which reproduction is being catalogued in the main body of the record.

455 REPRODUCTION OF

This field contains a description of an original or a link to a record describing an original.

456 REPRODUCED AS

This field contains a description of a reproduction or a link to a record describing a reproduction.

Examples

EX 1: 325 ##\$aMicrofiche. Cambridge : Chadwyck-Healy Ltd, 1988. 2 fiches ; 11x15 cm.
(The Nineteenth Century : general collection ; N.1.1.18)

EX 2: 325 ##\$aEd. microfilme. Lisboa : Biblioteca Nacional, 1987. 1 bobine (71 imagens) ;
35 mm

EX 3: 325 ##\$aEd. microfilme. Lisboa : Biblioteca Nacional, 1986-1988. 3 bobines ; 35 mm

EX 4: 325 ##\$aMicroforme de reproduction. Paris : Bibliothèque Nationale, 1990. 3
microfiches : argentique, 14x

EX 5: 200 1#\$aOutline of a new system of logic, with a critical examination of Dr. Whately's
"Elements of logic"\$fby George Bentham
210 ##\$aLondon\$cHunt and Clarke\$b4, York Street, Covent Garden\$d1827\$gPrinted
by Joseph Mallett\$f59, Wardour Street, Soho, London
215 ##\$axii, 287, [1] p.\$d8°
700 #1\$aBentham,\$bGeorge\$f1800-1884
325 ##\$aMicrofilm. London : British Library, 1990. 1 reel ; 35 mm
325 ##\$aMicrofiche. Cambridge : Chadwyck-Healey Ltd., 1990. 4 fiches ; 11x15 cm.
(The Nineteenth Century : General Collection ; N. 1.1.4245)

The microforms described in this field are the items in hand being described in the notes. The original work is described from information taken from these microform reproductions. Compare EX 6.

EX 6: 200 1#\$aOutline of a new system of logic, with a critical examination of Dr. Whately's
"Elements of logic"\$fby George Bentham
210 ##\$aLondon\$cHunt and Clarke\$b4, York Street, Covent Garden\$d1827\$gPrinted
by Joseph Mallett\$f59, Wardour Street, Soho, London
215 ##\$axii, 287, [1] p.\$d8°
700 #1\$aBentham,\$bGeorge\$f1800-1884
325 1#\$aMicrofilm. London : British Library, 1990. 1 reel ; 35 mm
325 1#\$aMicrofiche. Cambridge : Chadwyck-Healey Ltd., 1990. 4 fiches ; 11x15 cm.
(The Nineteenth Century : General Collection ; N. 1.1.4245)

The original work is the item in hand. Microform copies available are described in the notes. Compare EX 5.

326 FREQUENCY STATEMENT NOTE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Field Definition

This field contains a note indicating the frequency with which a continuing resource is issued.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable. If it is desired to note frequency at different periods during the existence of the continuing resource, the field should be repeated, the directory entries for the repeated fields being ordered with most recent frequency first (EX 2).

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Frequency

A statement indicating the frequency with which a continuing resource is issued. Not repeatable.

\$b Dates of Frequency

The date span over which the frequency mentioned in subfield \$a applies. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

There is no standard form for the data in this field. It may be omitted when the data could be generated from a code in field 110 character position 1, as in EX 1. Agencies preparing records should be consistent in the use of the fields in such circumstances.

Related Fields

110 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES, Frequency of issue (character position 1)

This character position contains a code indicating the frequency of issue of the continuing resource. Being limited to one character position, it cannot record complex situations which may be explained in field 326.

Examples

EX 1: 326 ##\$aMonthly

A continuing resource published monthly.

EX 2: 326 ##\$aQuarterly\$b1981-
326 ##\$aMonthly\$b1940-1980

A journal published monthly from 1940 to 1980 and published quarterly since.

327 CONTENTS NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note describing the contents of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if the field is structured (Indicator 2 = 1) to record the table of contents of the described resource.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Completeness indicator

This indicator specifies whether or not the field is considered a complete record of the contents of the item.

Undetermined

This value is to be used in the case of a structured field, which is repeated.

0 Contents note is not complete (EX 5)

All parts of a multipart resource are not listed because they were not available for analysis (not yet published or received by the library).

1 Contents note is complete (EX 1, 2, 3)

2 Contents note is partial (EX 4, 6)

All parts of a resource were available for analysis but only selected parts are listed.

Indicator 2: Structure indicator

This indicator specifies whether or not the field is structured.

Unstructured note

1 Structured note

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Repeatable.

\$b Title of level 1 subdivision. Repeatable.

\$c Title of level 2 subdivision. Repeatable.

\$d Title of level 3 subdivision. Repeatable.

\$e Title of level 4 subdivision. Repeatable.

\$f Title of level 5 subdivision. Repeatable.

- \$g Title of level 6 subdivision. Repeatable.
- \$h Title of level 7 subdivision. Repeatable.
- \$i Title of level 8 subdivision. Repeatable.
- \$p Sequence of pages or first pages of a subdivision. Repeatable.
- \$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). Repeatable.
- The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used when an electronic version of the table of contents is available (digitized extract of the item described in the record, part of an electronic resource).
- \$z Other information concerning a subdivision. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data relating to each component part should be entered in this field in a separate occurrence of subfield \$a. The data may be in any form, but it is recommended that ISBD data element definitions and punctuation be used if the title is followed by statement of responsibility (EX 1). If, however, the name of the author is placed before the title, it should be entered in access point form and followed by the title (EX 3). Punctuation may be included at subfield boundaries (EX 2, 3).

When the contents note is *complete* (Indicator 1 = 1), the term 'Contents: ' or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically as a print constant when the contents note is output (EX 1, 2, 3).

When the contents note is *not complete* (Indicator 1 = 0), the phrase '*Incomplete contents:*' or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically as a print constant when the contents note is output (EX 5).

When the contents note is *partial* the appropriate introductory text, which may take several different forms, must be entered manually (EX 4, 6). It is important to avoid ambiguous terms which may give the impression that the copy in hand is defective and lacks some of its text. If the note does refer to a specific copy, rather than to all the copies of an edition, then field 316, Note Relating to the Copy in Hand, should be used (see example there).

When the contents note is unstructured (Indicator 2 = #), if the full text of the contents note is entered in subfield \$a, repeated as necessary (EX 1-3), using punctuation as necessary and no other subfields are used. When the contents note is structured (Indicator 2 = 1), \$a is not used but any other subfields are used.

Related Fields

464 PIECE-ANALYTIC

Field 464 may also be used to describe an entity at the piece-analytic level, and a note may be created directly from each 464 field.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to a part of the item described in the record.

Examples

EX 1: 327 1#*The Venice train* / translated by Alastair Hamilton. This translation originally published: London : Hamilton, 1974. Translation of 'Le train de Venise'. Paris : Presses de la Cité, 1965*Maigret and the millionaires* / translated by Jean Stewart. This translation originally published: London : Hamilton, 1974. Translation of 'Maigret voyage'. Paris : Presses de la Cité, 1958*The innocents* / translated by Eileen Ellenbogen. This translation originally published: London : Hamilton, 1973. Translation of 'Les innocents'. Paris : Presses de la Cité, 1972.

The work is a translation from the French of 'The eleventh Simenon omnibus' by George Simenon. Within the contents note, full bibliographic details of the individual items are given. ISBD conventions are used.

EX 2: 327 1#*The Venice train*;*Maigret and the millionaires*;*The innocents*.

A contents note for the item above in a less full form.

EX 3: 327 1#*Rosten, Leo. The beggar and the wallet*.*Martinez, A.L. Life with daughter*.*Johnson, James L. Hard travelin'*.*Knight, Joseph. From the insane asylum*.*McCallum, George P. The last summer*

A contents note with the authors preceding the titles and inverted.

EX 4: 327 2#*Includes the text of The Theft Act 1968 and The Theft Act 1978*

A legal work which contains, in addition to the author's commentary, the full texts of two UK statutes.

EX 5: 327 0#*v. 2. 987-1328**v. 3. 1328-1589*

A multi-volume history of France, of which only v. 2 & 3 have been published or received. The following note could be generated from this field: 'Incomplete contents: v. 2. 987-1328. – v. 3. 1328-1589'

EX 6: 327 2#*Selected contents: Country report on retrospective cataloguing : Denmark / Niels Ivan Boserup, Erland Kolding Nielsen. p. 79-84. – Norway : status report on retrospective cataloguing / Hans M. Fagerli. p. 85-86. – Retrospective bibliography : the eighteenth century*

EX 7: 327 #1*Preface*

327 #1*Management and Use of Name Authority Files*

Quantitative Results Covering all Name Authority Files

General Analysis of Automated Authority Files

Qualitative Analysis of each Type of Authority Files

A Few Comments

327 #1*Summaries in IFLA official languages*

*German**Russian**Spanish*

327 #1*Tables*

Table 1. Method of working on authority file

Table 2. Quantitative results covering authority lists and files

Table 3. General analysis

of automated authority files\$50\$cTable 4. Qualitative analysis of names of persons
 authority records\$52\$cTable 5 Qualitative analysis of corporate name authority
 records\$56\$bTable 6. Qualitative analysis of uniform titles authority
 records\$58\$cTable 7. Analysis of an authority record for name of person\$61\$cTable
 8. Analysis of an authority record for a corporate body\$62
 327 #1\$bQuestionnaire\$63
 327 #1\$bList of experts who replied to the questionnaire\$81

Table of contents of the item :

Management and use of name authority files : personal names, corporate bodies and
 uniform titles : evaluation and prospects : revised text of a paper presented at the open
 forum of the Section on Bibliography during the IFLA Paris conference in August
 1989 ... / by Marcelle Beaudiquez, ... and Françoise Bourdon, ... – München ... :
 Saur, 1991. – (UBCIM publications. New Series 5)

- EX 8: 327 #1\$bContributors to This Volume\$V
 327 #1\$bToward the Future of the Descriptive Cataloging Rules\$p1\$zBrian E. C.
 Schottlaender
 327 #1\$bKey Lessons of History: Revisiting the Foundations of AACR\$p6\$zLynne C.
 Howarth
 327 #1\$bAACR3? Not!\$p19\$zMichael Gorman
 327 #1\$bAACR and Authority Control\$p30\$zBarbara B. Tillett
 327 #1\$bEditions: Brainstorming for AACR2000\$p40\$zMartha M. Yee
 327 #1\$bWhat's wrong with AACR2: a Serials Perspective\$p66\$zCrystal Graham

 327 #1\$bArchival Description and New Paradigms of Bibliographic Control and
 Access in the Networked Digital Environment\$p84\$zSteven L. Hensen
 327 #1\$bCataloging Uncertainty: Documents, Catalogs, and Digital Disorder\$p97
 \$zDavid M. Levy
 327 #1\$bBibliographic Description and Digital Objects: Towards a New Discipline of
 Information Description and Management\$p107\$zClifford Lynch
 327 #1\$bBibliography\$p121
 327 #1\$bAcronyms and Initialisms Used\$p129
 327 #1\$bIndex\$p131

On the table of contents the name of the author of each subdivision is given *after* the
 mention of the first page of each subdivision, so this name is introduced by subfield \$z.

Table of contents of the item :

The Future of the descriptive cataloguing rules : papers from the ALCTS
 preconference, AACR2000 American library association Annual conference, Chicago,
 June 22, 1995 / ed. by Brian E. C. Schottlaender series editor Edward Swanson. –
 Chicago London : American Library Association, 1998. – (ALCTS Papers on Library
 Technical Services and Collections 6)

- EX 9: 327 #1\$bForeword\$p1
 327 #1\$bIntroduction\$p3\$c0.1 Background\$p3\$c0.2 Methodology\$p6\$c0.3 The
 Problems\$p7
 327 #1\$bPart One: [...]
 327 #1\$bPart Two: International Cooperation on which Authority Data ?\$p31\$c2.1
 The functions of an authority file\$p35\$d2.1.1 The management of name access points
 \$p35\$e2.1.1.1 Manual management files\$p36\$e2.1.1.2 Automated management

files\$37\$d2.1.2 The identification of names (persons, corporate bodies, works)\$p40
 \$e2.1.2.1 The specific contents of identification files\$p41\$e2.1.2.2 Manual or
 automated identification files\$p44\$c2.2 Characteristics of some authority files\$p47
 \$d2.2.1 Aims defined when the automated authority files were conceived\$p47\$d2.2.2
 The diversity of automated systems used at present\$p50\$e2.2.2.1 Formats\$p50
 \$e2.2.2.2 Links between authority files and bibliographic files\$p51\$c2.3 Authority
 control and international cooperation\$p55\$d2.3.1 How can name authority control be
 defined and how useful is it ?\$p56\$d2.3.2 Problems involved in authority control in an
 international context\$p58\$d2.3.3 Authority files and international cooperation\$p61
 327 #1\$bPart Three [...]

This is the table of contents of the following item:

International cooperation in the field of authority data : an analytical study with
 recommendations / by Françoise Bourdon ; transl. from the French by Ruth Webb. –
 München ... : K. G. Saur, 1993. – (UBCIM Publications. New Series 11)

EX 10: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠mauvaise réputation\$bEnregistrement sonore\$fGeorges
 Brassens, chant, guit.
 327 ##\$aDisque 1 : La mauvaise réputation\$aLe gorille\$aHécatombe\$aLe parapluie
 \$aLe petit cheval\$aCorne d'aurochs\$aLa chasse aux papillons\$aLa cane de Jeanne\$aIl
 n'y a pas d'amour heureux\$aLe vent\$aPauvre Martin\$aBallade des dames du temps
 jadis\$aLes amoureux des bancs publics\$aBrave Margot\$aJ'ai rendez-vous avec vous
 \$aP... de toi\$aChanson pour l'Auvergnat\$aLa prière\$aJe suis un voyou\$aAuprès de
 mon arbre\$aJe me suis fait tout petit\$aAu bois de mon cœur\$aLe pornographe
 327 ##\$aDisque 2: L'orage\$aPénélope\$aLes funérailles d'antan\$aEmbrasse-les
 tous\$aLa fille à cent sous\$aDans l'eau de la claire fontaine\$aLa complainte des filles
 de joie\$aLes amours d'antan\$aJeanne\$aLes copains d'abord\$aLes deux oncles
 \$aSaturne\$aLe 22 septembre\$aLa non-demande en mariage\$aSupplique pour être
 enterré à la plage de Sète\$aRien à jeter\$aLes passantes\$aMourir pour des idées\$aLe
 roi\$aLa ballade des gens qui sont nés quelque part\$aLa chanson du hérisson

La mauvaise réputation by Georges Brassens is a double audio compact disc. Both 327
 fields are "unstructured" (indicator 2: = #).

EX 11: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠œuvre du XXe siècle\$h2\$iVienne-Budapest
 \$cEnregistrement sonore\$fSchönberg, Berg, Webern... [et al.], comp.
 \$gSinfonieorchester des Südwestfunks\$gdir. Ernest Bour
 327 01\$bDisque 1 : Arnold Schönberg\$c5 Orchesterstücke, op. 16\$cVariationen für
 Orchester, op. 31\$cBegleitmusik zu einer Lichtspielszene, op. 34\$cThema und
 Variationen für Orchester, op. 43b\$zArnold Schönberg
 327 01\$bDisque 2 : Alban Berg\$cDrei Orchesterstücke, op. 6\$cFünf Orchesterlieder
 nach Ansichtskarten, op. 4\$cConcerto "A la mémoire d'un ange" pour violon et
 orchestre\$zAlban Berg
 327 01\$bDisque 3 : Anton Webern\$c6 Stücke für Orchester, op. 6\$cFünf Stücke für
 Orchester, op. 10\$cVier Lieder für Gesang und Orchester, op. 13\$cSymphonie für
 Klarinette, Bassklarinette, zwei Horner, Harfe..., op. 21\$cVariationen, op. 30\$zAnton
 Webern
 327 01\$bDisque 4 : Béla Bartók\$cLe prince de bois : grande suite, Sz. 60\$cSuite de
 danses, Sz. 77\$cDivertimento pour cordes, Sz. 113\$zBéla Bartók

Structured contents notes (indicator 2 = 1) for a 4 audio CD set, each CD bearing its
 own title.

328 DISSERTATION (THESIS) NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains a note indicating that the item is a thesis or dissertation and optionally including the degree for which it was presented, the academic institution awarding the degree, and the year of the degree.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Structure Indicator

| | |
|---|--------------------------|
| # | No information available |
| 0 | Structured |
| 1 | Not structured |

Subfields

\$a Text of note. Not repeatable.

\$b Dissertation or thesis details and type of degree. Not repeatable.

\$c Discipline of degree. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of degree. Not repeatable.

\$e Body granting the degree. Not repeatable.

\$t Title of other edition of dissertation or thesis. Not repeatable.

\$z Text preceding or following the note. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

There are no standards for the format of this field outside the practices of individual cataloguing rules.

The text of the note may use:

one \$a subfield.

or;

subfields \$b, \$c, \$d, \$e and \$t as needed. Subfield \$z may be used for free text preceding or following the other subfields.

Related Fields**105 CODED DATA FIELD : TEXTUAL MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC**

This field contains the values 'm' or 'v' in one of the character positions \$a/4-7 (form of content codes) when the item is a dissertation or thesis.

301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS**Examples****EX 1A: Unstructured method**

328 #1\$aTh. univ. : Géographie : Brest, Université de Bretagne occidentale : 1996

EX 1B: Structured method

328 #0\$bTh. univ.\$cGéographie\$eBrest, Université de Bretagne occidentale\$d1996

EX 1C: Structured method with additional information

328 #0\$zVersion abrégée de :\$bTh. univ.\$cGéographie\$eBrest, Université de Bretagne occidentale\$d1996\$tLes ports de pêche hauturière de Bretagne méridionale : étude géographique de la mutation d'un système halieutique

EX 2A: Unstructured method

328 #1\$aTese mistr. Antropologia, Univ. Nova de Lisboa, 1996

EX 2B: Structured method

328 #0\$bTese mistr.\$cAntropologia\$eUniv. Nova de Lisboa\$d1996

EX 3A: Unstructured method

328 ##\$aThèse de lic. droit Lausanne, 1992 (échange limité)

EX 3B: Structured method

328 #0\$bThèse de lic.\$cdroit\$eLausanne\$d1992\$z(échange limité)

EX 4A: Unstructured method

328 #1\$aThesis (Ph.D.)--University of Ottawa, 1974

EX 4B: Structured method

328 #0\$bThesis (Ph.D.)\$eUniversity of Ottawa\$d1974

EX 5A: Unstructured method

328 #1\$aZugl.: Berlin, Techn. Univ., Diss., 1998

EX 5B: Structured method

328 #0\$zZugl.:\$eBerlin, Techn. Univ.\$bDiss.\$d1998

EX 6: Unstructured method

328 #1\$aThèse: Droit: Aix-Marseille III: 1981

EX 7: 328 ##\$aRevision of thesis (Ph.D.) -- University of Alabama

The cataloguing code does not distinguish between formatted and unstructured notes.

EX 8A: Unstructured method

328 #1\$aOriginally presented as the author's thesis (Ph.D.) -- Harvard University,
1979.

EX 8B: Structured method

328 #0\$zOriginally presented as the author's thesis (Ph.D.)\$eHarvard University\$d1979.

330 SUMMARY OR ABSTRACT

Field Definition

This field contains a summary or abstract of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. It may be repeated when, for example, it is required to record summaries in more than one language.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may contain any kind of summary or abstract, whether informative, indicative, critical or evaluative. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 330.

Related Fields

327 CONTENTS NOTE

The contents note field should be used when references to sections contained within the item are given rather than a summary or abstract.

Examples

EX 1: 330 ##\$aUses puppet characters to present a lesson on safety. For primary grades.

EX 2: 330 ##\$aDefines and illustrates trends of various modernistic art styles in American painting. Explains how these styles are accomplished largely by the use of colour and form, disregarding recognizable subject matter.

332 PREFERRED CITATION OF DESCRIBED MATERIALS

Field Definition

This field contains the citation for the materials described in the record in the form preferred by the custodian or originator.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Preferred Citation. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A print/display constant equivalent to Cite as: might be used with this field.

Related Fields

None.

Examples

EX 1: 332 ##\$aCabinet of American Illustration (Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division)

The citation for a collection of American illustrations in the form preferred by the Library of Congress, the holding institution.

EX 2: 332 ##\$aJennings M. Kent and Richard G. Niemi. Youth-parent socialization panel study, 1965-1973. Ann Arbor, Mich. : Inter-University Consortium for Political and Social Research, 1981

The citation for a machine-readable data file in the form preferred by the originators.

333 USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains information about the users or intended audience of the material described.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A print/display constant such as Audience: might be used with this field.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Target Audience Code (character positions 17-19)

These character positions hold codes for certain types of intended audience

Examples

EX 1: 333 ##\$aFor remedial reading programmes

A note made in the record for a set of flash cards.

EX 2: 333 ##\$aMPAA rating: R

A note made in the record for a motion picture which has been given a restricted rating.

EX 3: 333 ##\$aProgram designed for geographers, planners, geologists, meteorologists, and others who have a professional interest in analyzing spatial data

A note made in the record for a machine-readable file.

EX 4: 333 ##\$a'Catholic paper for the Slovaks in Cleveland, Ohio, and vicinity'

A note, quoted from the item, in the record for a newspaper.

334 AWARDS NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains information on awards or prizes associated with the described item. The field may or may not be divided into separate subfields.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (undefined)

Indicator 2: blank (undefined)

Subfields

\$a Text of awards note

This field contains a free text note, describing the prize or award. This subfield field may be used instead of subfields \$b-\$d when the information cannot be separated into specific subfields. Not repeatable.

\$b Name of award

This field contains the name of the award. Not repeatable.

\$c Year of award .

This field contains the year in which the award was made, The year is entered in the form YYYY. Not repeatable.

\$d Country of award

This field contain the code for the country which makes the award. For the list of country codes see Appendix B. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI).

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used to link to a site describing the award. Repeatable.

Related Fields

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to an associated resource.

Examples

EX 1A: Single subfield method:

334 ##\$aAcademy Award for Best Picture, 1987

EX 1B: Multiple subfield method:

334 ##\$bAcademy Award for Best Picture\$c1987\$dUS

EX 2A: Single subfield method:

334 ##\$aBooker Prize, 1980

EX 2B: Multiple subfield method:

334 ##\$bBooker Prize\$c1980\$dGB

EX 3A: Single subfield method:

334 ##\$aPrix Louis Delluc 1984

EX 3B: Multiple subfield method:

334 ##\$bPrix Louis Delluc\$c1984\$dFR

EX 4: Single subfield method:

334 ##\$aCésar 1984 du meilleur film de l'année

336 TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE

Field Definition

This field contains information characterizing the type of electronic resource. In addition to a general descriptor (e.g. text, computer program, numeric), more specific information, such as the form or genre of textual material (e.g. biography, dictionaries, indexes) may be recorded in this field. The field is equivalent to the ISBD(ER) Notes relating to type and extent of resource area and other resource characteristics.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A print/display constant such as Type of file: might be used with this field.

Related Field

135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)

230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1: 336 ##\$aNumeric (summary statistics)

EX 2: 336 ##\$aText (Law reports and digests)

337 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS NOTE (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)

Field Definition

This field is used to record technical information about an electronic resource, such as the presence or absence of certain kinds of codes or the physical characteristics of the file (e.g. recording densities, parity, or blocking factors). For software, data such as the software programming language, the number of source program statements, computer requirements (e.g. computer manufacturer and model, operating system, or memory requirements), and peripheral requirements (e.g. number of tape drives, number of disk or drum units, number of terminals, or other peripheral devices, support software or related equipment) can be recorded. For remote access items, information about the mode of access may be recorded. The field is equivalent to the ISBD(ER) Notes on systems requirements.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable. If field 856 is not used (in a record describing an electronic resource), then 337 must be present

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of Note. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic resource through one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used to point to a page(s)/site(s) holding relevant technical information about an electronic resource. Repeatable

Notes on Field Contents

Electronic location and access field 856 provides detailed coded information for access, the mode of access note may be brief. It may begin with the words "Mode of access:" (EX 8) though other wording may be used (EX 9, 10).

Related Fields

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to a part of the item described in the record.

Examples

- EX 1: 337 ##\$aData is in extended ASCII character set
- EX 2: 337 ##\$aWritten in FORTRAN H with 1.5K source program statements
- EX 3: 337 ##\$aOperates on IBM 360 and 370 under OS SVS and OSMVS with 9K of internal memory
- EX 4: 337 ##\$aRequires IBM 2740 terminal with special narrow platen and form feeding features
- EX 5: 337 ##\$aDisk characteristics: Disk is single sided, double density, soft sector
- EX 6: 337 ##\$aSystem requirements: IBM PC, 64K, with color card, 1 disk drive. Color monitor recommended.
- EX 7: 337 ##\$aMode of use: On-line video or teletype terminal or with a small dedicated computer (e.g. PDP 8).
- EX 8: 337 ##\$aMode of access: World Wide Web
- EX 9: 337 ##\$aAccess through computer network
- EX 10: 337 ##\$aElectronic access through Internet
- EX 11: 337 ##\$aZahtjevi sustava za PDF datoteku: Adobe Acrobat Reader
\$uhttp://www.adobe.com
- EX 12: 337 ##\$aZahtjevi sustava: mrežni preglednik; videopreglednik QuickTime
\$uhttp://www.apple.com/quicktime/
337 ##\$aNacin pristupa: World Wide Web\$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/qtvr/donji-pocetna.htm
System requirement to view the video session on the website described in the record is video viewer QuickTime. It can be found at the URL entered in subfield \$u in the first field 337.

345 ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE

Field Definition

This field may contain the name and address of the publisher, distributor, or other source for acquisition. It may also include the stock number, the physical medium, and the terms of availability for the catalogued item or a different physical format version of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Source for Acquisition/Subscription Address

The name and/or address of a source for acquisition, including subscription address, of an item. Repeatable.

\$b Stock Number

The number associated with the item by the supplier to facilitate distribution of the item. If the stock number is the ISBN or ISSN, it need not be repeated in this field. Repeatable.

\$c Medium

The medium(s) in which the item is available. Repeatable (EX 3).

\$d Terms of Availability

The price of the item in monetary or other units. Repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI).

The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be used to link to a site from which the document can be acquired (documents published by associations, institutions, etc.). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If the publisher's address in field 210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC. is the same as would appear in this field it need not be repeated in this field.

Related Field

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

This field contains the name, and in some instances the address, of the publisher.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field applies only to the whole item described in the record. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to an associated resource.

Examples

EX 1: 345 ##\$aU.S. Bureau of the Census\$bC CPS 68 003

The source for acquisition and order number of a computer file.

EX 2: 345 ##\$aFreitag, Berndt und Artaria\$bBestell-Nr. 5406

The publisher and order number for a map.

EX 3: 345 ##\$aNational Technical Information Service\$bPB-363547\$cpaper copy\$d\$4.00
\$microfiche\$d\$3.00

The document distribution service, order number, available physical media, and prices for a technical report.

EX 4: 210 ##\$aWashington, D.C.\$b1649 K ST., NW, Washington, 20065\$cWider
Opportunities for Women\$d1979 printing, c1975
345 ##\$aWider Opportunities for Women, 1649 K St., NW, Washington, D.C. 20065.

The full name and address of the publisher are given in both the 210 and the 345 field.

EX 5: 210 ##\$aToronto\$cThe Chapter\$d1975-1976
345 ##\$aMultiple Sclerosis Society, Metropolitan Toronto Chapter, 13a Bloor St.
West, Toronto, Ont. M5S 1N5, Canada

The full name and address of the publisher, when the information was given in abbreviated form in the 210 field.

4 - - LINKING ENTRY BLOCK

STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

This structure applies to all 4-- linking entry fields.

Definition and Scope of Fields

"The primary purpose of UNIMARC is to facilitate the international exchange of bibliographic data in machine-readable form between national bibliographic agencies. UNIMARC may also be used as a model for the development of new machine-readable bibliographic formats" — Purpose and Scope of UNIMARC.

It is therefore important that the UNIMARC format be hospitable to other MARC formats: otherwise conversion to and from UNIMARC is difficult or even impossible.

For this reason the technique of embedded fields has been supplemented by a technique using standard subfields. The structure of the agency's records will determine which system of linking entry fields is used.

Where there is a choice of system, the agency should weigh the advantages of the linking entry system, which allows fuller although more complex entries, against the advantages of the standard subfield system, which is easier to implement.

A statement that linking fields are present or absent together with a note of the type of contents in such linking fields, should be given in the documentation to accompany exchange records. For details, see Appendix K.

Within the Linking Entry Fields Section, both methods are described in the order: (A) embedded fields technique then (B) the standard subfields technique. All examples illustrate both methods.

Each linking entry field in a record will contain subfields that identify the item to which the link is being made. The data in this field should be sufficient to identify the record for the item being linked to, or, if there is no record, to identify the item itself.

In the following list the fields are labelled by the type of record to which the link is being made, e.g. 410 SERIES is used in a sub-series record to link to the series of which it is a part.

The following fields are defined:

Series, supplements, etc.

| | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----|----------------------|
| 410 | Series | | |
| 411 | Subseries | | |
| 412 | Source of Excerpt or Offprint | 413 | Excerpt or Offprint |
| 421 | Supplement | 422 | Parent of Supplement |
| 423 | Issued with | | |
| 424 | Is Updated by | 425 | Updates |

| Preceding entries | | Succeeding entries | |
|-------------------|---|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 430 | Continues | 440 | Continued by |
| 431 | Continues in Part | 441 | Continued in Part by |
| 432 | Supersedes | 442 | Superseded by |
| 433 | Supersedes in Part | 443 | Superseded in Part by |
| 434 | Absorbed | 444 | Absorbed by |
| 435 | Absorbed in Part | 445 | Absorbed in Part by |
| 436 | Formed by Merger of | 446 | Split into |
| 437 | Separated from Form | 447 | Merged with xxx to |
| | | 448 | Changed Back to |
| Other editions | | | |
| 451 | Other Edition, State or Impression in the Same Medium | | |
| 452 | Other Edition in Another Medium | | |
| 453 | Translated as | 454 | Translation of |
| 455 | Reproduction of | 456 | Reproduced as |
| Levels | | | |
| 461 | Set Level | | |
| 462 | Subset Level | | |
| 463 | Piece Level | | |
| 464 | Piece-Analytic Level | | |
| Other | | | |
| 470 | Item Reviewed | | |
| 481 | Also Bound In This Volume | 82 | Bound With |
| 488 | Other Related Works | | |

Occurrence

Optional. Any number of linking fields may be included in a record.

For certain categories of linking fields (notably 46- Level linking fields) there is a restriction on the type of link which may be made. Details are given in Notes on Field Contents for such fields.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Note Indicator

The second indicator indicates whether the agency providing the record would use the data in this field to make a note for print or other displays of the record. If a note is not required, this indicator should be set to 0 (EX 1, 4, 6). The kinds of notes envisaged being created using this data are illustrated in the examples (EX 2, 3, 5). When the record is displayed, the specific field tag may be translated into text that describes the exact relationship of the item to which the link is being made and the item being catalogued: the exact wording of the text depends on the practices of the agency receiving the record.

0 Do not make a note

1 Make a note

(A) Subfields: Embedded fields technique

\$1 Linking Data

Each \$1 (one) subfield contains a data field complete with tag, indicators, and subfield codes. Repeatable for each embedded field.

Notes on Field Contents: Embedded fields technique

Each linking field is formatted as follows:

| Indicators: | Subfield Identifier: | Subfield Data: | Subfield Identifier: | Subfield Data: | | F/T |
|-------------|----------------------|--|----------------------|--|-----|-----|
| #0 or #1 | \$1 | Embedded tag, indicators and subfields | \$1 | Embedded tag, indicators and subfields | ... | |

F/T = Field Terminator

It is recommended that embedded fields are entered in numerical order of tag within each field. In the case of an embedded 001 field, neither indicators nor subfield identifiers are defined so that the subfield data includes only the tag and the number (EX 1).

If a linking field contains the record control number of the linked record, this record should be included in the same file for distribution purposes.

Linking fields constructed from a full record should contain the following required data when present:

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

500 UNIFORM TITLE

- or (if 500 not present in the record)
- 200 \$a Title Proper
- 7-- Responsibility (if present) (usually primary)
- 206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS – MATHEMATICAL DATA

The following fields may optionally be included:

- 010 ISBN
- 011 ISSN
- 040 CODEN
- 101 LANGUAGE OF THE WORK
- 102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR MANUFACTURE
- 123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS -SCALE AND COORDINATES
- 130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
- 200 \$a Title proper [if not already included]
- 200 \$f First Statement of Responsibility
- 200 \$h Number of Section or Part
- 200 \$i Name of Section or Part
- 200 \$v Volume Designation
- 205 EDITION STATEMENT
- 210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION ETC.
- 215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION
- 225 SERIES
- 510 PARALLEL TITLE PROPER
- 530 KEY TITLE
- 856 \$uURI

In some cases these optional fields may be needed to identify the item, e.g. 210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC. for 45- OTHER EDITIONS.

It is not recommended that additional fields be included.

Linking fields not constructed from a full record should contain as much of this data as possible, given the practices of the source agency.

At the least they should contain the data listed above, but need not include the record identifier.

(B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique**\$a Author**

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary responsibility for the item to which the link is being made. This may not necessarily be the contents of a 700, 710 or 720 field for that item if the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules. Where more than one subfield contributes to the contents, standard punctuation should be applied (EX 6). Not repeatable.

\$b General material designation

The contents of the relevant subfield (200\$b) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 456, EX1. Not repeatable.

\$c Place of Publication

The contents of the 210\$a subfield(s) of the item to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

\$d Date of Publication

The contents of the 210\$d subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

\$e Edition Statement

The contents of the 205\$a subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

\$f First Statement of Responsibility

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (200\$f) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable after each subfield \$t, \$l, \$h or \$i which has an accompanying statement of responsibility or for each parallel statement of responsibility.

\$g Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (200\$g) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

The contents of the relevant title (200) or uniform title (500) \$h subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

\$i Name of Section or Part

The contents of the relevant title (200) or uniform title (500) \$i subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

- \$l** Parallel title
- The contents of the relevant parallel title subfield(s) (200\$d, 510\$a) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 423, EX 2. Repeatable.
- \$m** International Standard Music Number
- The contents of the 013\$a subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Repeatable.
- \$n** Name of Publisher, Distributor, etc.
- The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (210\$c) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable.
- \$o** Other title information
- The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (200\$e) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable.
- \$p** Physical description
- The contents of the relevant physical description 215\$a subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.
- \$s** Series statement
- The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (225\$a, \$h, \$i) of the item to which the link is being made. See field 456, EX 1. Repeatable.
- \$t** Title
- The contents of the relevant title (200) or uniform title (500) subfield(s) of the item to which the link is being made. In the case of a continuing resource, this subfield may hold the contents of the key-title (530) field. Where more than one subfield contributes to the contents, standard punctuation should be applied in the absence of a specific 4XX subfield code (EX 6). Mandatory. Repeatable.
- \$u** Uniform Resource Identifier
- The contents of the 856\$u subfield of the record which is the source of the \$a or \$t in this field (see field 488, EX4). Not repeatable.
- \$v** Volume Number
- The element(s) (number, position in the document) which expresses the relationship between the current item and the item to which the link is being made. Examples of such elements are 200\$h and 225\$v. Not repeatable.
- \$x** ISSN
- The contents of the 011\$a subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

- \$y** International Standard Book Number
The contents of the 010\$a subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Repeatable.
- \$z** CODEN
The contents of the 040\$a subfield of the item to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.
- \$0** Bibliographic Record Identifier
The contents of the 001 field of the item to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
The contents of the \$3 subfield of the field which is the source of the \$a or \$t in this field. Repeatable.
- \$5** Institution to Which Field Applies
The contents of the \$5 subfield of the field which is the source of the \$a or \$t in this field. Not repeatable.

If there is no record for the item being linked to, the data in this field should be created as if that item were being catalogued.

If a linking field contains the record control number of the linked record, this record should be included in the same file for distribution purposes.

The order of subfields is irrelevant. But it is recommended that the \$0 subfield appears first and that the order be consistent within the database.

Related Fields

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS

Field 311 may be used to express any of the linking relationships appearing in this block when a note is required which cannot be generated from a 4-- field. If field 311 is used, the second indicator of the corresponding 4-- field is set to 0.

Examples

EX 1A: Embedded fields technique

461 #0\$100177-10346\$12001#\$aCountries of Europe\$vol. 2

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Field components: #0 | Indicators for field 461 |
| \$1 | Subfield identifier |
| 001 | Tag of embedded field |
| 77-10346 | Data of 001 field |
| \$1 | Subfield identifier |
| 200 | Tag of embedded field |
| 0# | Indicators of embedded 200 field |
| \$a | Subfield identifier for 200 field |

| | |
|--------|-----------------------------------|
| Title | Data of 200 field |
| \$v | Subfield identifier for 200 field |
| vol. 2 | Data of 200 field |

EX 1B: Standard subfields technique

461 #0\$077-10346\$tCountries of Europe\$vvol. 2

This example illustrates a link from a volume to a multi-volume monograph that is at the set level. The item being catalogued vol. 2 is one piece of the set. The record for the set should be present in the same file and will have as its 001 record identifier: 77-10346. The agency creating the record does not make a note relating to the set in the record for the volume being catalogued and has therefore set the second indicator to 0. To produce an access point from this field, it may be necessary to find the record referred to in the embedded 001 field. An access point generated from the record to which this field points would appear as follows:
Countries of Europe, vol. 2

EX 2A: Embedded fields technique

422 1\$12001#\$aWorld of knowledge

EX 2B: Standard subfields technique

422 1\$tWorld of knowledge

A continuing resource *World of knowledge* has an annual supplement entitled *World of knowledge annual*. In the record describing the *World of knowledge annual*, a note is required to indicate this relationship. The source format records this information by linking to the item *World of knowledge* by means of a bibliographic title entered in UNIMARC Field 422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT. The note created from this field might read as follows:

Supplement to: World of knowledge

EX 3A: Embedded fields technique

430 1\$1001RI976423\$1011##\$a0199-4797\$15301#\$aLigand quarterly

EX 3B: Standard subfields technique

430 #1\$0RI976423\$x0199-4797\$tLigand quarterly

A continuing resource with a key-title *Journal of clinical immunoassay* continues *Ligand quarterly* which had ISSN 0199-4797. In the record for *Journal of clinical immunoassay* a link is made to the previous title using key title and ISSN for identification. The record for that continuing resource need not be in the same file. A note generated from this field might read:

Continues: Ligand quarterly. ISSN 0199-4797

or when the note is generated by a French language database:

Fait suite à: Ligand quarterly. ISSN 0199-4797

EX 4A: Embedded fields technique

311 ##\$aIncludes alternate issues of Mythprint. ISSN 0146-9347
423 #0\$1011##\$a0146-9347\$12001# \$aMythprint

EX 4B: Standard subfields technique

311 ##\$aIncludes alternate issues of Mythprint. ISSN 0146-9347
423 #0\$x0146-9347\$tMythprint

A note which cannot be generated automatically from the linking field 423 is entered in a note field 311. The second indicator is set to 0. The note is not embedded in the 423 field.

EX 5A: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aIm Auftrag des Königs\$edie gefährlichen Abenteuer des Quentin Durward
\$fWalter Scott\$gmit einem Nachwort von Traude Dienel\$g[Bearbeitung einer
Übersetzung von Oelkers aus dem Jahre 1831]
454 #1\$150010\$aQuentin Durward
700 1\$aScott,\$cSir\$bWalter,\$f1771-1832

EX 5B: Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aIm Auftrag des Königs\$edie gefährlichen Abenteuer des Quentin Durward
\$fWalter Scott\$gmit einem Nachwort von Traude Dienel\$g[Bearbeitung einer
Übersetzung von Oelkers aus dem Jahre 1831]
454 #1\$tQuentin Durward
700 #1\$aScott,\$cSir\$bWalter,\$f1771-1832

Im Auftrag des Königs is a translation of Sir Walter Scott's *Quentin Durward*. A record for that work need not be in the same file. As a translation is catalogued under the name of the original author, the agency has not thought it necessary to include the author's name in the 454 field. A note generated from this field might read:
Translation of : Quentin Durward

EX 6A: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aVariations on a theme of Bartók\$efor string quartet\$fMalcolm Lipkin
311 ##\$aVariations on Bartók's Concertos, viola, orchestra, op.posth. Movement 1
488 #0\$1700#1\$aBartók,\$bBéla,\$f1881-1945\$150010\$aConcertos,\$rviola,
orchestra,\$noposth. \$hMovement 1
700 #1\$aLipkin,\$bMalcolm

EX 6B: Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aVariations on a theme of Bartók\$efor string quartet\$fMalcolm Lipkin
311 ##\$aVariations on Bartók's Concertos, viola, orchestra, op.posth. Movement 1
488 #0\$aBartók, Béla, 1881-1945\$tConcertos, viola, orchestra, op.posth. Movement 1
700 #1\$aLipkin,\$bMalcolm

A note which cannot be generated automatically from the linking field 488 is entered in a note field 311. The second indicator of field 488 is set to 0.

EX 7A: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aFlores apparuerunt\$bMusique imprimée\$fÉtienne Moulinié\$g[édition de Jean Duron]

412 #1\$12001#\$aMeslanges de sujets chrestiens\$bMusique imprimée\$aet motet "Flores apparuerunt"\$fÉtienne Moulinié\$gédition de Jean Duron\$gavec une collaboration musicale de Gérard Geay\$get un avant-propos de Denise Launay \$1210##\$aVersailles\$Ed. du Centre de musique baroque\$d1996\$1215##\$a1 partition (CXVIII-421 p.)

EX 7B: Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aFlores apparuerunt\$bMusique imprimée\$fÉtienne Moulinié\$g[édition de Jean Duron]

412 #1\$tMeslanges de sujets chrestiens\$bMusique imprimée\$tet motet "Flores apparuerunt"\$fÉtienne Moulinié\$gédition de Jean Duron\$gavec une collaboration musicale de Gérard Geay\$get un avant-propos de Denise Launay\$cVersailles\$nEd. du Centre de musique baroque\$d1996\$p1 partition (CXVIII-421 p.)

Flores apparuerunt is an offprint of a publication that comprises two musical works by the same composer, and lacks a collective title. In field 412, subfield \$a (in embedded field 200, EX 7A) and subfield \$t (standard subfields technique, EX 7B) are repeated.

410 SERIES

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to a series that contains it.

Notes on Field Contents

Field 410 contains an upward link to a series when the item catalogued is either a series or monograph. If an upward link to both a series and its subseries is required, then the 410 may be repeated for citations to each, the higher level preceding the lower. Alternatively when the record structure emphasizes linking separate records in a hierarchy, the series may be linked through a 461 SET field and the subseries through a 462 SUBSET field.

The indicator value for this field indicates whether a note should be generated from the field; it does not contain information concerning the existence or generation of a series statement (field 225).

Related Fields

225 SERIES

Field 225 is used to record the ISBD Series Area which contains series data as found on the item. Field 410 is used for an access point form of the series entry. When the access point form is considered by the agency preparing the record to be identical to the form in field 225, the first indicator of 225 will note this. Nevertheless, the data is still included in field 410 (EX 2).

461 SET

If the 46- hierarchical links are being used then an upward link to a series may be indicated through a 461 field.

462 SUBSET

If the 46- hierarchical links are being used then an upward link to a subseries may be indicated through a 462 field.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

225 0#\$aLetters from China

410 #0\$12001#\$aLetters from China\$1700#1\$aStrong,\$bAnna Louise,\$f1885-1970

Standard subfields technique

225 0#\$aLetters from China

410 #0\$tLetters from China\$aStrong, Anna Louise, 1885-1970

The document being catalogued is in a series for which an access point needs to be made. A series statement on the item and recorded in the 225 field differs from the access point form of name for the series. Field 410 contains that form. No note is to be printed from field 410.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique :

225 2#\$aCambridge Greek and Latin classics

410 #0\$12001#\$aCambridge Greek and Latin classics

Standard subfields technique

225 2#\$aCambridge Greek and Latin classics

410 #0\$tCambridge Greek and Latin classics

The document being catalogued is in a series for which an access entry is required by the cataloguing code. The form of entry in field 225 is the same as the established form in field 410.

411 SUBSERIES

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the continuing resource (series) being catalogued to a subseries that is contained in it.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is to be used only in records for continuing resources (series) to indicate a downward link to a subseries that is part of the continuing resource title recorded in field 200.

Related Fields

410 SERIES

The 411 field indicates a downward link from a series to a subseries. If the item being catalogued is a subseries and an upward link to the series is required, field 410 is used.

462 SUBSET

If the 46- hierarchical links are being used then a subseries may be linked to a series being catalogued through field 462.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

411 #1\$12001#\$aEngineering series\$12250#\$hA

Standard subfields technique:

411 #1\$tEngineering series\$hA

The item being catalogued is the continuing resource *Copper information* which has a subseries entitled *Engineering series* which is labelled *A* within the continuing resource.

412 SOURCE OF EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to identify a linked item which was the source of an excerpt or offprint.

Notes on Field Contents

An offprint or an excerpt is a unique bibliographic entity, the contents of which had already been published in another unique bibliographic entity.

Related Fields

413 EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT

Field 413 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 412.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

Record label, pos. 6 : a ; pos. 7 : m

200 1#\$aRégularisation des eaux du Léman\$bTexte imprimé\$etrois générations d'aménagement\$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Hermann

210 ##\$a Lausanne\$cBibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL\$d1983

215 ##\$a5 p.\$cill.\$d30 cm

225 1#\$aPublication\$fÉcole polytechnique fédérale de Lausanne\$v216

412 #1\$1001<Record identifier>\$1011##\$a0251-0979\$15300#\$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses\$v(1983-08-18)n°17

Standard subfields technique:

Record label, pos. 6 : a ; pos. 7 : m

200 1#\$aRégularisation des eaux du Léman\$bTexte imprimé\$etrois générations d'aménagement\$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Hermann

412 #1\$0<Record identifier>\$tIngénieurs et architectes suisses\$x0251-0979\$v(1983-08-18) n°17

The article *Régularisation des eaux du Léman* was first published within issue No. 17 (Aug. 18, 1983) of the periodical *Ingénieurs et architectes suisses*, and further issued separately as an offprint. The record above describes the offprint, which is a monographic item, as shown on the Record label position 7.

The note generated from the 412 data might appear displayed as follows:

Is an offprint from: Ingénieurs et architectes suisses, ISSN 0251-0979. — (1983-08-18) n°17

413 EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to identify a linked item which is an excerpt or offprint.

Notes on Field Contents

An offprint or an excerpt is a unique bibliographic entity, the contents of which have already been published in another unique bibliographic entity.

Related Fields

412 SOURCE OF EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT

Field 412 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 413.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

Record label, position 6 : a ; position 7 : s

011 ##\$a0251-0979

200 1#\$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses\$bTexte imprimé

210 ##\$a[Ecublens]\$cSociété des éditions des associations techniques universitaires,

SEATU\$d1979-1987

530 0#\$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses

413 #1\$1001<Record identifier>\$12001#\$v(1983-08-18)n°17\$aRégularisation des

eaux du Léman\$etrois générations d'aménagement\$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur

Harmann\$1210##\$aLausanne \$cBibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL\$cdiff. Payot\$d1983

Standard subfields technique

Record label, position 6 : a ; position 7 : s

011 ##\$a0251-0979

200 1#\$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses\$bTexte imprimé

210 ##\$a[Ecublens]\$cSociété des éditions des associations techniques universitaires,

SEATU\$d1979-1987

530 0#\$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses

413 #1#\$v(1983-08-18)n°17\$0<Record identifier>\$tRégularisation des eaux du

Léman\$otrois générations d'aménagement\$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann

\$cLausanne\$nBibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL\$ndiff. Payot\$d1983

The periodical *Ingénieurs et architectes suisses*, described above, has given birth to an offprint: *Régularisation des eaux du Léman*, first published as an article within issue No. 17 (Aug. 18, 1983).

See field 412, EX 1.

The note generated from the 413 data might appear displayed as follows:

Has offprint: Régularisation des eaux du Léman : trois générations d'aménagement / Jacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann. — Lausanne : Bibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL : diff. Payot, 1983. Excerpt from (1983-08-18)n°17

421 SUPPLEMENT

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to another item that is its supplement.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used in both continuing resource and monograph records to link to a supplement.

Related Fields

422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT

Field 422 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 421.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

421 #1\$1011##\$a0332-561X\$15301#\$aSymbolae Osloensis. Fasciculi suppletorii

Standard subfields technique

421 #1\$x0332-561X\$tSymbolae Osloensis. Fasciculi suppletorii

The continuing resource *Symbolae Osloensis* has a continuing resource supplement *Fasciculi suppletorii*.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#\$aQuadro politico di Milano

421 #1\$12001#\$aCos'è patriottismo?\$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aQuadro politico di Milano

421 #1\$tCos'è patriottismo?\$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano

The monograph *Quadro politico di Milano* has a monograph supplement *Cos'è patriottismo?*

422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the supplement being catalogued to the parent of that supplement.

Related Fields

421 SUPPLEMENT

Field 421 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 422.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#\$aGirl annual ...
422 #1\$15301#\$aGirl\$b(London)

Standard subfields technique:

200 1#\$aGirl annual ...
422 #1\$tGirl (London)

A weekly magazine *Girl* has an associated annual *Girl annual*. The record of *Girl annual* contains a link to the parent of the supplement: *Girl*.

The note generated from the 422 data might appear displayed as follows:

Supplement to: Girl (London)

EX 2: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#\$aCos'è patriottismo?\$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano
422 #1\$12001#\$aQuadro politico di Milano

Standard subfields technique:

200 1#\$aCos'è patriottismo?\$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano
422 #1\$tQuadro politico di Milano

The record for the monograph *Cos'è patriottismo* contains a link to the parent of the supplement *Quadro politico di Milano*

A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 2 of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

423 ISSUED WITH

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to another bibliographic item that is issued with it.

Notes on Field Contents

When one item is issued with another, it is not implied that either item is subsidiary to the other, as is the case with a supplement/parent relationship.

Related field

482 BOUND WITH

This field contains a description of the item that is bound first in an 'artificial' collection, i.e. not found with the other items as issued.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#Transport public
423 #1\$1011##\$a0249-6143\$15300#\$aAction transport

Standard subfields technique

200 1#Transport public
423 #1\$x0249-6143\$tAction transport

This linking field occurs in the record for *Transport public* since *Transport public* and *Action transport* are issued together.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#\$aFemmes\$dWomen\$aHombres\$dMen\$fPaul Verlaine\$gtranslated by Alastair Elliot
423 #0\$12001#\$aHombres\$15101#\$aMen\$1700#1\$aVerlaine\$bPaul
510 1#\$aWomen

Standard subfields technique:

200 1#\$aFemmes\$dWomen\$aHombres\$dMen\$fPaul Verlaine\$gtranslated by Alastair Elliot
423 #0\$aVerlaine, Paul\$tHombres\$lMen
510 1#\$aWomen
510 1#\$aMen

A book with two works and no collective title has parallel titles for both works. The parallel title for the first title proper is given in field 510, other titles being given in a

423 ISSUED WITH field. The 423 field does not generate a note because details are given already in the main 200 field.

EX 3: See field 200, EX 12.

A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 4 of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

EX 4: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#\$aDevis général des ouvrages dépendans du service du Génie militaire, dans la place d'Alexandrie ... \$f Corps impérial du Génie, Direction d'Alexandrie

327 ##\$aInclude: Bordereau du prix des ouvrages, dépendans du service du Génie militaire, à exécuter dans la place d'Alexandrie

423 #0\$12001#\$aBordereau du prix des ouvrages, dépendans du service du Génie militaire, à exécuter dans la place d'Alexandrie

EX 5: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aOpere del conte Algarotti

327 ##\$a1. - 1778. - clv, 84 p. : antip. - Include: Il congresso di Citera , edizione accresciuta del Giudicio di amore sopra l'istesso congresso\$a2. - 1778. - [16], 310 p.\$a3. - 1779. - [6], 390 p.\$a4. - 1779. - [4], 439 p.\$a5. - 1779. - [10], 336 p.\$a6. - 1780. - [8], 292 p.\$a7. - 1781. - [8], 292 p.\$a8. - 1782. - [8], 271 p.\$a9. - 1783. - [6], 340 p.\$a10. - 1784. - [4], 427 p.

423 #0\$12001#\$aIl congresso di Citera\$eedizione accresciuta del Giudicio di amore sopra l'istesso congresso

This field is used to link to another work when the title is not mentioned on the title page.

424 IS UPDATED BY

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4 STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to another item that updates its content.

Notes on Field Contents

The relationship expressed by field 424 is typically that between an updating loose-leaf (monograph) and its updates, usually published as a continuing resource. However, the relationship can also express the link between two continuing resources. Field 424 expresses the link from the monograph or a continuing resource to the updating publication.

Related Fields

425 UPDATES

Field 425 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 424.

421 SUPPLEMENT

Field 421 is used to link the item being catalogued to another item that is its supplement.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

Record label, position 7 : m (monograph)

001 025986473

200 1#*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale*Texte* imprimé

210 ##*Paris**Editions techniques**d*1989-

215 ##*9* vol. (feuillets mobiles)*d*30 cm

300 ##*Mise à jour* permanente

424 #1\$100100102664X\$1011##\$0750-8468\$15300#*Codes et lois. Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application

Record label, position 7 : s (continuing resource)

001 00102664X

011 ##\$0750-8468

200 1#*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application*Texte* imprimé

210 ##\$*Paris**Editions techniques**d*196?-

215 ##*d*30 cm

425 #1\$1001025986473\$12001#*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale

Standard subfields technique

Record label, position 7 : m (monograph)

001 025986473

200 1#*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale**Texte imprimé**

210 ##*Paris**Editions techniques**d*1989-

215 ##*9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)**d*30 cm

300 ##*Mise à jour permanente*

424 #1\$000102664X*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale et textes
d'application*x*0750-8468

Record label, pos. 7 : s (serial)

001 00102664X

011 ##*0750-8468*

200 1#*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application**Texte
imprimé**

215 ##*d*30 cm

210 ##*Paris**Editions techniques**d*196?-

425 #1\$025986473*Codes et lois**Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale

The loose-leaf publication *Codes et lois. Traité*s de l'Europe occidentale is updated by
a continuing resource bearing a different title, which is described in a separate record.

425 UPDATES

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4 STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued and that is an update to another item that is updated by its content.

Notes on Field Contents

The relationship expressed by field 425 is typically that between an updating loose-leaf (monograph) and its updates, usually published as a continuing resource. However, the relationship can also express the link between two continuing resources. Field 425 expresses the link from the updating publication to the one being updated.

Related Fields

424 IS UPDATED BY

Field 424 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 425.

422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT

Field 422 is used to link the supplement being catalogued to the parent of that supplement.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

Record label, pos. 7 : s (continuing resource)

001 00102664X

011 ##\$a0750-8468

200 1#\$aCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application\$bTexte imprimé

210 ##\$aParis\$cEditions techniques\$d196?-

215 ##\$d30 cm

425 #1\$1001025986473\$12001#\$aCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale

Record label, pos. 7 : m (monograph)

001 025986473

200 1#\$aCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale\$bTexte imprimé

210 ##\$aParis\$cEditions techniques\$d1989-

215 ##\$a9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)\$d30 cm

300 ##\$aMise à jour permanente

424 #1\$100100102664X\$1011##\$a0750-8468\$15300#\$aCodes et lois. Traité de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application

Standard subfields technique

Record label, pos. 7 : s (continuing resource)

001 00102664X

011 ##\$a0750-8468

200 1#\$aCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application\$bTexte imprimé

210 ##\$aParis\$cEditions techniques\$d196?-

215 ##\$d30 cm

425 #1\$025986473\$tCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale

Record label, pos. 7 : m (monograph)

001 025986473

200 1#\$aCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale\$bTexte imprimé

210 ##\$aParis\$cEditions techniques\$d1989-

215 ##\$a9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)\$d30 cm

300 ##\$aMise à jour permanente

424 #1\$000102664X\$tCodes et lois\$iTraité de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application\$x0750-8468

The continuing resource *Codes et lois. Traité de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application* updates a loose-leaf publication (monograph) bearing a different title, which is described in a separate record.

430 CONTINUES

- 431 CONTINUES IN PART
- 432 SUPERSEDES
- 433 SUPERSEDES IN PART
- 434 ABSORBED
- 435 ABSORBED IN PART
- 437 SEPARATED FROM

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definitions

The above fields are used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the 'preceding' relationship. Where an agency uses the above fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields

Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.

448 CHANGED BACK TO

This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique:

200 1#\$aKesteven chronicle ...

205 ##\$aFosse Way ed.

430 #1\$12001#\$aLincolnshire chronicle\$1205##\$aNorth Kesteven ed.

Standard subfields technique
200 1#\$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##\$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1\$tLincolnshire chronicle\$eNorth Kesteven ed.

The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle*, *Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed:

Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique:
431 #1\$15301#\$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#\$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

Standard subfields technique
431 #1\$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#\$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3: Embedded fields technique:
200 1#\$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1\$15300#\$aPopular hi-fi

Standard subfields technique
200 1#\$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1\$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.

EX 4: Embedded fields technique:
530 1#\$aMotor transport\$b(London)
434 #1\$15300#\$aBus & coach

Standard subfields technique
530 1#\$aMotor transport\$b(London)
434 #1\$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.

EX 5: Embedded fields technique:
200 1#\$aJeugboekengids
437 #1\$12001#\$aBoekengids

Standard subfields technique
200 1#\$aJeugboekengids
437 #1\$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed:

Separated from: Boekengids

From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed:

Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids

EX 6: Embedded fields technique:

Record 1

001 981026020
011 ##\$a1330-2809
100 ##\$a19981026b18421853 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život\$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$d1842-1853\$eU Zagrebu\$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1\$1001920227116\$1011##\$a1330-2817\$15300#\$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1842
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1842

Record 2

001 920227116
011 ##\$a1330-2817
100 ##\$a19920227b19051955 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aHrvatsko kolo\$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik\$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)\$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1905-1955
430 #1\$1001981026020\$1011##\$a1330-2809\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1842
440 #1\$1001981023082\$1011##\$a0023-2920\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1963
530 0#\$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##\$aHrvat. Kolo

Record 3

001 981023082
011 ##\$a0023-2920
100 ##\$a19981023b19631971 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost\$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0\$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)\$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1963-1971
430 #1\$1001920227116\$1011##\$a1330-2817\$15300#\$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1\$1001920227072\$1011##\$a0354-057X\$15300#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1963
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1963

Record 4

001 920227072
011 ##\$a0354-057X
100 ##\$a19920227b19911994 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske\$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja\$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0\$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1991-1994
430 #1\$1001981023082\$1011##\$a0023-2920\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1963
440 #1\$1001920227091\$1011##\$a1331-0992\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1995

530 0#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##\$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique

Record 1

001 981026020
011 ##\$a1330-2809
100 ##\$a19981026b18421853 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život\$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$d1842-1853\$eU Zagrebu\$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1\$x1330-2817\$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1842
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1842

Record 2

001 920227116
011 ##\$a1330-2817
100 ##\$a19920227b19051955 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aHrvatsko kolo\$eknjževno-naučni zbornik\$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)\$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1905-1955
430 #1\$x1330-2809\$tKolo (1842)
440 #1\$x0023-2920\$tKolo (1963)
530 0#\$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##\$aHrvat. Kolo

Record 3

001 981023082
011 ##\$a0023-2920
100 ##\$a19981023b19631971 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost\$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0\$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)\$anovi tečaj,
god.6=126,br.7(1968)- god.9=129(1971)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1963-1971
430 #1\$x1330-2817\$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1\$x0354-057X\$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1963
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1963

Record 4

001 920227072

011 ##\$a0354-057X

100 ##\$a19920227b19911994 y0scry0191 ba

200 1#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske\$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja\$Igor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik

207 #0\$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)

210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1991-1994

430 #1\$x0023-2920\$tKolo (1963)

440 #1\$x1331-0992\$tKolo (1995)

530 0#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske

531 ##\$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4 - - LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

436 FORMED BY MERGER OF ..., ..., AND ...

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to two or more other continuing resources which precede it and which were merged to form it.

Occurrence

Optional. This field must be repeated. It is repeated for each of the previous continuing resources which merged.

Related Fields

434 ABSORBED

When two or more continuing resources are merged, but continue under the name of one of the original continuing resources, field 434 is used in the record of the continuing resource whose name did not change to link to the continuing resource which was merged and whose title no longer continues.

447 MERGED WITH ... AND... TO FORM ...

Field 447 is used in the record of one of the earlier continuing resources which is merged to link to the continuing resource(s) with which it is merged and the new title.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aArchivio e Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia
436 #1\$12001#\$aArchivio di Ottalmologia
436 #1\$12001#\$aRassegna italiana di Ottalmologia

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aArchivio e Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia
436 #1\$tArchivio di Ottalmologia
436 #1\$tRassegna italiana di Ottalmologia

Archivio di Ottalmologia and *Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia* merged to form *Archivio e Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia*.

440 CONTINUED BY

- 441 CONTINUED IN PART BY
- 442 SUPERSEDED BY
- 443 SUPERSEDED IN PART BY
- 444 ABSORBED BY
- 445 ABSORBED IN PART BY

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--
STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

Field Definitions

The above fields are used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the 'succeeding' relationship. Where an agency uses the above fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

- 43- Preceding Entry Fields

Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.

- 448 CHANGED BACK TO

This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

- EX 1 Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique

440 #1\$1011##\$a0034-1223\$15301#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique

440 #1\$x0034-1223\$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale

The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. 'La' is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field:

Continued by: *La recherche aérospatiale*

EX 2 Embedded fields technique
200 1#\$aNew transport technology
444 #1\$15300#\$aHoverfoil news

Standard subfields technique
200 1#\$aNew transport technology
444 #1\$tHoverfoil news

On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.

EX 3: A: Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##\$a1330-2809
100 ##\$a19981026b18421853 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život\$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$d1842-1853\$eU Zagrebu\$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1\$1001920227116\$1011##\$a1330-2817\$15300#\$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1842
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1842

Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##\$a1330-2817
100 ##\$a19920227b19051955 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aHrvatsko kolo\$eknjževno-naučni zbornik\$f <urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)\$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1905-1955
430 #1\$1001981026020\$1011##\$a1330-2809\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1842
440 #1\$1001981023082\$1011##\$a0023-2920\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1963
530 0#\$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##\$aHrvat. Kolo

Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##\$a0023-2920
100 ##\$a19981023b19631971 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost\$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0\$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)\$anovi tečaj,
god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1963-1971

430 #1\$1001920227116\$1011##\$a1330-2817\$15300#\$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1\$1001920227072\$1011##\$a0354-057X\$15300#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1963
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1963

Record 4

001 920227072
011 ##\$a0354-057X
100 ##\$a19920227b19911994 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske\$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja\$fIgor
Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0\$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1991-1994
430 #1\$1001981023082\$1011##\$a0023-2920\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1963
440 #1\$1001920227091\$1011##\$a1331-0992\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1995
530 0#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##\$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

EX 3: B: Standard subfields technique

Record 1

001 981026020
011 ##\$a1330-2809
100 ##\$a19981026b18421853 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život\$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$d1842-1853\$eU Zagrebu\$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj.
Gaja
440 #1\$x1330-2817\$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1842
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1842

Record 2

001 920227116
011 ##\$a1330-2817
100 ##\$a19920227b19051955 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aHrvatsko kolo\$eknjževno-naučni zbornik\$f <urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša
Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)\$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1905-1955
430 #1\$x1330-2809\$tKolo (1842)
440 #1\$x0023-2920\$tKolo (1963)
530 0#\$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##\$aHrvat. Kolo

Record 3

001 981023082

011 ##\$a0023-2920

100 ##\$a19981023b19631971 y0scry0191 ba

200 0#\$aKolo\$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost\$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>

207 #0\$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)\$anovi tečaj,
god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)

210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1963-1971

430 #1\$x1330-2817\$tHrvatsko kolo

440 #1\$x0354-057X\$tKolo Matice hrvatske

530 1#\$aKolo\$j1963

531 ##\$aKolo\$b1963

Record 4

001 920227072

011 ##\$a0354-057X

100 ##\$a19920227b19911994 y0scry0191 ba

200 1#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske\$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja\$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik

207 #0\$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)

210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1991-1994

430 #1\$x0023-2920\$tKolo (1963)

440 #1\$x1331-0992\$tKolo (1995)

530 0#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske

531 ##\$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

446 SPLIT INTO ..., ..., AND ...

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--
STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

Field Definition

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to two or more other continuing resources which continued it and which split from it.

Occurrence

Optional. This field must be repeated for each of the new continuing resources.

Related Fields

434 ABSORBED

When a continuing resource splits into two or more continuing resources, but the title of the original is kept by one of the later continuing resources, field 434 is used in the record of the continuing resource whose title did not change in order to link to the continuing resource which was merged and whose title no longer continues.

Examples

EX 1 Embedded fields technique

530 1#\$aGazette – East Central State of Nigeria
446 #1\$15301#\$aOfficial gazette – Anambra State of Nigeria
446 #1\$15301#\$aOfficial gazette – Imo State of Nigeria

Standard subfields technique

530 1#\$aGazette – East Central State of Nigeria
446 #1\$tOfficial gazette – Anambra State of Nigeria
446 #1\$tOfficial gazette – Imo State of Nigeria

In the record for the Gazette – East Central State of Nigeria, a note on the following lines may occur:

Split into: Official gazette – Anambra State of Nigeria and Official gazette – Imo State of Nigeria

447 MERGED WITH ... AND ... TO FORM ...

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

Field Definition

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to other continuing resources with which it merged and to an item which was the product of the merger.

Occurrence

Optional. This field must be repeated. The final occurrence of the field relates to the product of the merger; all other occurrences relate to items with which the item being catalogued is merged.

Related Fields

434 ABSORBED

When the continuing resource being catalogued is merged with one or more others to form a new continuing resource which bears the same title as the continuing resource being catalogued, the record of the item being catalogued will contain a 434 field referring to each of the titles which is absorbed and field 447 will not be used.

444 ABSORBED BY

When the continuing resource being catalogued is merged with one or more others to form a new continuing resource which bears the same title as one of the other continuing resources, the record of the item being catalogued will contain a 444 field referring to the title which continues, and field 447 will not be used.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

```
530 1#$aPulpit preaching
447 #1$15301#$aPulpit digest
447 #1$15301#$aNew pulpit digest$1011##$a0145-7969
```

Standard subfields technique

```
530 1#$aPulpit preaching
447 #1$tPulpit digest
447 #1$tNew pulpit digest$x0145-7969
```

A continuing resource *Pulpit preaching* merged with *Pulpit digest* to form *New pulpit digest*. The records have been linked using the key title.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

500 11\$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.\$iGeology and geography series.

447 #1\$150011\$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.\$iMetallurgy.

447 #1\$150011\$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.\$iMining series.

447 #1\$150011\$aCommunist Chinese scientific abstracts.

Standard subfields technique

500 11\$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.\$iGeology and geography series.

447 #1\$tAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Metallurgy.

447 #1\$tAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Mining series.

447 #1\$tCommunist Chinese scientific abstracts.

The continuing resource *Abstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Geology and geography series* merged with *Abstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Metallurgy and Abstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Mining series* to form *Communist Chinese scientific abstracts*. The records have been linked using the uniform titles.

448 CHANGED BACK TO

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

Field Definition

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. This occurs when a continuing resource changes its name and then reverts back to its earlier name. This field occurs in the record of the intervening title.

Notes on Field Contents

When a title reverts back to an earlier title, the practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 430 CONTINUES (EX 6) and 440 CONTINUED BY (EX 3).

Related Fields

430 CONTINUES

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title.

440 CONTINUED BY

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aJack and Jill with Harold Hare
448 #1\$12001#\$aJack and Jill

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aJack and Jill with Harold Hare
448 #1\$tJack and Jill

Jack and Jill changed its name to *Jack and Jill with Harold Hare*, before reverting to its earlier title *Jack and Jill*. This field occur in the record of *Jack and Jill with Harold Hare*.

EX 2: Record 1 (Embedded fields technique)

001 981026020
011 ##\$a1330-2809
100 ##\$a19981026b18421853 y0scry0191 ba
200 0#\$aKolo\$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život\$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0\$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$d1842-1853\$eU Zagrebu\$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja

440 #1\$1001920227116\$1011##\$a1330-2817\$15300#\$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1842
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1842

Record 2

001 920227116
011 ##\$a1330-2817
100 ##\$a19920227b19051955 y0scry0191 ba
200 1#\$aHrvatsko kolo\$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik\$f <urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0\$aKnj. 1(1905)-knj.26(1946)\$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1905-1955
430 #1\$1001981026020\$1011##\$a1330-2809\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1842
440 #1\$1001981023082\$1011##\$a0023-2920\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1963
530 0#\$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##\$aHrvat. Kolo

Record 3

001 981023082
011 ##\$a0023-2920
100 ##\$a19981023b19631971 y0scry0191 ba
200 #1\$aKolo\$časopis za kulturu i umjetnost\$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0\$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)\$anovi tečaj,
god.6=126,br.7(1968)- god.9=129(1971)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1963-1971
430 #1\$1001920227116\$1011##\$a1330-2817\$15300#\$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1\$1001920227072\$1011##\$a0354-057X\$15300#\$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#\$aKolo\$j1963
531 ##\$aKolo\$b1963

Record 4

001 920227072
011 ##\$a0354-057X
100 ##\$a19920227b19911994 y0scry0191 ba
200 #1\$aKolo Matice hrvatske\$časopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja\$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0\$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##\$aZagreb\$cMatica hrvatska\$d1991-1994
430 #1\$1001981023082\$1011##\$a0023-2920\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1963
440 #1\$1001920227091\$1011##\$a1331-0992\$15300#\$aKolo\$j1995
530 #1\$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##\$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

451 OTHER EDITION IN THE SAME MEDIUM

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to another edition, state or version of that item that is in the same medium, such as another printed edition produced in a different language, or to link a print to another impression derived from the same plate.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may be used to link to other editions of continuing resources (EX 1) or monographs (EX 2).

Related Fields

452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM

Field 452 also expresses links to other editions or versions of the item being catalogued; however, these other editions are in a different medium. For example the item being catalogued is a printed book and the other edition is in microform.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aCamera

451 #0\$1011##\$a0373-9740\$15301#\$aCamera\$b(Édition française)

451 #0\$1011##\$a0366-7073\$15301#\$aCamera\$b(English edition)

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aCamera

451 #0\$x0373-9740\$tCamera (Édition française)

451 #0\$x0366-7073\$tCamera (English edition)

A continuing resource *Camera* is published in three language editions. In the record of the German edition, a link is made to the English and French editions by means of repeated 451 fields which include the ISSN and key title of each.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aPrefaces to the experience of literature...

305 ##\$aOriginally published: New York : Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1979

451 #0\$1001BLN6956090\$12001#\$aPrefaces to the experience of literature\$1210##\$aNew York\$scHarcourt Brace Jovanovich\$d1979

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aPrefaces to the experience of literature...

305 ##\$aOriginally published: New York : Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1979

451 #0\$0BLN6956090\$tPrefaces to the experience of literature\$cNew York\$nHarcourt
Brace Jovanovich \$d1979

The agency preparing the record makes links to the records of earlier editions of items if they already exists on the database, although it also enters bibliographic history notes in the record. Thus there is no need to generate a note from the 451 field. BLN6956090 is the record identifier of the earlier edition.

EX 3: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D. MDCX\$fJoannes Maius delineavit
A.D. 1599

210 ##\$a[S.l.]\$c[s.n.]\$d1610

300 ##\$aRist. Dell'ed.: Roma : Lorenzo della Vaccharia, 1600

311 ##\$a2.statò con le modifiche alle chiese di S.Pietro e S. Sebastiano

451 #0\$1700#1\$aMaggi\$bGiovanni\$f 1566-1618\$12001#\$aDescriptio Vrbis Romae
novissima A.D. MDCX\$1210##\$a[Roma]\$d1600

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D. MDCX\$fJoannes Maius delineavit
A.D. 1599

210 ##\$a[S.l.]\$c[s.n.]\$d1610

300 ##\$aRist. Dell'ed.: Roma : Lorenzo della Vaccharia, 1600

311 ##\$a2.statò con le modifiche alle chiese di S.Pietro e S. Sebastiano

451 #0\$aMaggi, Giovanni, 1566-1618\$tDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D.
MDCX\$c[Roma]\$d1600

This example illustrates the use of 451 to link two different impressions of prints made from the same plate. The record describes a print published in 1610 linked to a record describing a print made in 1600. The 311 note explains the relationship.

452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to another edition or version of that item in a different medium, such as an edition of a printed book in microform.

Related Fields

451 OTHER EDITION IN THE SAME MEDIUM

Field 451 also expresses links to other editions or versions of the item being catalogued; however, these other editions are in the same medium as the catalogued item.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

500 11\$aSIGCAPH newsletter
452 #0\$150011\$aSIGCAPH newsletter\$bBraille text

Standard subfields technique

500 11\$aSIGCAPH newsletter
452 #0\$tSIGCAPH newsletter (Braille text)

A continuing resource issued in both print and Braille editions, both of which have been catalogued in a separate record.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

500 11\$aWater pollution research journal of Canada
452 #0\$150011\$aWater pollution research journal of Canada\$n(Microfiche ed.)
452 #0\$150011\$aWater pollution research journal of Canada\$n(Microfilm ed.)

Standard subfields technique

500 11\$aWater pollution research journal of Canada
452 #0\$tWater pollution research journal of Canada (Microfiche ed.)
452 #0\$tWater pollution research journal of Canada (Microfilm ed.)

A continuing resource issued in print, microfiche, and microfilm editions, each of which has been catalogued in a separate record. The records have been linked using the uniform title.

EX 3: Embedded subfields technique

200 11\$aInterface
452 #0\$150011\$aInterface\$n(Electronic edition)\$18564#

\$uhttp://www.bl.uk/services/bsds/nbs/interface/wface01.html

Standard subfields technique

200 11\$aInterface

452 #0\$tInterface (Electronic edition)\$uhttp://www.bl.uk/services/bsds/nbs/
interface/wface01.html

A continuing resource for which on-line and print versions exist.

453 TRANSLATED AS

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to a translation of the item.

Related Fields

454 TRANSLATION OF

Field 454 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 453. It would be used in the record for the translation to link to the original.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aPodniataia tselina ...

453 #1\$1001B78-17841\$12001#\$aHarvest on the Don\$1700#1\$aSholokov\$bMikhail

700 #1\$aSholokov\$bMikhail

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aPodniataia tselina ...

453 #1\$0B78-17841\$tHarvest on the Don\$aSholokov, Mikhail

700 #1\$aSholokov\$bMikhail

In the record of the item in Russian, a 453 field is present from which can be generated a 'translated as' note.

454 TRANSLATION OF

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--
STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued, which is a translation, to its original.

Related Fields

453 TRANSLATED AS

Field 453 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 454. It would be used in the record for the original to link to the translation.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aAutomatic inspection systems for industry ...

454 #1\$12001#\$aIntelligente Messsysteme zur Automatisierung technischer
Prozesse\$1210##\$aDortmund\$cDOK\$d1981\$1700#1\$ aBretschi\$bJurgen

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aAutomatic inspection systems for industry ...

454 #1\$tIntelligente Messsysteme zur Automatisierung technischer Prozesse
\$cDortmund\$nDOK\$d1981\$aBretschi, Jurgen

Automatic inspection systems for industry is a translation of *Intelligente Messsysteme zur Automatisierung technischer Prozesse*. The original is not in the database and field 454 therefore contains sufficient data to create a full citation.

455 REPRODUCTION OF

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--
STRUCTURE OF LINKING FIELDS

Field Definition

This field contains a description of an original or a link to a record describing an original.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE

Note giving details of the original when the item is catalogued as a reproduction.

452 EDITION IN A DIFFERENT MEDIUM

Field 452 is generally used for multiple simultaneous editions.

456 REPRODUCED AS

Field 456 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 455.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique
455 #1\$100183-010711

Standard subfields technique
455 #1\$083-010711

The original was catalogued in a record with Record Identifier 83-010711. The database can access all other fields of this record so no further details need be given. This is, however, not sufficient for exchange purposes.

456 REPRODUCED AS

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--
STRUCTURE OF LINKING FIELDS

Field definition

This field contains a description of a reproduction or a link to a record describing a reproduction.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for each form of reproduction.

Related Fields

325 REPRODUCTION NOTE

Note giving details of the reproduction. May be used instead of 456 when 4-- fields are not applied.

452 EDITION IN A DIFFERENT MEDIUM

Field 452 is generally used for multiple simultaneous editions.

455 REPRODUCTION OF

Field 455 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 456.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

456 #1\$10011033666\$1130##\$adafa###aaca\$12001#\$aThéorie des peines et des récompenses\$bMicroform\$e1811\$1210##\$aCambridge\$cChadwyck-Healey Ltd \$d1988\$1215##\$a1 reel\$d35 mm\$12252#\$aThe Nineteenth Century\$iGeneral Collection\$vN.1.1.18\$1700#1\$aBentham\$bJeremy\$f1748-1832

Standard subfields technique

456 #1\$01033666\$tThéorie des peines et des récompenses\$bMicroform\$o1811 \$cCambridge\$nChadwyck-Healey Ltd\$d1988\$sThe Nineteenth Century. General Collection\$vN.1.1.18\$aBentham, Jeremy, 1748-1832

The information in the linking field gives data peculiar to the reproduction and the 4-- field mandatory data (500 and 700). A note will be automatically generated.

461 SET

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to identify hierarchically linked items at the set level. The item to which the link is made is at the set level, and the record containing this field is at the subset, piece or piece-analytic level.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes linking separate records for the data from various levels and a link is made to a unit at the set level.

A set is a group of physically separate items identified by a common title; it includes series, continuing resources, made-up collections and multi-volume monographs.

A link from a piece or subset to a set is always an upward link.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aBuses in the East Midlands...

461 #1\$12001#\$aFleetbooks\$vno.7

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aBuses in the East Midlands...

461 #1\$tFleetbooks\$vno.7

A monograph *Buses of the East Midlands* is part of a monograph series. Within the record of the monograph there is a field linking to the series entitled *Fleetbooks* which is represented by its title. This item is number 7 in the series. Note the use of subfield \$v in the embedded 200 field: although it is embedded in a reference to the monographic series, it is specific to the monograph.

A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 1 of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

462 SUBSET

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to identify hierarchical links to items at the subset level. The record to which the link is made is at the subset level, and the record containing this field is at the piece, subset, or set level.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes linking separate records for the data from various levels and a link is made to a unit at the subset level.

A subset is a group of physically separate items identified by a common title, representing a section of a larger set.

Field 462 should generally be used in a record for a piece or a subset to link upward to a higher level subset. The only downward 462 link that should be used is one from a set to a subset. The set will be the highest level in the hierarchy, so the link can be downward.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

462 #1\$100101431811\$1011##\$a0143-1811\$11010#\$aeng\$1102##\$aGB\$12001#
\$aGuide to wordprocessing systems\$1210##\$aLondon\$cComputer Guides\$d1979-

Standard subfields technique

462 #1\$001431811\$x0143-1811\$tGuide to wordprocessing systems\$cLondon
\$nComputer Guides\$d1979-

A downwards link is made from a continuing resource to one of its subcontinuing resources. As the record exists and is linked both on the source database and in the exchange tape, the control number (01431811) and optional details are given.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

462 #1\$1011##\$a0267-6079\$15301#\$aIrish literary studies
530 1#\$aIAS AIL-Japan series

Standard subfields technique

462 #1\$x0267-6079\$tIrish literary studies
530 1#\$aIAS AIL-Japan series

An upwards link is made from a subseries dealing with Anglo-Irish literature in Japan to a series on Anglo-Irish literature.

463 PIECE

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to identify hierarchical links to items at the piece level. The record to which the link is made is at the piece level, and the record containing this field is at the piece-analytic, subset, or set level.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes linking separate records for the data from various levels and a link is made to a unit at the piece level.

A piece is a single physically separate bibliographic item.

Field 463 should generally be used in a record for a piece-analytic to link upward to the piece that contains the piece-analytic. A set (at the highest hierarchical level) may contain a downward link to a piece using a 463 field.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

463 #1\$12001#\$aNature\$vvol. 60, no. 28

Standard subfields technique

463 #1\$tNature\$vvol. 60, no. 28

An upward link is made from the record of a contribution to the issue of the continuing resource in which it is published. The issue is at the piece level.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

463 #1\$aNSBL'NSEhistoire des légumes\$bTexte imprimé\$fMichel Chauvet\$gavec la collab. de Albert Bry, Pierre Moncourtois et Georges Trébuchet

463 #1\$12001#\$vP.9-15\$aNSBLa NSEdiversité des plantes légumières\$eactes du symposium organisé à Angers du 17 au 19 octobre 1985\$fpar l'Association pour l'inventaire et la conservation des plantes cultivées dans les pays de la Loire\$gl'Association des conservatoires français d'espèces végétales\$gle Bureau des ressources génétiques\$1210##\$aParis\$cJATBA, Journal d'agriculture traditionnelle de botanique appliquée\$d1986\$1215##\$a230 p.

Standard subfields technique

463 #1\$aNSBL'NSEhistoire des légumes\$bTexte imprimé\$fMichel Chauvet\$gavec la collab. de Albert Bry, Pierre Moncourtois et Georges Trébuchet

463 #1\$tNSBLa NSEdiversité des plantes légumières\$eactes du symposium organisé à Angers du 17 au 19 octobre 1985\$fpar l'Association des conservatoires français d'espèces végétales\$gle Bureau des ressources génétiques\$cParis\$nJATBA, Journal d'agriculture traditionnelle de botanique appliqué\$d1986\$p320 p.\$vP.9-15

An upward link is made from the record of a contribution to the monographic item in which it is published. The monographic item is at the piece level.

464 PIECE-ANALYTIC

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4 STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to identify hierarchical links to items at the piece-analytic level. The record to which the link is made is at the piece-analytic level, and the record containing this field is at the piece level

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes linking separate records for the data from various levels and a link is made to a unit at the piece-analytic level.

A piece-analytic is a bibliographic item that is part of and not physically separate from its host item.

Since a link to a piece-analytic is inherently a downward link, it should not be used unless the piece is at the highest level. Instead upward links to the piece should be made (using field 463) in the record for the piece-analytic.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

464 1\$1001B781001\$12001#\$aPeople serving people\$fby Judy A. Poseley
1700#1\$aPoseley\$bJudy A
464 #1\$1001B781002\$12001#\$aVoices of Minnesota politicians

Standard subfields technique

464 #1\$0B781001\$tPeople serving people\$fby Judy A. Poseley\$aPoseley, Judy A.
464 #1\$0B781002\$tVoices of Minnesota politicians

A link is made from a multi-media item entitled *Minnesota politics and government* to two of the contributions. These are held on the same exchange tape and so the record control numbers are given.

470 ITEM REVIEWED

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued (a review) to the record for the item reviewed.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used in piece-analytic records to link to an item being reviewed.

Examples

EX 1 Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aISBD(PM)\$ethe pros and cons of the new edition\$fby Tony Reed
470 ##\$10013598109857\$12001#\$aISBD(PM)\$1205##\$a2nd rev. ed.

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aISBD(PM)\$ethe pros and cons of the new edition\$fby Tony Reed
470 ##\$03598109857\$tISBD(PM)\$e2nd rev. ed.

A link from a review of the ISBD for printed music to the entry for the item itself.

481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field contains description of other items bound in an 'artificial' collection, e.g. not found with the first item as issued. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a link from the first item in an 'artificial' collection to each item after the first in that collection.

The field can contain Record Identifier of the record containing full description of the other item bound in the 'artificial' collection, and/or data of that item.

Related Fields

316 NOTE RELATING TO THE COPY IN HAND

This field contains a note relating to the copy in hand for older monographic publications, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition, manuscript notes on title page or margins, bound leaves, items, etc.

482 BOUND WITH

This field contains a description of the item that is bound first in an 'artificial' collection. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

481 #1\$100129121993001\$12001# \$aTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formalis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta \$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics \$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° – 1133 privez1\$1210## \$aBudae \$d1780

Standard subfields technique

481 #1\$029121993001\$tTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formalis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta \$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics \$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° 1133 privez1 \$cBudae \$d1780

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

481 #1\$100127121993002\$12001#\$aCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1597 privez1\$1210##\$aPestini\$d1810
481 #1\$100127121993003\$12001#\$aQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1597 privez2\$1210##\$a[S.1.]\$d1805
481 #1\$100127121993004\$12001#\$aInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti regni Hungariae...\$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1597 privez 3\$1210##\$aPestini\$cTypis M. Trattner\$d[s.a.]

Standard subfields technique

481 #1\$027121993002\$tCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1597 privez1\$cPestini\$d1810
481 #1\$027121993003\$tQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1597 privez2\$c[S.1.]\$d1805
481 #1\$027121993004\$tInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti regni Hungariae...\$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1597 privez 3\$cPestini\$nTypis M. Trattner\$d[s.a.]

Three items bound to Marcellus Daniel's *Assertiones ex universa theologia* in the 'artificial' collection. The indicator value '1' in the 481 fields indicates that notes should be generated from these fields. See also examples 1 to 3 of the 482 field.

482 BOUND WITH

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of the block under 4--STRUCTURE OF LINKING FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field contains a description of the item that is bound first in an 'artificial' collection, i.e. not found with the other items as issued. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if the copies of the item described in the record are bound in more than one artificial collection.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a link from each item after the first in an 'artificial' collection to the first item in that collection.

The field can contain Record Identifier of the record containing full description of the first item bound in the 'artificial' collection, and/or data of that item.

Related Fields

316 NOTE RELATING TO THE COPY IN HAND

This field contains a note relating to the copy in hand for older monographic publications, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition, manuscript notes on title page or margins, bound leaves, items, etc.

481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME

This field contains description of other items bound in an 'artificial' collection. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro
210 ##\$aPestini\$c[s.n.]\$d1810
482 #1\$100127121993001\$12001#\$aAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas...\$fmense
Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° -
1597\$1210##\$a[S.1.\$cs.n.\$ds.a.]

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro
210 ##\$aPestini\$c[S.1.\$ns.n.\$d1810]
482 #1\$027121993001\$tAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas... / mense Junio
publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° -1597
\$c[S.1.\$ns.n.\$ds.a.]

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?

210 ##\$a[S.1.]\$c[s.n.]\$d1805

482 #1\$00127121993001\$12001#\$aAssertionones ex universa theologia, quas...\$fmense
Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° -
1597\$1210##\$a[S.1.\$cs.n.\$ds.a.]

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?

210 ##\$a[S.1.]\$c[s.n.]\$d1805

482 #1\$00127121993001\$tAssertionones ex universa theologia, quas... / mense Junio
publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° -
1597\$c[S.1.\$ds.a.]

EX 3: Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti
regni Hungariae...\$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis

210 ##\$aPestini\$cTypis M. Trattner\$d[s.a.]

482 #1\$100127121993001\$12001#\$aAssertionones ex universa theologia, quas...\$fmense
Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° -
1597\$1210##\$a[S.1.\$cs.n.\$ds.a.]

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti
regni Hungariae...\$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis

210 ##\$aPestini\$cTypis M. Trattner\$d[s.a.]

482 #1\$027121993001\$tAssertionones ex universa theologia, quas...\$fmense Junio
publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...\$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8° -
1597\$c[S.1.\$ns.n.\$ds.a.]

488 OTHER RELATED WORK

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the beginning of this block under 4-- STRUCTURE OF LINKING ENTRY FIELDS.

Field Definition

This field is used to link the item being catalogued to another item when the specific relationship is not provided for in the other 4-- fields or cannot be determined from the source format.

Notes on Field Contents

It is unlikely that field 488 would be used to generate a note since the nature of the relationship is unspecified.

Related Fields

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS

Since field 488 is unlikely to be used to generate a note, any note on the relationship of the item being catalogued to that referred to in field 488 is entered in field 311.

Examples

EX 1: Embedded fields technique

311 ##\$aFacsimile reprint of: 1st ed. Garden City, N.Y. : Doubleday, Doran, 1933
488 #0\$12001#\$aFast one\$1700#1\$aCain\$bPaul

Standard subfields technique

311 ##\$aFacsimile reprint of: 1st ed. Garden City, N.Y. : Doubleday, Doran, 1933
488 #0\$tFast one\$aCain, Paul

A facsimile reprint entitled *Fast one: a novel* has a note. Additionally, a link is made in the record of the reprint to the earlier work to create an author/title added entry for the original title *Fast one*. The earlier record is not in the database and the title and author are themselves entered in the field.

EX 2: Embedded fields technique

488 #0\$150010\$aBible\$iO.T\$iPsalms

Standard subfields technique

488 #0\$tBible\$iO.T\$iPsalms

A uniform title access point from a source format which does not specify relationships to the same extent as UNIMARC.

EX 3: Embedded fields technique

311 ##\$aDrawings executed between 1816 and 1825 are compared with the work of J.M.W. Turner in: George Filbert, his early work / Thomas Johnson. New York: Dow, 1965

488 #0\$12001#\$aGeorge Filbert, his early work\$1210##\$aNew York\$cDow\$d1965
\$1700#1\$aJohnson\$bThomas

Standard subfields technique

311 ##\$aDrawings executed between 1816 and 1825 are compared with the work of
J.M.W. Turner in: George Filbert, his early work / Thomas Johnson. New York: Dow,
1965

488 #0\$tGeorge Filbert, his early work\$cNew York\$nDow\$d1965\$aJohnson, Thomas

A reference to published research based on drawings described in the catalogue record
and held by the institution.

EX 4 Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$aUNIMARC manual bibliographic format

311 ##\$aConcise version: UNIMARC concise bibliographic format. URLs:

<http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm> and <http://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm>

488 #0\$12001#\$aUNIMARC concise bibliographic format\$18564#

\$u<http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm>\$18564

#\$u<http://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm>

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$aUNIMARC manual bibliographic format

311 ##\$aConcise version: UNIMARC concise bibliographic format. URLs:

<http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm> and <http://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm>

488 #0\$tUNIMARC concise bibliographic format\$u<http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm>

\$u<http://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm>

EX 5 Embedded fields technique

200 1#\$a[Martyrium S. Christinae\$fin Ecclesia Monialium ejusdem Sanctae
\$eDomenico M. a Canuti Inu et Pin.\$gDomenico Bonauera Scul.

210 ##\$aBologna\$c[s.n.]\$d[dopo il 1674]

215 ##\$a1 stampa\$cacqf.\$d481 x 342 mm

311 ##\$aAnother treatment of the subject

488 #0\$12001#\$a[Martyrium S. Christinae]

Standard subfields technique

200 1#\$a[Martyrium S. Christinae\$fin Ecclesia Monialium ejusdem Sanctae
\$eDomenico M. a Canuti Inu et Pin.\$gDomenico Bonauera Scul.

210 ##\$aBologna\$c[s.n.]\$d[dopo il 1674]

215 ##\$a1 stampa\$cacqf.\$d481 x 342 mm

311 ##\$aAnother treatment of the subject

488 #0\$t[Martyrium S. Christinae]

An example of 488 used to link the print being catalogued to another print produced by
the same artist, with the same subject, but at a different date in his career.

5-- RELATED TITLE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains titles other than the title proper related to the item being catalogued and generally appearing on the item. At present the following fields are defined:

Uniform Titles

- 500 Uniform Title
- 501 Collective Uniform Title
- 503 Uniform Conventional Heading

Variant titles

- 510 Parallel Title Proper
- 511 Half title
- 512 Cover Title
- 513 Added Title-page Title
- 514 Caption Title
- 515 Running Title
- 516 Spine Title
- 517 Other Variant Titles
- 518 Title in Standard Modern Spelling

Other related titles

- 520 Former Title (Continuing Resources)
- 530 Key-Title
- 531 Abbreviated Title (Continuing Resources)
- 532 Expanded Title
- 540 Additional Title Supplied by Cataloguer
- 541 Translated Title Supplied by Cataloguer
- 545 Section Title
- 560 Artificial Title

Indicators

Many of the related title fields have a first indicator that distinguishes significant titles. This indicator specifies whether the cataloguing agency has determined that the title should be used to create an independent title access point (or added entry). If an independent title access point should be generated from a field in the 5-- block, indicator position 1 takes the value 1. If an access point is not desirable, the value of indicator position 1 is 0. This indicator does not refer to the desirability of creating author/title access points or notes from the data in the field. Either of these two uses of the data is an option of the agency receiving the record whether the first indicator value is 0 or 1.

Subfields

For the use of subfields refer to each individual field. Note that fields 510 to 545 may use any of the subfields given at field 510.

Notes on Field Contents**Access points and notes:**

The titles in the 5-- block are used to generate title and author/title access points in addition to the title in field 200 \$a. Note that the title in the first occurrence of 200 \$a can be coded as an access point through the indicator position 1 of field 200 and this form of title is thus not repeated in the 5 - - block.

The contents of a related title field may be used for access points and to generate notes. For the latter use, a print constant may be generated based on the field tag.

Linking entries:

Titles in the 5-- block are not links to other records but are alternative titles associated with the item being catalogued. However, a 5-- field may be embedded in a 4-- field in addition to or instead of the title proper (200) of the bibliographic entity to which a link is being made. See EX 3 in the introduction to 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK for an embedded key title.

Punctuation:

Punctuation is entered in the fields in the 5-- block according to the practice of the cataloguing agency.

Non-sorting characters:

Any non-sorting characters at the beginning of the title may be dropped as part of the creation of the exchange tape. Alternatively the Bibliographic Control Set (ISO 6630) characters 08/08 and 08/09 may be used. As pointed out in paragraph 4.6 of the preparatory material, ≠NSB≠ and ≠NSE≠ indicate the use of these characters in the examples.

Parallel variant title:

Parallel variant titles are recorded by repeating the appropriate variant title field. Subfield \$z may be used in any field 510-541 to indicate the language of the title in that field.

Other variant titles:

Field 517 may be used for titles which should be entered in fields 510-516 but which because of the lack of specificity in the source format cannot be allocated to the correct field.

Items where there is more than one title proper:

Where there is more than one title proper, i.e. the document consists of several works and has no common title, subsequent dependent titles (e.g. parallel titles proper) should be entered in the 423 fields holding the 200\$a to which they relate. For an example see 423 ISSUED WITH (EX 2).

Related Fields**312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)**

A note concerning to a variant title may also appear directly in a note in the 312 (or 300) field.

423 ISSUED WITH

Used for titles contained in additional 200\$a subfields, in 200\$c subfields and for titles associated with these.

500 UNIFORM TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the particular title selected by the bibliographic agency by which a work that has appeared under varying titles is to be identified for cataloguing purposes. The title may have added to it elements to make it unique. The uniform title may be the primary (main) entry or there may be a personal or corporate name primary entry.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the uniform title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made from this title or not.

0 Uniform title is not significant

It is not intended that an independent title access point be made under this uniform title (EX 1).

1 Uniform title is significant

An added access point should be made under this title (EX 2), or this title is the primary (main) entry (EX 3).

An agency may determine that a uniform title is significant for the purpose of creating an independent title access point and this will be reflected in the first indicator; however, in all cases in which the uniform title is the primary (main) entry (Indicator 2 = 1) the uniform title must be considered significant for independent title access.

The first indicator does not refer to the desirability of creating author/uniform title access points using the data in this field. Such access is determined according to the conventions of the record user.

Indicator 2: Primary Entry Indicator

Specifies whether the uniform title is primary (main) entry, i.e. there is no author (7--) primary entry and the cataloguing agency has entered the record under a uniform title. Use value 0 for cataloguing codes which do not recognise the concept of primary entry.

0 Title is not used as a heading

The uniform title is not the primary entry, though an added access point may be made for it as specified in Indicator 1 (EX 1, 2).

1 Title is primary entry

The primary entry for the item is the uniform title (EX 3).

Subfields

- \$a** Uniform Title
The title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 500 is used. Not repeatable.
- \$b** General Material Designation
Text of general material designation. Repeatable.
- \$h** Number of Section or Part
The number of a part when the item to which the uniform title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the uniform title (EX 2). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 18).
- \$i** Name of Section or Part
The name of a part when the item to which the uniform title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the uniform title (EX 3,4,15,16). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 3, 19).
- \$j** Form Subdivision
The description of this subfield can be found above the description of \$x.
- \$k** Date of Publication
The date of publication of the item when it is added to the uniform title (EX 3). Not repeatable. The date of publication should still be entered in field 210.
- \$l** Form Subheading
Standard phrase added to a heading to further specify the uniform title (EX 7, 9). Repeatable (EX 11).
- \$m** Language (when part of a heading)
The language of the item, when required as part of the uniform title (EX 2, 3, 5, 7, 24). Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m (EX 5).
- \$n** Miscellaneous Information
Any information not provided for in any other subfield (EX 8). Repeatable (EX 6, 9).
- \$q** Version (or Date of Version)
An identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version (EX 3). Not repeatable.
- \$r** Medium of Performance (for Music)
The instrumentation, etc., of the item (EX 13, 14, 17). Repeatable.

- \$s** Numeric Designation (for Music)
- A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number (EX 13 – 15). Repeatable.
- \$u** Key (for Music)
- The musical key used as part of the uniform title (EX 13). Not repeatable.
- \$v** Volume Designation
- Used to indicate a particular part of an item that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when the field is embedded in a 4-- linking field (EX 10). It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. Not repeatable.
- \$w** Additional Elements (for Music)
- Additional elements can be arrangement statements (EX 17), language (EX 25) highlights (excerpts) statements. They are related to the edition in hand and not to the work and are to be distinguished from the qualifications. They do not belong to the heading. In this case the language is entered in \$w and not \$m. Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form Subdivision
- A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Authorities format*. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical Subdivision
- A term added to a title when used as a subject heading to specify further the topic that the subject heading represents. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical Subdivision
- A term added to the title when used as a subject heading to specify a place in relation to it that the subject heading represents. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological Subdivision
- A term added to the title when used as a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject heading represents. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
- An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Authorities format*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The uniform title should be entered according to the rules of the inputting agency. The use made of uniform titles varies considerably between one agency and the next even when the same cataloguing rules are used. Those uniform titles which are main entry headings, i.e. those used primarily for anonymous classics, are an essential part of the record and must be exchanged, since they may be the only access point. Other uniform titles which never appear as a main entry heading are less significant, but it is recommended nonetheless that they be included in the exchange record.

Each cataloguing code has its own preferences for the form of headings, depending usually on tradition and language of cataloguing. Although no international standards exist, the following document published by the IFLA International Office for UBC is a step in that direction.

Anonymous classics : a list of uniform headings for European literatures. London : IFLA/UBC, 1978. ISBN: 0-903043-15-7.

Updated at: <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/pubs/AnonymousClassics2004.pdf>

Some cataloguing codes prescribe uniform headings for treaties, laws, protocols, etc. These should also be placed in UNIMARC in field 500, and be regarded as uniform titles. Any places or dates of treaties should be entered in \$n Miscellaneous Information (EX 6, 9).

Related Fields**501 COLLECTIVE UNIFORM TITLE**

The collective uniform title is used solely to group together works by a prolific author, such as collected works.

503 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADINGS

Uniform conventional headings always occur as primary entries for works without authors with primary responsibility under cataloguing rules which specify forms of headings for conferences, exhibitions, festschriften, etc., when these are not regarded as corporate authors.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Grimani breviary
500 00\$aBreviarium
710 02\$aCatholic Church

Certain kinds of uniform title serve only to order entries within one heading. An added entry is not made for these uniform titles. For example some codes require that all Breviaries are ordered within the heading for the church under a uniform title, such as Breviarium. In the 200 field, 'The' is marked as non-filing.

EX 2: 200 1#\$aIliad, Book XXIV\$fHomer\$gedited by C.W. Macleod
500 10\$aIliad.\$hBook 24.\$mEnglish
700 #0\$aHomer

The title of the item is Book XXIV of Homer's Iliad. The work is entered under Homer according to the cataloguing rules used. A uniform title is created to ensure that all copies of Book 24 are located together in the catalogue, both under the heading for Homer and under the added entries for title.

EX 3: 500 11\$aBible.\$iNew Testament.\$iLuke.\$mEnglish.\$qRevised Standard Version.\$k1972

The item is one book of the Bible, Luke, in the Revised Standard Version. The Bible is a main entry heading. Because there are so many different editions and imprints of the Bible, it is usual to add the date of publication to the uniform title for each in order to help order the items in a meaningful way.

EX 4: 500 10\$aCanterbury tales.\$iKnight's tale
700 #1\$aChaucer,\$bGeoffrey,\$fd.1400

A translation into modern English of Chaucer's *Knight's tale* entered under the uniform title Canterbury tales. Knight's tale.

EX 5: 500 10\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠malade imaginaire.\$mEnglish & French
700 #0\$aMolière,\$fl622-1673

An edition of Molière's *Le malade imaginaire* in the form of a parallel text, an English translation beside the French original. In this example, 'Le ' is marked as non-filing.

EX 6: 500 00\$aTreaties, etc.\$nPrussia,\$nl713
710 01\$aFrance
711 01\$aPrussia\$c(Kingdom)

The Treaty of Utrecht may be entered according to certain cataloguing codes under France, with a uniform title *Treaties, etc. Prussia, 1713*.

EX 7: 200 #1\$aLondoner Skizzen von Boz
500 10\$aSketches by Boz.\$mGerman.\$iSelections
700 #1\$aDickens,\$bCharles,\$fl812-1870

Selected portions of Charles Dickens' *Sketches by Boz* translated into German and entitled *Londoner Skizzen von Boz*.

EX 8: 500 11\$aGenesis\$n(Anglo-Saxon poem)

The uniform title for the Anglo-Saxon poem *Genesis* has to be qualified to distinguish it from Genesis as a book of the Bible.

EX 9: 500 10\$aTreaties,etc.\$nPoland,\$n1948 Mar. 2.\$lProtocols, etc.,\$n1951 Mar. 6
710 01\$aUnited Kingdom

The uniform title for a treaty which, according to the cataloguing rules used, requires a form subheading for 'Protocols, etc.'

EX 10: 410 #0\$150010\$aRecent research in the music of the classical era,\$vv. 17-18
\$1011##\$a0147-00 86

The field 500 is embedded in a 4-- Linking Entry field because the item being catalogued is in a series. The agency regards all series added entries as having the character of uniform titles.

EX 11: 200 1#\$aTraduction en vers du cantique de Moïse, suivie d'autres sujets en vers\$bTexte
imprimé\$fpar Maurice L.L.
500 11\$aBible\$iA.T.\$iPsaumes\$mfrançais\$IExtrait\$IAdaptation\$k1861

EX 12: For other uses of field 500 in a 4-- Linking Entry see other examples in 4-- Linking Entry Block.

EX 13: 500 10\$aConcertos\$roboes(2), string orchestra\$sop.9, no.3\$uF major

The piece has both an opus number and a number within the opus. Both appear in one \$s subfield.

EX 14: 500 10\$aConcertos,\$rviolin, orchestra\$s(1938)

The numeric designation of the work is a date.

EX 15: 500 10\$aAlbum für die Jugend.\$sOp. 68, Nr. 2.\$iSoldatenmarsch

The work has both number and a title.

EX 16: 500 10\$aAida\$iCeleste Aida

The part has a title only.

EX 17: 500 10\$aConcertos\$rbassoon, string orchestra\$warr

The piece is an arrangement.

EX 18: 500 10\$aPièces de violes.\$h4e livre.\$h23e partie.\$h80.\$iArabesque

EX 19: 500 10\$aOpus musicum.\$iCantiones sacrae.\$iO vos omnes

EX 20: 200 1#\$aJeruzalemska Biblija\$eStari i Novi zavjet s uvodima i bilješkama iz La Bible
de Jerusalem\$furedili Adalbert Rebić, Jerko Fućak, Bonaventura Duda
300 ##\$aPrijevod djela: La Bible de Jerusalem ; jedinstveni stv. nasl.: Biblia : Vetus et
Novum testamentum
500 10\$3910305127\$aBiblia\$mhrv. prijevod

Uniform title for the Bible in Croatian translation. Subfield \$3 contains the authority record number for the uniform title.

EX 21: 200 1#\$aRolando giesmė\$f[iš senosios prancūzų kalbos vertė Valdas Petrauskas]
\$cNibelungų giesmė\$f[iš vidurinėsios vokiečių aukštaičių kalbos vertė Vladas
Nausėdas]

304 ##\$aVersta iš: La chanson de Roland, 1927

304 ##\$aVersta iš: Das Nibelungenlied, 1959

500 10\$3LNB:V*12948;=BK\$aChanson de Roland\$mvertimas į lietuvių k.

500 10\$3LNB:bm7;=Bm\$aNibelungenlied\$mvertimas į lietuvių k.

The item is a Lithuanian translation of two works of Anonymous classics. In repeatable
500 fields the subfield\$3 contains the authority record number for the uniform title.

EX 22: 200 1#\$aSterne der Eiszeit\$eRoman\$fRenata Šerelytė\$gDeutsch von Akvilė
Galvosaitė

304 ##\$aVersta iš: Ledynmečio žvaigždės, 1999

500 10\$3LNB:jT9;=Bd\$aLedynmečio žvaigždės\$mvertimas į vokiečių k.

The item is a translation of the Lithuanian work into German language.

EX 23: 200 1#\$aKathechismas, arba Mokslas kiekvienam krikščionii priwalvs\$fparaszitas
per d. Iakvba Ledesma theologa Societatis Iesv\$gįzgulditas iz liėzuvio lankiszko ing
lietuwiszka per kuniga Mikaloiu Dausza, kánonika Zemaiczui

304 ##\$aVersta iš: Nauka chrzescianska, abo katechizmik dla dziatek. W Krakowie,
[apie 1590]

304 ##\$aOrig. antr.: Doctrina cristiana á manera de diálogo entre el mestre y el dexeble

500 10\$3LNB:noG;=B0\$aDoctrina cristiana á manera de diálogo entre el mestre y el
dexeble

The item is a translation into the Lithuanian language from the Polish language. In turn
the Polish translation is made from Spanish.

EX 24: 500 10\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠grand macabre\$m suédois

500 10\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠grand macabre\$m français

G. Ligeti has planned a version of his opera in the language of each country in which it
would be created ; The language is here a qualification belonging to the heading (there
will be two authority records).

EX 25: 500 10\$aOtello\$witalien-anglais

The language is here an additional element. It is relative to the edition in hand and does
not belong to the heading.

501 COLLECTIVE UNIFORM TITLE

Field Definition

The field contains a term or terms which are used to bring together works by a prolific author.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of Collective Title Indicator

This indicator divides collective uniform titles into three categories.

0 Complete collected works

1 Selected works, i.e. a collection of individual items by an author, but not the entirety of his work.

2 Selections, i.e. parts of the works of an author, including extracts from works.

The terms used here may not correspond exactly to the terms used in an individual cataloguing code but an approximation should be made.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Collective Uniform Title

The main term used to bring together works of one kind. Not repeatable.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of general material designation. Repeatable.

\$e Collective Uniform Subtitle

A subsequent term or terms used to subdivide the collective uniform title (EX 1, 4). Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

The description of this subfield can be found above the description of \$x.

\$k Date of Publication, etc.

The date of the item when added to a collective uniform title to further subdivide a collection (EX 2). Not repeatable.

- \$m** Language (when part of heading)
The language of the item when required as part of the uniform heading in order to group together items in the same language (EX 2). Not repeatable.
- \$r** Medium of performance (for music)
The instrumentation, etc., of the item (EX 3). Repeatable.
- \$s** Numeric designation (for music)
A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.
- \$u** Key (for music)
The musical key used as part of the uniform title. Not repeatable.
- \$w** Arranged statement (for music)
The statement that a musical work is an arrangement (EX 4). Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form Subdivision
A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical Subdivision
A term added to a title when used as a subject heading to specify further the topic that the subject heading represents. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical Subdivision.
A term added to a title when used as a subject heading to specify a place in relation to it that the subject heading represents. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological Subdivision
A term added to the title when used as a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject heading represents. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. For examples see field 604. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT field. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The use of collective uniform titles is very much tailored to a particular collection and its needs. Nevertheless they should be exchanged if available. They should be constructed according to the cataloguing code and practices of the agency preparing the record.

Related Fields**500 UNIFORM TITLE**

Field 500 is used for distinctive titles which are given in order to group together all entries for a particular work. Field 501 on the other hand is used to group together similar types of works or collections.

Examples**EX 1: 501 2#\$aPlays\$eSelections**

An item entitled *Plays of Oscar Wilde* is entered under the collective uniform title *Plays. Selections*.

EX 2: 501 0#\$aWorks.\$mRussian.\$k1975

In a particular collection which has a substantial number of items by Shakespeare all the complete works are collected together, divided by language, and further ordered by date of publication. An item which is the complete works in Russian published in 1975 will have the above heading (the cataloguing code uses the heading 'Works' for complete works).

EX 3: 501 2#\$aSonatas\$rpfiano**EX 4: 200 1#\$aThree fugues for guitar trio
501 2#\$aKeyboard music\$eSelections\$warr.**

The collective uniform title for three keyboard fugues by Bach, arranged for guitar trio.

503 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING

Field Definition

This field contains a uniform conventional heading used in some cataloguing codes to bring together works of a similar form or type, as defined in paragraph 11.6 of the Statement of Principles adopted at the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, October 1961.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title significance indicator

Specifies whether the uniform conventional heading should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made from it.

0 Uniform conventional heading is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this uniform conventional heading.

1 Uniform conventional heading is significant

An access point should be made under this heading.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Form Heading Proper

The form heading as prescribed by the cataloguing code. Not repeatable.

\$b Form Subheading

A subdivision of the form heading proper as prescribed by the code used. Not repeatable.

\$d Month and Day

The month and day of the year entered in \$j (EX 4). Fixed length, 4 character. Repeatable (EX 7).

\$e Personal name – Entry element of person

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading for the name of The surname or family name of a person associated with the form heading (EX 2). It can be

- a surname or family name, or a given name in the case of a person entered under a given name, e.g. kings, popes, saints (EX 1). Not repeatable.
- \$f** Personal name – Part of name other than entry element – Forename
- The remainder of a person's name when \$e is used or a given name in the case of a person entered under a given name, e.g. kings, popes, saints (EX 1) contains a surname or family name. It contains forenames and other given names (EX 13). Not repeatable.
- \$g** Personal names – Dates
- The dates attached to the personal name together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates (EX 13). Not repeatable.
- \$h** Personal Name Qualifier
- Any addition to a name in \$e and/or \$f which does not form an integral part of the name itself, including title, epithets or indications of office (EX 1). All such titles are entered together in one subfield, separated by appropriate punctuation. Not repeatable.
- \$i** Title of Part
- A title of a work named in the uniform conventional heading (EX 5). Not repeatable.
- \$j** Year
- A year which is used to subdivide the form heading (EX 4). Repeatable (EX 3,6,7).
- \$k** Numeration (Arabic)
- Any number entered in Arabic form in the uniform conventional heading (EX 1). Not repeatable.
- \$l** Numeration (Roman)
- Any number entered in roman form in the uniform conventional heading. Not repeatable.
- \$m** Locality
- A place named in the uniform conventional heading (EX 1). Not repeatable.
- \$n** Institution in Locality
- An institution named in the uniform conventional heading (EX 1). Not repeatable.
- \$o** Place in Locality
- A public place (as a park, an avenue, etc.) named in the uniform conventional heading (EX 11). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used for headings which are constructed to bring together works of a particular type which are not regarded by the cataloguing rules as having an author. These works are entered under type and divided by subject. The field is not used in any item which is regarded

as having a corporate author by the cataloguing code under which it is being catalogued. Thus it is not used for laws and treaties entered under the name of a territorial authority.

Related Fields

500 UNIFORM TITLE

Uniform titles are related to uniform conventional headings, but the entry element of a uniform title is always based on a title of a work, whereas the form heading proper is a term rather than a title.

501 COLLECTIVE UNIFORM TITLE

Collective uniform titles are used to group together works by a prolific author.

Examples

EX 1: 503 1#\$aExposition\$aNapoléon\$kler\$hempereur des Français\$mParis\$nGrand-Palais

A uniform conventional heading for an exhibition.

EX 2: 503 1#\$aMélanges\$aMenéndez-Pidal

A uniform conventional heading for a festschrift.

EX 3: 503 0#\$aLoi\$bRecueil\$j1892\$j1967

A uniform conventional heading for a collection of laws.

EX 4: 503 0#\$aVertrag\$j1973\$d1005

A form heading for a treaty.

EX 5: 1#\$aFestschrift\$aMiéville,\$fHenri\$iHommage à Henri Miéville

EX 6: 200 1#\$aGallé\$bTexte imprimé\$e[exposition] Paris, Musée du Luxembourg, 29 novembre 1985 – 2 février 1986\$f[organisée par la Réunion des musées nationaux]
503 1# \$aExposition\$mParis\$nMusée du Luxembourg\$j1985\$j1986

A uniform conventional heading for an exhibition.

EX 7: 200 1#\$aImportante bibliothèque d'un manoir breton\$bTexte imprimé\$elivres anciens du 16^e siècle à 1920 ...\$evente Brest, Hôtel des ventes, 3-4 mai 1991, commissaires priseurs, Mes Yves Thierry, Hubert Martin et Philippe Lannon
503 1# \$aVente\$bLivres\$j1991\$d0503\$j1991\$d0504\$mBrest

A uniform conventional heading for an auction catalogue.

EX 8: 200 1#\$aCulture et médias\$bTexte imprimé\$erecueil de textes\$fConseil de l'Europe
300 ##\$aLa couv. porte en plus : "Conventions du Conseil de l'Europe"
503 10\$aTraité\$IRecueil
710 02\$311868456\$aConseil de l'Europe\$4070

A uniform conventional heading for a collection of treaties that is not the primary entry.

EX 9: 200 1#~~\$a~~~~NSB~~~~La~~ ~~≠NSE~~~~≠~~part du jeu et du rêve\$bTexte imprimé\$eÓscar Domínguez et le surréalisme, 1906-1957\$eexposition, au Musée Cantini de Marseille, du 25 juin au 2 octobre 2005\$f[catalogue sous la direction de Véronique Serrano et Claude Miglietti]
 503 11\$aExposition\$mMarseille\$nMusée Cantini\$j2005
 702 #1\$312529137\$aSerrano\$bVéronique\$4340
 702 #1\$315007988\$aMiglietti\$bClaude\$4340
 711 02\$311877338\$aMusée Cantini\$cMarseille\$4070

A uniform conventional heading for an exhibition that is the primary entry.

EX 10: 200 1#~~\$a~~Olivier Mosset\$bTexte imprimé\$etravaux, 1966-2003\$e[exposition, Lausanne, Musée cantonal des beaux-arts, 22 mai-24 août 2003, Saint-Gall, Kunstverein St. Gallen Kunstmuseum, 23 mai-10 août 2003, SITE de Santa Fe, 13 décembre 2003-7 mars 2004]\$f[catalogue coordonné par Yves Aupetitallot et Roland Wäspe]\$zfre
 503 11\$aExposition\$mLausanne\$nMusée cantonal des beaux-arts\$j2003
 503 10\$aExposition\$mSaint-Gall\$nKunstverein\$j2003
 503 10\$aExposition\$mSanta Fe (N.M.)\$nSITE\$j2003\$j2004

Three uniform conventional headings for an exhibition : the first one is the primary entry, the others are additional entries.

EX 11: 200 1#~~\$a~~~~NSB~~~~Les~~ ~~≠NSE~~~~≠~~champs de la sculpture\$bTexte imprimé\$ele catalogue \$e[exposition, Paris, Avenue des Champs-Élysées, 11 avril-9 juin 1996]\$f[organisée par la Direction des Affaires culturelles de la Ville de Paris et l'Association Paris-musées]
 503 11\$aExposition\$mParis\$oAvenue des Champs-Élysées\$j1996

A uniform conventional heading for an exhibition that took place on the Avenue des Champs-Élysées in Paris, and not in an institution.

EX 12: 200 1#~~\$a~~Images de la France libérée\$bTexte imprimé\$e1944-1945\$ela République restaurée\$ecatalogue de l'exposition... [Paris], sur les grilles du Jardin du Luxembourg, du 3 juin au 31 août 2004\$forganisée par le Sénat ; [la Mission pour la commémoration du soixantième anniversaire de la Libération ; l'Établissement de communication et de production audiovisuelle de la défense ; et al.]
 503 11\$aExposition\$mParis\$oJardin du Luxembourg\$j2004

EX 13: 200 1#~~\$a~~~~NSB~~~~La~~ ~~≠NSE~~~~≠~~monnaie de sa pièce...\$dTexte imprimé\$ehommages à Colin Martin\$féd. par Paul-Louis Pelet et Jean-François Poudret, avec la collab. de Nadia Pollini
 503 11\$aMélanges\$eMartin\$fColin\$g1906-....

A uniform conventional heading for a festschrift. The person in honour of whom the document is donated has homonyms.

510 PARALLEL TITLE PROPER

Field Definition

This field contains a parallel title (i.e., title proper in a different language or script) for which it is desired to create either a note or an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Parallel title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this parallel title.

1 Parallel title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Parallel Title

The chief title of the item in a language and/or script relating to the title proper in 200 \$a and excluding any other title information in that language. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the parallel title in \$a and are required as part of the access point or note. Repeatable.

\$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the parallel title in \$a. Repeatable.

\$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and are in the same language as the parallel title in \$a. Repeatable.

\$j Volume or Dates associated with Title

The part of a multivolume work or continuing resource to which the parallel title pertains. Not repeatable.

- \$n** Miscellaneous Information
- Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. 'varies slightly', 'paperback edition'. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.
- \$z** Language of Title
- Identifies the language of the parallel title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for parallel titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. See Appendix A for list of language codes. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field should be used for a parallel title for which a note is to be created or which is required as an added entry. If indicator 1 is set to 1, the data should be entered in a form suitable as an access point. This may involve removing initial articles and changes to prefixes or suffixes depending on the language of the parallel title. If it is desired to enter the parallel title as part of the statement of responsibility, this should be done in field 200 \$d, and in 200 \$e, if there is parallel other title information. If it is desired to create a note, the print constant 'Parallel title' or its equivalent in another language may be generated.

Related Fields

200\$d TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, parallel title proper

When the parallel title is recorded in the descriptive area of the record along with chief title proper, other title information and statements of responsibility in the form and sequence as in the item, then it is entered in field 200. Data in field 510 cannot be combined with the title proper in field 200 \$a to recreate the data in the required order of ISBD.

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

A note on the parallel title, or a note incorporating the text of the parallel title where it is not already recorded in field 200, may be entered in field 304.

541 TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY THE CATALOGUER

Parallel titles are defined as titles in other languages found in the item. If the title is not found in the item but is translated by the cataloguer or taken by the cataloguer from another source, it should be entered in field 541.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$aResúmenes sobre población en América Latina\$fPrograma de información sobre Población en America Latina\$d= Latin American population abstracts\$fLatin American Population Information Program\$zeng
510 1#\$aLatin American population abstracts\$zeng

The continuing resource *Resúmenes sobre población en America Latina* has a parallel title *Latin American population abstracts*. Both are entered in field 200 to provide the description of the document; but to provide for an added entry of the title proper in English, the English title is repeated in field 510.

EX 2: 200 l#\$aInformation transfer

510 l#\$aTransfert de l'information\$zfre

An access point will be generated from subfield 510 \$a and the following note may also be made from the field:

Parallel title: Transfert de l'information

511 HALF TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a variant title appearing on the half-title page when it differs sufficiently from the title proper recorded in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or access point. The half-title page is usually a leaf preceding the title page and the half-title is usually an abridged form of the title.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Significance of title

0 Title is not significant

1 Title is significant

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Half title.

The variant title appearing on the half-title page. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the half title differs significantly from the title proper.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

A note containing the text of the half title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

513 ADDED TITLE-PAGE TITLE

This field contains a title appearing on an title page complementary to the one chosen for the main entry of a work. The added title page may precede or follow the main title page with which it is issued and may be more general, as a series title page, or, a title page in another language either at the beginning or at the end of the work. It cannot be confused with half title.

517 OTHER VARIANT TITLES

This field contains any other variant title not defined in fields 510-516 or 518, e.g. binder's title, slip case title, box title, partial title, subordinate title, etc. When a source format does not specifically identify titles normally entered in fields 510-516 or 518, they may be entered here.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$aDecisionum supremorum tribunalium regni Neapolitani
312 ##\$aTitolo dell'occh.: Supremorum tribunalium regni Neapolitani decisiones et praxis iudiciaria
511 1#\$aSupremorum tribunalium regni Neapolitani decisiones et praxis iudiciaria

512 COVER TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the title appearing on the cover of the item when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the cover title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Cover title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the cover title.

1 Cover title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Cover Title

The title as on the cover of the item without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the cover subordinate to the cover title in \$a. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the cover title differs significantly from the title proper.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

A note containing the text of the cover title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1: 512 l#\$aWoods and trees of the Amazon basin

The title from the title page of a book is *Woods of the Amazon basin*. The title on the cover is *Woods and trees of the Amazon basin*, which is required as an access point.

EX 2: 512 l#\$aCity of Coventry archaeology and development\$n(paperback version)

Coventry archaeology and redevelopment is published in hardback and in paperback and the record includes data on both. The cover title on the paperback version only is *City of Coventry archaeology and development*. The following display is made by the cataloguing agency from the 512 data:

Cover title: City of Coventry archaeology and development (paperback version)

EX 3: 512 l#\$aChemical age yearbook\$(varies slightly)\$j1957-

From 1957 to date the continuing resource has had a cover title *Chemical age yearbook* although it varies slightly.

513 ADDED TITLE-PAGE TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a title appearing on an added title-page, when it warrants recording as a note or access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the added title-page title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Added title-page title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the added title-page title.

1 Added title-page is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Added Title-page Title

The title as on the added title-page of the item without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the added title-page subordinate to the title in \$a. Repeatable.

\$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the added title-page title in \$a. Repeatable.

\$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field will be used only when the added title-page title differs significantly from the title proper.

Related Fields**312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)**

A note containing the text of the added title-page title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

511 HALF TITLE

This field contains the half title.

Examples

EX 1: 513 l#\$a≠NSB≠Das ≠NSE≠heutige Bibliothekarsamt in Deutschland\$zger

A document has two title pages of equal status, one in German and one in English. Since the title page in English is taken as the chief source of information, an added entry is made for the German title as an added title-page title. The "Das " is marked as having no filing significance. Alternatively the word may be omitted completely.

514 CAPTION TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the title given at the beginning of the first page of the text when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the caption title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Caption title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the caption title.

1 Caption title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Caption Title

The title as given at the beginning of the first page of the text excluding any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that are subordinate to the caption title. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the caption title differs significantly from the title proper.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

A note containing the text of the caption title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1: 200 l#\$aPacific
514 0#\$aPacific and its wonders

The title *Pacific* is printed at the head of the first page of a continuing resource and followed by the text 'and its wonders' to form the caption title *Pacific and its wonders*.

515 RUNNING TITLE

Field Definition

The field contains the title appearing at the head or foot of the page of an item when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the running title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Running title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the running title.

1 Running title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Running Title

The title as taken from the head or foot of the page of the item. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the running title differs significantly from the title proper.

Related Fields

312 NOTES RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

A note containing the text of the running title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1: 515 0#\$aCAD/CAM

The title proper is *Computer aided design and computer aided manufacture*. The running title is entered only in order to generate a note and so has first indicator 0.

516 SPINE TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the title given on the spine of the item when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the spine title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Spine title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the spine title.

1 Spine title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur.

\$a Spine Title

The title as on the spine of the item without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the spine subordinate to the spine title in \$a. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the spine title differs significantly from the title proper.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

A note containing the text of the spine title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1: 516 l#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠complete guide to selecting plays

The book entitled *The guide to selecting plays for performance* has a spine title *The complete guide to selecting plays*. A note and added entry are to be made for this. "The" is marked as having no filing significance. Alternatively the word may be omitted completely.

517 OTHER VARIANT TITLES

Field Definition

This field contains any other variant title not defined in fields 510-516 or 518, e.g. binder's title, slip case title, box title, partial title, subordinate title, etc. When a source format does not specifically identify titles normally entered in fields 510-516 or 518, they may be entered here.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the variant title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Variant title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the variant title.

1 Variant title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur.

\$a Variant Title

The variant title without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the item subordinate to the variant title in \$a. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If a note identifying the nature of this title is required it is entered in note field 312. Field 517 is not used to generate a note.

Related Fields

510-516 Specific type of variant title

Prefer the use of the specific fields when the source provides sufficient information to identify the specific kinds of titles accommodated in those fields.

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES (OF THE SAME WORK)

A note identifying the nature of the variant title may be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1: 517 1#\$aScotland
312 ##\$aBinder's title: Scotland

An access point can be generated from field 517 and a note from field 312.

EX 2: 517 1#\$aGregorian chants from Hungary
312 ##\$aTitle on case: Gregorian chants from Hungary

The title proper on the title page of a cased item is *Magyar Gregorianum*. The title on the case is *Gregorian chants from Hungary*.

EX 3: 200 1#\$aComputing engineering index
312 ##\$aAlso known as: COMPENDEX
517 1#\$aCOMPENDEX

An index also known under an acronym.

518 TITLE IN STANDARD MODERN SPELLING

Field Definition

This field contains the title or individual words from the title or any variant title of the item repeated in standard modern spelling when that used in the item is sufficiently archaic to warrant recording as a note or as an access point. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the title in standard modern spelling should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Title in standard modern spelling is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the title in standard modern spelling.

Use this value also if the field contains only selected words included for the purpose of enhancing online retrieval, but not the whole title (EX 3).

1 Title in standard modern spelling is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following subfield will usually occur.

\$a Title proper, variant title or uniform title in standard modern spelling

The title proper, variant title or uniform title or individual words from the title of the item repeated in standard modern spelling without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the title(s) of the item is(are) in sufficiently archaic spelling to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

If the contents of the 518 field would be identical to the contents of field 500\$a Uniform title, do not create a 518 field.

Related Fields**200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY**

This field contains the title proper written in archaic spelling.

500 UNIFORM TITLE

This field contains the particular title, selected by the bibliographic agency, by which a work that has appeared under varying titles is to be identified for cataloguing purposes.

510-517 Variant titles

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$aIzvarsita gliubav i napochom nemila i nesrichna smart Pirema i Tisbe
518 1#\$aIzvarsita ljubav i napokom nemila i nesriæna smart

EX 2: 200 1#\$aPistule, i Evanyelya
518 1#\$aPistule i evandelja

EX 3: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Description of the Countrey of Aphrique ...
518 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠description of the country of Africa ...

EX 4: 200 1#\$aUmbständliche Beurtheyling der Frage, ob das Erd-Beben zu Lissabonn der
Ausdruck des Zornes Gottes sey
518 0#\$aUmständliche Beurteilung Erdbeben Lissabon sei
Individual words from the Title Proper repeated in standard modern spelling

EX 5: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠Cavaliero della Croce Rossa, o la Leggenda della Sanità
:\$poema i dodici canti ;\$fdall'inglese di Edmundo Spenser recato in verso italiano,
detto ottava rima, da T.J. Mathias.
500 10#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠shepherd's calender\$mItalian
518 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠shepherd's calendar

The original title in its archaic spelling has been used for the Uniform Title; the modern form of the Uniform Title is therefore entered in 518.

EX 6: 200 1#\$aDeffense des droits du roy catholique Charles II
518 1#\$aDéfense des droits du roi catholique Charles II

EX 7: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠aventures extravagantes du courtizan grotesque
518 1#\$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠aventures extravagantes du courtisan grotesque

520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Field Definition

This field contains an earlier title of a continuing resource catalogued under a later title. It is used when the continuing resource under its different titles is considered to be one bibliographic entity so that only one record is maintained in the data base with the title proper reflecting the current title. The earlier titles are, in this case, treated as alternative titles for one entity.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the former title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Former title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the former title.

1 Former title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Former Title Proper

The title proper of the former title of the continuing resource. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the title proper of the former title in \$a. Repeatable.

\$h Number of Part

The number of a part of the continuing resource when the continuing resource is subdivided. Not repeatable.

\$i Name of Part

The name of a part of the continuing resource when the continuing resource is subdivided. Not repeatable.

- \$j** Volumes or Dates of Former Title
The numbering of the span of volumes, etc., of the former title or in the absence of that, its spanning dates. Both may be entered (EX 1). Not repeatable.
- \$n** Miscellaneous Information
This subfield is used for text intended primarily for display in a note. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display as a note. Not repeatable.
- \$x** ISSN of Former Title
The ISSN assigned to the former title. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is repeated for each former title for which an added entry is made. Subfields \$a, \$e, \$h and \$i correspond to the same subfields in field 200. However, \$a (Former title proper) may be replaced by the key title of the former title if preferred. Subfield \$j is intended for producing notes relating to the title. The ISSN of each former title should be included when available.

Related Fields

- 43- Preceding entry fields
These linking fields are used for the earlier titles of a continuing resource when the cataloguing agency considers each span of the continuing resource under a different title to be a separate bibliographic entity and catalogues each title in a separate record.

Examples

- EX 1: 200 1#\$aClaimants unite ...
520 1#\$aClaimants newspaper.\$jIssue nos. 1 (summer 1974)-5 (autumn 1975)
520 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠claimant, and Claimants newspaper.\$jIssue no. 6 (1976)
The continuing resource *Claimants newspaper* is continued after its fifth issue by *The Claimant and Claimant's newspaper* of which only one copy is produced, issue no. 6. This in turn becomes *Claimants unite*, numbered issue no. 7 onwards. The record created for *Claimants unite* contains entries for each of the former titles.

530 KEY TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the key title – the unique name for a continuing resource established by the ISSN Network.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable. While there should logically be only one key title per record, differences in practice between the agency preparing the record and the ISSN network may result in one continuing resource record with two (or more) key titles.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Proper Indicator

This indicator indicates whether or not the key title as it appears when printed out is the same as the title proper in 200 \$a. Thus it is unlikely that any key title field using subfield \$b will have indicator 0 (EX 2, 3, 4).

0 Key title is the same as the title proper

1 Key title differs from the title proper

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Key Title

The key title without the addition of any qualification. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualifier

Any qualification included in the key title in order to distinguish it from other continuing resources with the same title (EX 2, 4). Following ISSN practice, the qualification is enclosed in parentheses. Not repeatable.

\$j Volume or Dates Associated with Key Title

This subfield is used when the record contains more than one key title which has been assigned to different volumes or date-spans of the life of the periodical. The data distinguishes the periods over which the relevant key title applies. Not repeatable.

\$v Volume Designation

This subfield is used to indicate a particular part of an item (volume, issue and pages if appropriate) that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when the field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Data in subfields \$a and \$b is entered according to the provisions contained in the *ISSN manual*. The key title is established by the ISSN centre responsible for the registration of the continuing resource and is derived from the title information appearing in the publication at the time of registration. The key title can be the same as the title proper; or, in order to achieve uniqueness, it can be constructed by the addition of identifying and/or qualifying elements such as name of issuing body, place of publication, edition statement, etc. Since only an ISSN centre can establish a key title, any agency other than a centre preparing a record should enter a key title only when it is found on the document or when it has been checked with its ISSN centre. Any other title is by definition not a key title.

For more information on key titles refer to the appropriate ISSN centre.

Related Fields**011 ISSN**

According to ISDS rules the key title is inseparably linked to its ISSN and both should be entered in the record when available.

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

The title on the item is entered in field 200. If no key title is available, the title on the item must be entered in field 200.

Examples

The following are examples of key titles in field 530 followed by their representation in their display form. In examples 2, 3, and 4, the first indicator is set to 1 since the key title differs from the title proper.

EX 1: 530 0#\$aScientific American

Scientific American

EX 2: 530 1#\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Ciencia y la tecnica\$b(Barcelona. 1936)

La Ciencia y la tecnica (Barcelona. 1936). This files as "Ciencia y la tecnica...".

EX 3: 530 1#\$a Annual activities report\$b(Institute for National Measurement Standards)

Annual activities report (Institute for National Measurement Standards)

EX 4: 530 1#\$aBulletin\$b(Canadian Mediterranean Institute. 1983)

Bulletin (Canadian Mediterranean Institute. 1983)

531 ABBREVIATED TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Field Definition

This field contains an abbreviated form of the key title, constructed in accordance with the *ISSN manual* and based on ISO 4.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Abbreviated Title

The abbreviated key title without the addition of any qualifying information. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualifier

Any qualifying information added to the key title to make it distinctive from an otherwise identical key title. This may or may not be abbreviated. Following ISDS practice, the qualification is enclosed in parentheses. Not repeatable.

\$v Volume Designation

This subfield is used to indicate a particular part of an item (volume, issue and pages if appropriate) that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when the field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The abbreviated form of the key title is constructed according to the *ISSN manual* and based on ISO 4. It also maintains the *List of title word abbreviations*. Paris: ISSN International Centre, 2003. ISBN: 92-9114-003-1. This list consists of abbreviations of the words used in the abbreviated key titles and can only be extended by the ISSN International Centre, usually at the request of a local ISSN centre. It is available online at <http://www.issn.org>. Only key titles abbreviated according to ISDS provisions are entered in this field.

Related Fields

530 KEY TITLE

Examples

EX 1: 531 ##\$aMedicina. Supl.\$b(B.Aires)

EX 2: 531 ##\$aRockefeller Brothers Fund annu. rep.

EX 3: 531 ##\$aAnnu.Act. Rep.\$b(Inst. Natl. Meas. Stand.)

EX 4: 531 ##\$aJ. phys.\$b(Paris)

531 ##\$aJ. phys.\$b(Lond.)

This is a case of two journals which have different key titles but which abbreviate to the same abbreviated title. The qualifier is added to the abbreviated key title, but is not required for the key title itself.

Key titles: Journal de physique
 Journal of physics

532 EXPANDED TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a title in expanded form which is required as an added entry or as a note because the title proper or key title contains an initialism, abbreviation, numeral or symbol which causes filing problems, may not be capable of being reproduced correctly on output, or will add to the content of the record.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the expanded title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Expanded title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the expanded title.

1 Expanded title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: Type of expansion indicator

Specifies the reason for the need to expand the title. The following values are used in the indicator position:

0 Initialism. The expansion involves replacing an initialism or acronym by the words it represents (EX 3).

1 Numeral. The expansion involves writing the numeral out in full (EX 6).

2 Abbreviation. The expansion involves writing abbreviated words in full (EX 1, 2).

3 Other, non-roman symbol, etc. Any other expansion such as replacement of a symbol by text (EX 4, 5), e.g., '&' replaced by 'and' or 'et'.

If a combination of conditions applies, use the higher value in preference since these indicate the more complicated conditions. Use value 3 if the particular condition is not known.

Subfields

\$a Expanded Title

The complete text of the expanded title. Not repeatable.

\$z Language of Title

This subfield identifies the language of the expanded title. See Appendix A for a list of language codes (EX 5). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Any expanded title may be entered in this field. It may be an expression of the title proper or in the case of continuing resources the key title. Under certain circumstances ISDS requires that a key title with abbreviations be expanded; this may be entered in field 532 (EX 2, 3, 4, 5, 6).

Related Fields

200\$a TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, Title proper

530 KEY TITLE

Examples

EX 1: 532 12\$aSaint Mirren Football Club centenary brochure

The title proper of a document entered in field 200 is *St. Mirren F.C. centenary brochure*. The abbreviations in the title are expanded in field 532 to create a more useful access point.

EX 2: 532 12\$aTechnical bulletin – South Dakota University Agricultural Experiment Station

The title is *TB – South Dakota University. Agricultural Experiment Station*.

EX 3: 532 10\$aInstitute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers transactions on aerospace and electronic systems.

The title is *IEEE transactions on aerospace and electronic systems*.

EX 4: 532 13\$aThirty-seven design and environment projects

The title *37 design & environment projects* begins with a number and contains &. The variant title is entered with second indicator value 3 denoting expansion of symbols, etc. rather than the value 2.

EX 5: 532 13\$aUn plus un\$zfre

The title is *1+1*. It is French and the numerals and symbols are expanded in French.

EX 6: 532 11\$aFive ways

The title is *5 ways*.

540 ADDITIONAL TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER

Field Definition

This field contains catch titles and popular titles not appearing on the item and which are not considered uniform titles. It may also be used for a title access point derived from the title proper.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title significance indicator

Specifies whether the additional title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Additional title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this title.

1 Additional title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfield

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Additional Title

The text of the additional title as supplied by the cataloguer. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the supplied title in \$a. Repeatable.

\$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the additional title in \$a. Not repeatable.

\$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a title that does not appear on the item: it is supplied by the cataloguer for use as an added entry. It may be a title by which the work is popularly known, though not a uniform title. In some agencies, such titles are handled as references in an authority system, rather than as access points in the bibliographic record.

Related Fields**500 UNIFORM TITLE**

Field 500 is used for standard uniform titles which are usually prescribed by the cataloguing code. These should not be entered in field 540.

541 TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER

Field 541 should be used for the translation of a title on the document when it is supplied by the cataloguer.

Examples**EX 1: 540 1#\$aParis principles**

The document Statement of principles adopted at the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, October 1961 is commonly referred to as the Paris principles.

**EX 2: 200 1#\$aSérie orange 1:50 000\$h2123\$iSelles-sur-Cher\$bDocument cartographique
\$fInstitut géographique national
540 1#\$aSérie orange\$ecarte topographique de la France à 1:50 000\$h2123\$iSelles-sur-Cher**

The *Série orange* is the topographical map of France to the scale of 1:50000. The general title of the series has undergone a slight change in the course of its publication, from *Série orange: carte topographique de la France à 1:50000* to *Série orange 1:50000*. In order to keep title indexes coherent, an additional title has been created, using the former title of the set.

541 TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER

Field Definition

This field contains the translation of one of the titles appearing on the item, supplied by the cataloguer.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the translated title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Translated title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this title.

1 Translated title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Translated Title

The title proper without any other title information, in translation (EX 3). Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information in translation appearing subordinate to the translated title (EX 2). Not repeatable.

\$h Number of a Part

The section or part numbering for items identified by a common name and a subsection name, with or without accompanying caption translated. Not repeatable.

\$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a common name and a subsection name. Not repeatable.

\$z Language of Translated Title

This subfield identifies the language of the translated title. See Appendix A for a list of language codes. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only for titles which are translated by the cataloguer or where the translation is taken from any source other than the item for the cataloguing code being used. Translated titles prescribed by a cataloguing code would usually be treated as uniform titles and entered in field 500. The subfields should follow the treatment of subfields in field 200.

Related Fields**200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY**

The title upon which the translated title is based should always be present in field 200. In addition, a translated title actually on the item itself will be entered in 200 \$d, parallel title, or in a note field if it is not in the chief source of information.

500 UNIFORM TITLE

Field 500 contains any translated titles which are regarded as uniform titles by the cataloguing code.

510 PARALLEL TITLE PROPER

A title in another language on the item is entered in field 510 if it requires an access point.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠Der ≠NSE≠Spiegel
541 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Mirror\$zeng

The title page reads *Der Spiegel*.

EX 2: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠Die ≠NSE≠Zentralafrikanische Zoll- und Wirtschaftsunion
\$eIntegrationswirkungen bei Ländern im Frühstadium der industriellen
Entwicklung\$fR.J. Langhammer
541 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Central African Customs and Economic Union
\$eintegration effects in countries in the early stage of industrial development\$zeng

The title page reads *Die Zentralafrikanische Zoll- und Wirtschafts-union:
Integrationswirkungen bei Ländern im Frühstadium der industriellen Entwicklung*.

EX 3: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠De ≠NSE≠rol van de universiteit bij de ontwikkeling van een Land
541 1#\$aRole of universities in national development\$zeng

An agency translates all titles into English which are in another language, dropping any initial non-filing characters, e.g. "The". The title page reads *De rol van de universiteit bij de ontwikkeling van een Land*.

545 SECTION TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the title of a general section in which a piece-analytic being catalogued is contained.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

The first indicator specifies whether the section title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

0 Section title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the section title.

1 Section title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur:

\$a Section Title
Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Science of eating well
545 0#\$aNutrition Letter

560 ARTIFICIAL TITLE

Field Definition

This field is used to record a title given to an item after publication, such as a binder's title given at rebinding.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Significance of title

0: Title is not significant

1: Title is significant

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Artificial title. Not repeatable.

\$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the item subordinate to the title in subfield \$a. Repeatable.

\$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Not repeatable. Mandatory if field is present.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the copy in hand has on the cover and/or back an artificial title that differs from the title proper.

Related Fields

316 NOTES RELATING TO THE COPY IN HAND

This field contains a note relating to characteristics of the copy in hand and may be used for recording an artificial title.

Examples

EX 1: 200 1#\$aSalomon Gessners sämmtliche schriften
316 ##\$aTit. della cop.: Scrittura\$5TO0741 MOS: R 105
560 0#\$aScrittura\$5TO0741 MOS: R 105

Scrittura is the title of the copy in hand title present on the back of the work *Salomon Gessners sämmtliche schriften*.

EX 2: 200 1#\$aTeorie formole e metodi raccolti per la misura dell'acqua che si estragge per via di sfori e bocchelli o fluisce entro a' canali come regolari, con applicazioni anche all'uso pratico del Piemonte
316 ##\$aAnche legato con : Mémoire sur la cause des ricochets que font les pierres et les boulets de canon, lancés obliquement sur la surface de l'eau / par Georges Bidone; e con: Ricerche sulla figura del pelo d'acqua negli alvei d'uniforme larghezza, fatte nella Scuola degli ingegneri pontificj d'acque e strade, l'anno 1823; e con: Ricerche geometriche ed idrometriche fatte nella Scuola degli'ingegneri pontificj d'acque e strade, l'anno 1821; e con : Expériences sur les roues hydrauliques à aubes planes, et sur les roues hydrauliques à augets; e con : Du mouvement des ondes et des travaux hydrauliques maritimes / par A.R. Emy\$aTit. della cop.: Opuscoli idraulici varii \$5IT/TO0741 MOS: SV 659

560 1#\$aOpuscoli idraulici varii\$5IT/TO0741 MOS: SV 659

Opuscoli idraulici varii is an artificial title.

6-- SUBJECT ANALYSIS AND BIBLIOGRAPHICAL HISTORY BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains subject data constructed according to various systems, both verbal and notational. It also contains data relating to the physical characteristics of the item and the mode of presentation of the matter in it (608), access points for the publication, performance, etc. of the item (620) and later history of the copy in hand (621). The following fields are defined:

Subject headings

- 600 Personal Name Used as Subject
- 601 Corporate Body Name Used as Subject
- 602 Family Name Used as Subject
- 604 Name and Title Used as Subject
- 605 Title Used as Subject
- 606 Topical Name Used as Subject
- 607 Geographical Name Used as Subject
- 608 Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics Heading
- 610 Uncontrolled Subject Terms
- 615 Subject Category (Provisional)
- 616 Trademark Used as Subject

Bibliographical history

- 620 Place and Date of Publication, Performance, etc.
- 621 Place and Date of Provenance
- 626 *Technical Details Access (Electronic Resources)* (**Obsolete**)

Subject analysis

- 660 Geographic Area Code (GAC)
- 661 Time Period Code
- 670 PRECIS

Classification

- 675 Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)
- 676 Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)
- 680 Library of Congress Classification
- 686 Other Class Numbers

Occurrence

Fields in the 6-- block are all optional. It is recommended that all subject data in a source record suitable for international exchange be entered in the UNIMARC record.

Notes on Field Contents

Punctuation should be entered as in the source format.

600 PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a person who is one of the subjects of the item, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the name is entered under the first occurring name (forename) or a name in direct order or whether it is entered under a surname, family name, patronymic or equivalent, usually with inversion.

0 Name entered under forename or in direct order (EX 3, 4)

1 Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic etc.) (EX 1, 2, 5)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (EX 1, 2, 5). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Name Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office. Repeatable for second and subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics. If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (EX 4). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

- \$f** Dates
- The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should also be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (EX 5). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.
- \$g** Expansion of Initials of Forename
- The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required. Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form Subdivision
- The description of this subfield can be found above the description of \$x.
- \$p** Affiliation/address
- This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared. Not repeatable.
- \$t** Title
- Not used. For author/title subject headings, use field 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT.
- \$j** Form Subdivision
- A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 2). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical Subdivision
- A term added to a subject heading to further specify the topic the subject heading represents (EX 3, 5). Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical Subdivision
- A term added to a subject heading to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject heading represents (EX 5). Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological Subdivision
- A term added to a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject heading represents. Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
- An identification in coded form of the system or thesaurus from which the subject heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
- The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one

authority record number to indicate each part of a heading where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is intended for recording headings for personal names used as subjects. These headings are structured in the same form as the headings for persons responsible for the content of an item. Subfields \$a, \$b, \$c, \$d and \$f follow the same form as in field 700 and further explanation of the scope and content of these subfields can be found there.

Unlike field 700, this field can contain more than the name of the person and additions to the name. Terms may be added to a subject heading to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These and the order of all the subfields follow the rules of the subject heading system or thesaurus used by the agency preparing the record.

Related Fields

- 601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
When a corporate body rather than a person is the subject, field 601 is used.
- 602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
When a family rather than a person is the subject, field 602 is used.
- 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT
When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

Examples

EX 1: 600 #1\$aBurroughs\$bEdgar Rice\$21c

EX 2: 600 #1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f564-1616\$jQuotations\$21c

EX 3: 600 #0\$aJesus Christ\$xNativity\$21c
600 #0\$aJesus Christ\$xTrial\$21c

The record for *Son of God : birth and trial of Jesus* containing two subject headings.

EX 4: 600 #0\$aGustavus\$dII Adolphus,\$cKing of Sweden\$21c

EX 5: 600 #1\$aEinstein\$bAlbert\$f1879-1955\$xHomes and haunts\$yGermany\$yBerlin\$21c

601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a corporate body which is one of the subjects of the item, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Meeting Indicator

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, then the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (EX 10).

0 Corporate name

1 Meeting

If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name as follows:

0 Name in inverted order

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name.

1 Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place. According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions which are associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g., universities, learned societies, art galleries (EX 9).

2 Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names. (EX 1-8, 10).

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

- \$b** Subdivision (or name if entered under place)
The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (EX 9). This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.
- \$c** Addition to Name or Qualifier
Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable (EX 4, 5, 7, 8).
- \$d** Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of a Meeting
The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (EX 10)
- \$e** Location of Meeting
The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the heading. Not repeatable. (EX 10)
- \$f** Date of Meeting
The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the heading. Not repeatable. (EX 10)
- \$g** Inverted Element
Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.
- \$h** Part of Name other than Entry Element and Inverted Element
In a heading with an inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form Subdivision
The description of this subfield can be found below, above the description of \$x.
- \$t** Title
Not used. For author/title subject headings, use field 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT.
- \$j** Form Subdivision
A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 2, 3). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

- \$x** Topical Subdivision
A term added to a subject heading to further specify the topic the subject heading represents (EX 2, 5, 6, 8). Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical Subdivision
A term added to a subject heading to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject heading represents. Repeatable. (EX 6)
- \$z** Chronological Subdivision
A term added to a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject heading represents. Repeatable (EX 9).
- \$2** System Code
An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.#
- \$3** Authority Record Number
The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of a heading where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is intended for recording headings for corporate names used as subjects. These headings are structured in the same form as corporate body name headings for bodies responsible for the contents of an item. Subfields \$a, \$b, \$c, \$d, \$e, \$f, \$g and \$h follow the same form as in field 710, and further explanation of the scope and content of these subfields can be found there.

Unlike field 710, this field can contain more than the name of the corporate body and additions to the name. Terms may be added to a subject heading to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time.

Political jurisdictions subdivided by names of subordinate bodies are entered in this field (EX 9). If the name of a political jurisdiction appears alone or is subdivided only by subject terms, it is entered in field 607.

Related Fields

- 600** PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
When a person rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 600 is used.
- 602** FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
When a family rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 602 is used.
- 604** NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT
When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Political jurisdictions represented by geographical names are entered in field 607 if they appear alone or subdivided only by subject terms.

Examples

EX 1: 601 02\$aHardy Heating Co Ltd\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for Hardy Developments Ltd : test and cases in management accounting.

EX 2: 601 02\$aChurch of England.\$xClergy.\$jBiography\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for *Charles Lowder and the ritualistic movement* (punctuation is retained in the example).

EX 3: 601 02\$aStrategic Arms Limitation Talks\$jJuvenile literature\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for a book for children entitled *The nuclear arms race*.

EX 4: 601 02\$aBeagle Expeditions\$c1831-1836\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for The adventures of Charles Darwin : a story of the Beagle voyage.

EX 5: 601 02\$aEgba\$cAfrican tribe\$xHistory\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for Lugard and the Abeokuta uprising : the demise of Egba independence.

EX 6: 601 02\$aCatholic Church\$yScotland\$xGovernment\$2 1c

A subject heading assigned to the record for Scotia pontificia: papal letters to Scotland before the Pontificate of Innocent III.

EX 7: 601 02\$aSpray\$cShip\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for *In the wake of the Spray* (the qualifier 'Ship' has been added since the name Spray is not distinctive).

EX 8: 601 02\$aTemplars\$cOrder of chivalry\$xHistory\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for *The Knights Templar*.

EX 9: 601 01\$aGreat Britain\$bManpower Services Commission\$z1981-1985\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for MSC corporate plan 1981, 1982, 1983, 1984, 1985.

EX 10: 601 02\$aUnited Nations\$bConference on the Law of the Sea\$d3rd\$f1973-1975\$eNew York, etc.\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record for documents on the third *UN Conference on the Law of the Sea*.

602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a family which is one of the subjects of the item, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The name of the family in access point form. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the heading. Not repeatable (EX 2).

\$j Form Subdivision

The description of this subfield can be found above the description of \$x.

\$t Title

Not used. For author/title subject headings, use field 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 2). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to further specify the topic the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

- \$z** Chronological Subdivision
A term added to a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject heading represents. Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. Not repeatable. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is intended for recording headings for family names used as subjects. These headings are structured in the same form as name headings for a family responsible for the content of an item. Subfield \$a includes the name of the family and any qualification such as '(Family)' or '(Clan)'. Such qualifications should retain their punctuation in the subfield.

This field can contain more than the name of the family in subfield \$a. In addition, terms may be added to the subject heading to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These follow the rules of the subject heading system used.

Related Fields

- 600** PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
When a person rather than a family name is the subject, field 600 is used.
- 601** CORPORATE BODY USED AS SUBJECT
When a corporate body rather than a family is the subject, field 601 is used.
- 604** NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT
When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

Examples

EX 1: 602 ##\$aSwinnerton (Family)\$jPeriodicals\$21c
A subject heading assigned to a document entitled *Swinnerton family history : heraldic and genealogical studies of the Swinnerton family*.

EX 2: 602 ##\$aArchaemenid dynasty,\$f559-330 B.C.

EX 3: 602 ##\$3029725259\$aChoiseul (famille de)\$3027244636\$xPatrimoine\$3027794512
\$z18e siècle\$2rameau

In the database, a pre-coordinated subject system code (rameau) is used, so the \$3 is repeated and one authority record number is given for each part of the heading.

604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains an author and title of a work which is one of the subjects of the item. The field is structured like the 4-- Linking Entry fields, Embedded fields technique or Standard subfields technique.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

(A) Subfields: Embedded fields technique

\$1 (one) Linking data

(See explanation under 4 – LINKING ENTRY BLOCK)

(B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique

\$a Entry Element Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t. When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

The title by which the work is known. When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to specify further the topic that the heading represents. Repeatable.

- \$y** Geographical subdivision
A term added to a subject heading to specify a place in relation to the collective uniform name/title which the subject heading represents. Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological subdivision
A term added to a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to the collective uniform name/title that the heading represents. Repeatable.
- \$3** Authority record number
The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities. Repeatable (EX 6).

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used to record the name of a work used as a subject, when it is represented by a name/title heading. When using the embedded fields technique, the title of the work is recorded in an embedded 500 Uniform Title field. The subject system code (\$2), Authority Record Number (\$3) and any subject subdivisions (\$j, \$x, \$y, \$z) required should also be carried in the embedded 500 field. The name of the author is carried in an embedded 7 - - Responsibility field.

When using the standard subfields technique, the title of the work, the name of the author and any subject subdivisions are recorded in different subfields.

Related Fields

- 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK
- 600 PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
- 601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
- 602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
- 605 TITLE USED AS SUBJECT
When a personal name, corporate body, family or title alone is the subject, the above 6 - - fields are used.

Examples

EX 1A: Embedded field technique

604 ##\$1700#1\$aBeethoven,\$bLudwig van,\$f1770-1827.\$150000\$aSymphonies,
\$sno. 5, op. 67,\$uC minor\$2lc

EX 1B: Standard subfields technique

604 ##\$aBeethoven, Ludwig van, 1770-1827.\$tSymphonies, no. 5, op. 67, C minor\$2lc

EX 2A: Embedded field technique

604 ##\$1700#0\$aOvid\$f43B.C. -17 or 18.\$4070\$150001\$aMetamorphoses\$hLiber 2
\$2lc

EX 2B: Standard subfields technique

604 ##\$aOvid, 43B.C.-17 or 18.\$tMetamorphoses. Liber 2\$2lc

EX 3A: Embedded field technique

604 ##\$171001\$aUnited States.\$150010\$aConstitution.\$h1st Amendment.\$21c

EX 3B: Standard subfields technique

604 ##\$aUnited States.\$tConstitution. 1st Amendment.\$21c

EX 4A: Embedded field technique

604 ##\$1700#1\$aCervantes Saavedra\$bMiguel de\$f1547-1616\$150001\$aDon Quixote\$jIllustrations\$21c

EX 4B: Standard subfields technique

604 ##\$aCervantes Saavedra, Miguel de, 1547-1616\$tDon Quixote\$xIllustrations\$21c

EX 5A: Embedded field technique

604 ##\$1700#1\$aAquin\$bHubert\$f1925-1977\$150010\$aTrou de mémoire\$2rameau

EX 5B: Standard subfields technique

604 ##\$3456123789\$aAquin, Hubert (1925-1977)\$tTrou de mémoire\$2rameau

EX 6A: Embedded field technique

604 ##\$1700#1\$aProust\$bMarcel\$f1871-1922\$150001\$aÀ la recherche du temps perdu\$xPersonnages\$xDictionnaires\$2rameau

EX 6B: Standard subfields technique

604 ##\$311940457\$aProust, Marcel (1871-1922)\$tÀ la recherche du temps perdu\$312045551\$xPersonnages\$311931877\$xDictionnaires\$2rameau

The agency does NOT use subfield \$j for form subdivision.

605 TITLE USED AS SUBJECT

Field definition

This field contains a title which is one of the subjects of the item being recorded. This title may be the title of a work in any form of medium, e.g. stage plays, radio programmes, etc.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The short title or title proper. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the item to which the title or uniform title refers is only a part of the work named in subfield \$a. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the item to which the title or uniform title refers is only a part of the work named in subfield \$a (EX 3). Repeatable for a subdivided part. (EX 3)

\$j Form Subdivision

The description of this subfield can be found above the description of \$x.

\$k Date of Publication

The date of publication of the item as subject when it is necessary to add it to the uniform title to distinguish the item. Not repeatable.

\$l Form Subheading

A standard phrase added to a heading to further specify the uniform title. Not repeatable.

\$m Language (when part of heading)

The language of the item when required as part of the heading because it differs from that usually associated with the work named in the heading or when the work does not

have a main language. If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single \$m. Not repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield. This includes a general material designation added to a title (EX 4, 5). Repeatable.

\$q Version (or Date of Version)

An identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the original date of the version. Not repeatable. (EX 6)

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the item. Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the uniform title. Not repeatable.

\$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

The statement that a musical work is an arrangement. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 3, 6, 7). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the title to specify the aspect that the subject heading represents (EX 2). Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a title to specify a place in relation to it that the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a title to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

\$2 System Code

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of a heading where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will normally contain a uniform title, since most other titles assigned as subjects will be treated using 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT. Any anonymous work which is the subject of the item being recorded will be entered here. Further information and examples on the contents of subfields for uniform titles are found at field 500. A title proper which is to be entered in this field should be entered in subfield \$a including in that subfield any other title information as necessary.

Related Fields**604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT**

When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

Examples**EX 1: 605 ##\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠reporter\$21c**

The Library of Congress subject heading assigned to the record for *Concerned about the planet : 'The reporter' magazine and American liberation, 1949-1968* by Martin K Doudna.

EX 2: 605 ##\$aBible\$xAbstracting and indexing\$21c

A subject heading assigned to a book about abstracting and indexing the Bible. For an item which is an index see EX 7.

EX 3: 605 ##\$aBible\$iN.T.\$iJohn XIII-XVII\$jCommentaries\$21c

A subject heading assigned to *Love revealed : meditations on chapters 13-17 of the Gospel by John* by George Bowen.

EX 4: 605 ##\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Archers\$n(Radio program)\$21c

A subject heading assigned to a book entitled *Forever Ambridge : thirty years of the Archers*, dealing with the history of a serialized radio programme.

EX 5: 605 ##\$aEmpire strikes back\$n(Motion picture)\$21c

A subject heading assigned to the record of *Once upon a galaxy : a journal of the making of 'The Empire Strikes back'*. The cataloguing agency omits leading articles (c.f. EX 4).

EX 6: 605 ##\$aAnglo-American cataloguing rules\$q2nd ed.\$jCongresses\$21c

The subject heading refers specifically to a particular edition of the work. The record in which the subject heading occurs is for *Seminar on AACR 2 : proceedings of a seminar organised by the Cataloguing and Indexing Group of the Library Association*.

EX 7: 605 ##\$aVariety\$jIndexes\$21c

EX 8A: 605 ##\$3028201159\$aLettres portugaises\$3028922603\$jTraductions allemandes
\$302779038X\$xHistoire et critique\$2rameau

or;

EX 8B (for agencies not using \$j for form subdivisions)
605 ##\$3028201159\$aLettres portugaises\$3028922603\$xTraductions allemandes
\$302779038X\$xHistoire et critique\$2rameau

In the database, a pre-coordinated subject system code (Rameau) is used, so the \$3 is repeated and one authority record number is given for each part of the heading.

606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains a common noun or noun phrase used as a subject heading.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Level of the Subject Item

The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. A term is considered primary (value '1') if it covers the main focus or subject of the material. A term covering a less important aspect is considered secondary (value '2'). Value '0' is used when no decision has been made as to whether the term is primary or secondary. Until 1994 the only value of the first indicator was blank (undefined).

0 No level specified

1 Primary term

2 Secondary term

No information available

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject headings used. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 7,8). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable (EX 8).

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the topical heading to specify the aspect that the subject heading represents (EX 2, 3). Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the topical heading to specify a place in relation to the topic that the subject heading represents (EX 2, 4). Repeatable.

- \$z** Chronological Subdivision
- A term added to the topical heading to specify the period of time in relation to the topic that the subject heading represents (EX 5). Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
- An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
- The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Repeatable (EX 9) when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of a heading where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax..

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject headings used.

Related Fields

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field 607 is used instead of 606 when the subject heading is a geographical name.

Examples

EX 1: 606 ##\$aPulmonary artery\$xCatheterization\$xHandbooks, manuals, etc\$2lc
 606 ##\$aHemodynamic monitoring\$xHandbooks, manuals, etc\$2lc
 606 ##\$aHeart Catheterization\$xinstrumentation\$xhandbooks\$2mesh
 606 ##\$aHeart Catheterization\$xinstrumentation\$xurses' instruction\$2mesh
 606 ##\$aMonitoring, Physiologic\$xhandbooks\$2mesh
 606 ##\$aMonitoring, Physiologic\$xurses' instruction\$2mesh

Both Library of Congress and Medical subject headings have been assigned to the record for *Memory bank for hemodynamic monitoring : the pulmonary artery catheter*. The record predates the use of \$j for form subdivisions.

EX 2: 606 0#\$aScaffolding\$xSafety measures\$21c
 606 0#\$aConstruction equipment\$yGreat Britain\$21c

Subject headings assigned to the record for *Safety in construction work, scaffolding* by the Health and Safety Executive.

EX 4: 606 0#\$aTrees\$yUnited States\$21c

EX 5: 606 0#\$aArts, Modern\$z20th century\$21c

EX 6: 606 1#\$aBiology\$xPeriodicals\$21c

The item is about periodicals on biology.

EX 7: 606 1# \$aBiology\$jPeriodicals\$21c

The item is a periodical on biology .

EX 8: 606 0# \$aVocal music\$jBibliography\$jUnion lists\$2lc

EX 9: 606 1# \$3frBN002790930\$aLittérature populaire française\$3frBN002123838
\$z19e siècle \$3frBN002118937\$xThèmes, motifs\$3frBN002264415\$xRecueil
d'articles \$2rameau

In the database, a pre-coordinated subject system code (rameau) is used, so the \$3 is repeated and one authority record number is given for each part of the heading.

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains a geographical name used as a subject heading.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The geographical name in the form prescribed by the system of authority headings used. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 5, 6). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to specify the aspect that the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to further specify a place that the subject heading represents (EX 5). Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to specify the period in time in relation to the name that the subject heading represents (EX 1, 2, 4). Repeatable.

\$2 System Code

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Repeatable (EX 7) when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of a heading where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will contain data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject headings used. Political jurisdictions represented by geographical names are entered in this field if they appear alone or subdivided only by subject subdivisions (EX 2, 4). Political jurisdictions subdivided by names of subordinate bodies are entered in field 601.

Related Fields**601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT**

Political jurisdictions subdivided by names of subordinate bodies used as subjects are entered in field 601.

660 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

An indication of the region covered by the work is entered in coded form in field 660.

Examples

EX 1: 607 ##\$aEurope\$xHistory\$z476-1492\$21c
607 ##\$aEurope, Western\$xHistory\$21c

Geographical subject headings assigned to the record for Froissart's *Chronicles*.

EX 2: 607 ##\$aGreat Britain\$xPolitics and government\$z1660-1714\$21c

A geographical subject heading assigned to the record for Macaulay's *History of England*.

EX 3: 607 ##\$aExmouth, Eng.\$xSocial life and customs\$21c

A geographical subject heading assigned to the record for *Mrs Beer's house*, by Patricia Beer.

EX 4: 607 ##\$aRome\$xPolitics and government\$z510-30 B.C.\$21c

A geographical subject heading assigned to the record for *A short guide to electioneering : Quintus Cicero's 'Commentariolum petitionis'*.

EX 5: 607 ##\$aUnited States\$xBoundaries\$yCanada\$jPeriodicals\$21c

EX 6: 607 ##\$aEurope\$jRoad maps\$21c

EX 7: 607 ##\$3frBN001714126\$aHaute-Savoie\$yFrance\$3frBN0015344243\$xmeurs et coutumes\$3frBN002124673\$z1870-1914\$2rameau

In the database, a pre-coordinated subject system code (rameau) is used, so the \$3 is repeated and one authority record number is given for each part of the heading.

608 FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS HEADING

Field Definition

This field contains a term or terms indicating the form, genre and/or physical characteristics of the item being described.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The term in the form prescribed by the system of form headings used. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 6). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the form heading to specify the aspect that the heading represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the form heading to specify a place in relation to the topic that the heading represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the form heading to specify the period of time in relation to the topic that the heading represents. Repeatable.

\$2 System Code

An identification in coded form of the system from which the form heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield 2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is intended to be used with the *UNIMARC Authorities Format*. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of a heading where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

\$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Since there are no internationally accepted codes, the codes from *USMARC Code List for Organizations*, which includes codes for many non-U.S. library agencies, are recommended. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. If the institution holds more than one copy the subfield should also contain the shelfmark after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of form headings used.

Related Fields**606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT**

Field 606 contains a topical name used as subject.

Examples

EX 1: 608 ##\$aEmblem books\$yGermany\$z17th century\$2rbgenr

A form heading constructed according to Genre terms : thesaurus for use in rare book and special *collections cataloging*.

EX 2: 608 ##\$aDictionaries\$xFrench\$z18th century\$2rbgenr

The item is a French dictionary published in 1770.

EX 3: 608 ##\$aBritish marble papers (Paper)\$yGermany\$z17th century\$2rbpap

The term indicating physical characteristics of the item constructed according to *Paper terms* : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special *collections cataloging*.

EX 4: 608 ##\$aVellum bindings (Binding)\$yItaly\$z16th century\$2rbbin

EX 5: 608 ##\$aArmorial bindings (Provenance)\$2rbprov\$5UkCU

The term indicating physical characteristics of the copy in Cambridge University Library.

EX 6: 608##\$aChildren's stories\$jPictorial works\$2lc

EX 7: 608 ##\$aDetective and mystery stories\$2gsafd

610 UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS

Field Definition

This field is used to record subject terms that are not derived from controlled subject heading lists.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Level of the Subject Term

The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. A term is considered primary (value '1') if it covers the main focus or subject of the material. A term covering a less important aspect is considered secondary (value '2'). Value '0' is used when no decision is made as to whether the term is primary or secondary.

0 No level specified

1 Primary term

2 Secondary term

Indicator 2: blank (undefined)

Subfields

\$a Subject Term

Repeatable when more than one term is assigned for the item.

Notes on Field Contents

Terms belonging to structured subject thesauri should be coded in fields 600-607 with the appropriate \$2 System Code.

Related Fields

600-607 Subject Heading fields

Examples

EX 1: 610 1#\$afuel cells\$amolten carbonate\$apower

EX 2: 610 1#\$amicrographics\$aCOM\$adata capture\$acomputer-assisted retrieval

EX 3: 610 2#\$aKing, Donald W.\$aWilliams, James G.\$aNetworks, Topology\$aPublic corporation

EX 4: 610 1#\$aCorporation for Open Systems\$aOSI

615 SUBJECT CATEGORY (PROVISIONAL)

Field Definition

This field contains a higher level subject category in coded and/or textual form.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

- \$a** Subject Category Entry Element Text
The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject categories used (EX 3, 4). Not repeatable.
- \$x** Subject Category Subdivision Text
The term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the \$a subfield. Repeatable.
- \$n** Subject Category Code
A coded representation of a subject category (EX 1, 2, 4). Repeatable.
- \$m** Subject Category Subdivision Code
A coded representation of a subject category subdivision (EX 2). Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject category is derived. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
The control number for the authority record for the category. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may contain data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject categories used. It may contain the category in textual form, coded form, or both forms.

Examples

EX 1: 615 ##\$nK800\$2agris

EX 2: 615 ##\$nZ1\$m.542.248.797\$2mesh

The MeSH notational equivalent of the subject heading for Slovakia. The textual medical subject headings are held in fields 600-607.

EX 3: 615 ##\$aFuture\$2liv

616 TRADEMARK USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains a trademark which is one of the subjects of the item, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry element

The trademark name in access point form. Not repeatable

\$f Dates

The dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the heading, for example, as qualifiers. Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates (EX 3, 4). Repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to further specify the topic the heading represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject heading to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject heading represents. Repeatable.

\$2 System code

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject heading is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with the *UNIMARC Manual – Authorities Format*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A trademark or mark is a distinctive word, phrase, logo, design, or any other device that can be represented graphically, used by a business or company to identify its products or services and distinguish them from the products and services made, sold or provided by others. Some examples are: *Levis* (trademark of Levi Strauss & Co.); *Pentium* (trademark of Intel Corporation), *Decca* (trademark of Decca Record Company).

Under the common term trademark other specific categories of marks such as service marks, trade dress, collective marks, etc., can be found.

The trade name of a business can function as a mark as well. For instance Sony Music Entertainment Inc. uses its trade name Sony Music as a trademark on its line of sound recordings.

As far as sound recordings are concerned, the trademark, commonly known as the "label", together with the label number uniquely identifies each commercial recording. (see field 071 Publisher's Number (Sound Recordings and Music))

Related Fields

071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER (SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC)

Examples

EX 1: 616 ##\$aKitekat\$2rameau

EX 2: 616 ##\$aErato\$cmarque phonographique\$xhistoire\$2rameau

EX 3: 616 ##\$aDanone\$cmarque\$2rameau

EX 4: 616 ##\$aMelodiã\$cmarque russe\$2rameau

EX 5: 616 ##\$3031102476\$aLa Vache qui rit\$cmarque déposée\$2rameau

617 HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains a structured access point for places relating to the subject of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

- \$a Country (Nation State)
Country. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$b State or Province, etc.
First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable
- \$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction.
Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$d City, etc.
The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see \$k). Not repeatable.
- \$e Venue.
Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc. Repeatable. (EX 4-6, 8, 9)
- \$f Date
Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats. (EX 4-9)
- \$g Season. Not repeatable (EX 4)
- \$h Occasion. Not repeatable (EX 6, 8, 9)
- \$i Final date. Not repeatable (EX 9)

- \$k** Subsection of City, etc.
Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. (EX 11-13)
- \$m** Other Geographical Regions or Features
Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$n** Extraterrestrial Areas
Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$o** Geographical areas such as world, hemisphere, continent: larger area than country. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used (EX 10).
- \$2** System Code
The source of the terms used for subfields \$a – \$d and \$k – \$n when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes in *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* are recommended. If no code is available, an abbreviation of the full title of the source may be used. Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g., Country, Province, County, City; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g., City alone, depending both on institutional practice and the fulness of the provenance information available.

Subfields \$a, \$c, \$k, \$m, \$n and \$o are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example \$oAmericas\$oNorth America\$aCanada. When used, \$e will normally be the last-cited alphabetic subfield.

For subfield \$2 System Code, if no approved code for the thesaurus, etc., exists, abbreviate its name using ISO 4:1997 – *Rules for the abbreviation of title words and titles of publications*.

Related Fields

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject headings used, including topical, geographical and chronological subdivisions.

Examples

EX 1 – 6 are taken from the examples in 607 for comparison, with some additions

EX 1: 617 ##\$aEurope
617 ##\$aEurope\$aWestern Europe

EX 2: 617 ##\$aGreat Britain

EX 3: 617 ##\$aUnited Kingdom\$bEngland\$cDevon\$dExmouth

EX 4: 617 ##\$dRome (Ancient)

EX 5: 617 ##\$aUnited States
617 ##\$aCanada

EX 6: 617 ##\$aEurope

EX 7: 617 ##\$dBaghdad

EX 8: 617 ##\$aAsia\$mHimalaya\$mCentral Nepal Himalaya\$mKhumbu Range\$mMakalu
\$2pemracs
From: Peakbagger.com Mountain Range Classification System

EX 9: 617 ##\$bNorth Carolina\$cSwain\$mGreat Smoky Mountains National Park\$2gnis
From: U.S. Geological Survey Geographic Names Information System.

Note: neither 'pemacs' nor 'gnis' is registered as a MARC code yet, but 'tgn' is valid.

620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.

Field Definition

This field contains, in access point form, a place of publication, production, etc. **or a place and date of performance, or recording.** The field may include the name of a country, state or province, county and/or city.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of data

Publication or production

1 Performance

2 First performance

3 Recording

4 Live recording

5 Remastering

0 Not specified

Indicator 2: Presence of data on source

Not applicable / unknown

0 Data not present on source

1 Data present on source

Subfields

\$a Country (Nation State). Not repeatable.

\$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable

\$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction.

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$d City, etc.

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see \$k). Not repeatable.

- \$e Venue.
Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc. Repeatable. (EX 4-6, 8, 9, 14)
- \$f Date
Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats. (EX 4-9)
- \$g Season. Not repeatable (EX 4)
- \$h Occasion. Not repeatable (EX 6, 8, 9)
- \$i Final date. Not repeatable (EX 9)
- \$k Subsection of City, etc.
Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. (EX 11-13)
- \$m Other Geographical Regions or Features
Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$n Extraterrestrial Areas
Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$o Geographical areas such as world, hemisphere, continent: larger area than country. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used (EX 10).
- \$2 System Code
The source of the terms used for subfields \$a – \$d and \$k – \$n when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes in *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* are recommended. If no code is available, an abbreviation of the full title of the source may be used. Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.
- \$3 Authority Record Number
The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Not repeatable.

Related Fields**621 PLACE AND DATE OF PROVENANCE**

Copy-specific field containing, in access point form, information relating to the history of a specific item subsequent to its publication or production, etc.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g. country, state, and city; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g. city alone, depending on institutional practice.

Subfields \$a, \$c, \$k, \$m, \$n and \$o are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example \$aAmericas\$aNorth America\$aCanada.

Subfields \$k – \$n when used will normally *precede* subfields \$e – \$i.

Subfields \$m Other Geographic Features and \$n Extraterrestrial Areas will find little use in the context of publication and performance, but are included here for completeness and compatibility with other fields. A performance given on a cruise liner, for example, might be coded \$m<Ocean>\$e<Ship>\$f<date>

Subfield \$o will normally appear before subfield \$a.

Examples

EX 1: 620 ##\$398-8685\$aUnited States\$bAlabama\$dMontgomery

An item published in the city of Montgomery, Alabama. The field is in hierarchical form. There is a record for Montgomery in the authorities file, with field 001 containing 98-8685.

EX 2: 620 ##\$dRoma

An item published in Rome. The field is in non-hierarchical form.

EX 3: 620 ##\$aUnited States\$bVirginia\$cPrince William County\$dHaymarket

An item published in Haymarket, Virginia. The field is in hierarchical form. County is also recorded.

EX 4: 620 11\$aItaly\$dMilano\$eTeatro Ducale\$f1794\$gAutunno

A libretto of an opera performed in Milan, Teatro Ducale, in the autumn of 1794. Place and date are indicated on the source.

EX 5: 620 41\$dSydney\$eSydney Opera House\$eConcert hall\$f19990510

A live recording of a concert performed at the Concert hall of Sydney Opera House on 10 May 1999. Data are present on the source.

EX 6: 620 41\$aItaly\$bPuglia\$cLecce\$dSerrano\$ePiazza del Duomo\$f1970\$hFesta dell'Assunta

Video recording of a play performed in the Cathedral Place at Serrano for the Assumption Feast. The field is in hierarchical form. Recording data are indicated on the source.

EX 7: 620 51\$aGreat Britain\$dLondon\$f2002

An item remastered in London, Great Britain. Data are present on the source.

- EX 8: 200 10\$aS.N.D.B. / Sinf.a del Sepolcro / 1705
321 1#\$aSeifertO\$cp. 582, 896-897
321 1#\$aEverett, Paul, Opening "Il Sepolcro": Ziani, Vivaldi and a question of stylistic authenticity, in: Vivaldi vero e falso, problemi di attribuzione, a c. di A. Fanna e M. Talbot, Firenze, Olschki, 1992, pp. 69-89
321 1#\$aMusikalische Werke der Kaiser Ferdinand 3., Leopold 1. und Joseph 1., hrsg. von Guido Adler, Prag, Artaria, 1892-93, v. 2-3, n. 91
620 20\$aAT\$dVienna\$eHofburg Kapelle\$f17050410\$hVenerdi Santo

A manuscript score of the sepolcro *Le due passioni* of M. A. Ziani first performed in Vienna, Hofburg Kapelle, on 10 April 1705 for the Good Friday. Place, full date and occasion are not indicated on the source but in catalogues and bibliographies entered in repeated field 321.
- EX 9: 620 41\$aIT\$bBasilicata\$cMatera\$dScalzano ionico\$ePiazza del comune\$f20031127
\$i20031128\$hinquinamento atomico

A video recording of a political demonstration which took place in Piazza del Comune in the city of Scalzano Ionico, on 27-28 November 2003, against atomic pollution. The field is in hierarchical form. Data are present on the source.
- EX 10: 620 ##\$oWorld\$oEurope\$aUnited Kingdom\$bEngland\$cGreater London\$dLondon
\$kCity of Westminster\$kWestminster\$2tgn

Complete hierarchy from *Getty Thesaurus of Geographic Names* for an item published in Westminster
- EX 11: 620 ##\$aUnited Kingdom\$bEngland\$kWestminster
- EX 12: 620 ##\$dLondon\$kWestminster

Two shorter forms for EX 10
- EX 13: 620 ##\$nMoon\$nApennines

The Moon is entered in \$n as are any geographical subdivisions.
- EX 14: 620 ##\$eChallenger II

A spaceship

621 PLACE AND DATE OF PROVENANCE

Field Definition

This copy-specific field contains a structured access point for places and dates relating to the provenance of the item.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of data

- # Publication or production
- 1 Performance
- 2 First performance
- 3 Recording
- 4 Live recording
- 5 Remastering
- 0 Not specified

Indicator 2: Presence of data on source

- # Not applicable / unknown
- 0 Data not present on source
- 1 Data present on source

Subfields

- \$a Country (Nation State) or Larger Entity Country. Optional, Not repeatable.
- \$b State or Province, etc.
First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable
- \$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction.
Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$d City, etc.
The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see \$k). Not repeatable.

- \$e** Building, vehicle, etc.
Specific locations: named houses, ships, urban spaces, etc. Repeatable when the location forms part of another, e.g. \$eEly Cathedral\$eChapter House
- \$f** Date 1
Provenance date given either in association with a place or separately. Not repeatable.
The sole date, or the opening date of a span. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601 (basic, i.e. condensed form, without hyphens). Exceptionally, if a month, or month and day are given, but no specific year, replace each missing year digit with 'u' (EX 2).
- \$g** Season
Natural seasons (Spring, summer... Monsoon... etc.) also broad cultural seasons (Harvest, etc). Seasons associated with religious festivals and rites (Christmas, etc.) and other human activities should be coded as occasions (\$h). Not repeatable.
- \$h** Occasion
An occasion associated with religious festivals and rites and other human activities (e.g., The Feast of the Assumption, Diwali, Christmas, Horsefair, etc.). Not repeatable.
- \$i** Date 2:
The closing date of a span. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601 (basic, i.e. condensed form, without hyphens). Exceptionally, if a month, or month and day are given, but no specific year, replace each missing year digit with 'u'. Not repeatable.
- \$k** Subsection of City, etc..
Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable for hierarchies where multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$m** Other geographic regions or features.
Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. islands, mountains, etc.
Repeatable for hierarchies where multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$n** Extraterrestrial area
Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographical features of such entities.
Repeatable for hierarchies where multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$o** Geographical areas such as world, hemisphere, continent: larger area than country.
Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used (EX 10).

- \$2 System code
- The source of the terms used for subfields \$a – \$h when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes from *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* are recommended. If no code is included, a clearly recognisable abbreviation of the full name of the source may be used. Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.
- \$3 Authority Record Number
- The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities. Not repeatable.
- \$5 Institution to which the field applies.
- Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organisations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). It is strongly recommended that the shelfmark of the item should always be added after a colon; this is essential if the institution holds more than one copy. Not repeatable.
- \$6 Interfield Linking Data
- This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. It is envisaged that these will normally be one of the 7X2 fields for former owners, donors, auctioneers, etc.
- The instructions for the use of this subfield form the first part of Section 3.10 of *UNIMARC manual : bibliographic format*. \$6/0 Linking explanation code will always have the value 'b' = Link associated with a copy, unless an alternative graphic representation or script is involved. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g., Country, Province, County, City; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g., City or house alone, depending both on institutional practice and the fulness of the provenance information available.

The field is by definition copy-specific and must always contain subfield \$5. Interfield linking data \$6 should be used where possible to link the field to a field for an access point (702, 712, 722) for former owners, donors, etc. and to field 317 Provenance Note.

Subfields \$a, \$c, \$k, \$m and \$n are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example \$aAmericas\$aNorth America\$aCanada..

The date subfields \$f – \$i will follow after any of the place subfields, including \$k – \$n, if present.

Subfields \$m Other Geographic Features and \$n Extraterrestrial Areas will be rarely used in the context of provenance, but are included here for completeness and compatibility with other fields. An item autographed on a cruise liner, for example, might be coded \$m<Ocean>\$e<Ship>\$f<date>

Related Fields**317 PROVENANCE NOTE**

This field contains a note relating to the provenance of the item. It corresponds to the ISBD(A) Notes Relating to the Copy in Hand element in the Note area.

620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.

This field contains access points for place of publication, production, etc., or place and date of performance or recording. It is not copy-specific: the information is valid for all copies of an edition or issue of an item.

702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY**712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY****722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY**

These fields may contain access points for former owners, donors, auctioneers, etc. When used in conjunction with fields 317 and 621 they must contain \$4 Relator code and \$5 Institution to which the field applies and preferably \$6 Interfield Linking Data, especially if there is more than one provenance note for a specific copy.

Examples

EX 1: The \$6 codes 01-02 below link the related fields.

Provenance notes:

317 ##\$6b01\$aSignature "Aymon", 17e siècle, au f. a2\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 233

317 ##\$6b02\$aEx libris ms. 16e siècle au titre d'Antoine Gérard. Ex-libris ms. 17e siècle au f. a2 du Collège de la Trinité des Jésuites de Lyon\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501

Provenance place and date access points:

621 ##\$aFrance\$f16\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 233

621 ##\$6b01\$aFrance\$f15\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501

621 ##\$6b02\$aFrance\$cRhône\$dLyon\$eCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus\$f16\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501

Personal and corporate name access points:

702 #1\$6b01\$aGérard\$bAntoine\$factif en 15--\$4390\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501

712 02\$6b01\$aCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de

Jésus\$cLyon\$4390\$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501

EX 2: 317 ##\$aInscription on fly-leaf: To Louisa, from E.W., with love, 25th March.
621 ##\$fuuuu0325

Inscription shows a date without a year. There is no indication of place.

EX 3: 621 ##\$6b01\$aGreat Britain\$bEngland\$cHertfordshire\$dWare\$eWare Park
 \$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124
 621 ##\$6b02\$aGreat Britain\$f17731227
 621 ##\$6b03\$aGreat Britain\$bWales\$cGlamorgan\$dPont-y-clun\$eTal-y-garn\$5UK-
 WIAbNL: WingU124

Personal name – secondary responsibility:

702 #1\$6b01\$aByde\$bEdward\$dd. 1712\$4390\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124
 702 #1\$6b02\$aDimsdale\$bThomas\$cBaron\$f1712-1800\$4390\$4320\$5UK-WIAbNL:
 WingU124
 702 #1\$6b02\$aZachary\$bJohn\$4390\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124
 702 #1\$6b03\$aClark\$bGeorge Thomas\$f1808-1898\$4390\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124

Coded fields for provenance data and associated secondary responsibility fields for a copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654*, in National Library of Wales. Subfield \$5 links all the copy-specific fields. Closely related data in the 621 and 702 fields are linked by \$6 subfields. See 316 EX 15, 317 EX 10 and 702 EX 5.

626 TECHNICAL DETAILS ACCESS (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES) [OBSOLETE]

Field Definition

This field contains access points for types of computers, operating systems, and programming languages used for electronic resources. The access points may be used for on-line access or for selecting and arranging records for the production of printed indexes.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Make and Model of Machines

The type of machines on which the program will run. Not repeatable.

\$b Programming Languages

The programming languages in which the software is written. Not repeatable.

\$c Operating System

The name and version of the operating system needed to use the program. Not repeatable.

OBSOLETE: USE 337 WITH CONTROLLED VOCABULARY

Examples

EX 1: 626 ##\$aIBM PC\$bPascal\$cDOS 1.1

An access point for a microcomputer software program intended to run on an IBM PC under DOS operating system version 1.1; it was written in the Pascal programming language.

EX 2: 626 ##\$aApple II\$cDOS 3.3

An access point for a microcomputer software program intended to run on an Apple II computer under DOS operating system version 3.3.

660 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

Field Definition

This field contains an indication of the region covered by the work, in coded form, according to the Library of Congress geographic area codes.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for each region indicated.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfield

\$a Code

Geographic area code. 7 characters. Not repeatable. For codes see Appendix D.

Notes on Field Contents

The geographic area code was developed by the Library of Congress to facilitate retrieval of records by a geographic approach. The geographic area code is applied to an item when its text has a geographic orientation.

The coding scheme contains seven lower case alphabetic characters and/or hyphens and, as far as possible, provides a hierarchical breakdown of geographical and political entities.

When more than one geographic area code is assigned, each is entered in a separate field.

Related Fields

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

The area code does not replace the geographical name used as subject, but may be included in the record in addition to it.

Examples

EX 1: 660 ##\$an-us-md

A geographic area code for a book entitled *Crabs in the United States*, concentrating on the state of Maryland.

EX 2: 660 ##\$ae-gx---

A geographic area code for a book entitled *Popular songs of working-class culture* relating to Germany.

EX 3: 660 ##\$aa-np---

A geographic area code for a book entitled *Buddha and Buddhism* about Buddhism in Nepal.

EX 4: 660 ##\$an-uso--
660 ##\$an-usm--

Geographic area codes for a book entitled *Collection of steamboat records relating to steamboats operating in the Ohio and Mississippi Valleys* concentrating on both the Ohio and Mississippi rivers. Field 660 is repeated for code for each river.

EX 5: 660 ##\$an-us---
660 ##\$ae-fr---
660 ##\$aa-ja---

Geographic area codes for a book entitled *Comparative studies of national libraries relating to the United States, France, and Japan*. Field 660 is repeated for each region.

661 TIME PERIOD CODE

Field Definition

An indication of the date covered by the work, coded according to the Time Period Code (formerly called the Chronological Coverage Code).

Occurrence

Repeatable for each period covered when an item deals with a number of distinct periods (EX 1).

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Time Period Code

It consists of four alphanumeric characters. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

In the absence of an international coding scheme for time period codes, the scheme which used to be used in the USMARC format (details in Appendix E) should be used. The code is not used for prehistoric dates, e.g. geological eras.

Related Fields

122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF ITEM CONTENT

This field contains a formatted indication of the period covered by the item. It holds greater detail.

Examples

See also the examples in Appendix E.

EX 1: 661 ##\$aw3x0

661 ##\$ad5d3

The codes (the 19th century and Greek eras) for "The Victorians and Ancient Greece" by Richard Jenkyns.

EX 2: 661 ##\$ad6d6

The codes for ca 300 B.C. As only one date is involved, the code is repeated to create the four characters.

EX 3: 661 ##\$ax-x-

The codes for a book on the 20th century.

670 PRECIS

Field Definition

This field is used to contain subject indexing data constructed according to the Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$b Subject Indicator Number

The Subject Indicator Number (SIN) is a fixed-length number ending in a modulus 11 check digit. It identifies uniquely the address of the subject packet on a machine readable file. Not repeatable.

\$c String

The string is a sequence of subject index terms in which each term is preceded by a code which determines how it should appear in entries generated by the computer in printed indexes, COM output, card catalogues, etc. Not repeatable.

\$e Reference Indicator Number

A Reference Indication Number (RIN) is a fixed-length number ending in a modulus 11 check digit which identifies the address of a term in the machine-held thesaurus used as the source of *See* and *See also* references in a printed index. Repeatable.

\$z Language of Terms

A three character language code giving the language of the terms used in the string. For codes see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The set of PRECIS data consisting of string and RINs is identified by the SIN and is termed a subject packet. The use of the data to generate printed index entries is dependent on specific software capable of handling the manipulation coding in accordance with a set of definite rules.

Examples

EX 1: 670 ##\$b0479322\$c*z11030*atimber*z21030*adamage*vby*wto*z31030*atermites
\$e0236536\$e0236551\$zeng

675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)

Field Definition

This field contains a class number applied to the item according to the Universal Decimal Classification scheme, with an indication of the edition being used.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number

The class number as taken from the UDC schedules. Not repeatable.

\$v Edition

An identification of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken. Not repeatable.

\$z Language of edition

The language in coded form of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken. For codes see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

\$3 Classification Record Number

The control number for the classification record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Classification Format*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is taken from the version of the UDC schedules used by the agency preparing the record. UDC is produced in various language versions each of which is revised from time to time and published as a new edition. Each published edition of UDC is derived from the UDC Consortium's Master Reference File.

Examples

EX 1: 675 ##\$a633.13-155 (410) "18"\$v4\$zeng

The class number constructed from the schedules of the 4th English edition of UDC for *Machinery for harvesting oats in Great Britain in the 19th century*.

EX 2: 675 ##\$a681.3.04.071.8:025.3:05:07\$v4\$zeng

The class number constructed for *Data elements essential to the interchange of serials records*.

676 DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION

Field Definition

This field contains a class number applied to the item being recorded according to the Dewey Decimal Classification.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number

The number as taken from the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules. Prime marks are indicated by /. Not repeatable.

\$v Edition

The number of the edition used (EX 1-7). An 'a' is added to the number to indicate abridged edition (EX 6). Not repeatable.

\$z Language of edition

The language in coded form of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken (EX 7). For codes see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

\$3 Classification Record Number

The control number for the classification record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Classification Format*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is entered in subfield \$a in the form prescribed by the schedules used by the agency preparing the record. The number may include prime marks (/), which indicate internationally agreed points at which the number may be truncated. The number should not include extensions used solely to assign a book-mark to an individual item.

Subfield \$z should be used only if the translated version contains differences from the original, e.g. when parts of the schedule have been rewritten to cover local requirements.

Examples

EX 1: 676 ##\$3c12458\$a943.0840924\$v19

The class number for a book entitled *Kaiser Wilhelm II : new interpretations*, a collection of biographical essays on Wilhelm II, Emperor of Germany, 1890-1917. The item is classified according to the nineteenth edition of the schedules. The corresponding classification record has 001 c12458.

EX 2: 676 ##\$a823.912\$v19

The class number for a book entitled *Paddington at the station*, a children's storybook. The item is classified according to the nineteenth edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules.

EX 3: 676 ##\$a823/.912\$v19

The class number for the same work where the agency uses prime marks.

EX 4: 676 ##\$a001.64/092/2\$v19

A class number for a book entitled "Computer pioneers".

EX 5: 676 ##\$aA823/.2\$v19

The class number for a book of Australian fiction of the period 1890-1945. The use of A823.2 to distinguish it from 823.2 (which indicates British fiction of the period 1400-1558) is allowed by the schedules.

EX 6: 676 ##\$a629.132\$v13a

A class number for a book entitled *Pilot's weather: the commonsense approach to meteorology*. The item is classified according to the 13th Abridged edition. The 21st, full, edition would class the book at 629. 1324.

EX 7: 676 ##\$a944/.0252\$v21\$zfre

A class number from the French 21st edition for a book on France at the time of Philip le Bon. The main edition has no subdivisions of 944 beyond 025 (Period of the House of Valois); the French edition has a number for each monarch.

680 LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION

Field Definition

This field contains a class number applied to the item according to the Library of Congress classification schedules, with the optional addition of a book number applied to an individual book to identify it uniquely in the cataloguing agency's collections.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Class number

The class number taken from the Library of Congress classification schedules. Not repeatable.

\$b Book number

The individual book number applied by the cataloguing agency. Not repeatable.

\$3 Classification Record Number

The control number for the classification record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Classification Format*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A Library of Congress class number may be applied by any agency in possession of the Library of Congress Classification Schedules.

Examples

EX 1: 680 ##\$aQL737.C27C723\$b.I74

The class number for *A proposed delineation of critical grizzly bear habitat in the Yellowstone region : a monograph presented at the Fourth International Conference on Bear Research and Management*. A book number has been added.

EX 2: 680 ##\$aPZ8.3.A6A6

The class number for *The adventures of Egbert the Easter egg* by Richard Willard Armour.

686 OTHER CLASS NUMBERS

Field Definition

This field contains class numbers from classification systems which are not internationally used but which are widely understood, published schemes.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Class number

The class number taken from the classification scheme. Repeatable.

\$b Book Number

The book number applied by the assigning agency. Repeatable.

\$c Classification Subdivision

A subdivision of the class number taken from the classification scheme. Repeatable.

\$v Edition

The number of the scheme edition used (EX 3). An "a" is added to the number to indicate abridged edition. Not repeatable

\$2 System Code

A code for the classification scheme used in formulating the number. For a list of system codes, see Appendix G. Not repeatable.

\$3 Classification Record Number

The control number for the classification record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Classification Format*. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1: 686 ##\$aW1\$bRE359\$2usnlm

A U.S. National Library of Medicine class number.

EX 2: 686 ##\$a281.9\$bC81A\$2usnal

A U.S. National Agricultural Library class number.

EX 3: 686 ##\$a141\$2pcdm\$v03

686 ##\$a1.341\$2pcdm\$v04

Numbers for Jazz Be-bop according to the third and fourth edition of the Principes de classement des documents musicaux applicables aux collections de prêt.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Block

This block contains names of persons and corporate bodies having some form of responsibility for the item described (creation, ownership, marketing, etc.). This responsibility is defined broadly to include all persons, corporate bodies or families associated with an item including publishers, producers, distributors, etc., when an access point is required. It also includes trademarks under which certain types of materials such as sound recordings are published. The following fields are defined:

Personal Names

- 700 Personal Name – Primary Responsibility
- 701 Personal Name – Alternative Responsibility
- 702 Personal Name – Secondary Responsibility

Corporate Body and Meeting Names

- 710 Corporate Body Name – Primary Responsibility
- 711 Corporate Body Name – Alternative Responsibility
- 712 Corporate Body Name – Secondary Responsibility

Family Names

- 720 Family Name – Primary Responsibility
- 721 Family Name – Alternative Responsibility
- 722 Family Name – Secondary Responsibility

Miscellaneous

- 716 Trademark
- 730 Name – Entity Responsible

Uniform Headings

- 740 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts – Primary Responsibility
- 741 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts – Alternative Responsibility
- 742 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts – Secondary Responsibility

Notes on Field Contents

Responsibility

One person, corporate body or family may be selected as having primary responsibility. In some cataloguing codes this is called the main entry. Any other persons, corporate bodies or families having equal responsibility are considered to have alternative responsibility. If a given cataloguing code does not embody the concept of main entry, all persons, corporate bodies and families having equal responsibility may be coded as if they had alternative responsibility. Persons, corporate bodies or families having tangential responsibility (e.g., editors, producers, distributors, publishers, translators,

illustrators, etc.) may be coded as having secondary responsibility. If it is not possible to determine any level of responsibility, all names should be coded as alternative.

Main entry under title:

In records catalogued according to codes recognising the concept of main entry, when no personal or corporate name has been specified as having primary responsibility for an item, it can be assumed that main entry is under title. Access points for persons or bodies associated with the item are given in the alternative or secondary responsibility fields as appropriate. For example, multiple authors, which preclude an author main entry under some cataloguing codes, would each be considered as having alternative responsibility; whereas the editor of a collection (which is entered under title by some cataloguing codes) would be considered to have secondary responsibility. When the main entry is under title, the main entry will be found in field 500 if present, otherwise in field 200.

700 PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of the person considered to have primary responsibility for a work in an access point form, provided that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of main entry.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. It may not occur in the same record as field 710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY or field 720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY, since a record can have only one access point with primary responsibility. If the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules or the source format does not distinguish it, this field does not occur: field 701 is used for all personal headings (see Related Fields).

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the name is entered under the first occurring name (forename) or in direct order or whether it is entered under a surname, family name, patronymic or equivalent, usually with inversion (EX 5).

0 Name entered under forename or direct order

1 Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic, etc.)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (EX 1-11, 14). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (EX 6, 7, 8, 12, 15, 16). Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (EX 8, 16).

- \$d** Roman Numerals
- Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (EX 12). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (EX 17). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.
- \$f** Dates
- The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (EX 15). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.
- \$g** Expansion of Initials of Forename
- The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required (EX 2). Not repeatable.
- \$p** Affiliation/address
- This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared (EX 18). Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
- The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities* (EX 3). Not repeatable.
- \$4** Relator Code
- A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers. Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix C. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 145. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form:

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record. Dates may be entered according to different calendars.

Selection of subfields:

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules, or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

One way of conceiving of the differences between Entry Element (\$a), Part of Name Other than Entry Element (\$b), and Additions to Names Other than Dates (\$c) is by referring to their use. The first element, entry element, is the word under which the entry would be formed in an ordered list. The second element subdivides the list ordered by the first element. The third element, Additions to Names Other than Dates, will either be used as a third filing element, or may in some cases, especially when it precedes the Part of Name Other than Entry Element, be ignored for ordering purposes.

Where family names begin with a particle such as a preposition, it will be placed at the start of subfield \$a. If the name files under the next element after the particle, the particle will usually be placed at the end of the name. It is recommended that these particles be entered in subfield \$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element (EX 9, 10, 11).

Titles of address, epithets or qualifiers to names added by the cataloguer should be entered as Additions to Names Other than Dates, subfield \$c.

Punctuation:

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record; therefore agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (See Appendix K).

Related Fields

200 \$f, \$g TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility.

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. The name of the person mentioned in \$f or in some cases \$g to whom is attributed primary responsibility for the item (if any) will be entered in 700 in a form suitable for an access point.

701 PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

If there are further persons considered to have equal or alternative responsibility to the person named in field 700, field 701 is used to record the required access points for these. This will occur when documents are written 'by Glenn L. Jenkins, Adelbert M. Knevel, Frank E. Di Gangi', or in the provisions of certain cataloguing rules when complementary text and illustrations, for example photographs and accompanying text are the responsibility of different persons. One or other of the persons with equal responsibility will be entered in field 700, the other(s) in 701, without any implication that the ones entered in 701 fields have any less responsibility for the item than the one entered in 700. Where the cataloguing rules do not recognise 'main entry' primary personal responsibility, headings are entered in field 701 and field 700 is not used.

702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

If there are persons considered to have less responsibility than the person named in field 700 they should be entered in 702 fields.

Examples

EX 1: 700 #1\$aBenson,\$bRowland S.

The name in access point form: Benson, Rowland S.

EX 2: 700 #1\$aLawrence\$bD.H

700 #1\$aLawrence\$bDavid Herbert

700 #1\$aLawrence\$bD.H.\$gDavid Herbert

The above examples illustrate different 700 fields for the same entity that result from various agencies because of variations in the access point form: Lawrence, D.H. or Lawrence, David Herbert or Lawrence, D.H. (David Herbert).

The variations result from the application of different cataloguing rules for headings. The third example above includes parentheses to distinguish between the preferred form of the forenames and the full form.

EX 3: 700 #1\$3014678\$aBridges-Webb,\$bCharles

Charles Bridges-Webb (a hyphenated name) is entered under Bridges-Webb. The authority file number in the system is 014678.

EX 4: 700 #1\$aDay Lewis,\$bCecil

C. Day Lewis has a compound surname without a hyphen. The cataloguing code enters the name as: Day Lewis, Cecil.

EX 5: 700 #0\$aMao Tse Tung

700 #1\$aMao,\$bTse Tung

Chinese names are in normal usage (outside cataloguing) written with the family name first. This results in differing treatment among cataloguing codes. Mao Tse-Tung (to use one possible rendering of the name into the roman alphabet) may be entered according to some cataloguing codes as: Mao Tse-Tung; according to others as Mao, Tse-Tung. This is because some codes feel that the punctuation, in this case a separating comma ',', represents the division between family name and given names while others feel that a comma denotes inversion from the usual form and omit it here since no inversion has been required.

Note that when the name is entered in direct order, i.e. under the name which comes first, and the whole of the name is entered in the same subfield, the second indicator, Form of Name Indicator, is set to 0. However, if the first element is regarded as a surname by analogy with Western treatment of surnames, then the second indicator is set to 1.

EX 6: 700 #1\$aStanhope,\$cLady\$bHester

An author has a title which comes before the given names according to the cataloguing code used. The order of subfields is retained, as always in UNIMARC.

EX 7: 700 #1\$aParker,\$bTheodore\$c(Spirit)

The cataloguing code of the source format stipulates that epithets be used under certain circumstances:

Parker, Theodore (*Spirit*).

EX 8: 700 #1\$aArundel,\$bPhilip Howard,\$cEarl of,\$cSaint

An individual has two separate titles; they are entered in separate subfields. According to the cataloguing code used, 'Arundel' is the entry element.

EX 9: 700 #1\$aBergh,\$bGeorge van der

Entry in catalogue: Bergh, George van der. Depending on the prefix, names are sometimes entered under the prefix, at other times not.

EX 10: 700 #1\$aLa Fontaine Verwey\$bHerman de

Entry in catalogue: La Fontaine Verwey, Herman de

EX 11: 700 #1\$aDu Perron,\$bE.

Entry in catalogue: Du Perron, E.

EX 12: 700 #0\$aVittorio Emmanuele\$dII,\$cre d'Italia

Monarchs are entered under their given names in the majority of cataloguing rules.

EX 13: 700 #0\$aPan Painter
700 #0\$aJackie

Pseudonyms sometimes consist of a phrase or other appellation that does not contain a real name and are then usually entered in direct order.

EX 14: 700 #1\$aOrwell,\$bGeorge
700 #1\$aOther,\$bA.N.

Pseudonyms having the appearance of a forename, forenames or initials, and a surname are according to most cataloguing codes entered under the pseudo-surname.

EX 15: 700 #0\$aJoannes,\$cDiaconus,\$ffl.1226-1240

An example of the name of a medieval person consisting only of a given name. An epithet and date are added.

EX 16: 700 #0\$aAlexandra,\$cEmpress,\$cConsort of Nicholas II, Emperor of Russia

Two epithets are separately identified in the source format. This distinction should be carried over into UNIMARC.

EX 17: 700 #0\$aJohn\$dII Comnenus,\$cEmperor of the East

EX 18: 700 #1\$aBrown\$bB.F.\$pChemistry Dept., Harvard University

An example of an affiliation.

EX 19: 700 #1\$aCallas,\$bMaria\$4721\$4vso

In addition to \$4721 (singer), one can code specifically for the voice range (\$4vso = soprano).

EX 20: 700 #1\$aBrendel,\$bAlfred\$4545\$4kpf

In addition to \$4545 (musician), one can code specifically for the instrument played by the musician (\$4kpf = pianist).

701 PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a person considered to have alternative responsibility for a work, in access point form. If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify main entry, all personal names to be used as access points will be entered in Field 701.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 700.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 700.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 700.

Related Fields

- 200 \$f TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. When there are two or three names in the first statement of responsibility, subsequent names after the first will often be names of persons with alternative responsibility and will be entered in field 701 in access point form.

- 700 PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

When field 701 is used strictly for names of persons having alternative responsibility, field 700 (or rarely 710) must be present. If field 701 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry, then field 700 will not be present.

- 702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

When there are persons considered to have less responsibility than the persons named in fields 700 and 701, they should be entered in field 702.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 700 applies equally here.

EX 1: 700 #1\$aNewton,\$bClive R. (Primary)
701 #1\$aParker,\$bR.S (Alternative)

The above is an example including an instance of a person with alternative responsibility. The statement of responsibility on the title page is 'by Clive R. Newton and Robert S. Parker'. The established form for Robert S. Parker is Parker, R.S.

702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a person considered to have secondary responsibility for a work, in access point form.

Occurrence

Repeatable. In the majority of cataloguing codes, the existence of a person with secondary responsibility does not necessarily imply the existence of a person with primary responsibility in the record. Therefore field 702 can be present without a field 700, 710 or 720.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 700.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 700 with the following addition.

\$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 700.

The field is used, where applicable, for printers, publishers, former owners and other connected with the production or history of particular volumes.

Subfield \$5, code of the Institution to Which Field Applies is used only when the physical characteristics are peculiar to an individual copy. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Related Fields

200 \$f, \$g TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. The name of the person mentioned in \$f or in \$g to whom is attributed secondary responsibility for the item (if any) will be entered in Field 702 in access point form.

700 PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

The name of the first person mentioned in the title page with primary responsibility should be entered in the 700 field. Names of persons with secondary responsibility are entered in 702.

701 PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Alternative means a second or further instance of primary responsibility. However, if the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not make the distinction, all personal names should be entered in field 701.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 700 applies equally here.

EX 1: 702 #1\$aIrvin\$bThomas Francis\$4440

The name of a person with secondary responsibility including a relator code that he is an illustrator.

EX 2: 702 #1\$aCunningham\$bArthur\$4110\$5Uk: X.200/175

Binder of a British Library copy, pressmark X.200/175.

EX 3: 702 #1\$aŠkrlec\$bNikola\$4390\$5CiZaNSB: L III H13
702 #1\$aKušević\$bJosip\$4390\$5CiZaNSB: L III H13

Book with book-plate by Nikola Škrlec (a former owner) is part of the Kušević's Library now stored in the National and University Library, Zagreb.

EX 4: 317 ##\$aRukopisni ex libris: 'Velimir Gaj 1873'. Iz knjiznice Ljudevita
Gaja\$5CiZaNSB IIC-8° -75
702 #1\$aGaj\$bVelimir\$4390\$5CiZaNSB: IIC-8° -75
702 #1\$aGaj\$bLjudevit\$4390\$5CiZaNSB: IIC-8° -75

Velimir Gaj inherited his father's, Ljudevit Gaj's, Library which he later sold to the present owner, National and University Library, Zagreb. The Library is known after his father's name.

A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 5 of the 317 field.

EX 5: 702 #1\$6b01\$aByde\$bEdward\$dd. 1712\$4390\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124
702 #1\$6b02\$aDimsdale\$bThomas\$cBaron\$f1712-1800\$4390\$4320\$5UK-WIAbNL:
WingU124
702 #1\$6b02\$aZachary\$bJohn\$4390\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124
702 #1\$6b03\$aClark\$bGeorge Thomas\$f1809-1898\$4390\$5UK-WIAbNL: WingU124

Place and date of provenance:

621 ##\$6b01\$aGreat Britain\$bEngland\$cHertfordshire\$dWare\$eWare Park\$5UK-
WIAbNL: WingU124

621 ##\$6b02\$aGreat Britain\$f17731227

621 ##\$6b03\$aGreat Britain\$bWales\$cGlamorgan\$dPont-y-clun\$eTal-y-garn\$5UK-
WIAbNL: WingU124

Fields for secondary responsibility and associated provenance fields for copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654*, in National Library of Wales. Subfield \$5 links all the copy-specific fields. Closely related data in the 621 and 702 fields are linked by \$6 subfields. See 316 EX 15, 317 EX 10 and 621 EX 3.

710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of the corporate body considered to have primary responsibility for a work, in access point form, provided that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of main entry and the source format separately identifies the main entry.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. It may not occur in the same record as a 700 field PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY or a 720 field FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY, since a record can have only one access point with primary responsibility. If the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules, or the source format does not distinguish it, this field does not occur: field 711 is used for all corporate body name headings (see Related Fields).

Indicators

Indicator 1: specifies the kind of name of a body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (EX 13)

0 Corporate name

1 Meeting name

If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name as follows:

0 Name in inverted form

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name (EX 9, 10, 14).

1 Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place (EX 3, 5, 6, 7, 17). According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g. universities, learned societies, art galleries (EX 15).

2 Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names.

Subfields

- \$a** Entry Element
- The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists, i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.
- \$b** Subdivision
- The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (EX 2-6, 13, 15). This subfield excludes any additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (EX 3, 4, 5).
- \$c** Addition to Name or Qualifier
- Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable. (EX 6-9,11,16).
- \$d** Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting
- The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (EX 12-14)
- \$e** Location of Meeting
- The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the heading. Not repeatable. (EX 11-14)
- \$f** Date of Meeting
- The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the heading. Not repeatable. (EX 11-14)
- \$g** Inverted Element
- Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable. (EX 9, 10, 14)
- \$h** Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element
- In a heading with inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable (EX 9, 10, 14).
- \$p** Affiliation/address
- This subfield contains the address of the corporate body (EX 17). Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
- The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities* (EX 12). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Used to designate the relationship between the corporate body named in the field and the item to which the record refers. A list of codes is to be found in Appendix C. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents**Form:**

The form of the name which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Corporate names are problematic since many corporate bodies do not have a precise name which remains constant. Furthermore individual cataloguing rules formalise the names in different ways and therefore use different kinds of data elements.

Inverted data:

One type of name which often presents difficulties is a corporate name formed from a personal name, e.g., W. H. Smith & Sons Ltd, J. F. Kennedy Center, Winston Churchill Memorial Centre. Some cataloguing codes stipulate that these should be entered in direct order in subfield \$a; other rules require that the names be treated as a personal name and inverted hence coded in subfields \$g and \$h. UNIMARC accommodates both possibilities (EX 9, 10, 14).

Entry under place:

Names of governments at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., France, Australia, rather than the formal name (Republic of France, Commonwealth of Australia) (EX 7). Subordinate governmental bodies are often prefixed with the name of the government (EX 5, 6). Cataloguing rules vary as to whether bodies under government control but without legislative or executive power, such as national museums, are entered under the name of the government or under their own names. If entered under their own name, e.g., Civic Museum, they may need a qualification to distinguish between other organisations of the same name in other places. Some cataloguing rules have a further category of organisation entered under name of place: bodies like universities, learned societies etc. which are specifically attached to a place and tend to have the place name as part of their name; these may be formalised in such a way as to bring the name of the place to the fore (EX 15). The remainder of the name will be stripped of connecting prepositions; thus it is not strictly an inversion.

Qualifications:

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield \$c. This may be a place added in order to distinguish the body from others of the same name, e.g., Liberal Party (Australia). It may be a statement of type of body to distinguish it from a different type of body with the same name, e.g. Gibraltar (Diocese) to distinguish it from the colony, and New York (State) to distinguish it from the city. A third kind of addition consists of a term added to a name to convey that it is a corporate body, e.g., Eagles (Rugby club), Ecologica (Firm), HVJ (Radio station) (EX 16). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above.

Formalised additions to names of meetings:

There are no universally accepted standards for the data elements 'Number', 'Location' and 'Date of meeting'. Numbers may be in Arabic or roman numerals, place names may be entered according to the language of the record, or the language on the original (EX 11-14). The date may be entered in any form, although for an exchange record, if month and day are required in the heading, the date in international standard format (e.g., '19831101', for 1 November 1983) is recommended as it can easily be converted into any language if desired.

Punctuation:

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (See Appendix K).

Related Fields

200 \$f, \$g TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Data in Field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. The name of the corporate body mentioned in \$f or, rarely, in \$g, to which is attributed primary responsibility for the item, if any, will be entered in field 710 in access point form.

711 CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

A corporate body may have alternative responsibility to either a person, body or family named in fields 700, 710 or 720. In this case field 711 is used since there may be no more than one occurrence altogether in a record of fields 700 and 720.

712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

A corporate name may have secondary responsibility, in which case it will be entered in field 712.

Examples**EX 1: 710 02\$aLight Railway Transport League**

Unnamed members of an organisation called The Light Railway Transport League wrote a book entitled *Johannesburg tramways*, and, according to the cataloguing rules, the organisation has primary responsibility for the work. The cataloguing code used generally stipulates the removal of initial articles from all corporate body headings.

EX 2: 710 02\$aBell and Howell.\$bMicro Photo Division

A division within the organisation Bell and Howell is entitled Micro Photo Division.

EX 3: 710 01\$aUnited States.\$bFarm Credit Administration.\$bPublic Affairs Division.

The division responsible for the document is a subordinate body of a subordinate body.

EX 4: 710 02\$aAslib.\$bComputer Applications Group.\$bAcquisition, Cataloguing and Circulation Working Party

A working party of a group which is responsible to an organisation requires three levels.

EX 5: 710 01\$aNew South Wales.\$bDepartment of Education.\$bDivision of Research and Planning

A government body preceded by the name of the state (province) in the form specified in the cataloguing code.

EX 6: 710 01\$aEssex\$c(County).\$bAdvisory Unit for Computer Education

A local government body has a qualification indicating the level of government of the body.

EX 7: 710 01\$aGermany.\$c(Democratic Republic)

Certain cataloguing codes prescribe qualifiers for names of countries where ambiguity might arise.

EX 8: 710 02\$aNational Conference of Catholic Bishops\$c(United States)

A qualifier consisting of place name may be entered in order to distinguish between organisations of the same name in different countries.

**EX 9: 710 02\$aHugh Wilson and Lewis Womersley\$c(Firm)
710 00\$aWilson\$g(Hugh)\$band Lewis Womersley\$c(Firm)**

The above give examples of both direct order and indirect order for corporate names. Certain cataloguing codes invert the names of corporate bodies which begin with the name of a person. The part of the name which is placed after the 'surname' element is

entered in \$g and the rest of the name of the body which followed the 'surname' in direct order is entered in \$h.

EX 10: 710 02\$aE.A. Gibson Shipbrokers
710 00\$aGibson\$g(E.A.)\$hShipbrokers

Another example of both direct and indirect order.

EX 11: 710 12\$aNASECODE II\$c(Conference)\$f(1981 :\$eTrinity College, Dublin)

Names of conferences are entered as headings in a formalised form. On the title page: 'proceedings of the NASECODE II conference held at Trinity College Dublin from 17th to 19th June 1981'. Conference is added as a qualifier to explain the term NASECODE II. The subfields are entered in the order required by the cataloguing rules. First indicator is set to 1.

EX 12: 710 12\$3CRNO4586\$aWorld Airports Conference,\$d5th,\$eLondon,\$f1976

When the conference has a number which is not part of the name (compare EX 11 above), it may be included as part of the formalised heading. An authority record number is present.

EX 13: 710 02\$aReading University Agricultural Club\$bAnnual Conference\$d(11th :\$f1977 :\$eUniversity of Reading)

If a conference is closely associated with a corporate body, many cataloguing codes stipulate that it be entered as a subordinate body to that corporate body, and therefore indicator position 1 is 0.

EX 14: 710 10\$aRichards\$g(A.N.)\$hSymposium\$d(17th :\$f1975 : \$eKing of Prussia, Pa.)
710 12\$aA.N. Richards Symposium\$d(17th :\$f1975 :\$eKing of Prussia, Pa.)

Where the name of a conference begins with a personal name it may be formulated in the same way as in EX 9 and 10. The above shows two ways of entering a conference that begins with a personal name. The name may be inverted or not, according to the cataloguing rules followed.

EX 15: 710 01\$aCalifornia.\$bUniversity

A university entered under its place.

EX 16: 710 02\$aMaria Teresa\$c(Ship)

The name of a ship with a qualification in order to convey that it is a corporate body.

EX 17: 710 01\$aUnited States.\$bNational Technical Information Service.\$p5202 Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161

The cataloguing code requires an address of a corporate body which is entered in \$p.

EX 18: 710 02\$aEnglish Chamber Orchestra\$4545\$4och

In addition to \$4545 (musician), one can code specifically for the type of orchestra (\$4och = chamber orchestra).

711 CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a corporate body considered to have alternative responsibility for a work in access point form. If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify main entry, all corporate names to be used as access points will be contained in field 711.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 710.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 710.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 710.

Related Fields

- 200 \$f TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. If there are two or three names in the first statement of responsibility, subsequent names after the first will often be names with alternative responsibility and, if the name of a corporate body, will be entered in field 711 in access point form.

- 710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

If field 711 is used strictly for names of corporate bodies of alternative responsibility, field 710 (or 700) must be present. If field 711 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not distinguish it, then field 710 will not be present.

- 712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

If there are corporate bodies considered to have less responsibility than the corporate bodies named in fields 710 and 711, they should be entered in field 712.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 710 applies equally here.

EX 1: 710 01\$aPennsylvania.\$bState University.\$bDept. of Agricultural Economics and Rural Sociology

711 01\$aPennsylvania.\$bAgricultural Experiment Station, University Park

The corporate bodies have joint responsibility for a continuing resource. The name appearing second is coded as alternative.

712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a corporate body considered to have secondary responsibility for a work, in access point form.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 710.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 710 with the following addition.

\$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 710.

The field is used, where applicable for printers, publishers, former owners and others connected with the production or history of particular volumes.

Subfield \$5, Institution to which Field Applies is used only when the added entries are peculiar to an individual copy. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Related Fields

200 \$f, \$g TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility, and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. The name of the corporate body mentioned in \$f or in \$g to which is attributed secondary responsibility for the item (if any) will be entered in field 712 in access point form.

710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

The name of the first corporate body mentioned in the title page with primary responsibility should be entered in field 710. Names of corporate bodies with

secondary responsibility are entered in 712. In the majority of cataloguing rules, it is possible for a body to have secondary responsibility without any body with primary responsibility being present in the record. Therefore field 712 can be present without a field 700, 710, or 720.

711 CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Alternative means a second or further instance of primary responsibility. However, if the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify it, all corporate names should be entered in field 711.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 710 applies equally here. Below are given examples of a corporate body with secondary responsibility.

EX 1: 712 02\$aIEA Coal Research

On title page: Coal research projects, United Kingdom, London, IEA Coal Research. IEA Coal Research is given as publisher, but clearly has a greater degree of responsibility for the item than a publisher usually has.

EX 2: 712 02\$aNacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka\$bKnjigoveznica\$5CiZaNSB: R IV-4° -5b

This copy of J. W. Valvasor's *Crain*, 1689 was rebound in the Binding Department of the National and University Library (Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka), Zagreb, on 23 May 1991.

716 TRADEMARK

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a trademark involved in the production of a work, in a form suitable for an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Data element

The trademark name access point form. Not repeatable

\$f Dates

The dates between which a particular trademark is in use, when they are required as part of the heading, for example, as qualifiers. Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates. Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC Manual – Authorities Format*. Not repeatable.

Note on Field Contents

Form of Name

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

Relator Code

The relator code \$4 is not necessary, the tag 716 being sufficient to express the relation of trademark.

Definition

A trademark or "mark" is a distinctive word, phrase, logo, design, or any other device that can be represented graphically, used by a business or company to identify its products or services and distinguish them from the products and services made, sold or provided by others. Some examples are: *Levi's* (trademark of Levi Strauss & Co.); *Pentium* (trademark of Intel Corporation), *Decca* (trademark of Decca Record Company).

Under the common term trademark other specific categories of marks such as service marks, trade dress, collective marks, etc., can be found.

The trade name of a business can function as a mark as well. For instance Sony Music Entertainment Inc. uses its trade name Sony Music as a trademark on its line of sound recordings.

As far as sound recordings are concerned, the trademark, commonly known as the "label", together with the label number uniquely identifies each commercial recording. (see field 071 Publisher's Number (Sound Recordings and Music))

Related fields

071 \$b PUBLISHER'S NUMBER (SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC), Source (agency which assigned the number)

Examples

EX 1: 071 00\$a3984292582\$bErato
310 ##\$aErato 3984292582 (album)
716 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$aErato

EX 2: 071 00\$aCOL6653152\$cboîte\$bColumbia (marque américaine)\$dCB 608
716 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$aColumbia\$cmarque américaine

720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a family considered to have primary responsibility for a work, in access point form, provided that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of main entry, and the source format separately identifies the main entry.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. It may not occur in the same record as a 700 field PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY or a 710 field CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY, since a record can have only one access point with primary responsibility. If the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules, or the source format does not make the distinction, this field does not occur: field 721 is used for all family name headings (see Related Fields).

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The family name in access point form. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the heading. Not repeatable. (EX 3).

\$3 Authority Record Number

The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

The code used to designate the relationship between the family named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers. The list of codes is to be found in Appendix C. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form of name:

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation

of the record.

All data forming the heading itself (except dates) is entered in \$a; any qualification must be entered in parentheses to indicate it is not part of the name itself.

Punctuation:

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. If the source format uses additional subfields it is recommended that punctuation be printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the additional subfields. Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records.

Related Fields

- 200 \$f, \$g TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility, and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. The name of the family mentioned in \$f, or rarely in \$g, to whom is attributed primary responsibility for the item (if any) will be entered in 720 in access point form.

- 721 FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

A family may have alternative responsibility in similar circumstances to a corporate body. The field should be used in all cases if a source record does not distinguish between primary and secondary responsibility for families.

- 722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

A family may be regarded as having secondary responsibility, in the same way as a corporate body (see Field 712).

Examples

EX 1: 720 ##\$aCecil (family)

EX 2: 720 ##\$aBuchanan (clan)

EX 3: 720 ##\$aShah dynasty,\$f1768-

721 FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a family considered to have alternative responsibility for a work, in access point form; if the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of the main entry, or the source format does not separately identify main entry all family names in a form suitable for an access point will be contained in field 721.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 720.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 720.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 720.

Related Fields

200\$f TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. If there are two or three names in the first statement of responsibility, subsequent names after the first will often be names with alternative responsibility.

720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

If field 721 is used for names of families of alternative responsibility, field 720 (or rarely 710 or 700) must be present. If field 721 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry, or the source format does not distinguish it, then field 720 will not be present.

722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

If there are families considered to have less responsibility than persons or entities in fields 700, 701, 710, 711, 720, 721, they should be entered in field 722.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 720 applies equally here.

722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the name of a family considered to have secondary responsibility for a work, in a form suitable for an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 720.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 720 with the following addition:

\$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of institution to which field applies in coded form. Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations* (ISIL), ISO 15511. (Existing records may contain codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations*, the full name of the agency or a national code). If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon; however, it is strongly recommended that this be done even if the copy is the only one held at the time of cataloguing. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 720.

Subfield \$5, Institution to which the Field Applies, is used only when the added entry/ies are peculiar to an individual copy. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Related Fields

200 \$f, \$g TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, First Statement of Responsibility, and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the item. The name of the family mentioned in \$f or in \$g to whom is attributed secondary responsibility for the item (if any) will be entered in field 722 in access point form.

720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

The name of the first family mentioned in the title page with primary responsibility should be entered in field 720. Names of families with secondary responsibility are entered in 722.

721 FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Alternative means a second or further instance of primary responsibility. However, if the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry, or the source format does not separately identify it, all family names should be entered in field 721.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 720 applies equally here.

730 NAME – ENTITY RESPONSIBLE

Field Definition

This field contains in unstructured form the name of an entity considered to have responsibility for a work. The name does not follow cataloguing rules.

Occurrence

This field should be used only when other 7-- fields are unsuitable. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Form of Name Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the type of name has been determined or not.

0 Type of name cannot be determined

1 Personal name

2 Not a personal name

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The name used as the entry element in the heading. Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

The code used to designate the relationship between the entity named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers. The list of codes is to be found in Appendix C. Repeatable.

Examples

EX 1: 730 0#\$aDerek Weselak\$4070

Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Creator" CONTENT="Derek Weselak">

The record was converted from a Dublin Core entry which makes no distinction between personal authors and others. "Creator" has the sense of primary responsibility for the item so the relator code for "author" is added.

EX 2: 730 2#\$aInformation Systems, British Library\$4070

Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Creator.Organization" CONTENT="Information Systems, British Library">

EX 3: 730 1#\$Weselak\$bDerek

Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Creator.Personal" CONTENT="Weselak, Derek">

CONTENT takes the form "term comma term" and the NAME is "Creator.Personal". The name could with some confidence be assigned to a more specific 7-- field by the use of computer algorithms.

EX 4: 730 0#\$aDerek Weselak

Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Contributor" CONTENT="Derek Weselak">

The record was converted from a Dublin Core entry which makes no distinction between personal authors and others. "Contributor" has the sense of any responsibility for the item other than primary responsibility, e.g. illustrator, sponsor, so no relator code can be added.

740 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the uniform conventional headings for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties and other agreements between two or more parties, issued under a given jurisdiction, usually a country, or a church. Conventional headings for legal and religious texts are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction or church and a uniform conventional title. The headings for treaties are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction of the first party, followed by a uniform conventional title and the name of the jurisdiction of the other party. They can also be formed just by a conventional title, commonly recognized. Uniform conventional headings are used in access point form, provided that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of main entry and the use of uniform conventional headings for such kinds of legal and religious texts.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of conventional heading:

1 Name entered under country or other geographical name.

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

2 Name entered under other form, e.g. a church or a simply a conventional name.

Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy. Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (EX 4).

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions. Repeatable. (EX 5).

- \$e** Name of the other party
- The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued. If necessary, subfield \$b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or \$c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used (EX 9, 10). Not repeatable.
- \$f** Date of legal issue or version, or date of signing
- The date of legal issue or version when is added to the uniform conventional heading (EX 2, 3). The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the uniform conventional heading (EX 9, 10). Repeatable.
- \$i** Name of section or part
- The name of a part when the item to which the uniform conventional heading is being applied is only a part of the text named in the heading (EX 2). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 7).
- \$l** Form subheading
- Standard phrase added to a headline to further specify the uniform conventional heading. Repeatable.
- \$n** Miscellaneous information
- Any information not provided for in any other subfield. Repeatable.
- \$t** Uniform title
- Uniform title for the text being catalogued. The term(s) of the uniform title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable.
- \$3** Authority Record Number
- The control number for the authority record for the heading. This subfield is for use with *UNIMARC/Authorities*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form:

The form of the heading which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authority entries used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always inter-file correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Entry under place:

Names of jurisdictions at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., Portugal, Australia, rather than the formal name (Portuguese Republic, Commonwealth of Australia) (EX 1, 2, 3).

Qualifications:

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield \$c. This may be a place name added in order to distinguish the jurisdiction from others of the same name, e.g., Washington (state). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above (EX5).

Formalised additions to uniform titles:

There may be needed to further specify a uniform title by date of legal issue or version of a given type, in order to provide more specific aggregation of items catalogued when they are numerous. The criteria for this, as well as the type of further specification depends on the cataloguing rules and practice of the cataloguing agency.

Punctuation:

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (See Appendix K).

Related Fields**741 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY**

A uniform conventional heading may have alternative responsibility to either a person or body named in fields 700 or 710 or to another heading named in field 740. In this case field 741 is used since there may be no more than one occurrence altogether in a record of fields 700 and 710.

742 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

A uniform conventional heading could be considered secondary responsibility, in which case it will be entered in field 742.

Examples

EX 1: 740 #1\$Portugal\$Leis, decretos, etc.

EX 2: 200 1#\$Código de processo penal\$aprovado pelo decreto-lei nº 78-87 de 17 de Fevereiro
740 #1\$Portugal\$Leis, decretos, etc.\$Código de processo penal,\$f1987

EX 3: 200 10\$Constituição portuguesa de 1976
740 #1\$Portugal\$Constituição,\$f1976

EX 4: 740 #1\$Canadá.\$bOntário.\$tLeis, decretos, etc.

EX 5: 740 #1\$Estados Unidos.\$bWashington\$c(estado).\$tLeis, decretos, etc.

EX 6: 200 1#\$Missale cisterciense ad usum Sacrae Congregationis Divi Bernardi, in Lusitaniae e Algarbiorum Regnis
740 #2\$Igreja Católica\$tLiturgia e ritual

EX 7: 200 1#\$Missale Romanum
740 #2\$Catholic Church\$tLiturgy\$iMissale\$iKyriale

EX 8: 740 #1\$Portugal.\$tTratados, etc.

A collection of treaties between Portugal and others parties

EX 9: 200 1#\$Tratado de amizade, navegação, e commercio renovado entre Portugal e a Rússia, e assignado em Petersbourgo aos 16-27 de Dezembro de 1798
740 #1\$Portugal.\$tTratados, etc.\$eRússia,\$f1798
741 #1\$Rússia.\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal,\$f1798

EX 10: 740 #1\$Portugal\$tTratados, etc.\$eEspanha\$f1810
741 #1\$Espanha\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal\$f1810

A treaty between Portugal and Spain

EX 11: 200 1#\$Concordatum inter Aulam Romanan, et Olisiponensem, quo nova regula statutus nominandorum beneficiorum in regnis Portugalliae, et Algarbiorum constitutorum..., Olisipone die XX, Mensis Julii... anni MDCCLXXVIII
740 #2\$Igreja Católica\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal\$f1778
741 #1\$Portugal\$tTratados, etc.\$eIgreja Católica\$f1778

A treaty between the Catholic Church and Portugal

741 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the uniform conventional headings for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties between two or more parties, considered to have alternative responsibility for a work in access point form. If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify main entry, all conventional headings to be used as access points will be contained in field 741.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 740.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 740.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 740.

Related Fields

740 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

If the the 741 is used strictly for uniform conventional heading of alternative responsibility, field 740, 700 or 710 must be present. If the field 741 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not distinguish it, then field 740 will not be present.

742 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

A uniform conventional heading could be considered secondary responsibility, in which case it will be entered in field 742.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 740 applies equally here.

742 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition

This field contains the uniform conventional headings for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties between two or more parties, considered to have secondary responsibility for a work in access point form.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicators are as for field 740.

Subfields

Subfields are as for field 740.

Notes on Field Contents

The same guidelines apply as for field 740

Related Fields

740 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

In the majority of cataloguing rules that recognise the concept of the uniform conventional heading for certain legal and religious texts the field 740 must be present. However It is possible for a work to have secondary responsibility for a uniform conventional heading without a field 740 present.

741 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

A uniform conventional heading may have alternative responsibility to either a person or body named in fields 700 or 710 or to another heading named in field 740. If the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify it, the uniform conventional heading should be entered in field 741.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 740 applies equally here. Below is an example of a uniform conventional heading with secondary responsibility.

EX 1: 200 1#\$aDocumentação e legislação comercial\$fOrlando Augusto Dias Bravo
327 1#\$aContém supl. com o tít.: Código comercial, sociedades e empresas comerciais,
código do registo comercial
700 1#\$aBravo,\$bOrlando Augusto Dias
742 #1\$aPortugal.\$tLeis, decretos, etc.

The work is a collection of commercial law compiled by a personal author, but including the legal texts themselves.

8-- INTERNATIONAL USE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains internationally agreed fields that do not fit in the preceding blocks, 0-- to 7--. The following fields are defined:

| | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 801 | Originating Source |
| 802 | ISSN Centre |
| 830 | General Cataloguer's note |
| 850 | Holding Institution |
| 852 | Location and Call Number |
| 856 | Electronic Location and Access |
| 886 | Data not Converted from Source Format |

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE

Field Definition

This field contains an indication of the origin of the record, including one of the following: the agency that created the data, the agency that transcribed the data into machine-readable form, any agency that has modified the original record/data, and the agency issuing the present record.

Occurrence

Mandatory in the case of exchange of bibliographic data. In many cases this field will be generated automatically at the time of exchange. Repeatable for each agency function reported.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: Function Indicator

This indicator specifies the function of the agency named in the \$b subfield.

0 Original Cataloguing Agency

The agency that prepared the data in the record.

1 Transcribing Agency

The agency that converted the data into machine-readable form.

2 Modifying Agency

The agency that has modified either the intellectual content or record structure of the record.

3 Issuing Agency

The agency that issued the record.

Subfields

\$a Country

The country of the issuing agency in two-character coded form. See Appendix B for details. Not repeatable.

\$b Agency

It is recommended that the agency be identified according to the international standard ISO 15511:2003 *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL)*. In this case, the whole ISIL, including its first sequence (country code or other prefix), is entered in the \$b subfield. Alternatively, it is possible to use the code from the *MARC Code List for Organisations*. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used (see EX 8). The displaying of data in clear form

(full name, well-known acronym) is recommended in OPACs and union catalogues. A matching between the code and the name to be displayed should be established in an appropriate reference list or tool. Not repeatable.

\$c Date of Transaction

This subfield is used when possible to indicate when a modification was made or a record was issued. The data should be recorded according to ISO 8601-1989 in all-numeric form without separators between year, month, and day, i.e. YYYYMMDD. Not repeatable.

\$g Cataloguing Rules (Descriptive Conventions)

This subfield contains an abbreviation for the cataloguing code used for bibliographic description and access. See Appendix H for codes. It should be used only when the second indicator value is 0 (original cataloguing agency) or 2 (modifying agency). Optional, repeatable (EX 3).

\$h Original Control Number

This subfield contains the original control number when a record's 001 has been overwritten. This will occur when the current database has its own control numbers, e.g. a union catalogue listing records taken from several databases. Optional, not repeatable (EX 5).

\$2 System Code

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. See Appendix H for codes. Optional, not repeatable (EX 6).

Notes on Field Contents

In many cases the same agency will have carried out some or all indicated functions; however, the field should be repeated only when there are changes to transaction dates, cataloguing rules or formats; where there are no changes only the earliest occurrence of the field should be included.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL character position 18

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Date Entered on File (character positions 0-7)

The date in Field 100 may be the same as the transcription date but it should be repeated in field 801.

Examples

EX 1: 801 #0\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19590000\$gAACR1
801 #1\$aUS\$bMH\$c19790506
801 #2\$aUS\$bMH\$c19790506\$gAACR2
801 #3\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19790912

The item was originally catalogued by the Library of Congress in 1959. In 1979, Harvard University modified the data and transcribed it into machine-readable form.

This record was then issued by the Library of Congress. The codes from *USMARC Code List for Organizations* have been used to identify the Library of Congress and Harvard University.

EX 2: 801 #0\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19860116\$gAACR2

A record catalogued according to the second edition of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* by the Library of Congress.

EX 3: 801 #0\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19830406\$gAACR2\$gBDRB

A record catalogued by the Library of Congress according to AACR2 and *Bibliographic Description of Rare Books* (Washington : Library of Congress, 1981).

EX 4: 801 #0\$aFR\$bF\$c19851020\$gAFNOR

A record catalogued according to the *Normes de catalogage publiées par l'Association française de normalisation* by the Bibliothèque nationale.

EX 5: 801 #0\$aGB\$bUkCU\$c19940116\$gAACR2\$h898788257
801 #2\$aGB\$bUk\$c19940718\$gAACR2

A record catalogued by Cambridge University Library, with a control number which is not used when the record is modified by the British Library.

EX 6: 801 #0\$aDE\$bGyFmDB\$c19860423\$gRAK\$2mab
801 #2\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19860503\$gAACR2

A record catalogued according to the *Regeln für die Alphabetische Katalogisierung (RAK)* by the Deutsche Bibliothek, and modified to the AACR2 form by the Library of Congress. The record was converted into UNIMARC from the Maschinelles Austauschformat für Bibliotheken format.

EX 7: 801 #0\$aFR\$bFR-751072303\$c20041026\$gAFNOR

A record created by the Bibliothèque de la Fondation Nationale des Sciences politiques, catalogued according to AFNOR standards

Note: The identifier "FR-751072303" in \$b refers to the RCR code (RCR: Répertoire des Centres de Ressource), the national standard used in France http://ccfr.bnf.fr/mbcd_visu/framevisu.jsp?accueil=1

EX 8: 801 #3\$aFR\$bABES\$c20051026\$gAFNOR

A record issued by ABES (Agence bibliographique de l'enseignement supérieur), France, catalogued according to AFNOR standards. ABES is not an ISIL code but the abbreviated name of the agency.

EX 9: 801 #3\$aFR\$bELECTRE\$c20060906\$gAFNOR
801 #2\$aFR\$bFR-674826201\$c20061228\$gAFNOR

A record originally created and issued by ELECTRE, a French bibliographic data provider, and modified by the Bibliothèque municipale de Strasbourg, catalogued according to AFNOR standards

Note: The identifier "FR-674826201" in \$b refers to the RCR code (RCR: Répertoire des Centres de Ressource), the national standard used in France http://ccfr.bnf.fr/rnbcd_visu/framevisu.jsp?accueil=1

802 ISSN CENTRE

Field Definition

This field contains a code for the ISSN Centre responsible for assigning the ISSN and key-title.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a ISSN Centre Code

Each centre has been assigned a code by the ISSN International Centre. The ISSN Centre code consists of one or two alphanumeric characters. These are listed in Appendix C of the *ISDS manual*. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains two characters. For centres assigned a one-character code, the first character is zero (EX 1, 2).

Related Fields

011 ISSN

530 KEY TITLE

These fields contain the ISSN and key title assigned by the ISDS Centre.

Examples

EX 1: 802 ##\$a03

The ISSN Centre is Australia.

EX 2: 802 ##\$a05

The ISSN Regional Centre for CMEA (Council for Mutual Economic Aid) in Moscow assigned the ISSN and key title.

EX 3: 802 ##\$a58

The ISSN Centre is the Vsesojuznaja Knijnaja Palata in Moscow.

830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used to record biographical, historical, or other information about the record.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: blank (not defined)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Text of note. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may include cataloguers' working notes on sources of information, questionable data, references to specific rules applied, notes justifying the choice of particular data, etc.

Related Fields

None

Examples

EX 1: 830 ##\$aWill need to be amended once last volume arrives

EX 2: 200 1#\$aCatalogue des livres qui se trouvent en nombre chez Herissant fils, libraire, à Paris, rue S. Jacques, 1769
830 ##\$aJean-Thomas II Hérissant est actif en même temps que son père, Jean-Thomas I Hérissant, de 1763 à 1772
830 ##\$aCe catalogue ne diffère de celui figurant sous la cote BNF [Q8990 que par le format (in-8)

EX 3: 200 1#\$aThomae à Kempis, canonici regularis ordinis S. Augustini, De Imitatione Christi libri quatuor
300 ##\$aVersion non identifiée, avec références bibliques en marge
830 ##\$aAbsent de Audenaert et de Backer

The general cataloguer's note is used to indicate consulted bibliographies in which no citation of the described edition was found.

850 HOLDING INSTITUTION

Field Definition

This field contains a list of the codes of institutions holding the items.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable where the cataloguing system imposes limits on the length of a field.

Indicators

Indicator : blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 : blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Code of institution. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used to list organisations holding a copy/copies of the item. The sources for the MARC code are the *MARC Code List for Organizations*.

Examples

EX 1: 850 ##\$aUkLRCM\$aNiBfQU\$aStEdNL\$aStEdPHS\$aStEdPL\$aStEdRCP\$aStEdRCS
\$aStEdSCL\$aStGIC\$aStGIM\$aStGIQC\$aStGIRFP\$aStGIU\$aStGIUS\$aStKiPL
\$aStPeSPL\$aUk\$aUkAc\$aUKaGS\$aUkAul\$aUkB\$aUkBI\$aUkBIG\$aUkBoN\$aUkBP
\$aUkBrP

EX 2: 850 ##\$aFrAipNA\$aFrAmU\$aFrAv\$aFrAvU\$aFrBaADF\$aFrBfIP\$aFrBgLER
\$aFrBrUB-D\$aFrCoUT\$aFrCpGE\$aFrCrUPV\$aFrCyUS\$aFrFIEA\$aFrGrULLA
\$aFrGrUSSL\$aFrGyCEAI\$aFrLAL\$aFrLemU\$aFrLgUTV\$aFrLimU
\$aFrLimU-L\$aFrLiU\$aFrLiUCG\$aFrLiUDSD\$aFrLiU-S\$aFrLy\$aFrLyU
\$aFrMaUAM\$aFrMaUAMM\$aFrMhUHA
850 ##\$aFrMpUPVA\$aFrMzU\$aFrN\$aFrNiU\$aFrNiU-D\$aFrNiU-S\$aFrNrUPN
\$aFrNtUBA\$aFrNU\$aFrNU-M\$aFrNU-S\$aFrNyUI\$aFrNyUIIA\$aFrNyUI-L
\$aFrOrRGM\$aFrOyUPS\$aFrPAAL\$aFrPALP\$aFrPAUP\$aFrPBA\$aFrPBF
\$aFrPBN\$aFrPBS\$aFrPBSG\$aFrPCF\$aFrPCNC

The number of codes in each occurrence of the field is limited by the organisation's software to thirty. So the field is repeated.

852 LOCATION AND CALL NUMBER

Field Definition

This field is used to identify the organization holding the item or from which it is available. This field may also contain detailed information about how to locate the item in a collection.

The content of this field may be used both in the UNIMARC bibliographic record (field 852) and in the UNIMARC holdings record (field 252), according to the usage of the bibliographic agency.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1: Shelving scheme

A value that indicates the classification or shelving scheme used.

No information available

No information about the shelving scheme is provided

0 Classification scheme (specified in subfield \$2)

1 Fixed location

Fixed shelving positions not using relative location class marks. This value should be used even if the collection is broadly classified.

The full shelf mark is entered in subfield \$j

2 Sequential number

This value is to be used when a library numbers items sequentially in accession or other order, or makes use of publishers' or distributors' own numbering systems for certain classes of material, for example, microforms, sound recordings, standards.

The full number is entered in subfield \$j.

3 Author, Title or Author/title

Shelving according to alphabetic order of author, title or author/title part

4 Parts shelved separately

This value should be used in the record for a monographic series to indicate that the separate volumes are individually classified and shelved. The record for each volume will contain its own location information.

The bibliographic record for the series as a whole may contain an overall class number, provided as a service for libraries wishing to keep the series together, but this would not be location information for the set in hand.

5 Other

The basis of arrangement is known but not specified.

Indicator 2: Shelving order

A value that indicates whether an item is shelved under a primary or alternative numbering scheme.

No information available

0 No enumeration

The item is not shelved by enumeration.

1 Primary enumeration

This value is also used when only one numbering scheme is applicable.

2 Alternative enumeration

Item carries two numbering schemes and is shelved by the secondary scheme.

Subfields

\$a Institution Identifier

Identifies the institution or individual holding the item or from which access is given. The subfield contains an organization code or the name of the institution or individual. The codes are to be derived according to ISO 15511. National codes may be used or those from *MARC Code List for Organizations*. Institutions using a national identifier must declare this in any documentation describing their use of the exchange format. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$b Sub-Location Identifier

The specific department, library, collection, or shelving location, within the holding organization in which the item is located or from which it is available. It may indicate the physical location within the collection or sub-location, for example, reference, oversize stacks, and may be given either in full or using standard abbreviations or codes, for example, Ref.

Repeatable only when recording a single hierarchically identified location within an institution.

\$c Address

Street address, city, state/county etc., zip code/post code etc., and country information for the current physical location of the item. Give the address of the sub-location (\$b) when present and different from that of the main building. Not repeatable.

\$d Coded Location Qualifier

A two- or three-character code that identifies the specific issues of the item that are located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield \$d immediately follows the subfield \$a or \$b being qualified. Not repeatable.

Qualifier type

a = previous

The previous, not including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

b = latest

The latest, including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

Number of units

1-9 = Number of units

When a number is not required to identify the specific units, the number of units may be omitted. When Qualifier type is Latest (code b), the number includes the current time or part unit. When Qualifier type is Previous (code a), the number does not include the current time or part unit.

Unit type*Time*

a = week(s)

b = month(s)

c = year(s)

Part

d = edition(s)

e = issue(s)

f = supplement(s)

\$e Non-coded Location Qualifier

Free text that is used when the codes in subfield \$d are inadequate for describing the unit that is located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield \$e immediately follows the subfield \$a or \$b being qualified. Not repeatable.

\$g Call Number Prefix

Term preceding a call number. Not repeatable.

\$j Call Number

This subfield contains the Call Number including punctuation, spacing and capitalization as specified by the institution holding the item. The Call Number may also include an implicit or explicit Copy Identifier, or a Copy number, or a volume number, or shelving or custodial location. When these take the form of separable elements, use the appropriate subfields for them. Not repeatable.

\$k Shelving Form of Title, Author, Author/Title

The shelving title part, author's name or author/title of an unclassified item that is shelved by these data. (Indicator 1 = 3). Not repeatable.

- \$l** Call Number Suffix
Term following the call number. Not repeatable.
- \$m** Item Identifier
The subfield contains identification of a single piece, i.e. a physically separate bibliographic item. The designation may be an identification number like bar code number or an accession number. Not repeatable.
- \$n** Copy Identifier
A copy identifier or a range of identifiers for copies that have the same location.
If used, the Copy Identifier element shall be reported in conjunction with the Sub-location Identifier or the Institution Identifier or both. In some cases, the Copy Identifier may be explicitly or implicitly present as part of the Call Number. When it takes the form of separable element, use subfield \$n for it; in such cases it is not necessary to repeat the element in subfield \$j. A composite holdings statement may be used to record information about two or more copies of a bibliographic unit held at a single location or sub-location. Not repeatable. Alternatively, separated copy-specific statements may be used to record holdings for each copy.
- \$p** Country
Contains the country code for the principal location identified in subfield \$a when it is not already included in the institutional identifier. The codes are to be taken from the two-character codes of ISO 3166 (see Appendix B). Not repeatable.
- \$t** Copy Number
A copy number or a range of numbers for copies that have the same location.
In some cases, the Copy Number may be explicitly present as part of the Call Number. When it takes the form of a separable element, use subfield \$t for it; in such cases it is not necessary to repeat the element in the subfield \$j. A composite holdings statement may be used to record information about two or more copies of a bibliographic unit held at a single location or sub-location. Not repeatable.
Alternatively, separated copy-specific statements may be used to record holdings for each copy.
- \$x** Non-public Note
Information that is not written in a form suitable for public display. Repeatable.
- \$y** Public Note
Repeatable.
- \$2** System Code
The specific classification or other scheme and edition used for the arrangement of materials. This subfield must be used when Indicator 1 has the value 0. The codes are listed in Appendix G. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1: 852 41\$a[location identifier]\$bMain, mezzanine stacks

EX 2: 852 ##\$aDLC\$bManuscript Division\$cJames Madison Memorial Building, 1st &; Independence Ave., S.E., Washington, DC USA, 4016

EX 3: 852 41\$a[location identifier]\$bRef\$eholographic issue

EX 4: 852 1#\$aDLC\$bMicRR\$jMicrofilm 82/528 MicRR

EX 5: 852 41\$aFrPALP\$bAnnex, centre shelves\$c10, rue du General Camou,75007 Paris

EX 6: 852 ##\$a[location identifier]\$bMain, oversize shelving

EX 7: 852 11\$pPT\$aBN\$bReservados\$jRES 4562

EX 8: 852 01\$pPT\$aBN\$bAcesso\$j330 LAN*RIQ\$2UDC

EX 9: 852 11\$pPT\$aBN\$bReservados\$jRES 2678 A

EX 10: Two copies have the same location, every copy has its own copy identifier (\$n). Also every copy has its own copy number (\$t) within its location. The copy number is included in the call number as an explicit element.

2003-8
----- /1
2905

2003-8
----- /2
2905

Record 1

852 51\$aNLR\$j2003-8/2905\$t1\$n560203

Record 2

852 51\$aNLR\$j2003-8/2905\$t2\$n578374

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

Field Definition

This field contains the information required to locate the electronic item described by the record. The information identifies the electronic location containing the item or from which it is available. It also contains information to retrieve the item by the access method identified in the first indicator position. The information contained in this field is sufficient to allow for the electronic transfer of a file, subscription to an electronic journal, or logon to an electronic resource. In some cases, only unique data elements are recorded which allow the user to access a locator table on a remote host containing the remaining information needed to access the item.

It can be used to generate the ISBD(ER) Notes relating to mode of access.

Occurrence

Optional. For electronic resources: if 337 is not used, then 856 must be present. Repeatable when the location data elements vary (subfields \$a, \$b, \$d), when the electronic format file varies (\$q) and when more than one access method may be used. It is also repeatable whenever the electronic filename varies (subfield \$f), except when a single intellectual item is divided into different parts for online storage or retrieval.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Access Method

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| # | No information provided |
| 0 | Email |
| 1 | FTP |
| 2 | Remote login (Telnet) |
| 3 | Dial-up |
| 4 | HTTP |
| 7 | Method specified in subfield \$y |

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Host name. Repeatable.

\$b Access number

The access number associated with a host. It can contain the Internet Protocol (IP) numeric address if the item is an Internet resource, or a telephone number if dial-up access is provided through a telephone line. This data may change frequently and may be generated by the system, rather than statically stored. Subfield \$b may be repeated if

all the other information in the field applies. A telephone number is recorded as follows: [country code]-[area code]-[telephone number]. Example: 49-69-15251140 (a number in Frankfurt, Germany); 1-202-7076237 (a number in the U.S., Washington, D.C.). If an extension is applicable, include it after the telephone number preceded by 'x'. Example: 1-703-3589800x515 (telephone number with extension). Repeatable.

\$c Compression information. Repeatable.

\$d Path. Repeatable.

\$e Date and Hour of Consultation and Access

The time, in the form YYYYMMDDHHMM, at which the electronic item was last accessed. Not repeatable.

\$f Electronic name

The electronic name of a file as it exists in the directory/subdirectory indicated in subfield \$d on the host identified in subfield \$a. Subfield \$f may be repeated if a single logical file has been divided into parts and stored under different names. In this case, the separate parts should constitute a single bibliographic item. In all other cases, a file that may be retrieved under different filenames contains multiple occurrences of field 856, each with it corresponding electronic name in subfield \$f. A filename may include wildcard characters (e.g., '*' or '?') if applicable, with a note in subfield \$z explaining how files are named. NOTE: Filenames may be case sensitive for some systems. This subfield may also contain the name of the electronic publication or conference. Repeatable.

\$h Processor of request

The username, or processor of the request; generally the data which precedes the at sign ('@') in the host address. Not repeatable.

\$i Instruction

An instruction or command needed for the remote host to process a request. Repeatable.

\$j Bits per second

The lowest and highest number of bits (binary units) of data that can be transmitted per second when connected to a host. The syntax for recording the number of bits per second (BPS) should be: [Lowest BPS]-[Highest BPS]. If only lowest given: [Lowest BPS]-. If only highest given: -[Highest BPS]. Not repeatable.

\$k Password

Used to record general-use passwords, and should not contain passwords requiring security. Not repeatable.

\$l Logon/login

General-use logon/login strings which do not require special security. Not repeatable.

\$m Contact for access assistance. Repeatable.

- \$n** Name of location of host in subfield \$a. Not repeatable.
- \$o** Operating system
For information, the operating system used by the host specified in subfield \$a is indicated in this subfield. Not repeatable.
- \$p** Port
The portion of the address that identifies a process or service in the host. Not repeatable.
- \$q** Electronic Format Type
Contains an identification of the electronic format type, which determines how data are transferred through a network. Usually, a text file can be transferred as character data which generally restricts the text to characters in the ASCII (American National Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set (i.e., the basic Latin alphabet, digits 0-9, a few special characters, and most punctuation marks). Text files with characters outside of the ASCII set, or non-textual data (e.g., computer programs, image data) must be transferred using another file transfer mode, usually binary mode. Electronic format type may be taken from lists such as registered Internet Media types (MIME types). Not repeatable. If the electronic resource is available in more than one format, then field 856 may be repeated.
- \$r** Settings
The settings used for transferring data. Included in settings are:
1) Number Data Bits (the number of bits per character);
2) Number Stop Bits (the number of bits to signal the end of a byte); and
3) Parity (the parity checking technique used). The syntax of these elements is: [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-[Number of Stop Bits]. If only the parity is given, the other elements of settings and their related hyphens are omitted (i.e., [Parity]). If one of the other two elements is given, the hyphen for the missing element is recorded in its proper position (i.e., [Parity]-[Number of Stop Bits] or [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-). The values for parity are: O (Odd), E (Even), N (None), S (Space), and M (Mark). Not repeatable.
- \$s** File size
The size of the file as stored under the filename indicated in subfield \$f. It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes (octets). It may be repeated in cases where the filename is repeated and directly follows the subfield \$f to which it applies. This information is not given for journals, since field 856 relates to the entire title, not to particular issues. Repeatable.
- \$t** Terminal emulation. Repeatable.
- \$u** Uniform Resource Identifier
The URI, which provides standard syntax for locating an object using existing Internet protocols. Field 856 is structured to allow for the creation of a URL from the concatenation of other separate 856 subfields. Subfield \$u may be used instead of those

separate subfields or in addition to them. The field is repeated if more than one URL needs to be recorded. Not repeatable

\$v Hours access method available

The hours that access to an electronic resource is available at the location indicated in this field. Repeatable

\$w Record control number. Repeatable.

\$x Non-public note. Repeatable.

\$y Access method

The access method when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Method specified in subfield \$y). This subfield may include access methods other than the main TCP/IP protocols specified in the first indicator. The data in this subfield corresponds with the access schemes specified in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) (RFC 1738), a product of the Uniform Resource Identifiers Working Group of the IETF. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) maintains a registry of URL schemes and defines the syntax and use of new schemes. Not repeatable.

\$z Public note

Repeatable.

\$2 Link text

Used for display in place of the URL in subfield \$u (Uniform Resource Identifier). When subfield \$2 is present, applications should use the contents of it as the link instead of subfield \$u linking to the destination in subfield \$u. Repeatable

Examples

EX 1: 856 1#\$awuarchive.wustl.edu\$cdecompress with PKUNZIP.exe \$d/mirrors2/win3/games\$fatmoids.zip\$xcannot verify because of transfer difficulty

EX 2: 856 1#\$uftp://path.net/pub/docs/urn2urc.ps
856 4#\$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/catdir/semidigdocs/seminar.html

EX 3: 856 2#\$apac.carl.org\$b192.54.81.128\$mCARL Situation
Room\$mhhelp@CARL.org\$nCARL Systems Inc., Denver, CO\$v24 hours

EX 4: 856 3#\$alocis.loc.gov\$b140.147.254.3\$mlonline@loc.gov\$t3270\$tline mode (e.g., vt100)\$vM-F 6:00 a.m.-21:30 p.m. USA EST, Sat. 8:30-17:00 USA EST, Sun. 13:00-17:00 USA EST

EX 5: 856 4#\$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/catdir/toc/93-3471.html

EX 6: 856 4#\$uhttp://www.gpntb.ru/win/inter-events/crimea94/report/prog_01r.html\$s14519 bytes\$v24

EX 7: 856 2#\$amaine.maine.edu\$nUniversity of Maine\$t3270

- EX 8: 856 1#\$awuarchive.wustl.edu\$dmirrors/info-mac/util\$color-system-icons.hqx\$s16874 bytes
856 0#\$akeptvm.bitnet\$facadlist file1\$s34,989 bytes\$facadlist file2\$s32,876 bytes\$facadlist file3\$s23987 bytes
- EX 9: 856 2#\$agopac.berkeley.edu\$mRoy Tennant
- EX 10: 856 3#\$b1-202-7072316\$j2400-9600\$nLibrary of Congress, Washington, DC\$oUNIX\$rE-7-1 \$tvt100\$zRequires logon and password
Dial-up numbers with related settings for terminal emulation
- EX 11: 856 1#\$aarchive.cis.ohio-state.edu\$dpub/comp.sources.Unix/volume 10\$fcomobj.lisp.10.Z\$qbinary
- EX 12: 856 1#\$aunmvm.bitnet\$lanonymous
- EX 13: 856 1#\$aseq1.loc.gov\$d/pub/soviet.archive\$fk1famine.bkg\$nLibrary of Congress, Washington, D.C.\$oUNIX
- EX 14: 856 2#\$amadlab.sprl.umich.edu\$nUniversity of Michigan Weather Underground \$p3000
- EX 15: 856 2#\$apucc.princeton.edu\$nPrinceton University, Princeton, N.J.
- EX 16: 856 0#\$auccvma.bitnet\$fIR-L\$hListserv\$isubscribe
- EX 17: 856 3#\$b1-202-7072316\$j2400-9600\$nLibrary of Congress, Washington, DC\$oUNIX \$rE-7-1
- EX 18: 856 1#\$aharvarda.harvard.edu\$kguest
- EX 19: 856 0#\$auicvm.bitnet\$fAN2
- EX 20: 856 1#\$awuarchive.wustl.edu\$dmirrors/info-mac/util\$color-system-icons.hqx
- EX 21: 856 4#\$awwww.gpntb.ru\$b193.233.14.7\$dwin/dewey\$fMoscow.Russia.GPNTB, Mikhail Goncharov \$oWINDOWS-NT\$s2048 bytes\$qtext/WINI-1251\$v24
- EX 22: 856 2#\$aanthrax.micro.umn.edu\$b128.101.95.23
Host name and Internet Protocol numeric address
- EX 23: 856 1#\$awuarchive.wustl.edu\$d/aii/admin/CAT.games\$fmac-qubic.22.hqx
- EX 24: 856 4#\$uhttp://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/EID/eid.htm\$qtext/html
- EX 25: 856 4#\$uhttp://www.nlc-bnc.ca/ifla/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.pdf
\$uhttp://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.pdf\$cRequires Adobe Acrobat Reader
- EX 26: 856 4#\$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright/title/17\$2United States Code, Title 17
The display can be configured to present the label text in \$2 as a clickable link, rather than the rather meaningless URL in \$u.

EX 27: 856 4#\$u<http://www.bl.uk/services/bsds/nbs/interface/wface01.html>\$2Interface (Web Version)

EX 28: 200 1#\$aISMN\$bElectronic resource\$eInternational standard music number\$eusers' manual\$f[International ISMN agency]

856 4#\$qhtml\$u<http://www.ismn-international.org/manual.html>

856 4#\$qpdf\$u<http://www.ismn-international.org/manual.pdf>

The *ISMN users' manual* is available in both html and pdf formats: field 856 is repeated within the record

886 DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT

Field Definition

This field contains data for which there is no specific UNIMARC field. It is used when an agency is converting records from another format and wishes to retain elements in fields which have no equivalent.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1: Type of field

- 0 Record Label
- 1 Variable control field (0-- fields without indicators or subfields)
- 2 Variable data field (010-999 fields)

Indicator 2: blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Tag of the Source Format Field

This subfield will not be present if Indicator 1 has the value 0. This subfield can be used only once with the value Tag of the Source Format Field. All other \$a subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

\$b Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field

This subfield will contain the indicators, subfield identifiers and subfields of the original field in their original order. This subfield can be used only once with the value Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field. All other \$b subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

\$2 System Code

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. For this field, \$2 appears first. See Appendix H for codes. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1: 886 2#\$2ukmarc\$a083\$b00\$aRussia. Education\$b- Biographies – Collections

There is no equivalent in UNIMARC for UKMARC's Verbal Feature Heading:
083 00\$aRussia. Education\$b- Biographies – Collections.

9-- NATIONAL USE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block is reserved for national use by agencies where UNIMARC is the basis of the domestic format. It is recommended that fields in this block be excluded from international exchange media. In cases of difficulty, it would be a matter for international agreement as to whether particular types of data should be held in a local field.

Agencies using this block may if they wish come to an agreement over common use of fields; but this is optional.

Notes on Field Contents

These fields may contain any information which is of local, as opposed to international, importance.

Related Fields, Indicators, and Subfields

All -9- and --9 fields throughout the format are reserved for national and local use; their definitions and indicator and subfield values remain undefined by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. This is also true of indicator value 9 and subfield \$9.

Examples

EX 1: 990 ##\$a200\$bcX\$bdN

A local libraries holdings data field. The South African State Library (code 200) has a microfiche copy (code c) which is not available for loan (code X) and a large print copy (code d) for which there is no loan restriction (code N).

EX 2: 996 ##\$aREF396.4\$SMI

SAMARC shelf number field

APPENDIX A: LANGUAGE CODES

Introduction

This list is based on code set B (bibliographic) of ISO 639-2: 1998 : *Codes for the representation of names of languages: alpha-3 codes*, developed by the TC37/SC2-TC46/SC4 Joint Working Group (JWG) of the International Organization for Standardization. It is available at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/languages/>.

ISO 639-2 was based on the USMARC code list but incorporated certain changes which were announced in the *UNIMARC Manual* 2000 update. These changes are now part of the list. Thus,

Abkhazian *Assigned collective code* [cau] (Caucasian (Other)) [[abk]]

becomes

Abkhazian [abk] *Was assigned collective code* [cau] (Caucasian (Other))

Old Irish *use* Irish, Old (to 1100) [cel] [[sga]]

becomes

Old Irish *use* Irish, Old (to 1100) [sga] *was* [cel]

The entire list of codes in alphabetical order of language name is reproduced below.

Characteristics of the List

In general, this list includes languages represented in the major body of the published literature.

Inclusions

Only written languages are included in the list. Where one spoken language is written in two different sets of characters, both written languages were included in the list.

Language Groups

Some codes have been assigned to major language groups, e.g. Papuan-Australian or Niger-Congo, instead of assigning codes to every individual minor language. For example, Kewa will not be assigned a code of its own but will be included in the Papuan-Australian group and given the code for that group.

An ancient or old language form that does not have a unique code will be assigned the code for the major language group to which it belongs instead of the code for the modern form. For example, Old Swedish, a dead language, will be assigned the code for the language group Germanic, Other, instead of the code for Swedish (modern). This system will allow the ancient language records to be more readily accessed.

Criteria for Assignment of Discrete Codes

Three-letter mnemonic codes using the first three letters of the English form of the language name have been used in most cases. Exceptions were necessary for some languages because they share the same three initial letters, e.g. Arabic and Aramaic, Kannada and Kanuri, Malagasy and Malay. In the case of the modern and the older forms of some languages, the

initial letters of each part of the language name were used to form the code. e.g. 'gmh' for German (Middle High) and 'goh' for German (Old High).

The code 'mul' for Multilingual was included for the purpose of providing the option of assigning a single code to accommodate a work containing several different languages, none of which predominates. The code 'und' for Undetermined has also been included for works in which the language cannot be determined. Language codes appear in UNIMARC records as lowercase alphabetic characters.

Provision for Change

The Library of Congress is the maintenance agency for this list and for ISO 639-2. Questions and requests for information about this list should be sent to the Cataloging Policy and Support Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20540-4305 (e-mail: cpso@loc.gov). ISO 639-2 includes only the list of codes and associated language or language group name. Requests for new language codes are submitted to the ISO 639-2 maintenance agency (Library of Congress) and balloted by the ISO 639 Joint Advisory Committee. Once approved, they are added to both the ISO 639-2 and MARC lists. Requests are sent to: iso639-2@loc.gov. Notices describing additions/deletions of code values will be issued for all changes to the language codes made in the interim period between issuance of revised versions of this document. Please consult the official website of the Registration Authority, <http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2> for these notices.

LANGUAGE CODE LIST BY NAME

| | |
|--|-----|
| Abkhazian | Abk |
| Achinese | Ace |
| Acoli | ach |
| Adangme | ada |
| Adyghe; Adygei | ady |
| Afar | aar |
| Afrihili | afh |
| Afrikaans | afr |
| Afro-Asiatic (Other) | afa |
| Ainu | ain |
| Akan | aka |
| Akkadian | akk |
| Albanian | alb |
| Aleut | ale |
| Algonquian languages | alg |
| Altaic (Other) | tut |
| Amharic | amh |
| Angika | anp |
| Apache languages | apa |
| Arabic | ara |
| Aragonese | arg |
| Arapaho | arp |
| Arawak | arw |
| Armenian | arm |
| Aromanian; Arumanian; Macedo-Romanian | rup |
| Artificial (Other) | art |
| Assamese | asm |
| Asturian; Bable; Leonese; Asturleonese | ast |
| Athapascan languages | ath |
| Australian languages | aus |
| Austronesian (Other) | map |
| Avaric | ava |
| Avestan | ave |
| Awadhi | awa |
| Aymara | aym |
| Azerbaijani | aze |
| Balinese | ban |
| Baltic (Other) | bat |
| Baluchi | bal |
| Bambara | bam |
| Bamileke languages | bai |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Banda languages | bad |
| Bantu (Other) | bnt |
| Basa | bas |
| Bashkir | bak |
| Basque | baq |
| Batak languages | btb |
| Beja; Bedawiyet | bej |
| Belarusian | bel |
| Bemba | bem |
| Bengali | ben |
| Berber (Other) | ber |
| Bhojpuri | bho |
| Bihari | bih |
| Bikol | bik |
| Bini; Edo | bin |
| Bislama | bis |
| Blin; Bilin | byn |
| Blissymbols; Blissymbolics; Bliss | zbl |
| Bokmål Norwegian; Norwegian Bokmål | nob |
| Bosnian | bos |
| Braj | bra |
| Breton | bre |
| Buginese | bug |
| Bulgarian | bul |
| Buriat | bua |
| Burmese | bur |
| Caddo | cad |
| Catalan; Valencian | cat |
| Caucasian (Other) | cau |
| Cebuano | ceb |
| Celtic (Other) | cel |
| Central American Indian (Other) | cai |
| Central Khmer | khm |
| Chagatai | chg |
| Chamic languages | cmc |
| Chamorro | cha |
| Chechen | che |
| Cherokee | chr |
| Cheyenne | chy |
| Chibcha | chb |
| Chichewa; Chewa; Nyanja | nya |
| Chinese | chi |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Chinook jargon | chn |
| Chipewyan; Dene Suline | chp |
| Choctaw | cho |
| Church Slavonic; Old Slavonic; Church Slavonic; Old Bulgarian; Old Church Slavonic | chu |
| Chuukese | chk |
| Chuvash | chv |
| Classical Newari; Old Newari; Classical Nepal Bhasa | nwc |
| Classical Syriac | syc |
| Coptic | cop |
| Cornish | cor |
| Corsican | cos |
| Cree | cre |
| Creek | mus |
| Creoles and pidgins English based (Other) | cpe |
| Creoles and pidgins French-based (Other) | cpf |
| Creoles and pidgins Portuguese-based (Other) | cpp |
| Creoles and pidgins (Other) | crp |
| Crimean Tatar; Crimean Turkish | crh |
| Croatian | scr |
| Cushitic (Other) | cus |
| Czech | cze |
| Dakota | dak |
| Danish | dan |
| Dargwa | dar |
| Delaware | del |
| Dinka | din |
| Divehi; Dhivehi; Maldivian | div |
| Dogri | doi |
| Dogrib | dgr |
| Dravidian (Other) | dra |
| Duala | dua |
| Dutch, Middle (ca.1050-1350) | dum |
| Dutch; Flemish | dut |
| Dyula | dyu |
| Dzongkha | dzo |
| Eastern Frisian | frs |
| Efik | efi |
| Egyptian (Ancient) | egy |
| Ekajuk | eka |
| Elamite | elx |
| English | eng |
| English, Middle (1100-1500) | enm |
| English, Old (ca.450-1100) | ang |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Erzya | myv |
| Esperanto | epo |
| Estonian | est |
| Ewe | ewe |
| Ewondo | ewo |
| Fang | fan |
| Fanti | fat |
| Faroese | fao |
| Fijian | fij |
| Filipino; Pilipino | fil |
| Finnish | fin |
| Finno-Ugrian (Other) | fiu |
| Fon | fon |
| French | fre |
| French, Middle (ca.1400-1600) | frm |
| French, Old (842-ca.1400) | fro |
| Friulian | fur |
| Fulah | ful |
| Ga | gaa |
| Gaelic; Scottish Gaelic | gla |
| Galibi Carib | car |
| Galician | glg |
| Ganda | lug |
| Gayo | gay |
| Gbaya | gba |
| Geez | gez |
| Georgian | geo |
| German | ger |
| German, Middle High (ca.1050–1500) | gmh |
| German, Old High (ca.750–1050) | goh |
| Germanic (Other) | gem |
| Gilbertese | gil |
| Gondi | gon |
| Gorontalo | gor |
| Gothic | got |
| Grebo | grb |
| Greek, Ancient (to 1453) | grc |
| Greek, Modern (1453-) | gre |
| Guarani | grn |
| Gujarati | guj |
| Gwich'in | gwi |
| Haida | hai |
| Haitian; Haitian Creole | hat |
| Hausa | hau |
| Hawaiian | haw |
| Hebrew | heb |
| Herero | her |
| Hiligaynon | hil |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Himachali | him |
| Hindi | hin |
| Hiri Motu | hmo |
| Hittite | hit |
| Hmong | hmn |
| Hungarian | hun |
| Hupa | hup |
| Iban | iba |
| Icelandic | ice |
| Ido | ido |
| Igbo | ibo |
| Ijo languages | ijo |
| Iloko | ilo |
| Inari Sami | smn |
| Indic (Other) | inc |
| Indo-European (Other) | ine |
| Indonesian | ind |
| Ingush | inh |
| Interlingua (International Auxiliary Language Association) | ina |
| Interlingue; Occidental | ile |
| Inuktitut | iku |
| Inupiaq | ipk |
| Iranian (Other) | ira |
| Irish | gle |
| Irish, Middle (900-1200) | mga |
| Irish, Old (to 900) | sga |
| Iroquoian languages | iro |
| Italian | ita |
| Japanese | jpn |
| Javanese | jav |
| Judeo-Arabic | jrb |
| Judeo-Persian | jpr |
| Kabardian | kbd |
| Kabyle | kab |
| Kachin; Jingpho | kac |
| Kalaallisut; Greenlandic | kal |
| Kalmyk; Oirat | xal |
| Kamba | kam |
| Kannada | kan |
| Kanuri | kau |
| Kara-Kalpak | kaa |
| Karachay-Balkar | krc |
| Karelian | krl |
| Karen languages | kar |
| Kashmiri | kas |
| Kashubian | csb |
| Kawi | kaw |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Kazakh | kaz |
| Khasi | kha |
| Khoisan (Other) | khi |
| Khotanese | kho |
| Kikuyu; Gikuyu | kik |
| Kimbundu | kmb |
| Kinyarwanda | kin |
| Kirghiz; Kyrgyz | kir |
| Klingon; tlhIngan-Hol | tlh |
| Komi | kom |
| Kongo | kon |
| Konkani | kok |
| Korean | kor |
| Kosraean | kos |
| Kpelle | kpe |
| Kru languages | kro |
| Kuanyama; Kwanyama | kua |
| Kumyk | kum |
| Kurdish | kur |
| Kurukh | kru |
| Kutenai | kut |
| Ladino | lad |
| Lahnda | lah |
| Lamba | lam |
| Land Dayak languages | day |
| Lao | lao |
| Latin | lat |
| Latvian | lav |
| Lezghian | lez |
| Limburgan; Limburger; Limburgish | lim |
| Lingala | lin |
| Lithuanian | lit |
| Lojban | jbo |
| Low German; Low Saxon; German, Low; Saxon, Low | nds |
| Lower Sorbian | dsb |
| Lozi | loz |
| Luba-Katanga | lub |
| Luba-Lulua | lua |
| Luiseno | lui |
| Lule Sami | smj |
| Lunda | lun |
| Luo (Kenya and Tanzania) | luo |
| Lushai | lus |
| Luxembourgish; Letzeburgesch | ltz |
| Macedonian | mac |
| Madurese | mad |
| Magahi | mag |

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Maithili | mai |
| Makasar | mak |
| Malagasy | mlg |
| Malay | may |
| Malayalam | mal |
| Maltese | mlt |
| Manchu | mnc |
| Mandar | mdr |
| Mandingo | man |
| Manipuri | mni |
| Manobo languages | mno |
| Manx | glv |
| Maori | mao |
| Mapudungun; Mapuche | arn |
| Marathi | mar |
| Mari | chm |
| Marshallese | mah |
| Marwari | mwr |
| Masai | mas |
| Mayan languages | myn |
| Mende | men |
| Mi'kmaq; Micmac | mic |
| Minangkabau | min |
| Mirandese | mwI |
| Mohawk | moh |
| Moksha | mdf |
| Moldavian | mol |
| Mon-Khmer (Other) | mkh |
| Mongo | lol |
| Mongolian | mon |
| Mossi | mos |
| Multiple languages | mul |
| Munda languages | mun |
| N'Ko | nqo |
| Nahuatl languages | nah |
| Nauru | nau |
| Navajo; Navaho | nav |
| Ndebele, North; North Ndebele | nde |
| Ndebele, South; South Ndebele | nbl |
| Ndonga | ndo |
| Neapolitan | nap |
| Nepal Bhasa; Newari | new |
| Nepali | nep |
| Nias | nia |
| Niger-Kordofanian (Other) | nic |
| Nilo-Saharan (Other) | ssa |
| Niuean | niu |
| No linguistic content | zxx |

| | |
|--|---------|
| Nogai | nog |
| Norse, Old | non |
| North American Indian | nai |
| Northern Frisian | frr |
| Northern Sami | sme |
| Norwegian Nynorsk; Nynorsk, Norwegian | nno |
| Norwegian | nor |
| Norwegian (Bokmål) | nob |
| Nubian languages | nub |
| Nyamwezi | nym |
| Nyankole | nyn |
| Nyoro | nyo |
| Nzima | nzi |
| Occitan (post 1500); Provençal | oci |
| Official Aramaic (700-300 BCE); Imperial Aramaic (700-300 BCE) | arc |
| Ojibwa | oji |
| Oriya | ori |
| Oromo | orm |
| Osage | osa |
| Ossetian; Ossetic | oss |
| Otomian languages | oto |
| Pahlavi | pal |
| Palauan | pau |
| Pali | pli |
| Pampanga; Kapampangan | pam |
| Pangasinan | pag |
| Panjabi; Punjabi | pan |
| Papiamento | pap |
| Papuan (Other) | paa |
| Pedi; Sepedi; Northern Sotho | nso |
| Persian | per |
| Persian, Old (ca.600-400 B.C.) | peo |
| Philippine (Other) | phi |
| Phoenician | phn |
| Pohnpeian | pon |
| Polish | pol |
| Portuguese | por |
| Prakrit languages | pra |
| Provençal, Old (to 1500) | ppro |
| Pushto; Pashto | pus |
| Quechua | que |
| Rajasthani | raj |
| Rapanui | rap |
| Rarotongan; Cook Islands Maori | rar |
| Reserved for local use | qaa-qtz |
| Romance (Other) | roa |

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----|------------------------------|-----|
| Romanian | rum | Sumerian | sux |
| Romansh | roh | Sundanese | sun |
| Romany | rom | Susu | sus |
| Rundi | run | Swahili | swa |
| Russian | rus | Swati | ssw |
| Salishan languages | sal | Swedish | swe |
| Samaritan Aramaic | sam | Swiss German; Alemannic | gsw |
| Sami languages (Other) | smi | Syriac | syr |
| Samoan | smo | Tagalog | tgl |
| Sandawe | sad | Tahitian | tah |
| Sango | sag | Tai (Other) | tai |
| Sanskrit | san | Tajik | tgk |
| Santali | sat | Tamashek | tmh |
| Sardinian | srd | Tamil | tam |
| Sasak | sas | Tatar | tat |
| Scots | sco | Telugu | tel |
| Selkup | sel | Tereno | ter |
| Semitic (Other) | sem | Tetum | tet |
| Serbian | scc | Thai | tha |
| Serer | srr | Tibetan | tib |
| Shan | shn | Tigre | tig |
| Shona | sna | Tigrinya | tir |
| Sichuan Yi; Nuosu | iii | Time | tem |
| Sicilian | scn | Tiv | tiv |
| Sidamo | sid | Tlingit | tli |
| Sign Languages | sgn | Tok Pisin | tpi |
| Siksika | bla | Tokelau | tkl |
| Sindhi | snd | Tonga (Nyasa) | tog |
| Sinhala; Sinhalese | sin | Tonga (Tonga Islands) | ton |
| Sino-Tibetan (Other) | sit | Tsimshian | tsi |
| Siouan languages | sio | Tsonga | tso |
| Skolt Sami | sms | Tswana | tsn |
| Slave (Athapascan) | den | Tumbuka | tum |
| Slavic (Other) | sla | Tupi languages | tup |
| Slovak | slo | Turkish | tur |
| Slovenian | slv | Turkish, Ottoman (1500-1928) | ota |
| Sogdian | sog | Turkmen | tuk |
| Somali | som | Tuvalu | tlv |
| Songhai languages | son | Tuvinian | tyv |
| Soninke | snk | Twi | twi |
| Sorbian languages | wen | Udmurt | udm |
| Sotho, Southern | sot | Ugaritic | uga |
| South American Indian (Other) | sai | Uighur; Uyghur | uig |
| Southern Altai | alt | Ukrainian | ukr |
| Southern Sami | sma | Umbundu | umb |
| Spanish; Castilian | spa | Uncoded languages | mis |
| Sranan Tongo | srn | Undetermined | und |
| Sukuma | suk | Upper Sorbian | hsb |

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| Urdu | urd |
| Uzbek | uzb |
| Vai | vai |
| Venda | ven |
| Vietnamese | vie |
| Volapük | vol |
| Votic | vot |
| Wakashan languages | wak |
| Walamo | wal |
| Walloon | wln |
| Waray | war |
| Washo | was |
| Welsh | wel |
| Western Frisian | fry |
| Wolof | wol |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Xhosa | xho |
| Yakut | sah |
| Yao | yao |
| Yapese | yap |
| Yiddish | yid |
| Yoruba | yor |
| Yupik languages | ypk |
| Zande languages | znd |
| Zapotec | zap |
| Zaza; Dimili; Dimli; Kirdki; Kirmanjki; Zazaki | zza |
| Zenaga | zen |
| Zhuang; Chuang | Zha |
| Zulu | Zul |
| Zuni | Zun |

APPENDIX B: COUNTRY CODES

The following is a list of the two-character alphabetic codes for names of countries that appears in ISO 3166-1, *Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries*.

The latest most up-to-date list is found at: <http://www.iso.org/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/index.html>

The list as at 1 February 2008 is reproduced below.

This list states the country names (official short names in English) in alphabetical order as given in ISO 3166-1.

| Name of Country | |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Afghanistan | AF |
| Albania | AL |
| Algeria | DZ |
| American Samoa | AS |
| Andorra | AD |
| Angola | AO |
| Anguilla | AI |
| Antarctica | AQ |
| Antigua and Barbuda | AG |
| Argentina | AR |
| Armenia | AM |
| Aruba | AW |
| Australia | AU |
| Austria | AT |
| Azerbaijan | AZ |
| Bahamas | BS |
| Bahrain | BH |
| Bangladesh | BD |
| Barbados | BB |
| Belarus | BY |
| Belgium | BE |
| Belize | BZ |
| Benin | BJ |
| Bermuda | BM |
| Bhutan | BT |
| Bolivia | BO |
| Bosnia and Herzegovina | BA |
| Botswana | BW |
| Bouvet Island | BV |
| Brazil | BR |
| British Indian Ocean Territory | IO |
| Brunei Darussalam | BN |

| Name of Country | |
|--|----|
| Bulgaria | BG |
| Burkina Faso | BF |
| Burundi | BI |
| Cambodia | KH |
| Cameroon | CM |
| Canada | CA |
| Cape Verde | CV |
| Cayman Islands | KY |
| Central African Republic | CF |
| Chad | TD |
| Chile | CL |
| China | CN |
| Christmas Island | CX |
| Cocos (Keeling) Islands | CC |
| Colombia | CO |
| Comoros | KM |
| Congo | CG |
| Congo, the Democratic Re-public of the | CD |
| Cook Islands | CK |
| Costa Rica | CR |
| Côte d'Ivoire | CI |
| Croatia | HR |
| Cuba | CU |
| Cyprus | CY |
| Czech Republic | CZ |
| Denmark | DK |
| Djibouti | DJ |
| Dominica | DM |
| Dominican Republic | DO |
| Ecuador | EC |
| Egypt | EG |
| El Salvador | SV |

| Name of Country | |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Equatorial Guinea | GQ |
| Eritrea | ER |
| Estonia | EE |
| Ethiopia | ET |
| Falkland Islands (Malvinas) | FK |
| Faroe Islands | FO |
| Fiji | FJ |
| Finland | FI |
| France | FR |
| French Guiana | GF |
| French Polynesia | PF |
| French Southern Territories | TF |
| Gabon | GA |
| Gambia | GM |
| Georgia | GE |
| Germany | DE |
| Ghana | GH |
| Gibraltar | GI |
| Greece | GR |
| Greenland | GL |
| Grenada | GD |
| Guadeloupe | GP |
| Guam | GU |
| Guatemala | GT |
| Guernsey | GG |
| Guinea | GN |
| Guinea-Bissau | GW |
| Guyana | GY |
| Haiti | HT |
| Heard Island and McDonald Islands | HM |
| Holy See (Vatican City State) | VA |
| Honduras | HN |
| Hong Kong | HK |
| Hungary | HU |
| Iceland | IS |
| India | IN |
| Indonesia | ID |
| Iran, Islamic Republic Of | IR |
| Iraq | IQ |
| Ireland | IE |
| Isle of Man | IM |
| Israel | IL |
| Italy | IT |
| Jamaica | JM |
| Japan | JP |
| Jersey | JE |
| Jordan | JO |

| Name of Country | |
|--|----|
| Kazakhstan | KZ |
| Kenya | KE |
| Kiribati | KI |
| Korea, Democratic People's Republic of | KP |
| Korea, Republic Of | KR |
| Kuwait | KW |
| Kyrgyzstan | KG |
| Lao People's Democratic Republic | LA |
| Latvia | LV |
| Lebanon | LB |
| Lesotho | LS |
| Liberia | LR |
| Libyan Arab Jamahiriya | LY |
| Liechtenstein | LI |
| Lithuania | LT |
| Luxembourg | LU |
| Macao | MO |
| Macedonia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of | MK |
| Madagascar | MG |
| Malawi | MW |
| Malaysia | MY |
| Maldives | MV |
| Mali | ML |
| Malta | MT |
| Marshall Islands | MH |
| Martinique | MQ |
| Mauritania | MR |
| Mauritius | MU |
| Mayotte | YT |
| Mexico | MX |
| Micronesia, Federated States of | FM |
| Moldova, Republic of | MD |
| Monaco | MC |
| Mongolia | MN |
| Montenegro | ME |
| Montserrat | MS |
| Morocco | MA |
| Mozambique | MZ |
| Myanmar | MM |
| Namibia | NA |
| Nauru | NR |
| Nepal | NP |
| Netherlands | NL |
| Netherlands Antilles | AN |
| New Caledonia | NC |
| New Zealand | NZ |

| Name of Country | |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Nicaragua | NI |
| Niger | NE |
| Nigeria | NG |
| Niue | NU |
| Norfolk Island | NF |
| Northern Mariana Islands | MP |
| Norway | NO |
| Oman | OM |
| Pakistan | PK |
| Palau | PW |
| Palestinian Territory, Occupied | PS |
| Panama | PA |
| Papua New Guinea | PG |
| Paraguay | PY |
| Peru | PE |
| Philippines | PH |
| Pitcairn | PN |
| Poland | PL |
| Portugal | PT |
| Puerto Rico | PR |
| Qatar | QA |
| Reunion | RE |
| Romania | RO |
| Russian Federation | RU |
| Rwanda | RW |
| Saint Bartholemy | BL |
| Saint Helena | SH |
| Saint Kitts and Nevis | KN |
| Saint Lucia | LC |
| Saint Martin | MF |
| Saint Pierre and Miquelon | PM |
| Saint Vincent and the Grenadines | VC |
| Samoa | WS |
| San Marino | SM |
| Sao Tome and Principe | ST |
| Saudi Arabia | SA |
| Senegal | SN |
| Serbia | RS |
| Seychelles | SC |
| Sierra Leone | SL |
| Singapore | SG |
| Slovakia | SK |
| Slovenia | SI |
| Solomon Islands | SB |
| Somalia | SO |
| South Africa | ZA |

| Name of Country | |
|--|----|
| South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands | GS |
| Spain | ES |
| Sri Lanka | LK |
| Sudan | SD |
| Suriname | SR |
| Svalbard and Jan Mayen | SJ |
| Swaziland | SZ |
| Sweden | SE |
| Switzerland | CH |
| Syrian Arab Republic | SY |
| Taiwan, Province of China | TW |
| Tajikistan | TJ |
| Tanzania, United Republic of | TZ |
| Thailand | TH |
| Timor-Leste | TL |
| Togo | TG |
| Tokelau | TK |
| Tonga | TO |
| Trinidad and Tobago | TT |
| Tunisia | TN |
| Turkey | TR |
| Turkmenistan | TM |
| Turks and Caicos Islands | TC |
| Tuvalu | TV |
| Uganda | UG |
| Ukraine | UA |
| United Arab Emirates | AE |
| United Kingdom | GB |
| United States | US |
| United States Minor Outlying Islands | UM |
| Uruguay | UY |
| Uzbekistan | UZ |
| Vanuatu | VU |
| Venezuela | VE |
| Viet Nam | VN |
| Virgin Islands, British | VG |
| Virgin Islands, U.S. | VI |
| Wallis and Futuna | WF |
| Western Sahara | EH |
| Yemen | YE |
| Zambia | ZM |
| Zimbabwe | ZW |

APPENDIX C: RELATOR CODES

Introduction

Codes from this list may be used in subfield \$4 of fields in the 7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK. When more than one code is to be used in conjunction with a single name, each code should be carried in a separate subfield \$4.

The codes in this list are not mutually exclusive. Institutions making use of such codes should attempt to use the most specific code applicable when one or more would seem to apply. The use of relator codes in UNIMARC is optional.

Alphabetic 3-character codes allowing for a preciser identification of relationships for performers which may be used in addition to the numeric codes 545 and 721 when needed by the cataloguing agency are found in field 145.

Code Relationship

- 000 Undetermined function
A person or corporate body with undetermined responsibility. Used when it is necessary to indicate that an attempt has been made to determine the responsibility without success. If the record comes from a source which does not recognise relators do not use 000. Instead do not use any subfield which requires a relator code.
Accompanying material, Writer of
USE Writer of accompanying material (770)
- 005 Actor
Person who principally exhibits acting skills in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
- 010 Adapter
One who modifies a work to make it accessible to another audience, different from the one it was intended for. Includes rewriting for motion pictures or another audiovisual medium, or to adapt a written text into a new one. For one who reworks a musical composition, usually for a different medium, use Arranger (030).
Addressee
USE Recipient of letters (660)
Advisor to a thesis or dissertation
USE Thesis advisor (727)
- 018 Animator
Person who uses technology to give his, or her artwork the illusion of movement.
- 020 Annotator
Writer of manuscript annotations in a printed book. For the writer of commentary or explanatory notes about a text, use Commentator for written text (212).

- Appraiser
USE Expert (365)
- 030 Arranger
One who transcribes a musical composition, usually for a different instrument or medium from that of the original; in an arrangement the musical substance remains essentially unchanged.
- 040 Artist
Painter, sculptor, etc., of a work.
- 050 Assignee
Person or organisation to which a license for printing or publishing has been transferred.
- 060 Associated name
General relator for a name associated with or found in a book, which cannot be determined to be that of a Former owner (390) or other designated relator indicative of provenance.
- 065 Auctioneer
Person or corporate body in charge of the estimation and public auctioning of goods, particularly books, artistic works, etc.
- 070 Author
Person or corporate body chiefly responsible for the creation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work. When more than one person or body jointly bears such responsibility, this code may be used in association with as many headings as is appropriate.
- 072 Author in quotations or text extracts
Person whose work is largely quoted or extracted in works to which he or she did not contribute directly. Such quotations are found particularly in exhibition catalogues, collections of photographs etc.
- 075 Author of afterword, postface, colophon, etc.
Use instead of Author of introduction, etc. (080) when the nature of the afterword etc. is completely different from that of the introduction, etc.
- 080 Author of introduction, etc.
One who is the author of an introduction, preface, foreword, afterword, notes, other critical matter, etc., but who is not the chief author of the work. See also Author of afterword (075).
- 090 Author of dialogue
The writer of dialogue or spoken commentary for a screenplay or sound recording.

Author of the "book" of an opera, musical or ballet.
USE Librettist (480)

- 100 Bibliographic antecedent
One who is the author of the work upon which the work reflected in the catalogue record is based in whole or in part. This relator may be appropriate in records for adaptations, indexes, continuations and sequels by different authors, concordances, etc.
- USE Composer of adapted work (233) for the composer of a musical work that has been adapted, etc.
- 110 Binder
- 120 Binding designer
- 130 Book designer
Person or corporate body responsible for the entire graphic design of a book, including arrangement of type and illustration, choice of materials, and process to be used.
- 140 Bookjacket designer
- 150 Bookplate designer
- 160 Bookseller
- Bowdlerizer
USE Censor (190)
- 170 Calligrapher
- 180 Cartographer
- Cartoonist
USE Animator for a person who uses technology to give his or her artwork the illusion of movement.
USE Artist for all other cartoonists
- 190 Censor
Censor, bowdlerizer, expurgator, etc., official or private.
- Choir Master
USE Choral director (195)
- 195 Choral director
Person who conducts the performance of all the singers who constitute a choir. (was USE Conductor (250))
- 200 Choreographer
- 202 Circus performer
Person who performs in a circus.

- 205 Collaborator
Use only when a more precise function, represented by another code, cannot be used.
- Colourist
USE Graphic technician (410)
- 206 Collector of field material
Person who collects, in the field, elements of musical, oral or natural heritage related to a given territory, population or species, either by transcription or by sound or audiovisual recording
- 207 Comedian
An entertainer whose performance is designed to arouse laughter.
- 210 Commentator
One who provides interpretation, analysis, or a discussion of the subject matter on a recording, motion picture, or other audio-visual medium.
- 212 Commentator for written text
One who writes commentary or explanatory notes about a text. For the writer of manuscript annotations in a printed book, use Annotator (020).
- 220 Compiler
One who produces a collection by selecting and putting together matter from works of various persons or bodies. Also, one who selects and puts together in one publication matter from the works of one person or body.
- 230 Composer
One who creates a musical work, usually a piece of music in manuscript or printed form.
- 233 Composer of adapted work
Composer of the work (opera, aria, movement, theme) for which the bibliographic item contains a paraphrase, fantasia, potpourri. Also, the composer of the theme that is the subject of variations written by a different composer.
- 236 Composer of main musical work
Composer of the main musical work into which a cadenza, an aria, etc. has been inserted by another composer. Use only when the main musical work is not included in the item.
- 240 Compositor
Computer graphics designer
USE Graphic technician (410) and/or Illustrator (440)
- 245 Conceptor
Person or corporate body responsible for the original idea on which a work is based. This includes the scientific author of an audio-visual item and the conceptor of an advertisement or slogan.
- 250 Conductor
Person directing the group performing a musical work.

- 255 Consultant to a project.
Professional person or organisation engaged specifically to provide an intellectual overview of a strategic or operational task and – by analysis, specification or instruction – to create or propose a cost-effective course of action or solution.
- 257 Continuator
Person who succeeds another in the realisation of a work.
- Contractor/Monitor
USE Monitor/Contractor (540)
- Continuity artist
USE Production personnel (633)
- 260 Copyright holder
- 270 Corrector
Scriptorium official who corrected the work of a scribe. For printed matter use proof-reader (640).
- 273 Curator of an exhibition
Person who is responsible for conceiving and organising an exhibition.
- Counterfeiter
USE Forger (380)
- Costume designer
USE Production personnel (633)
- 275 Dancer
Person who principally exhibits dancing skills in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
- 280 Dedicatee
Person or organisation to whom a book or manuscript is dedicated (not the recipient of a gift). The dedication may be formal (appearing in the document) or informal (copy-specific). In the latter case the field containing the 280 code will have a subfield \$5 for the institution holding the copy.
- 290 Dedicator
The author of a dedication. The dedication may be a formal statement or it may be in epistolary or verse form.
- 295 Degree-grantor
The body granting the degree for which the thesis or dissertation included in the item was presented.
- Designer of binding
USE Binding designer (120)

- Designer of book
USE Book designer (130)
- Designer of bookjacket
USE Bookjacket designer (140)
- Designer of bookplate
USE Bookplate designer (150)
- Designer of type
USE Type designer (740)
- 300 Director
Person responsible for the general management of the work or who supervised the production of the performance for stage, screen, or sound recording.
- 303 Disc jockey
Person or corporate body who selects and plays prerecorded music for an audience.
- 305 Dissertant
Person who presents a thesis for a university or higher-level educational degree.
- 310 Distributor
Agent or agency that has exclusive or shared marketing rights for an item.
- 320 Donor
Donor of book to present owner. Donor to previous owner is designated as Former owner (390).
- 330 Dubious author
One to whom the authorship of a work has been dubiously or incorrectly ascribed.
- 340 Editor
One who prepares for publication a work not his own. The editorial work may be either technical or intellectual.
- Editor of series
USE Publishing director (651)
- Editor-in-chief
USE Publishing director (651)
- 350 Engraver
- 360 Etcher
- 365 Expert
Person in charge of the description and appraisal of the value of goods, particularly rare items, works of art, etc.
- Expurgator
USE Censor (190)

- 370 Film editor
- 380 Forger
- 390 Former owner
Person or organisation owning an item at any time in the past. Includes a person or organisation to whom the item was once presented as named in a statement inscribed by another person or organisation. Person or body giving the item to present owner is designated as Donor (320).
- 395 Founder
Person who creates a series, magazine, periodical or any other kind of continuing resource.
- 400 Funder [Obsolete]
USE Sponsor (723).
- 410 Graphic technician
Person responsible for the realization of the design in a medium from which an image (printed, displayed etc.) may be produced. If person who conceives the design (i.e. Illustrator (440)) also realizes it, codes for both functions may be used as needed. Includes colourists.
- Harmoniser
USE Arranger (030)
- 420 Honoree
Person in memory or honour of whom a book is donated.
- Humourist
USE Comedian (207)
- 430 Illuminator
- 440 Illustrator
Person who conceives a design or illustration.
- Imprimatur
USE Licensor (500)
- 445 Impresario
Manager or producer of a music or theatre production: also the director of an opera company
- 450 Inscriber
Person who signs a presentation statement.
- 460 Interviewee
- 470 Interviewer
- Investigator
USE Originator (560)

- Joint author
USE Author (070)
- 475 Issuing body
The agency under whose auspices a bibliographic resource may be published. The body may or may not be intellectually responsible for the bibliographic resource, and may or may not be the publisher.
- 480 Librettist
Writer of the text of an opera, oratorio, choreographic work, etc.
- 490 Licensee
Original recipient of right to print or publish.
- 500 Licensor
Signer of license, imprimatur, etc.
- Lighting designer
USE Production personnel (633)
- Literary editor
USE Publishing director (651)
- 510 Lithographer
Person who prepares the stone or grained plate for lithographic printing, including a graphic artist creating an original design while working directly on the surface from which printing will be done.
- 520 Lyricist
Writer of the text of a song.
- Make-up supervisor
USE Production personnel (633)
- Mask designer
USE Production personnel (633)
- Meeting organiser
USE Organiser of meeting (557)
- Memorial
USE Honoree (420)
- 530 Metal-engraver
- 535 Mime artist
Person who performs mime.
- 540 Monitor
Person or organisation that supervises the compliance with the contract and is

- responsible for the report and controls its distribution. Sometimes referred to as the grantee, or controlling agency.
- Motion picture editor
USE Film editor (370)
- Music engraver
USE Engraver (350)
- Musical reduction, arranger of
USE Arranger (030)
- 545 Musician
Person or ensemble performing music or contributing to the musical content of a work. May be used for vocalist or instrumentalist. Use when it is not possible or desirable to identify more precisely the person's function. For an ensemble, specify with an alphabetic code from the list in field 145 the kind of ensemble.
- 550 Narrator
Speaker delivering the narration in a motion picture, sound recording or other type of work.
- 555 Opponent
A person solely or partly responsible for opposing a thesis or dissertation.
- Orchestral director
USE Conductor (250)
- Orchestrator
USE Arranger (030)
- 557 Organiser of meeting
A person or body responsible for organising the meeting reported to the item.
- 560 Originator
Author or agency performing the work, i.e. the name of a person or organisation associated with the intellectual content of the work. Includes person named in the work as investigator or principal investigator. This category does not include the publisher or personal affiliation, or sponsor except where it is also the corporate author.
- 570 Other
Use whenever a relator or relator code in a national format has no equivalent in UNIMARC.
- 580 Papermaker
- 582 Patent applicant
The person or body that applied for a patent described in the record.
- 584 Patent inventor
The person who invented the device or process covered by the patent described in the record.

- 587 Patentee
The person or body that was granted the patent described in the record.
- 590 Performer
Person or corporate body acting or otherwise performing in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment. Use if more specific codes are not required, e.g. actor, dancer, musician, singer.
- 595 Performer of research
The corporate body responsible for performing the research reported in the item.
- 600 Photographer
(1) the person who took a still photograph. This relator may be used in a record for either the original photograph or for a reproduction in any medium; or, (2) the person responsible for the photography in a motion picture.
- Plates, Printer of
USE Printer of Plates (620)
- 605 Presenter
Person who introduces and appears in a television or radio programme etc.
- 610 Printer
Printer of texts, whether from type or plates (e.g. stereotype).
- Printer of photographs
USE Graphic Technician (410)
- 620 Printer of plates
Printer of illustrations or designs from plates.
- 630 Producer
Person with final responsibility for the making of a motion picture, including business aspects, management of the productions, and the commercial success of the film.
- USE Impresario (445) for the manager or producer of music or theatre production
- 632 Production designer
Person responsible for all the visual aspects of a production, including lighting, scenery, costumes, etc.
- 633 Production personnel
Skilled individuals associated with the production (props, lighting, special effects, etc.) of a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment. Includes continuity artists.
- 635 Programmer
Person or corporate body responsible for the creation of computer program design documents, source code, or machine-executable digital files and supporting documentation.

- 637 Project manager
Person who manages a programme of work towards a predefined objective.
- Promoter
USE Thesis advisor (727)
- 640 Proof-reader
Corrector of printed matter only. For manuscripts use Corrector (270).
- Property manager
USE Production personnel (633)
- 650 Publisher
- 651 Publishing director
- 655 Puppeteer
Performer who operates a puppet.
- Realiser of the thorough bass
USE Arranger (030)
- 660 Recipient of letters
Person to whom letters are addressed.
- 665 Record producer
Person or corporate body who controls the recording sessions, coaches and guides the musicians, organizes and schedules production budget and resources, and supervises the recording, mixing and mastering processes.
- 670 Recording engineer
Person supervising the technical aspects of a sound or video recording session.
- Redactor
USE Secretary (710)
- Reporter
USE Secretary (710)
- 672 Remixer
Person or corporate body who uses audio mixing to realize an alternate master recording of a song, adding or subtracting elements, or simply changing the equalization, dynamics, pitch, tempo, playing time, or almost any other aspect of the various musical components.
- 673 Research team head
The person who directed the research or managed the project reported in the item.
- 677 Research team member
A member of a research team responsible for the research reported in the item.

- 675 Reviewer
Person or corporate body responsible for the review of a book, motion picture, performance, etc.
- 680 Rubricator
- 690 Scenarist
Author of a screenplay.
- 695 Scientific advisor
Person who brings scientific, pedagogical, or historical competence to the conception and realization of a work, particularly in the case of audio-visual items.
- 700 Scribe
Maker of pen-facsimiles of printed matter and also an amanuensis or a writer of manuscripts proper.
- 705 Sculptor
USE when the more general term Artist (040) is not required.
- 710 Secretary
Redactor, or other person responsible for expressing the views of a body, being responsible for their intellectual content.
- Series editor
USE Publishing director (651)
- 720 Signer
Use for signature which appears in a book without a presentation or other statement indicative of provenance.
- 721 Singer
Person or persons who uses his or her voice or their voices with or without musical accompaniment to produce music. A singer's performance may or may not include actual words.
- Slogan creator
USE Conceptor (245)
- Sound effects engineer
USE Production personnel (633)
- Special effects creator
USE Production personnel (633)
- 723 Sponsor
A person or agency responsible for supporting financially a bibliographic resource or an exhibition or meeting which is associated with the bibliographic resource. For issuing or sponsoring bodies of continuing resources USE Issuing body.
- Stage designer
USE Production designer (632)

- Stage director
USE Director (300)
- 725 Standards body
The agency responsible for issuing or enforcing a standard.
- 726 Stunt performer
Surrogate for an actor, who performs dangerous or difficult actions
- Textual engraver
USE Engraver (350)
- 727 Thesis advisor
Person under whose supervision a degree candidate develops and presents a thesis, mémoire, or text of a dissertation.
- 730 Translator
One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.
- 740 Type designer
Person who designed the type face used in a particular book.
- 750 Typographer
Person primarily responsible for choice and arrangement of type used in a book. If the person who selects and arranges type is also responsible for other aspects of the graphic design of a book, i.e. Book designer (130), codes for both functions may be needed.
- 753 Vendor
Person who sold the bibliographic item being described.
- 755 Vocalist
Person who principally exhibits singing skills in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
- 760 Wood-engraver
- 770 Writer of accompanying material
Writer of significant material which accompanies a sound recording or other audio-visual material.
- Writer of dialogue
USE Author of dialogue (090)

APPENDIX D: GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODES

Introduction

The Geographic Area Codes (GAC) allow broad retrieval of cataloguing records in machine-readable form by geographical areas. It is used in field 660 of UNIMARC. Separate codes for geophysical entities at the country or larger level are provided together with codes for the first order political divisions of a few countries (see Scope and Local Entities below). The Geographic Area Codes were developed by the U.S. Library of Congress for use in MARC records. The *MARC code list for geographic areas* is available at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/gacshome.html> and includes the codes in code order. The list in name order is reproduced at the end of this appendix.

The guide to application assumes the use of a system of subject headings (c.f. Application of the Code in UNIMARC Records below). This is solely to clarify the relationship of the subject of the document to the GACs assigned.

Characteristics of the Code

Coding Scheme

The code provides for seven characters using lower case alphabetic characters and hyphens, and, as far as possible, provides a hierarchical breakdown of geographical and political entities. Allowance has been made for future additions of regions or areas represented by a high volume of subject coverage. The following five levels are represented in the code:

- a) Continent of comparable geographical entity, one character
- b) International region, one character
- c) National states and internationally recognised dependencies, two characters
- d) Regions within a country, one character
- e) States or provinces, two characters

The codes appear as lower case characters in the machine record.

| | |
|---------|-----------------------------|
| n-us-ak | Alaska |
| a-sy--- | Syria |
| n-usp-- | Pacific and Mountain States |

Scope

It should be noted that any given entry in the code list is coded in no more than two or three levels so that each code designation contains several hyphens. Levels 4 and 5, for example, have been used for the United States, Canada, Australia, the United Kingdom, and China. Each entry selected has been coded according to the level to which it logically belongs. The open-ended structure of the code is intended to allow for additions at all levels when a sufficiently

high volume of subject coverage or interest is evidenced. In the coded list by name sequence appended to this Guide to Application, trailing hyphens are not included though they are used in the examples for clarity. They should be entered in the UNIMARC field.

Place names included in the list are primarily geographical and/or political and represent the present status of each entity as closely as could be determined. To keep the size of the list to manageable proportions, cities have been excluded. Material on a particular city may be found by searching the area code for the appropriate country and then searching the subject heading fields for the name of the city.

Application of the Code in UNIMARC Records

The basis for assigning GACs is the content of the work, rather than the subject headings assigned to it. Normally, the places named in the subject headings should also be the places for which codes are given. However, if for any reason there is a difference between the geographical focus of the work and the places actually used in subject headings, GACs should be assigned on the basis of the focus of the work. This situation most often occurs in cases involving headings that imply a geographical orientation without explicitly naming particular places. The following specific procedures are used.

Geographical Feature, Region or Jurisdiction

Assign the appropriate code to a work on a geographical feature, region or jurisdiction for which a specific code exists.

| Subject | Code |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| Asia | a----- (Asia) |
| Pacific Ocean | p----- (Pacific Ocean) |
| United States | n-us--- (United States) |

Region, Valley, Drainage, basins, etc.

For a region, valley, drainage basin, etc., associated with a particular feature for which a code exists, assign the code for the corresponding feature.

| Subject | Code |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Great Lakes Region | nl----- (Great Lakes) |
| Mississippi Valley | n-usm-- (Mississippi River) |

Local Entities

Assign the corresponding code for the country (or the first order political division) for a work on a local geographical feature, region, or jurisdiction that is located wholly within a single country (or first order political division in the case of countries where codes for these entities have been provided).

| Subject | Code |
|--|------------------------------|
| Rabat (Morocco) | f-mr--- (Morocco) |
| Blake Plateau (Slovenia) | e-yu--- (Yugoslavia) |
| Bonn (Germany) | g-gw--- (Germany) |
| Children -- New York (N.Y.) | n-us-ny (New York (State)) |
| London (England) | e-uk-en (England) |
| Education -- Washington (State) -- Seattle | n-us-wa (Washington (State)) |
| Mohave River (Calif.) | n-us-ca (California) |

Note: Separate codes for the first order divisions of the following countries have been provided: Australia, Canada, China, Great Britain, Russia and the United States. Thus for Australia and China, countries whose subdivisions are not used directly in subject heading practice, the GAC appropriate for a work may not correspond exactly to the larger jurisdiction named in the heading assigned.

| Subject | Code |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Architecture—Australia—Sydney (N.S.W) | u-at-ne (New South Wales) |

Exception: A unique situation occurs with the Russian Federation. Codes have been provided for ten individual regions within this republic. No other first order political division has been so treated. For any work dealing precisely with these regions, assign the appropriate code. However, for an entity located in the Russian Federation, that also happens to be located wholly within one of these regions (such as a city), assign the code for the republic, not the region.

| Subject | Code |
|---|------------------|
| Vladivostok (Russia) | e-ur-ru (Russia) |
| <i>Not e-ure--</i> (East Siberian region) | |

Entities Located in More than One Country

For a work dealing with an entity located in more than one country, code for each of the individual countries if there are three or fewer. If there are more than three, use the code(s) for the next larger region(s) that encompass the countries involved.

| Subject | Code |
|-----------------|---|
| Euphrates River | a-tu--- (Turkey) a-iq--- (Iraq) a-sy--- (Syria) |
| EEC countries | ew----- (Western Europe) |

Note: In coding for a river, assign up to three codes for the country or countries through which the river flows, as well as the countries on which it borders.

For entities located in several first order political divisions (for countries having separate codes for political divisions) apply the above rule at the division level. If the entity is located in several divisions, code for each of the individual divisions if there are three or fewer. If there are more than three, use the code for the next larger region within the country; or if there is no code for such a region, use the code for the country itself.

| Subject | Code |
|-------------------|--|
| Yellowstone River | n-us-wy (Wyoming) n-us-nd (North Dakota) n-us-mt (Montana) |
| Colorado River | n-us-p— (Pacific and Mountain States) |

Historical Jurisdictions, Empires Kingdoms, etc., That No Longer Exist

For works dealing with historical jurisdictions, empires, kingdoms and the like that no longer exist, assign codes for corresponding jurisdictions or areas that exist today.

| Subject | Code |
|------------------|--|
| Byzantine Empire | nm----- (Mediterranean region) |
| Islamic Empire | ff----- (Africa, North) aw----- (Near East) |

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Rome | e----- (Europe) |
| | ff----- (Africa, North) |
| | aw----- (Near East) |
| Confederate States of America | n-usu—(Southern States) |

The above codes correspond to the greatest territorial extent of these entities and should be assigned only to comprehensive works. For a work that discusses a period of history during which the territory was less extensive, assign a code appropriate to the more limited territory. For example, assign the code for the Mediterranean region to a complete history of the Byzantine Empire, but for a work discussing the years during which the limits of the empire had shrunk to the area round Constantinople, assign only the code for Turkey. Also assign a code appropriate for the more limited territory to a work which discusses a specific location within one of these entities, e.g. for a general work on the Roman Empire, assign all the codes given above, but for a work discussing Gaul during the same period assign only the code for France.

Parts of Regions

If the work discusses only part of a large geographical feature for which a code exists, code only for the locality to which the work is limited, if it is possible to do so, even if the geographical feature is designated in a subject heading.

For the title *Water resource problems and priorities in the Appalachian region countries of North Carolina* the following GAC applies.

| Subject | Code |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Water-supply—Appalachian region. | n-us-nc (North Carolina) |
| Water-supply—North Carolina. | |

Multiple Area Orientation

If a work deals with several different geographical locations, assign a code for each as appropriate, but never more than three codes. Be as specific as possible within the three code limit.

| Subject | Code |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. Roads—United States | n-us—(United States) |
| 2. Roads—Canada | n-cn--- (Canada) |
| 1. Corporations, American—France | n-us--- (United States) |
| | e-fr--- (France) |
| 2. Corporations, American—Great Britain | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |

Exception: If two or more named areas in combination are represented by a single code, assign only that one code, e.g. if a work discusses Spain, Portugal and Gibraltar, assign the code for the Iberian Peninsular, not the individual codes for Spain, Portugal and Gibraltar.

Sine there is a limit of three codes, in certain instances it may not be possible to assign codes for each area as shown above. Instead assign codes for larger geographical regions as necessary in order to provide for all areas discussed in the work.

| Subject | Code |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Copyright--France | e-fr--- (France) |
| 2. Copyright—Great Britain | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| 3. Copyright--Canada | n----- (North America) |
| 4. Copyright—United States | |

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Euphrates River Valley | a-tu--- (Turkey) |
| | a-iq--- (Iraq) |
| | a-sy--- (Syria) |
| but | |
| Euphrates River Valley | aw----- (Near East) |
| Nile River Valley | fl----- (Nile Valley) |

Ethnic Groups, Nationalities, Civilisations, etc.

For works on particular ethnic groups, nationalities, civilisations, etc, assign codes for the jurisdictions or areas in which they are located. For an individual group within a population, assign only a code for the current locality, not the place of origin, as long as the people involved are permanent residents.

| Subject | Code |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ashantis | f-gh--- (Ghana) |
| | f-tg--- (Togo) |
| | f-iv--- (Ivory Coast) |
| Hopi Indians | n-us-az (Arizona) |
| The British | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| Japanese Americans | n-us--- (United States) |
| Civilization, Germanic | e----- (Europe) |

a) The above codes correspond only to the full extent of territory associated with particular peoples. The corresponding codes should be assigned only to comprehensive works. For works that discuss a people in an area smaller than that with which the group as a whole is normally associated, code for the more limited territory.

| Subject | Code |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Italian Americans – Connecticut | n-us-ct (Connecticut) |
| Indians of North America --- Alaska | n-us-ak (Alaska) |

b) Foreigners in a population

For peoples who are in an area not considered to be their permanent homeland, assign codes for both the place of origin and current locations. This would include travellers, temporary residents, aliens, foreign students, expatriates, mercenaries, etc.

| Subject | Code |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| British in the United States | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| Afro-American students -- France | n-us--- (United States) |
| | e-fr--- (France) |

c) Influence of one nation on another

For works dealing with the influence of one nation on another, code for each of the nations involved. The kind of influence meant here could range from actual occupation (including colonisation) to mere intellectual influence.

| Subject | Code |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| British India | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| | a-ii--- (India) |
| Great Britain--Colonies--America | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| | n----- (North America) |
| | s----- (South America) |

| | |
|---|--|
| Japan--Intellectual life--American influences | a-ja--- (Japan) n-us--- (United States) |
|---|--|

d) Special topics modified by names of ethnic groups or nationalities

For works dealing with special topics involving ethnic or national groups, code for the ethnic group or nationality. If the work limits the area to a specific locality, code for the specific locality only. If it deals with an area outside the area normally associated with the people, code for the original territory as well as for the new location.

| Subject | Code |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Technical assistance, American | n-us--- (United States) |
| Afro-American authors | n-us--- (United States) |
| Art, English | e-uk-en (England) |
| Poets, American---Ohio | n-u-oh (Ohio) |
| Pottery, Chinese---Canada | a-cc--- (China) n-cn--- (Canada) |

Societies, Associations, Institutions, Movements, etc

For works dealing with societies, associations, institutions, movements, etc., code for the location of the entity or activity.

| Subject | Code |
|---|-------------------------|
| University of Illinois | n-us-il (Illinois) |
| Folger Shakespeare Library | n-us-dc (Washington DC) |
| Royal Hospital (Chelsea, London, England) | e-uk-en (England) |
| American Water Works Association | n-us--- (United States) |
| Southern Pacific Railroad | n-us--- (United States) |
| Ghost Dance | n-usp-- (West (U.S.)) |
| Occitan Movement | e-fr--- (France) |
| Great Atlantic and Pacific Tea Co. | n-us--- (United States) |

Note: Assign codes only for the corresponding country for works dealing with firms, athletic teams, railroads and labour strikes, even if it is possible to be more specific.

Government Agencies, Bureaux, Institutions, etc.

For works dealing with Government Agencies, Bureaux, Institutions, etc., code for the jurisdiction which the organization serves.

| Subject | Code |
|---|----------------------------|
| United States, Dept. of Agriculture | n-us--- (United States) |
| United States International Trade Commission | n-us--- (United States) |
| New York (N.Y.). Division of Curriculum and Instruction | n-us-ny (New York (State)) |

Note: For government installations, i.e. physical facilities and plant in unique locations, code for the physical location.

| Subject | Code |
|--|-------------------------|
| National Fertilizer Development Center | n-us-al (Alabama) |
| Library of Congress | n-us-dc (Washington DC) |

Language

Code for the location of a language only if the work places stress on geographical aspects. For example, code for the location of the language if the work gives a history of the development of the language in an area or describes its geographical distribution.

| Subject | Code |
|--|-------------------|
| French language--Dialects (for a work on the distribution of the dialects of France) | e-fr--- (France) |
| French language--Dialects--Belgium | e-be--- (Belgium) |
| Hopi language (a distribution study) | e-us-az (Arizona) |

Do not code for the location of the language in the case of grammars, textbooks for learning the language, histories of linguistic changes such as changes in phonology, etc.

Literature

Assign no codes to belles letters, even though they may have a particular place or ethnic group as a theme, be representative of a particular literature, or originate in a particular place (e.g. American poetry--California). However, do assign codes for any discussion about particular literatures including history, interpretation, bibliography, etc.

| Subject | Code |
|--|-------------------------|
| American poetry--history and criticism | n-us--- (United States) |

Folk literature. Assign codes to folk literature including its special genres, e.g. Tales, to bring out geographic themes and places where they occur.

| Subject | Code |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Legends--Switzerland--Thurgau | e-sz--- (Switzerland) |
| Folk poetry, Tamil (Burma) | a-br--- (Burma) |

Note: Assign codes only to collections and other works to which a subject heading has been assigned indicating a place aspect (e.g. place name, ethnic group, special literature, etc.) not to single tales, legend, etc.

Music

For works on or the music of a particular area, code for each area if there are three or fewer.

| Subject | Code |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Songs--Nigeria | f-nr--- (Nigeria) |

Biography

Assign codes to collective biography if the biographies are associated with specific places. Do not assign codes to works of individual biography, unless the work places great stress on a specific locality.

The title New Salem : early chapter in Lincoln's life would be assigned the following codes

| Subject | Code |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. Lincoln, Abraham, 1809-1865 | n-us-il (Illinois) |
| 2. New Salem (Ill.)--Biography | |
| 3. Presidents--United States--Biography | |

Events

For works dealing with a particular event, assign a code for the locality in which the event took place.

| Subject | Code |
|---|------------------|
| St Bartholomew's Day, Massacre of, 1572 | e-fr--- (France) |
| World War, 1914-1918 | e----- (Europe) |

If the event involves the participation of several countries, such as a war or battle, and the work discusses the activities of these countries, code also for the individual countries. However if the work covers only the activities of one of the countries involved, code only for the one country in addition to the locale (if different)

| Subject | Code |
|--|--|
| Complete story of the War of 1812 | n-us--- (United States) |
| | e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| Camp life of the Massachusetts Militia during the War of 1812 | n-us-ma (Massachusetts) |
| Peninsular War, 1807-1814, the complete story | ei----- (Iberian Peninsular); e-uk--- (Great Britain) |
| | e-fr--- (France) |
| French operations in Portugal during the Peninsular War | e-fr--- e-po--- |

Name Sequence**A**

Abu Dhabi (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

USE Abū Zaby (United Arab Emirates: Emirate)

Abū Zaby (United Arab Emirates: Emirate)

Assigned code:

[a-ts] United Arab Emirates

USE FOR Abu Dhabi (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

Abyssinia

USE Ethiopia

A.C.T.

USE Australian Capital Territory

Açores

USE Azores

Adamawa (Emirate)

Assigned codes:

[f-cm] Cameroon

[f-nr] Nigeria

Aden

Assigned code:

[a-ye] Yemen (Republic)

Aden (Protectorate)

Assigned code:

[a-ye] Yemen (Republic)

Aden, Gulf of

Assigned code:

[mr] Red Sea

USE FOR Gulf of Aden

Admiralty Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Adriatic Sea

Assigned code:

[mm] Mediterranean Sea

Advanced countries

USE Developed countries

Aegean Islands (Greece and Turkey)

Assigned codes:

[e-gr] Greece

[a-tu] Turkey

USE FOR Islands of the Aegean

Aegean Sea

Assigned codes:

[e-gr] Greece

[a-tu] Turkey

Afars and Issas, French Territory of the

USE Djibouti

Afghanistan [a-af]

Africa [f]

Africa, Central [fc]

USE FOR Central Africa

Africa, East

Assigned code:

[fe] Africa, Eastern

USE FOR British East Africa

East Africa

Africa, Eastern [fe]

USE FOR Eastern Africa

Africa, Equatorial

USE Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

Africa, French-speaking Equatorial [fq]

USE FOR Africa, Equatorial

French Equatorial Africa

French-speaking Equatorial Africa

Africa, French-speaking West

Assigned code:

[fw] Africa, West

USE FOR French-speaking West Africa

French West Africa

Africa, Italian East

USE Africa, Northeast

Africa, North [ff]

USE FOR North Africa

Africa, Northeast [fh]

USE FOR Africa, Italian East

East African Horn

Italian East Africa

Northeast Africa

Africa, Northwest

Assigned codes:

[ff] Africa, North

[fw] Africa, West

USE FOR Northwest Africa

Africa, South

USE South Africa

Africa, Southern [fs]

USE FOR Southern Africa

Africa, Southwest

USE Namibia

Africa, Sub-Saharan [fb]

USE FOR Sub-Saharan Africa

Africa, West [fw]

USE FOR British West Africa

West Africa

Alabama [n-us-al]

Alaska [n-us-ak]

Alaska, Gulf of (Alaska)

Assigned code:

[pn] North Pacific Ocean

USE FOR Gulf of Alaska (Alaska)

Albania [e-aa]

USE FOR People's Socialist Republic of Albania

Alberta [n-cn-ab]

Alderney (Channel Islands)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-ui] Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Algeria [f-ae]

USE FOR People's Democratic Republic of Algeria

Alps [ea]

Amazon River [sa]

America

Assigned codes:

[n] North America

[s] South America

America, Central

USE Central America

American Samoa [poas]

USE FOR Samoa, American

Amur River (China and Russia) [aa]

USE FOR Hei Ho (China and Russia)

Heilong Jiang (China and Russia)

Reka Amur (China and Russia)

Sakhalin Ula (China and Russia)

Andaman and Nicobar Islands (India)

Assigned code:

[a-ii] India

Andean Area

USE Andes

Andes [sn]

USE FOR Andean Area

Andorra [e-an]

Anglo-Egyptian Sudan

USE Sudan

Angola [f-ao]

USE FOR People's Republic of Angola

Portuguese West Africa

West Africa, Portuguese

Anguilla [nwx]

[Coded [nwx] (Saint Kitts and Nevis) before Mar. 1988]

Anhui Sheng (China) [a-cc-an]

USE FOR Anhwei Province (China)

Anhwei Province (China)

USE Anhui Sheng (China)

Antarctic Ocean [t]

Antarctic regions

USE Antarctica

Antarctica [t]

[Coded also [t-ay] (Antarctica) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR Antarctic regions

South Pole

Antigua

Assigned code:

[nwaq] Antigua and Barbuda

Antigua and Barbuda [nwaq]

Antilles, Greater

USE West Indies

Antilles, Lesser [nwla]

USE FOR Lesser Antilles

Appalachian Mountains [n-usa]

Appalachian Mountains, Southern

Assigned code:

[n-usa] Appalachian Mountains

Appalachian Region

Assigned code:

[n-usa] Appalachian Mountains

Aqaba, Gulf of

Assigned code:

[mr] Red Sea

USE FOR Gulf of Aqaba

Arab Republic of Yemen

USE Yemen (Republic)

Arab countries [ma]

USE FOR Arabic countries

Arabia

USE Arabian Peninsula

Arabia, Southern

Assigned codes:

[a-mk] Oman

[a-ye] Yemen (Republic)

Arabian Peninsula [ar]

USE FOR Arabia

Arabian Sea [au]

Arabic countries

USE Arab countries

Arafura Sea

Assigned code:

[ps] South Pacific Ocean

Aran Islands (Ireland)

Assigned code:

[e-ie] Ireland

Archipel des Marquises (French Polynesia)

USE Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Arctic Ocean [r]

Arctic regions [r]

USE FOR North Pole

Argentina [s-ag]

Arizona [n-us-az]

Arkansas [n-us-ar]

Armenia

Assigned code:

[a-ai] Armenia (Republic)

Armenia

Assigned code:

[a-ir] Iran

Armenia

Assigned code:

[a-tu] Turkey

Armenia (Republic) [a-ai]

[Coded [e-ur-ai] (Armenia (Republic)) before June 1998]

USE FOR Armenian S.S.R.

Armenian S.S.R.

USE Armenia (Republic)

Aruba [nwaw]

[Coded [nwco] (Curaçao) before Sept. 2002]

Ascension Island (Atlantic Ocean) [lsai]

Ashanti

USE Ghana

Ashmore and Cartier Islands [u-ac]

Asia [a]

Asia Minor

USE Turkey

Asia and Europe (treated collectively)

USE Eurasia

Asia, Central [ac]

USE FOR Central Asia

Soviet Central Asia

Asia, East

USE East Asia

Asia, South

USE South Asia

Asia, Southeastern

USE Southeast Asia

Asia, Southwestern

USE Middle East

Asia, Western

USE Middle East

Atlantic Coast (U.S.)

Assigned code:

[n-us] United States

Atlantic Ocean [l]

Atlantic States

Assigned code:

[n-us] United States

Atlantic States, South

USE South Atlantic States

Atlas Mountains [fa]

Austral Islands (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp] French Polynesia

USE FOR Tubuai Islands (French Polynesia)

Australasia [u]

Australia [u-at]

Australia, Central

USE Central Australia

Australia, Eastern

USE Eastern Australia

Australia, Northern

USE Northern Australia

Australia, Western

USE Western Australia

Australian Capital Territory [u-at-ac]

[Coded [u-at-ne] (New South Wales) before Sept. 2002]

USE FOR A.C.T.

Federal Capital Territory

Austria [e-au]

Azad Jammu and Kashmir

USE Azad Kashmir

Azad Kashmir

Assigned code:

[a-pk] Pakistan

USE FOR Azad Jammu and Kashmir

Kashmir

Azerbaijan [a-aj]

[Coded [e-ur-aj] (Azerbaijan) before June 1998]

USE FOR Azerbaijan S.S.R.

Azerbaijan S.S.R.

USE Azerbaijan

Azores [lnaz]

USE FOR Açores

B

Babylonia

Assigned code:

[a-iq] Iraq

Bahamas [nwbf]

Bahrain [a-ba]

USE FOR Bahrein

Bahrein

USE Bahrain

Balearic Islands (Spain)

Assigned code:

[e-sp] Spain

Balkan Peninsula [ed]

USE FOR Europe, Southeastern

Southeastern Europe

Baltic Sea

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Baltic States [eb]

Banaba (Kiribati)

Assigned code:

[pokb] Kiribati

USE FOR Ocean Island (Kiribati)

Bangladesh [a-bg]

USE FOR East Pakistan (Pakistan)

Banks Islands (Vanuatu)

Assigned code:

[ponn] Vanuatu

Barbados [nwbb]

Barbuda

Assigned code:

[nwaq] Antigua and Barbuda

Barents Sea

Assigned code:

[r] Arctic Ocean

Basutoland

USE Lesotho

Bay of Bengal

USE Bengal, Bay of

Bay of Fundy

USE Fundy, Bay of

Bear Island (Norway)

Assigned code:

[lnsb] Svalbard (Norway)

USE FOR Bjørnøya (Norway)

Bea USE FORort Sea

Assigned code:

[r] Arctic Ocean

Bechuanaland

USE Botswana

Beijing (China) [a-cc-pe]

USE FOR Peiping (China)

Peking (China)

Belarus [e-bw]

[Coded [e-ur-bw] (Belarus) before June 1998]

USE FOR Belorussian S.S.R.

Byelorussian S.S.R.

White Russia

Belau

USE Palau

Belgian Congo

USE Congo (Democratic Republic)

Belgium [e-be]

Belize [ncbh]

USE FOR British Honduras

Belorussian S.S.R.

USE Belarus

Benelux countries [el]

USE FOR Low countries

Bengal, Bay of [ab]

USE FOR Bay of Bengal

Benin [f-dm]

USE FOR Dahomey

People's Republic of Benin

Bering Sea

Assigned code:

[pn] North Pacific Ocean

Berlin (Germany)

Assigned code:

[e-gx] Germany

USE FOR East Berlin

West Berlin

Bermuda Islands [lnbm]

Bermuda Triangle

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Bhutan [a-bt]

Biafra

USE Nigeria

Bikini Atoll (Marshall Islands)

Assigned code:

[poxe] Marshall Islands

Bioco (Equatorial Guinea)

USE Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Bioko (Equatorial Guinea)

USE Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Bismarck Archipelago (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Bjørnøya (Norway)

USE Bear Island (Norway)

Black Sea [mb]

Blue Ridge Mountains

Assigned code:

[n-usa] Appalachian Mountains

Bo Hai (China) [a-ccp]

USE FOR Bohai (China : Gulf)

Chihli, Gulf of (China)

Po Gulf (China)

Po Hai (China)

Bohai (China : Gulf)

USE Bo Hai (China)

Bolivia [s-bo]

Bonaire (Netherlands Antilles) [nwbn]

[Coded [nwco] (Curaçao) before Sept. 2001]

Bophuthatswana (South Africa)

Assigned code:

[f-sa] South Africa

Borneo [a-bn]

Bosnia and Hercegovina [e-bn]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]

Botswana [f-bs]

USE FOR Bechuanaland

Bougainville Island (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Bouvet Island [lsbv]

Brazil [s-bl]

Brazzaville

USE Congo (Brazzaville)

British Columbia [n-cn-bc]

British Commonwealth countries

USE Commonwealth countries

British Dominions

USE Commonwealth countries

British East Africa

USE Africa, East

British Guiana

USE Guyana

British Honduras

USE Belize

British Indian Ocean Territory [i-bi]

USE FOR Chagos Islands

Indian Ocean Territory, British

British Isles

Assigned codes:

[e-uk] Great Britain

[e-ie] Ireland

British North Borneo

USE Sabah

British Solomon Islands

USE Solomon Islands

British Somaliland

USE Somalia

British Togoland

USE Togoland (British)

British Virgin Islands [nwvb]

USE FOR Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands, British

Virgin Islands (Great Britain)

Virgin Islands (Presidency)

British West Africa

USE Africa, West

Brownsea Island (England)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-en] England

Brunei [a-bx]

Bulgaria [e-bu]

USE FOR People's Republic of Bulgaria

Burkina Faso [f-uv]

USE FOR Upper Volta

Burma [a-br]

USE FOR Myanmar

Burundi [f-bd]

USE FOR German East Africa

Byelorussian S.S.R.

USE Belarus

Byzantine Empire

Assigned code:

[mm] Mediterranean Region

C

Cabo Verde

USE Cape Verde

Caicos Islands

USE Turks and Caicos Islands

Calf of Man (Isle of Man)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-ui] Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

California [n-us-ca]

Cambodia [a-cb]

USE FOR Kampuchea

Khmer Republic

Cameroon [f-cm]

USE FOR Cameroons, French

Cameroons, Southern

Cameroun

French Cameroons

Southern Cameroons

Cameroons, French

USE Cameroon

Cameroons, Southern

USE Cameroon

Cameroun

USE Cameroon

Canada [n-cn]

Canada, Eastern

Assigned code:

[n-cn] Canada

USE FOR Eastern Canada

Canada, Northern

Assigned code:

[n-cn] Canada

USE FOR Northern Canada

Canada, Western

Assigned code:

[n-cn-bc] British Columbia

[n-cnp] Prairie Provinces

USE FOR Western Canada

Canadian Northwest

USE Northwest, Canadian

Canal Zone [nccz]

USE FOR Panama Canal Zone

Canary Islands [lnca]

Canton and Enderbury Islands

Assigned code:

[pokb] Kiribati

USE FOR Enderbury and Canton Islands

Cape Verde [lncv]

USE FOR Cabo Verde

Republic of Cape Verde

Caribbean Area [cc]

USE FOR Caribbean Sea Region

Circumcaribbean

Caribbean Island Dependencies of the United States

USE United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands

Caribbean Sea [cc]

Caribbean Sea Region

USE Caribbean Area

Caroline Islands [poci]

Carpathian Mountains

Assigned code:

[ee] Europe, Eastern

Carpentaria, Gulf of (N.T. and Qld.)

Assigned code:

[u-at-no] Northern Territory

USE FOR Gulf of Carpentaria (N.T. and Qld.)

Carpentaria, Gulf of (N.T. and Qld.)

Assigned code:

[u-at-qn] Queensland

USE FOR Gulf of Carpentaria (N.T. and Qld.)

Caspian Sea [ak]

Caucasus [e-urk]

Caucasus, Northern (Russia) [e-urr]

USE FOR North Caucasus (Russia)

Northern Caucasus (Russia)

Cayman Islands [nwcj]

Celebes (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

USE FOR Sulawesi (Indonesia)

Central Africa

USE Africa, Central

Central African Empire

USE Central African Republic

Central African Republic [f-cx]

USE FOR Central African Empire

Ubangi Shari

Central America [nc]

USE FOR America, Central

Middle America

Central Asia

USE Asia, Central

Central Australia [u-atc]

[Coded [u-at] (Australia) before September 2005]

USE FOR Australia, Central

Central Black Earth Region (Russia)

USE Central Chernozem Region (Russia)

Central Black Soil Region (Russia)

USE Central Chernozem Region (Russia)

Central Chernozem Region (Russia) [e-urc]

USE FOR Central Black Earth Region (Russia)

Central Black Soil Region (Russia)

Central Europe

USE Europe, Central

Ceuta (Spain)

Assigned code:

[f-sh] Spanish North Africa

Ceylon

USE Sri Lanka

Ch'ung-ch'ing shih (China)

USE Chongqing (China)

Chad [f-cd]

Chad, Lake

Assigned code:

[fq] Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

Chagos Islands

USE British Indian Ocean Territory

Chang Chiang (China)

USE Yangtze River (China)

Channel Islands

Assigned code:

[e-uk-ui] Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Chekiang Province (China)

USE Zhejiang Sheng (China)

Chesapeake Bay (Md. and Va.)

Assigned codes:

[n-us-md] Maryland

[n-us-va] Virginia

Chihli, Gulf of (China)

USE Bo Hai (China)

Chile [s-cl]

China [a-cc]

USE FOR Mainland China

People's Republic of China

Chishima-retto (Russia)

USE Russia (Federation)

Chongqing (China) [a-cc-cq]

[Coded [a-cc-sz] (Szechuan Province (China)) before Sept. 2000]

USE FOR Ch'ung-ch'ing shih (China)

Chungking (China)

Christmas Island (Indian Ocean) [i-xa]

Christmas Island (Pacific Ocean)

USE Kiritimati (Kiribati)

Chungking (China)

USE Chongqing (China)

Chuuk (Micronesia)

Assigned code:

[pomi] Micronesia (Federated States)

USE FOR Truk (Micronesia)

Circumcaribbean

USE Caribbean Area

Cocos (Keeling) Islands [i-xb]

USE FOR Keeling Islands

Cold regions [q]

Colombia [s-ck]

Colorado [n-us-co]

Colorado River (Colo.-Mexico)

Assigned codes:

[n-mx] Mexico

[n-usp] West (U.S.)

Colorado River Delta (Mexico)

Assigned code:

[n-mx] Mexico

Commonwealth countries [b]

USE FOR British Commonwealth countries

British Dominions

Commonwealth nations

Commonwealth nations

USE Commonwealth countries

Commonwealth of Independent States countries

USE Soviet Union

Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

USE Mariana Islands

Communauté française

USE French Community

Communist countries

Assigned codes:

[ee] Europe, Eastern

[e-ur] Soviet Union

Comoro Islands

USE Comoros

Comoros [i-cq]

USE FOR Comoro Islands

Îles Comores

Confederate States of America

Assigned code:

[n-usu] Southern States

Congo (Brazzaville) [f-cf]

USE FOR Brazzaville

French Congo

Middle Congo

Congo (Democratic Republic) [f-cg]

USE FOR Belgian Congo

Congo (Kinshasa)

Congo (Leopoldville)

Zaire

Congo (Kingdom)

USE Kongo Kingdom

Congo (Kinshasa)

USE Congo (Democratic Republic)

Congo (Leopoldville)

USE Congo (Democratic Republic)

Congo River [fg]

Connecticut [n-us-ct]

Cook Islands [pocw]

Coral Sea Islands [u-cs]

Corsica (France)

Assigned code:

[e-fr] France

Costa Rica [ncr]

Côte d'Ivoire [f-iv]

USE FOR Ivory Coast

Crete (Greece)

Assigned code:

[e-gr] Greece

Croatia [e-ci]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]]

USE FOR People's Republic of Croatia

Cuba [nwcu]

Cumberland Mountains

Assigned code:

[n-usu] Southern States

Curaçao (Netherlands Antilles) [nwco]

Cyprus [a-cy]

Czech Republic [e-xr]

[Coded [e-cs] (Czechoslovakia) before May 1993]

USE FOR Czech Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

Czech Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

USE Czech Republic

Czechoslovakia [e-cs]

[Includes the Czech Republic and Slovakia treated collectively]

D

D'Entrecasteaux Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Dahomey

USE Benin

Danube River [eo]

Deep space [zd]

Delaware [n-us-de]

Democratic German Republic

USE Germany (East)

Denmark [e-dk]

Desolation Islands

USE Kerguelen Islands

Developed countries [dd]

USE FOR Advanced countries

Economically advanced countries

First World

Industrialized countries

Developing countries [d]

USE FOR Emerging nations

Third World

Underdeveloped areas

Diego Garcia (British Indian Ocean Territory)

Assigned code:

[i-bi] British Indian Ocean Territory

District of Columbia

USE Washington (D.C.)

Djibouti [f-ft]

USE FOR Afars and Issas, French Territory of the

French Somaliland

French Territory of the Afars and Issas

Somaliland, French

Dodekanesos (Greece)

Assigned code:

[e-gr] Greece

Dominica [nwdq]

Dominican Republic [nwdr]

Dubai

USE Dubayy (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

Dubayy (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

Assigned code:

[a-ts] United Arab Emirates

USE FOR Dubai

Dutch East Indies

USE Indonesia

Dutch Guiana

USE Suriname

Dutch West Indies

USE Netherlands Antilles

Dza-chu

USE Mekong River

E

Earth [x]

East

USE Orient

East (Far East)

USE East Asia

East (Near East)

USE Middle East

East (U.S.) [n-usr]

East Africa

USE Africa, East

East Africa Protectorate

USE Kenya

East Africa, Portuguese German East Africa

USE Mozambique

East African Horn

USE Africa, Northeast

East Asia [ae]

USE FOR Asia, East

East (Far East)

Far East

East Berlin

USE Berlin (Germany)

East China Sea [an]

East Germany

USE Germany (East)

East Indies

Assigned code:

[as] Southeast Asia

USE FOR Indies, East

East Indies

Assigned code:

[az] South Asia

USE FOR Indies, East

East Pakistan (Pakistan)

USE Bangladesh

East Siberian Region (Russia)

USE Siberia, Eastern (Russia)

East Timor [a-em]

[Coded [a-pt] (Portuguese Timor) before April 21, 1980; coded [a-io] (Indonesia) from 1980-Sept. 2002]]

USE FOR Portuguese Timor

Timor, East

Timor, Portuguese

Timor Timur

Easter Island [poea]

USE FOR Isla de Pascua

Pascua Island

Eastern Africa

USE Africa, Eastern

Eastern Australia [u-ate]

[Coded [u-at] (Australia) before September 2005]

USE FOR Australia, Eastern

Eastern Canada

USE Canada, Eastern

Eastern Europe

USE Europe, Eastern

Eastern Hemisphere [xa]

Eastern Mediterranean

USE Middle East

Eastern Samar (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

Eastern Siberia (Russia)

USE Siberia, Eastern (Russia)

Economically advanced countries

USE Developed countries

Ecuador [s-ec]

Egypt [f-ua]

Eire

USE Ireland

El Salvador [nces]

USE FOR Salvador

Ellice Islands

USE Tuvalu

Emerging nations

USE Developing countries

Enderbury and Canton Islands

USE Canton and Enderbury Islands

England [e-uk-en]

English Channel

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Equator

Assigned code:

[w] Tropics

Equatorial Guinea [f-eg]

USE FOR Guinea, Equatorial

Guinea, Spanish

Río Muni

Spanish Guinea

Eritrea [f-ea]

[Coded [f-et] (Ethiopia) before Nov. 1993]

Estonia [e-er]

[Coded [e-ur-er] (Estonia) before June 1998]

Ethiopia [f-et]

USE FOR Abyssinia

Eurasia [me]

USE FOR Asia and Europe (treated collectively)

Europe and Asia (treated collectively)

Europe [e]

Europe and Asia (treated collectively)

USE Eurasia

Europe, Central [ec]

USE FOR Central Europe

Europe, East Central

Europe, East Central

USE Europe, Central

Europe, Eastern [ee]

USE FOR Eastern Europe

Europe, East Central

Europe, Northern [en]

USE FOR Northern Europe

Europe, Southeastern

USE Balkan Peninsula

Europe, Southern [es]

USE FOR Southern Europe

Europe, Western [ew]

USE FOR Western Europe

European Economic Community countries

Assigned code:

[e] Europe

European Union countries

Assigned code:

[e] Europe

F

Faeroe Islands

USE Faroe Islands

Falkland Islands [lsfk]

USE FOR Malvinas Islands

Far East

USE East Asia

Far East (Russia)

USE Russian Far East (Russia)

Far Eastern Region (Russia)

USE Russian Far East (Russia)

Far West (U.S.)

USE West (U.S.)

Faroe Islands [lnfa]

USE FOR Faeroe Islands

Federal Capital Territory

USE Australian Capital Territory

Federal German Republic

USE Germany (West)

Federated States of Micronesia

USE Micronesia (Federated States)

Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland

USE Rhodesia and Nyasaland

Federation of South Arabia

Assigned code:

[a-ye] Yemen (Republic)

USE FOR South Arabia, Federation of

Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Assigned code:

[f-eg] Equatorial Guinea

USE FOR Bioco (Equatorial Guinea)

Bioko (Equatorial Guinea)

Macias Nguema (Equatorial Guinea)

Fiji [pofj]

Finland [e-fi]

First World

USE Developed countries

Florida [n-us-fl]

Former Soviet republics

USE Soviet Union

Former Yugoslav republics

USE Yugoslavia

Formosa

USE Taiwan

France [e-fr]

French Cameroons

USE Cameroon

French Community [h]

USE FOR Communauté française

French Union

French Congo

USE Congo (Brazzaville)

French Equatorial Africa

USE Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

French Guiana [s-fg]

USE FOR Guiana, French

French Guinea

USE Guinea

French India

Assigned code:

[a-ii] India

USE FOR India, French

French Indochina

USE Indochina

French Morocco

USE Morocco

French Polynesia [pofp]

USE FOR Oceania, French

Polynesia, French

French Somaliland

USE Djibouti

French Southern and Antarctic Lands

USE Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

French Southern Indian Ocean Islands

USE Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

French Sudan

USE Mali

French Territory of the Afars and Issas

USE Djibouti

French Togoland

USE Togo

French Union

USE French Community

French West Africa

USE Africa, French-speaking West

French West Indies

USE West Indies, French

French-speaking Equatorial Africa

USE Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

French-speaking West Africa

USE Africa, French-speaking West

Friendly Islands

USE Tonga

Froides, Îles

USE Prince Edward Islands

Frostbelt (U.S.)

USE Snowbelt States

Fujian Sheng (China) [a-cc-fu]

USE FOR Fukien Province (China)

Fukien Province (China)

USE Fujian Sheng (China)

Fundy, Bay of

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

USE FOR Bay of Fundy

Futuna Islands (Wallis and Futuna Islands)

Assigned code:

[powf] Wallis and Futuna Islands

G

Gabon [f-go]

Galapagos Islands [pogg]

Gambia [f-gm]

Gambier Islands (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp] French Polynesia

Gansu Sheng (China) [a-cc-ka]

USE FOR Kansu Province (China)

Gaza Strip [awgz]

Georges Bank

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Georgia [n-us-ga]

Georgia (Republic) [a-gs]

[Coded [e-ur-gs] (Georgia (Republic)) before June 1998]

USE FOR Georgia (Soviet Union)

Georgian S.S.R.

Georgia (Soviet Union)

USE Georgia (Republic)

Georgian S.S.R.

USE Georgia (Republic)

German Democratic Republic

USE Germany (East)

German East Africa

USE Burundi

German Federal Republic

USE Germany (West)

Germany [e-gx]

[For Germany as a whole regardless of time period; includes Germany (East) and Germany (West) as a whole between 1949 and 1990]]

Germany (East) [e-ge]

[For the eastern part of Germany before 1949 or after 1990 and for the German Democratic Republic between 1949-1990]]

USE FOR Democratic German Republic

East Germany

German Democratic Republic

Germany, Eastern

Germany (West) [e-gw]

[For the western part of Germany before 1949 or after 1990 and for the Federal Republic of Germany between 1949-1990]

USE FOR Federal German Republic

German Federal Republic

Germany, Western

West Germany

Germany, Eastern

USE Germany (East)

Germany, Northern

Assigned code:

[e-gx] Germany

USE FOR Northern Germany

Germany, Southern

Assigned code:

[e-gx] Germany

USE FOR Southern Germany

Germany, Western

USE Germany (West)

Ghana [f-gh]

USE FOR Ashanti

Gold Coast

Ghana (Empire)

Assigned code:

[fw] Africa, West

Gibraltar [e-gi]

Gibraltar, Strait of

Assigned codes:

[e-gi] Gibraltar

[mm] Mediterranean Sea

USE FOR Strait of Gibraltar

Gilbert Islands

USE Kiribati

Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony

Assigned codes:

[pokb] Kiribati

[potv] Tuvalu

Gold Coast

USE Ghana

Great Barrier Reef (Qld.)

Assigned code:

[u-at-qn] Queensland

Great Basin

Assigned code:

[n-usp] West (U.S.)

Great Britain [e-uk]

USE FOR United Kingdom

Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies [e-uk-ui]

USE FOR Island Dependencies of Great Britain

United Kingdom Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Great Lakes (North America) [nl]

Great Lakes States

USE Lake States

Great Plains [np]

Great Rift Valley [fr]

USE FOR Rift Valley

Greater Antilles

USE West Indies

Greece [e-gr]

Greenland [n-gl]

Grenada [nwgd]

Grenadines (Saint Vincent and the Grenadines and Grenada)

Assigned codes:

[nwgd] Grenada

[nwxm] Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)

Assigned code:

[pobp] Solomon Islands

Guadeloupe [nwgp]

Guam [pogu]

Guangdong Sheng (China) [a-cc-kn]

USE FOR Kwangtung Province (China)

Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China) [a-cc-kc]

USE FOR Kuang-hsi Chuang tsu tzu chih ch'ü (China)

Kwangsi Chuang Autonomous Region

Guatemala [ncgt]

Guernsey (Channel Islands)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-ui] Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Guiana, British

USE Guyana

Guiana, Dutch

USE Suriname

Guiana, French

USE French Guiana

Guinea [f-gv]

USE FOR French Guinea

Guinea, French

Guinée

Republique de Guinée

Guinea, Equatorial

USE Equatorial Guinea

Guinea, French

USE Guinea

Guinea, Gulf of

Assigned code:

[ls] South Atlantic Ocean

USE FOR Gulf of Guinea

Guinea, Portuguese

USE Guinea-Bissau

Guinea, Spanish

USE Equatorial Guinea

Guinea-Bissau [f-pg]

USE FOR Guinea, Portuguese

Portuguese Guinea

Guinée

USE Guinea

Guizhou Sheng (China) [a-cc-kw]

USE FOR Kweichow Province (China)

Gulf States

Assigned code:

[n-usu] Southern States

Gulf of Aden

USE Aden, Gulf of

Gulf of Alaska (Alaska)

USE Alaska, Gulf of (Alaska)

Gulf of Aqaba

USE Aqaba, Gulf of

Gulf of Carpentaria (N.T. and Qld.)

USE Carpentaria, Gulf of (N.T. and Qld.)

Gulf of Guinea

USE Guinea, Gulf of

Gulf of Mexico

USE Mexico, Gulf of

Gulf of Oman

USE Oman, Gulf of

Gulf of Thailand

USE Thailand, Gulf of

Guyana [s-gy]

USE FOR British Guiana

Guiana, British

H

Hainan Island (China)

USE Hainan Sheng (China)

Hainan Province (China)

USE Hainan Sheng (China)

Hainan Sheng (China) [a-cc-ha]

[Coded [a-cc-kn] (Kwangtung Province (China)) before June 1998]

USE FOR Hainan Island (China)

Hainan Province (China)

Haiti [nwht]

Hawaii [n-us-hi]

Heard Island (Heard and McDonald Islands)

Assigned code:

[i-hm] Heard and McDonald Islands

Heard and McDonald Islands [i-hm]

Hebei Sheng (China) [a-cc-hp]

USE FOR Ho-pei sheng (China)

Hopeh Province (China)

Hei Ho (China and Russia)

USE Amur River (China and Russia)

Heilong Jiang (China and Russia)

USE Amur River (China and Russia)

Heilongjiang Sheng (China) [a-cc-he]

USE FOR Heilungkiang Province (China)

Heilungkiang Province (China)

USE Heilongjiang Sheng (China)

Henan Sheng (China) [a-cc-ho]

USE FOR Honan Province (China)

Himalaya Mountains [ah]

Hispaniola [nwhi]

Ho-pei sheng (China)

USE Hebei Sheng (China)

Hoang Ho (China)

USE Yellow River (China)

Holland

USE Netherlands

Holy Roman Empire

Assigned code:

[e] Europe

Holy See

USE Vatican City

Homelands (South Africa)

Assigned code:

[f-sa] South Africa

Honan Province (China)

USE Henan Sheng (China)

Honduras [ncho]
Hong Kong
 USE Hong Kong (China)
Hong Kong (China) [a-cc-hk]
 [Coded [a-hk] (Hong Kong) before June 1998]
 USE FOR Hong Kong
Hong Kong (China : Special Administrative Region)
Hong Kong (China : Special Administrative Region)
 USE Hong Kong (China)
Hopeh Province (China)
 USE Hebei Sheng (China)
Hoàng Sa
 USE Paracel Islands
Hsi Chiang (China)
 USE Xi River (China)
Hsi-sha Islands
 USE Paracel Islands
Hsin-chiang-wei-wy-erh tzu chin chǔ (China)
 USE Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China)
Hu-pei (China)
 USE Hubei Sheng (China)
Huang Hai
 USE Yellow Sea
Huang Ho (China)
 USE Yellow River (China)
Hubei Sheng (China) [a-cc-hh]
 USE FOR Hu-pei (China)
 Hupeh Province (China)
Hudson Bay [n-cnH]
Hunan Province (China)
 USE Hunan Sheng (China)
Hunan Sheng (China) [a-cc-hu]
 USE FOR Hunan Province (China)
Hungary [e-hu]

Hupei Province (China)

USE Hubei Sheng (China)

Huthera (Tanzania)

USE Pemba Island (Tanzania)

Hwang Ho (China)

USE Yellow River (China)

I

IÀkutskaïà A.S.S.R. (Russia)

USE Sakha (Russia)

Iberian Peninsula

Assigned codes:

[e-po] Portugal

[e-sp] Spain

Iceland [e-ic]

Idaho [n-us-id]

Ifni

Assigned code:

[f-mr] Morocco

Îles Comores

USE Comoros

Îles Froides

USE Prince Edward Islands

Îles Kerguelen

USE Kerguelen Islands

Îles Marquises de Mendoça (French Polynesia)

USE Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon

USE Saint Pierre and Miquelon

Illinois [n-us-il]

India [a-ii]

India, French

USE French India

Indian Ocean [i]

Indian Ocean Islands, French

USE Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

Indian Ocean Territory, British

USE British Indian Ocean Territory

Indian Territory

Assigned code:

[n-us-ok] Oklahoma

Indiana [n-us-in]

Indies, East

USE East Indies

Indies, East

USE East Indies

Indies, West

USE West Indies

Indochina [ai]

USE FOR French Indochina

Indonesia [a-io]

USE FOR Sunda Islands, Lesser (Indonesia and East Timor)

Dutch East Indies

Netherlands East Indies

Industrialized countries

USE Developed countries

Inner Mongolia (China) [a-cc-im]

USE FOR Mongolia (Inner Mongolia)

Intercontinental areas (Eastern Hemisphere) [m]

Intercontinental areas (Western Hemisphere) [c]

Iowa [n-us-ia]

Iran [a-ir]

USE FOR Persia

Iraq [a-iq]

Ireland [e-ie]

USE FOR Eire

Ireland (Eire)

Irish Republic

Republic of Ireland

Ireland (Eire)

USE Ireland

Ireland, Northern

USE Northern Ireland

Irian Barat (Indonesia)

USE Papua (Indonesia)

Irian Jaya (Indonesia)

USE Papua (Indonesia)

Irish Republic

USE Ireland

Irish Sea

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Isla de Pascua

USE Easter Island

Islamic Empire

Assigned codes:

[ff] Africa, North

[aw] Middle East

[e-sp] Spain

Islamic countries

Assigned codes:

[f] Africa

[a] Asia

Island Dependencies of Great Britain

USE Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Island Dependencies of the United States in the Caribbean

USE United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands

Island Dependencies of the United States in the Pacific

USE United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands

Islands of the Aegean

USE Aegean Islands (Greece and Turkey)

Islands of the Atlantic

Assigned code:

[l] Atlantic Ocean

Islands of the Indian Ocean

Assigned code:

[i] Indian Ocean

Islands of the Mediterranean

Assigned code:

[mm] Mediterranean Sea

Islands of the South China Sea

Assigned code:

[ao] South China Sea

Isas Marquesas de Mendoza (French Polynesia)

USE Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Isle of Man

Assigned code:

[e-uk-ui] Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

USE FOR Man, Isle of

Isle of Wight (England)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-en] England

USE FOR Wight, Isle of

Israel [a-is]

Italian East Africa

USE Africa, Northeast

Italian Somaliland

USE Somalia

Italy [e-it]

Ivory Coast

USE Côte d'Ivoire

J

Jamaica [nwjm]

Jammu and Kashmir (India)

Assigned code:

[a-ii] India

USE FOR Kashmir

Kashmir and Jammu (India)

Jan Mayen Island [lnjn]

Japan [a-ja]

USE FOR Ryukyu Islands, Southern

Java (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

Jersey (Channel Islands)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-ui] Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Jerusalem

Assigned code:

[a-is] Israel

[awba] West Bank

Jiangsu Sheng (China) [a-cc-ku]

USE FOR Kiangsu Province (China)

Jiangxi Sheng (China) [a-cc-ki]

USE FOR Kiangsi Province (China)

Jilin Sheng (China) [a-cc-kr]

USE FOR Kirin Province (China)

Johnston Island [poji]

Jordan [a-jo]

USE FOR Transjordan

Judaea and Samaria

USE West Bank

Jupiter (Planet) [zju]

K

Kalimantan Barat (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

Kampuchea

USE Cambodia

Kansas [n-us-ks]

Kansu Province (China)

USE Gansu Sheng (China) [a-cc-ka]

Kashmir

USE Azad Kashmir

Kashmir and Jammu (India)

USE Jammu and Kashmir (India)

Kazakh S.S.R.

USE Kazakhstan

Kazakhstan [a-kz]

[Coded [e-ur-kz] (Kazakhstan) before June 1998]

USE FOR Kazakh S.S.R.

Kazakstan

Kazakstan

USE Kazakhstan

Keeling Islands

USE Cocos (Keeling) Islands

Kentucky [n-us-ky]

Kenya [f-ke]

USE FOR East Africa Protectorate

Kerguelen Islands

Assigned code:

[i-fs] Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

USE FOR Desolation Islands

Îles Kerguelen

Kermadec Islands [poki]

Khmer Republic

USE Cambodia

Kiangsi Province (China)

USE Jiangxi Sheng (China)

Kiangsu Province (China)

USE Jiangsu Sheng (China)

Kievan Rus

Assigned codes:

[e-bw] Belarus

[e-ru] Russia (Federation)

[e-un] Ukraine

Kirghiz S.S.R.

USE Kyrgyzstan

Kiribati [pokb]

[Coded [pogn] (Gilbert and Ellice Islands) or [poln] (Line Islands) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR Gilbert Islands

Kirin Province (China)

USE Jilin Sheng (China)

Kiritimati (Kiribati)

Assigned code:

[pokb] Kiribati

USE FOR Christmas Island (Pacific Ocean)

Kongo Kingdom

Assigned codes:

[f-ao] Angola

[f-cf] Congo (Brazzaville)

[f-cg] Congo (Democratic Republic)

USE FOR Congo (Kingdom)

Korea [a-kr]

Korea (North) [a-kn]

USE FOR Korean People's Republic

North Korea

Korea (Republic)

USE Korea (South)

Korea (South) [a-ko]

USE FOR Korea (Republic)

South Korea

Korean People's Republic

USE Korea (North)

Kosovo [e-kv]

[Coded [e-rb] (Serbia) before May 2008 and [e-yu] (Serbia and Montenegro)
before April 2007]

Kosrae (Micronesia)

Assigned code:

[pomi] Micronesia (Federated States)

USE FOR Kusaie (Micronesia)

Kuang-hsi Chuang tsu tzu chih ch'ü (China)

USE Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China)

Kunlun Mountains (China and India) [a-cck]

USE FOR Kwenlun Mountains

Kuril Islands (Russia) [e-ru]

[Coded [e-ur-ru] (Russia Federation) before June 1998]

USE FOR Chishima-retto (Russia)

Kurile Islands (Russia)

Kuril'skie ostrova (Russia)

R.S.F.S.R. Russian Republic

Russian S.F.S.R.

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

Kuril'skie ostrova (Russia)

USE Russia (Federation)

Kurile Islands (Russia)

USE Russia (Federation)

Kusaie (Micronesia)

USE Kosrae (Micronesia)

Kuwait [a-ku]

Kwang Sea

USE Yellow Sea

Kwangsi Chuang Autonomous Region

USE Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China)

Kwangtung Province (China)

USE Guangdong Sheng (China)

Kweichow Province (China)

USE Guizhou Sheng (China)

Kwenlun Mountains

USE Kunlun Mountains (China and India)

Kyrgyzstan [a-kg]

[Coded [e-ur-kg] (Kyrgystan) before June 1998]

USE FOR Kirghiz S.S.R.

L

La Plata River (Argentina and Uruguay)

USE Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)

Labrador (N.L.)

Assigned code:

[n-cn-nf] Newfoundland and Labrador

Laccadive, Minicoy, and Amindivi Islands (India)

USE Lakshadweep (India)

Lake States [nl]

USE FOR Great Lakes States

Lakshadweep (India)

Assigned code:

[a-ii] India

USE FOR Laccadive, Minicoy, and Amindivi Islands (India)

Lan-ts'ang Chiang

USE Mekong River

Lancang Jiang

USE Mekong River

Laos [a-ls]

Lapland

Assigned codes:

[e-fi] Finland

[e-no] Norway

[e-sw] Sweden

Latin America [cl]

USE FOR Neotropics

Latin Orient

Assigned code:

[aw] Middle East

Latvia [e-lv]

[Coded [e-ur-lv] (Latvia) before June 1998]

Lebanon [a-le]

Leeward Islands (West Indies) [nwli]

Lesotho [f-lo]

USE FOR Basutoland

Lesser Antilles

USE Antilles, Lesser

Lesser Sunda Islands (Indonesia and East Timor)

Assigned codes:

[a-em] East Timor

[a-io] Indonesia

USE FOR Sunda Islands, Lesser (Indonesia and East Timor)

Levant

USE Middle East

Liaoning Province (China)

USE Liaoning Sheng (China)

Liaoning Sheng (China) [a-cc-lp]

USE FOR Liaoning Province (China)

Liberia [f-lb]

Libya [f-ly]

Liechtenstein [e-lh]

Line Islands [poln]

Lithuania [e-li]

[Coded [e-ur-li] (Lithuania) before March 1998]

Long River (China)

USE Yangtze River (China)

Louisiade Archipelago (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Louisiana [n-us-la]

Low countries

USE Benelux countries

Loyalty Islands (New Caledonia)

Assigned code:

[ponl] New Caledonia

Luxembourg [e-lu]

Luzon (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

M

Macao

USE Macau (China : Special Administrative Region)

Macau (China : Special Administrative Region) [a-cc-mh]

[Coded [a-mh] (Macao) before May 29, 2000]

USE FOR Macao

Macedonia

Assigned codes:

[e-bu] Bulgaria
[e-gr] Greece
[e-xn] Macedonia (Republic)]

Macedonia (Bulgaria)

Assigned code:

[e-bu] Bulgaria

Macedonia (Greece)

Assigned code:

[e-gr] Greece

Macedonia (Republic)] [e-xn]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]

Macias Nguema (Equatorial Guinea)

USE Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Madagascar [f-mg]

USE FOR Malagasy Republic

Madeira Islands [lnma]

Madura Island (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

Maine [n-us-me]

Mainland China

USE China

Malagasy Republic

USE Madagascar

Malawi [f-mw]

USE FOR Nyasaland

Malay Archipelagon

Assigned code:

[as] Southeast Asia

Malay Peninsula

Assigned codes:

[a-th] Thailand
[am] Malaya

Malaya [am]

Malaysia [a-my]

Maldives [i-xc]

Mali [f-ml]

USE FOR French Sudan

Sudan, French

Mali (Empire)

Assigned code:

[fw] Africa, West

Malta [e-mm]

Maluku (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

USE FOR Moluccas (Indonesia)

Malvinas Islands

USE Falkland Islands

Man, Isle of

USE Isle of Man

Manchuria (China)

Assigned code:

[a-cc] China

Manitoba [n-cn-mb]

Mariana Islands [poxd]

USE FOR Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

Northern Mariana Islands

Marie-Galante (Guadeloupe)

Assigned code:

[nwgp] Guadeloupe

Maritime Provinces [n-cnm]

Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp] French Polynesia

USE FOR Archipel des Marquises (French Polynesia)

Îles Marquises de Mendoza (French Polynesia)

Islas Marquesas de Mendoza (French Polynesia)

Mendaña (French Polynesia)

Mars (Planet) [zma]

USE FOR Red Planet

Marshall Islands [poxe]

Martinique [nwmq]

Maryland [n-us-md]

Massachusetts [n-us-ma]

Mauritania [f-mu]

Mauritius [i-mf]

Mayotte [i-my]

[Coded [i-cq] (Comoros) before Mar. 1988]

McDonald Island (Heard and McDonald Islands)

Assigned code:

[i-hm] Heard and McDonald Islands

Mediterranean Region [mm]

Mediterranean Region, Eastern

USE Middle East

Mediterranean Sea [mm]

Mekong River [ag]

USE FOR Dza-chu

Lan-ts'ang Chiang

Lancang Jiang

Song T'ien Giang

Melanesia [pome]

Melilla (Spain)

Assigned code:

[f-sh] Spanish North Africa

Mendaña (French Polynesia)

USE Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Mercury (Planet) [zme]

Mexico [n-mx]

USE FOR Middle America

Mexico, Gulf of [nm]

USE FOR Gulf of Mexico

Michigan [n-us-mi]

Micronesia [pott]

Micronesia (Federated States) [pomi]

[Coded [pott] (Micronesia) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR Federated States of Micronesia

Middle America

USE Central America

Middle Atlantic States [n-usl]

USE FOR Middle States

Middle Congo

USE Congo (Brazzaville)

Middle East [aw]

USE FOR Asia, Southwestern

Asia, Western

East (Near East)

Eastern Mediterranean

Levant

Mediterranean Region, Eastern

Mideast

Near East

Middle States

USE Middle Atlantic States

Middle West [n-usc]

USE FOR Midwest

North Central States

Mideast

USE Middle East

Midway Islands [poxf]

Midwest

USE Middle West

Mindanao Island (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

Minnesota [n-us-mn]

Miquelon

Assigned code:

[n-xl] Saint Pierre and Miquelon

Mississippi [n-us-ms]

Mississippi River [n-usm]

Missouri [n-us-mo]

Missouri River [n-uss]

Moldavia

Assigned codes:

[e-mv] Moldova

[e-rm] Romania

Moldavian S.S.R.

USE Moldova

Moldova [e-mv]

[Coded [e-ur-mv] (Moldova) before June 1998]

USE FOR Moldavian S.S.R.

Moluccas (Indonesia)

USE Maluku (Indonesia)

Monaco [e-mc]

Mongolia [a-mp]

USE FOR Mongolian People's Republic

Outer Mongolia

Mongolia (Inner Mongolia)

USE Inner Mongolia (China)

Mongolian People's Republic

USE Mongolia

Montana [n-us-mt]

Montenegro [e-mo]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before April 2007]

Montserrat [nwmj]

Moon [zmo]

Morocco [f-mr]

USE FOR French Morocco

Mozambique [f-mz]

USE FOR East Africa, Portuguese German East Africa

People's Republic of Mozambique

Portuguese East Africa

Muscat and Oman

USE Oman

Myanmar

USE Burma

N

Namibia [f-sx]

USE FOR Africa, Southwest

South-West Africa

Nansha Islands

USE Spratly Islands

Nauru [ponu]

USE FOR Pleasant Island

Near East

USE Middle East

Nebraska [n-us-nb]

Negros Island (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

Neotropics

USE Latin America

Nepal [a-np]

Neptune (Planet) [zne]

Netherlands [e-ne]

USE FOR Holland

Netherlands Antilles [nwna]

USE FOR Dutch West Indies

Netherlands West Indies

West Indies, Dutch

Netherlands East Indies

USE Indonesia

Netherlands West Indies

USE Netherlands Antilles

Nevada [n-us-nv]

Nevis

Assigned code:

[nwxi] Saint Kitts and Nevis

New Britain Island (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

New Brunswick [n-cn-nk]

New Caledonia [ponl]

New England [n-usn]

New France

Assigned code:

[n] North America

New Guinea [a-nw]

USE FOR New Guinea Island

New Guinea (Territory)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

New Guinea Island

USE New Guinea

New Hampshire [n-us-nh]

New Hebrides

USE Vanuatu

New Ireland Island (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

New Jersey [n-us-nj]

New Mexico [n-us-nm]

New South Wales [u-at-ne]

New York (State) [n-us-ny]

New Zealand [u-nz]

Newfoundland and Labrador [n-cn-nf]

Nicaragua [ncnq]

Niger [f-ng]

Niger River [fi]

Nigeria [f-nr]

USE FOR Biafra

Nile River [fl]

Ninghsia Province (China)

USE Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China)

Ningsia Hui Autonomous Region (China)

USE Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China)

Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China) [a-cc-nn]

USE FOR Ninghsia Province (China)

Ningsia Hui Autonomous Region (China)

Niue [poxh]

Non-Black Earth Region (Russia)

USE Non-Chernozem Region (Russia)

Non-Chernozem Region (Russia)

Assigned code:

[e-ru] Russia (Federation)

USE FOR Non-Black Earth Region (Russia)

Norfolk Island

Assigned code:

[u-at] Australia

North Africa

USE Africa, North

North America [n]

North Atlantic Ocean [ln]

North Borneo

USE Sabah

North Carolina [n-us-nc]

North Caucasus (Russia)

USE Caucasus, Northern (Russia)

North Central States

USE Middle West

North Dakota [n-us-nd]

North Korea

USE Korea (North)

North Pacific Ocean [pn]

USE FOR Pacific Ocean, North

North Pole

USE Arctic regions

North Sea

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

North Vietnam

USE Vietnam (Democratic Republic)

Northeast (U.S.)

USE Northeastern States

Northeast Africa

USE Africa, Northeast

Northeast Passage

Assigned code:

[r] Arctic regions

Northeastern States [n- USE]

USE FOR Northeast (U.S.)

Northern Australia [u-atn]

[Coded [u-at] (Australia) before September 2005]

USE FOR Australia, Northern

Northern Canada

USE Canada, Northern

Northern Caucasus (Russia)

USE Caucasus, Northern (Russia)

Northern Europe

USE Europe, Northern

Northern Germany

USE Germany, Northern

Northern Hemisphere [xb]

Northern Ireland [e-uk-ni]

USE FOR Ireland, Northern

Northern Mariana Islands

USE Mariana Islands

Northern Rhodesia

USE Zambia

Northern Russia

USE Russia, Northern

Northern Samar (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

Northern Soviet Union

USE Russia, Northern

Northern Territory [u-at-no]

Northwest (U.S.)

USE Northwest, Pacific

Northwest, Canadian

Assigned code:

[n-cn] Canada

USE FOR Canadian Northwest

West (Canada)

Northwest, Old

Assigned code:

[n-usc] Middle West

Northwest, Pacific

Assigned code:

[n-cn-bc] British Columbia

USE FOR Northwest (U.S.)

Pacific Northwest

Northwest, Pacific

Assigned code:

[n-usp] West (U.S.)

USE FOR Northwest (U.S.)

Pacific Northwest

Northwest Africa

USE Africa, Northwest

Northwest Passage

Assigned code:

[r] Arctic regions

Northwest Territories [n-cn-nt]

Northwestern Soviet Union

USE Soviet Union, Northwestern

Northwestern States

Assigned code:

[n-usp] West (U.S.)

Norway [e-no]

Norwegian Sea

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Nova Scotia [n-cn-ns]

Nunavut [n-nc-nu]

Nyasaland

USE Malawi

O

Ocean Island (Kiribati)

USE Banaba (Kiribati)

Oceania [po]

USE FOR Oceanica

Oceania, French

USE French Polynesia

Oceanica

USE Oceania

Ohio [n-us-oh]

Ohio River [n-uso]

Okinawa Island (Japan)

Assigned code:

[a-ja] Japan

Oklahoma [n-us-ok]

Oman [a-mk]

USE FOR Muscat and Oman

Oman, Gulf of

Assigned code:

[au] Arabian Sea

USE FOR Gulf of Oman

Ontario [n-cn-on]

Oregon [n-us-or]

Orient

Assigned code:

[a] Asia

USE FOR East

Orkney (Scotland)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-st] Scotland

Outer Mongolia

USE Mongolia

Outer space [zo]

USE FOR Space, Outer

Ozark Mountains

Assigned codes:

[n-us-ar] Arkansas

[n-us-mo] Missouri

[n-us-ok] Oklahoma

P

Pacific and Mountain States

USE West (U.S.)

Pacific Area

Assigned code:

[p] Pacific Ocean

Pacific Coast (North America)

Assigned code:

[n] North America

Pacific Island Dependencies of the United States

USE United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands

Pacific Islands (Ter.)

USE Pacific Islands (Trust Territory)

Pacific Islands (Trust Territory)

Assigned code:

[poup] United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands

USE FOR Pacific Islands (Ter.)

Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

Pacific Northwest

USE Northwest, Pacific

Pacific Ocean [p]

Pacific Ocean, North

USE North Pacific Ocean

Pacific Ocean, South

USE South Pacific Ocean

Pacific States

Assigned codes:

[n-us-ca] California

[n-us-or] Oregon

[n-us-wa] Washington (State)

Pakistan [a-pk]

USE FOR West Pakistan

Palau [popl]

[Coded [poci] (Caroline Islands) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR Belau

Pelew

Republic of Palau

Palestine

Assigned codes:

[a-is] Israel

[awba] West Bank

[awgz] Gaza Strip

Panama [ncpn]

Panama Canal Zone

USE Canal Zone

Panay Island (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

Pannonia

Assigned codes:

[e-au] Austria

[e-hu] Hungary

[e-yu] Yugoslavia

Papua

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Papua (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

USE FOR Irian Barat (Indonesia)

Irian Jaya (Indonesia)

West Irian

West New Guinea

Papua New Guinea [a-pp]

Paracel Islands [aopf]

USE FOR Hoàng Sa

Hsi-sha Islands

Xisha Islands

Paraguay [s-py]

Pascua Island

USE Easter Island

Peiping (China)

USE Beijing (China)

Peking (China)

USE Beijing (China)

Pelew

USE Palau

Pemba Island (Tanzania)

Assigned code:

[f-tz] Tanzania

USE FOR Huthera (Tanzania)

Pennsylvania [n-us-pa]

People's Democratic Republic of Algeria

USE Algeria

People's Democratic Republic of Yemen

USE Yemen (Republic)

People's Republic of Angola

USE Angola

People's Republic of Benin

USE Benin

People's Republic of Bulgaria

USE Bulgaria

People's Republic of China

USE China

People's Republic of Croatia

USE Croatia

People's Republic of Mozambique

USE Mozambique

People's Socialist Republic of Albania

USE Albania

Persia

USE Iran

Persian Gulf [ap]

Persian Gulf States

Assigned code:

[ar] Arabian Peninsula

Peru [s-pe]

Pescadores Islands

Assigned code:

[a-ch] Taiwan

Philippine Islands

USE Philippines

Philippine Sea

Assigned code:

[pn] North Pacific Ocean

Philippines [a-ph]

USE FOR Philippine Islands

Phoenix Islands (Kiribati)

Assigned code:

[pokb] Kiribati

Pirineos

USE Pyrenees

Pitcairn Island [popc]

Plata, Rio de la (Argentina and Uruguay)

USE Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)

Plate River (Argentina and Uruguay)

USE Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)

Pleasant Island

USE Nauru

Pluto (Planet) [zpl]

Po Gulf (China)

USE Bo Hai (China)

Po Hai (China)

USE Bo Hai (China)

Pohnpei (Micronesia)

Assigned code:

[pomi] Micronesia (Federated States)

USE FOR Ponape (Micronesia)

Poland [e-pl]

Polar regions

Assigned code:

[t] Antarctica [r] Arctic regions

Polynesia [pops]

Polynesia, French

USE French Polynesia

Ponape (Micronesia)

USE Pohnpei (Micronesia)

Portugal [e-po]

Portuguese East Africa

USE Mozambique

Portuguese Guinea

USE Guinea-Bissau

Portuguese Timor

USE East Timor

Portuguese West Africa

USE Angola

Prairie Provinces [n-cnp]

Pratas Islands

Assigned code:

[a-ch] Taiwan

Prince Edward Island [n-cn-pi]

Prince Edward Islands

Assigned code:

[f-sa] South Africa

USE FOR Froides, Îles

Îles Froides

Prussia (Germany)

Assigned code:

[e-gx] Germany

Puerto Rico [nwpr]

Pyrenees [ep]

USE FOR Pirineos

Q

Qatar [a-qa]

Québec (Province) [n-cn-qu]

Queensland [u-at-qn]

Qinghai Sheng (China) [a-cc-ts]

USE FOR Tsinghai Province (China)

R

R.S.F.S.R.

USE Russia (Federation)

Red Planet

USE Mars (Planet)

Red Sea [mr]

Reka Amur (China and Russia)

USE Amur River (China and Russia)

Republic of Cape Verde

USE Cape Verde

Republic of Ireland

USE Ireland

Republic of Palau

USE Palau

Republic of Vanuatu

USE Vanuatu

Republique de Guinée

USE Guinea

Réunion [i-re]

Rhine River [er]

Rhode Island [n-us-ri]

Rhodesia

Assigned code:

[f-za] Zambia

[f-rh] Zimbabwe

Rhodesia and Nyasaland

Assigned code:

[f-mw] Malawi

[f-za] Zambia

[f-rh] Zimbabwe

USE FOR Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland

Rhodesia, Southern

USE Zimbabwe

Rift Valley

USE Great Rift Valley

Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay) [su]

USE FOR La Plata River (Argentina and Uruguay)

Plata, Rio de la (Argentina and Uruguay)

Plate River (Argentina and Uruguay)

Río Muni

USE Equatorial Guinea

Rio Zambezi

USE Zambezi River

Rocky Mountains [nr]

Roman Empire

USE Rome

Romania [e-rm]

USE FOR Rumania

Rome

Assigned codes:

[ff] Africa, North

[e] Europe

[aw] Middle East

USE FOR Roman Empire

Ruanda-Urundi

Assigned codes:

[f-bd] Burundi

[f-rw] Rwanda

Rumania

USE Romania

Russia

Assigned code:

[e-ur] Soviet Union

USE FOR Russian Empire

Russia (Federation) [e-ru]

[Coded [e-ur-ru] (Russia (Federation)) before June 1998]

USE FOR Chishima-retto (Russia)

Kurile Islands (Russia)

Kuril'skie ostrova (Russia)

R.S.F.S.R.

Russian Republic

Russian S.F.S.R.

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

Russia, Northern

Assigned code:

[e-ru] Russia (Federation)

USE FOR Northern Russia

Northern Soviet Union

Soviet Union, Northern

Russian Empire

USE Russia

Russian Far East (Russia) [e-urf]

USE FOR Far East (Russia)

Far Eastern Region (Russia)

Soviet Far East (Russia)

Russian Republic

USE Russia (Federation)

Russian S.F.S.R.

USE Russia (Federation)

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

USE Russia (Federation)

Rwanda [f-rw]

USE FOR German East Africa

Ryukyu Islands

Assigned code:

[a-ja] Japan

Ryukyu Islands, Southern

USE Japan

S

Saba (Netherlands Antilles) [nwsd]

Sabah

Assigned code:

[a-my] Malaysia

USE FOR British North Borneo

North Borneo

Sahara [fd]

USE FOR Sahara Desert

Sahara Desert

USE Sahara

Sahel

Assigned code:

[f] Africa

Saint Bartholomew

USE Saint-Barthélemy

Saint Barts

USE Saint-Barthélemy

Saint Christopher and Nevis

USE Saint Kitts and Nevis

Saint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

USE Sint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

Saint Helena [lsxj]

USE FOR St. Helena

Saint Kitts

Assigned code:

[nwxj] Saint Kitts and Nevis

Saint Kitts and Nevis [nwxj]

USE FOR Saint Christopher and Nevis

Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla

Assigned codes:

[nwxk] Anguilla

[nwxj] Saint Kitts and Nevis

USE FOR St. Christopher-Nevis-Anguilla

Saint Lawrence River

Assigned codes:

[n-cn] Canada

[n-us] United States

Saint Lucia [nwxk]

USE FOR St. Lucia

Saint Martin (West Indies) [nwst]

USE FOR Sint Maarten (West Indies)

St. Martin (West Indies)

Saint Pierre and Miquelon [n-xl]

USE FOR Îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon

St. Pierre and Miquelon

Saint Vincent

Assigned code:

[nwxm] Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

USE FOR St. Vincent

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines [nwxm]

Saint-Barthélemy

Assigned code:

[nwgp] Guadeloupe

USE FOR Saint Bartholomew

Saint Barts

St. Barthélémy

Sakha (Russia)

Assigned code:

[e-ru] Russia (Federation)

USE FOR Àkutskaïa A.S.S.R. (Russia)

Yakutia (Russia)

Sakhalin Ula (China and Russia)

USE Amur River (China and Russia)

Salvador

USE El Salvador

Salvage Islands (Madeira Islands)

USE Selvagens Islands (Madeira Islands)

Salvages (Madeira Islands)

USE Selvagens Islands (Madeira Islands)

Samar (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph] Philippines

Samoa [pows]

USE FOR Western Samoa

Samoa (Islands)

USE Samoan Islands

Samoa, American

USE American Samoa

Samoan Islands [posh]

USE FOR Samoa (Islands)

San Marino [e-sm]

Sandwich Islands, South

USE South Georgia and South Sandwich Islands

Santa Cruz Islands (Solomon Islands)

Assigned code:

[pobp] Solomon Islands

São Thomé e Príncipe

USE Sao Tome and Principe

Sao Tome and Principe [f-sf]

USE FOR São Thomé e Príncipe

Sarawak

Assigned code:

[a-my] Malaysia

Sardinia (Italy)

Assigned code:

[e-it] Italy

Saskatchewan [n-cn-sn]

Saturn (Planet) [zsa]

Saudi Arabia [a-su]

Scandinavia [ev]

Scotland [e-uk-st]

Selvagens Islands (Madeira Islands)

Assigned code:

[lnma] Madeira Islands

USE FOR Salvage Islands (Madeira Islands)

Salvages (Madeira Islands)

Senegal [f-sg]

Serbia [e-rb]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before April 2007]

Seychelles [i-se]

Shaanxi Sheng (China) [a-cc-ss]

USE FOR Shensi Province (China)

Shan States

Assigned code:

[a-br] Burma

Shandong Sheng (China) [a-cc-sp]

USE FOR Shantung Province (China)

- Shanghai (China) [a-cc-sm]
Shansi Province (China)
 USE Shanxi Sheng (China)
Shantung Province (China)
 USE Shandong Sheng (China)
Shanxi Sheng (China) [a-cc-sh]
 USE FOR Shansi Province (China)
Shensi Province (China)
 USE Shaanxi Sheng (China)
Shetland (Scotland)
 Assigned code:
 [e-uk-st] Scotland
Shinnan Islands
 USE Spratly Islands
Si Kiang (China)
 USE Xi River (China)
Si River (China)
 USE Xi River (China)
Siam
 USE Thailand
Siam, Gulf of
 USE Thailand, Gulf of
Siberia (Russia) [e-urs]
Siberia, Eastern (Russia) [e-ure]
 USE FOR East Siberian Region (Russia)
 Eastern Siberia (Russia)
Siberia, Northeastern (Russia)
 Assigned code:
 [e-urs] Siberia (Russia)
Siberia, Northwestern (Russia)
 Assigned code:
 [e-urs] Siberia (Russia)
Siberia, Western (Russia) [e-urw]
 USE FOR Western Siberia (Russia)

Sichuan Sheng (China) [a-cc-sz]

USE FOR Szechwan Province (China)

Sicily (Italy)

Assigned code:

[e-it] Italy

Sierra Leone [f-sl]

Sikkim (India)

Assigned code:

[a-ii] India

Singapore [a-si]

Sinkiang Uighur Autonomous Region (China)

USE Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China)

Sint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles) [nweu]

USE FOR Saint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

St. Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

Statia (Netherlands Antilles)

Sint Maarten (West Indies)

USE Saint Martin (West Indies)

Skagerrak (Denmark and Norway)

Assigned code:

[ln] North Atlantic Ocean

Slovak Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

USE Slovakia

Slovakia [e-xo]

[Coded [e-cs] (Czechoslovakia) before May 1993]

USE FOR Slovak Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

Slovenia [e-xv]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]

Snowbelt States

Assigned code:

[n-us] United States

USE FOR Frostbelt (U.S.)

Society Islands (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp] French Polynesia

Socotra (Yemen)

Assigned code:

[a-ye] Yemen (Republic)

USE FOR Sokotra (Yemen)

Sokotra (Yemen)

USE Socotra (Yemen)

Solar system [zs]

Solomon Islands [pobp]

[Coded also [posn] (Solomon Islands) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR British Solomon Islands

Somali Republic

USE Somalia

Somalia [f-so]

USE FOR British Somaliland

Italian Somaliland

Somali Republic

Somaliland, French

USE Djibouti

Song Tiên Giang

USE Mekong River

Songhai Empire

Assigned codes:

[f-ml] Mali

[f-ng] Niger

[f-nr] Nigeria

South Africa [f-sa]

USE FOR Africa, South

Union of South Africa

South America [s]

South Arabia, Federation of

USE Federation of South Arabia

South Asia [az]

USE FOR Asia, South

South Atlantic Ocean [ls]

South Atlantic States

Assigned code:

[n-usu] Southern States

USE FOR Atlantic States, South

South Australia [u-at-sa]

South Carolina [n-us-sc]

South China Sea [ao]

South Dakota [n-us-sd]

South Georgia and South Sandwich Islands [lsxs]

[Coded [lsfk] (Falkland Islands) before Oct. 1992]

USE FOR Sandwich Islands, South

South Sandwich Islands

South Korea

USE Korea (South)

South Orkney Islands

Assigned code:

[lsfk] Falkland Islands

South Pole

USE Antarctica

South Sandwich Islands

USE South Georgia and South Sandwich Islands

South Shetland Islands (Antarctica)

Assigned code:

[t] Antarctica

South Vietnam

USE Vietnam (Republic)

South-West Africa

USE Namibia

Southeast Asia [as]

USE FOR Asia, Southeastern

Southeastern Asia

Southeastern Asia

USE Southeast Asia

Southeastern Europe

USE Balkan Peninsula

Southern Africa

USE Africa, Southern

Southern Cameroons

USE Cameroon

Southern Europe

USE Europe, Southern

Southern Germany

USE Germany, Southern

Southern Hemisphere [xc]

Southern Rhodesia

USE Zimbabwe

Southern Soviet Union

USE Soviet Union, Southern

Southern States [n-usu]

Southern Yemen

USE Yemen (Republic)

Southwest, New [n-ust]

Southwest, Old

Assigned code:

[n-usu] Southern States

Southwestern States

Assigned codes:

[n-usu] Southern States

[n-ust] Southwest, New

Soviet Central Asia

USE Asia, Central

Soviet Far East (Russia)

USE Russian Far East (Russia)

Soviet Union [e-ur]

USE FOR Commonwealth of Independent States countries

Former Soviet republics

U.S.S.R.

Soviet Union, Northern

USE Russia, Northern

Soviet Union, Northwestern [e-urn]

USE FOR Northwestern Soviet Union

Soviet Union, Southern

Assigned code:

[e-ur] Soviet Union

USE FOR Southern Soviet Union

Soviet Union, Western

Assigned code:

[e-ur] Soviet Union

USE FOR Western Soviet Union

Space, Outer

USE Outer space

Spain [e-sp]

Spanish Guinea

USE Equatorial Guinea

Spanish Main

Assigned code:

[cc] Caribbean Area

Spanish North Africa [f-sh]

USE FOR Spanish Territories in Northern Morocco

Spanish Sahara

USE Western Sahara

Spanish Territories in Northern Morocco

USE Spanish North Africa

Spitsbergen Island (Norway)

Assigned code:

[lnsb] Svalbard (Norway)

USE FOR West Spitsbergen (Norway)

Spratly Islands [aoxp]

USE FOR Nansha Islands

Shinnan Islands

Sri Lanka [a-ce]

USE FOR Ceylon

St. Barthélemy

USE Saint-Barthélemy

St. Christopher-Nevis-Anguilla
USE Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla

St. Christopher-Nevis-Anguilla
USE Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla

St. Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)
USE Sint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

St. Helena
USE Saint Helena

St. Lucia
USE Saint Lucia

St. Martin (West Indies)
USE Saint Martin (West Indies)

St. Pierre and Miquelon
USE Saint Pierre and Miquelon

St. Vincent
USE Saint Vincent

Statia (Netherlands Antilles)
USE Sint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

Strait of Gibraltar
USE Gibraltar, Strait of

Straits Settlements
Assigned codes:
[a-my] Malaysia
[a-si] Singapore

Sub-Saharan Africa
USE Africa, Sub-Saharan

Sudan [f-sj]
USE FOR Anglo-Egyptian Sudan

Sudan (Region) [fn]

Sudan, French
USE Mali

Suez Canal (Egypt) [fu]

Sulawesi (Indonesia)
USE Celebes (Indonesia)

Sumatra (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io] Indonesia

Sun [zsu]

Sunbelt States

Assigned codes:

[n-us-hi] Hawaii

[n-usu] Southern States

[n-ust] Southwest, New

Sunda Islands, Lesser (Indonesia and East Timor)

USE Lesser Sunda Islands (Indonesia and East Timor)

Surinam

USE Suriname

Suriname [s-sr]

USE FOR Dutch Guiana

Guiana, Dutch

Surinam

Svalbard (Norway) [lnsb]

Swan Islands (Honduras) [nwsv]

Swaziland [f-sq]

Sweden [e-sw]

Switzerland [e-sz]

Syria [a-sy]

Szechwan Province (China)

USE Sichuan Sheng (China)

T

T.A.A.F.

USE Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

Tadzik Soviet Socialist Republic

USE Tajikistan

Taiwan [a-ch]

USE FOR Formosa

Tajik S.S.R.

USE Tajikistan

Tajikistan [a-ta]

[Coded [e-ur-ta] (Tajikistan) before June 1998]

USE FOR Tadziki Soviet Socialist Republic

Tajik S.S.R.

Tanganyika

Assigned code:

[f-tz] Tanzania

Tangier (Morocco)

Assigned code:

[f-mr] Morocco

Tanzania [f-tz]

USE FOR German East Africa

Tasmania [u-at-tm]

Tennessee [n-us-tn]

Terres australes et antarctiques françaises [i-fs]

USE FOR French Southern and Antarctic Lands

French Southern Indian Ocean Islands

Indian Ocean Islands, French

T.A.A.F.

Texas [n-us-tx]

Thailand [a-th]

USE FOR Siam

Thailand, Gulf of [af]

USE FOR Gulf of Thailand

Siam, Gulf of

Thian Shan

USE Tien Shan

Third World

USE Developing countries

Tian Shan

USE Tien Shan

Tianjin (China) [a-cc-tn]

USE FOR Tientsin (China)

Tibesti Mountains

Assigned code:

[f-cd] Chad

Tibesti Mountains

Assigned codes:

[f-ly] Libya

[f-ng] Niger

Tibet (China) [a-cc-ti]

USE FOR Tibetan Autonomous Region (China)

Tibetan Autonomous Region (China)

USE Tibet (China)

Tien Mountains

USE Tien Shan

Tien Shan [at]

USE FOR Thian Shan

Tian Shan

Tien Mountains

Tientsin (China)

USE Tianjin (China)

Timor, East

USE East Timor

Timor, Portuguese

USE East Timor

Timor Island

Assigned codes:

[a-em] East Timor

[a-io] Indonesia

Timor Sea

Assigned code:

[i] Indian Ocean

Timor Timur

USE East Timor

Tobago

Assigned code:

[nwtr] Trinidad and Tobago

Togo [f-tg]

USE FOR French Togoland

Togoland (French)

Togoland

Assigned codes:

[f-gh] Ghana

[f-tg] Togo

Togoland (British)

Assigned code:

[f-gh] Ghana

USE FOR British Togoland

Togoland (French)

USE Togo

Tokelau [potl]

USE FOR Union Islands

Tonga [poto]

USE FOR Friendly Islands

Tonga Islands

Tonga Islands

USE Tonga

Torres Strait Islands (Qld.)

Assigned code:

[u-at-qn] Queensland

Transcaucasia

Assigned codes:

[a-ai] Armenia (Republic)

[a-aj] Azerbaijan

Transcaucasia

Assigned code:

[a-gs] Georgia (Republic)

Transjordan

USE Jordan

Trinidad

Assigned code:

[nwtr] Trinidad and Tobago

Trinidad and Tobago [nwtr]

Tristan da Cunha [lstd]

Trobriand Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Tropics [w]

Trucial States

USE United Arab Emirates

Truk (Micronesia)

USE Chuuk (Micronesia)

Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

USE Pacific Islands (Trust Territory)

Tsinghai Province (China)

USE Qinghai Sheng (China)

Tuamotu Archipelago (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp] French Polynesia

Tubuai Islands (French Polynesia)

USE Austral Islands (French Polynesia)

Tunisia [f-ti]

Turkey [a-tu]

USE FOR Asia Minor

Turkmen S.S.R.

USE Turkmenistan

Turkmenistan [a-tk]

[Coded [e-ur-tk] (Turkmenistan) before June 1998]

USE FOR Turkmen S.S.R.

Turks and Caicos Islands [nwtc]

USE FOR Caicos Islands

Tuvalu [potv]

[Coded [pogn] (Gilbert and Ellice Islands) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR Ellice Islands

U

U.S.S.R.

USE Soviet Union

Ubangi Shari

USE Central African Republic

Uganda [f-ug]

Ukraine [e-un]

[Coded [e-ur-un] (Ukraine) before June 1998]

Underdeveloped areas

USE Developing countries

Union Islands

USE Tokelau

Union of South Africa

USE South Africa

United Arab Emirates [a-ts]

USE FOR Trucial States

United Arab Republic

Assigned codes:

[f-ua] Egypt

[a-sy] Syria

United Kingdom

USE Great Britain

United Kingdom Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

USE Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

United States [n-us]

United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands [nwuc]

USE FOR Caribbean Island Dependencies of the United States

Island Dependencies of the United States in the Caribbean

United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands [poup]

[Includes American Samoa, Guam, Pacific Islands (Trust Territory) treated collectively]

USE FOR Island Dependencies of the United States in the Pacific

Pacific Island Dependencies of the United States

Upper Volta

USE Burkina Faso

Ural Mountains (Russia) [e-uru]

Uranus (Planet) [zur]

Uruguay [s-uy]

Utah [n-us-ut]

Uvea Island (Wallis and Futuna Islands)

Assigned code:

[powf] Wallis and Futuna Islands

Uzbek S.S.R.

USE Uzbekistan

Uzbekistan [a-uz]

[Coded [e-ur-uz] (Uzbekistan) before June 1998]

USE FOR Uzbek S.S.R.

V

Vanuatu [ponn]

USE FOR New Hebrides

Republic of Vanuatu

Vatican City [e-vc]

USE FOR Holy See

Venezuela [s-ve]

Venus (Planet) [zve]

Vermont [n-us-vt]

Victoria [u-at-vi]

Vietnam [a-vt]

Vietnam (Democratic Republic)

Assigned code:

[a-vt] Vietnam

USE FOR North Vietnam

Vietnam, North

Vietnam (Republic)

Assigned code:

[a-vt] Vietnam

USE FOR South Vietnam

Vietnam, South

Vietnam, North
 USE Vietnam (Democratic Republic)

Vietnam, South
 USE Vietnam (Republic)

Virgin Islands
 USE British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands (American)
 USE Virgin Islands of the United States

Virgin Islands (Danish)
 USE Virgin Islands of the United States

Virgin Islands (Great Britain)
 USE British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands (Presidency)
 USE British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands, British
 USE British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands of the United States [nwvi]
 USE FOR Virgin Islands
 Virgin Islands (American)
 Virgin Islands (Danish)

Virginia [n-us-va]

Volga River (Russia) [e-urp]

Volgo-Viatskii Region (Russia)
 Assigned code:
 [e-ru] Russia (Federation)

Volta River (Ghana) [fv]

W

Wake Island [powk]

Wales [e-uk-wl]

Wallis and Futuna Islands [powf]

Washington (D.C.) [n-us-dc]
 USE FOR District of Columbia

Washington (State) [n-us-wa]

Washington Region

Assigned codes:

[n-us-md] Maryland
[n-us-va] Virginia
[n-us-dc] Washington (D.C.)

West (Canada)

USE Northwest, Canadian

West (U.S.) [n-usp]

USE FOR Far West (U.S.)
Pacific and Mountain States
Western States (U.S.)

West Africa

USE Africa, West

West Africa, Portuguese

USE Angola

West Bank [awba]

[Coded [a-is] (Israel) and/or [a-jo] (Jordan) before Mar. 1988]

USE FOR Judaea and Samaria

West Bank of the Jordan River

West Bank of the Jordan River

USE West Bank

West Berlin

USE Berlin (Germany)

West Germany

USE Germany (West)

West Indies [nw]

USE FOR Antilles, Greater
Greater Antilles
Indies, West

West Indies, Dutch

USE Netherlands Antilles

West Indies, French

Assigned code:

[nwla] Antilles, Lesser
USE FOR French West Indies

West Irian
 USE Papua (Indonesia)

West New Guinea
 USE Papua (Indonesia)

West Pakistan
 USE Pakistan

West River (China)
 USE Xi River (China)

West Spitsbergen (Norway)
 USE Spitsbergen Island (Norway)

West Virginia [n-us-wv]

Western Australia [u-at-we]
 USE FOR Australia, Western

Western Canada
 USE Canada, Western

Western Europe
 USE Europe, Western

Western Hemisphere [xd]

Western Sahara [f-ss]
 USE FOR Spanish Sahara

Western Samoa
 USE Samoa

Western Siberia (Russia)
 USE Siberia, Western (Russia)

Western Soviet Union
 USE Soviet Union, Western

Western States (U.S.)
 USE West (U.S.)

White Russia
 USE Belarus

Wight, Isle of
 USE Isle of Wight (England)

Windward Islands (West Indies) [nwwi]

Wisconsin [n-us-wi]

Woodlark Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp] Papua New Guinea

Wyoming [n-us-wy]

X

Xi River (China) [a-ccs]

USE FOR Hsi Chiang (China)

Si Kiang (China)

Si River (China)

West River (China)

Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China) [a-cc-su]

USE FOR Hsin-chiang-wei-wy-erh tzu chin chü (China)

Sinkiang Uighur Autonomous Region (China)

Xisha Islands

USE Paracel Islands

Y

Yakutia (Russia)

USE Sakha (Russia)

Yangtze River (China) [a-ccg]

USE FOR Chang Chiang (China)

Long River (China)

Yap (Micronesia)

Assigned code:

[pomi] Micronesia (Federated States)

Yellow River (China) [a-ccy]

USE FOR Hoang Ho (China)

Huang Ho (China)

Hwang Ho (China)

Yellow Sea [ay]

USE FOR Huang Hai

Kwang Sea

Yemen (Arab Republic)

USE Yemen (Republic)

- Yemen (People's Democratic Republic)
USE Yemen (Republic)
- Yemen (Republic) [a-ye]
USE FOR Arab Republic of Yemen
People's Democratic Republic of Yemen
Southern Yemen
Yemen (Arab Republic)
Yemen (People's Democratic Republic)
- Yugoslavia [e-yu]
USE FOR Former Yugoslav republics
- Yukon Territory [n-cn-yk]
- Yunnan Province (China)
USE Yunnan Sheng (China)
- Yunnan Sheng (China) [a-cc-yu]
USE FOR Yunnan Province (China)
- Z**
- Zaire
USE Congo (Democratic Republic)
- Zambezi River [fz]
USE FOR Rio Zambezi
- Zambia [f-za]
USE FOR Northern Rhodesia
- Zanzibar
Assigned code:
[f-tz] Tanzania
- Zhejiang Sheng (China) [a-cc-ch]
USE FOR Chekiang Province (China)
- Zimbabwe [f-rh]
USE FOR Rhodesia, Southern
Southern Rhodesia

APPENDIX E: TIME PERIOD CODE

Introduction

The purpose of the Time Period Code is to allow access to a range of materials covering a particular era or related to a particular date. In UNIMARC, the code is entered in field 661. The code was developed at the U.S. Library of Congress for use in the USMARC format, now the MARC21 format, and was originally called the Chronological Coverage Code.

Code List

The Time Period Code consists of four alphanumeric characters assigned according to the tables given below. For B.C. dates, a lowercase alphabetic character represents the millennium and a digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen '-' is used instead of a number. For A.D. dates, a lowercase alphabetic character represents the century and a digit represents the decade. If the decade is not known, a hyphen is used instead of a number. If a single year or a period within a decade is recorded, the appropriate two-character code is repeated to create the four-character code.

B.C. TABLE

| | |
|-----------|----|
| 1- 99 | d9 |
| 100- 199 | d8 |
| 200- 299 | d7 |
| 300- 399 | d6 |
| 400- 499 | d5 |
| 500- 599 | d4 |
| 600- 699 | d3 |
| 700- 799 | d2 |
| 800- 899 | d1 |
| 900- 999 | d0 |
| 1000-1099 | c9 |
| 1100-1199 | c8 |
| 1200-1299 | c7 |
| 1300-1399 | c6 |
| 1400-1499 | c5 |
| 1500-1599 | c4 |
| 1600-1699 | c3 |

A.D. TABLE

| | |
|-----------|---|
| 2000- | y |
| 1900-1999 | x |
| 1800-1899 | w |
| 1700-1799 | v |
| 1600-1699 | u |
| 1500-1599 | t |
| 1400-1499 | s |
| 1300-1399 | r |
| 1200-1299 | q |
| 1100-1199 | p |
| 1000-1099 | o |
| 900- 999 | n |
| 800- 899 | m |
| 700- 799 | l |
| 600- 699 | k |
| 500- 599 | j |
| 400- 499 | i |

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|----------|---|
| 1700-1799 | c2 | 300- 399 | h |
| 1800-1899 | c1 | 200- 299 | g |
| 1900-1999 | c0 | 100- 199 | f |
| 2000-2099 | b9 | 1- 99 | e |
| 2100-2199 | b8 | | |
| 2200-2299 | b7 | | |
| 2300-2399 | b6 | | |
| 2400-2499 | b5 | | |
| 2500-2599 | b4 | | |
| 2600-2699 | b3 | | |
| 2700-2799 | b2 | | |
| 2800-2899 | b1 | | |
| 2900-2999 | b0 | | |
| 3000- | a0 (i.e. before 2999) | | |

In the B.C. table, the letter equals the millennium and the number equals the century. In the A.D. table, the letter equals the century and the number, which must be added, equals the decade.

Examples

661 ##\$aw5
Work on the period 1828-1859

661 ##\$ao6r2
Work on the period 1066-1328

661 ##\$ax8x8
Work on 1984

661 ##ax-x-
Work on the 20th century

661 ##\$ae-e-
661 ##\$ax-x-
Work comparing the 1st century A.D. with the 20th century

661 ##\$ad5d6
Work on the period 423 B.C. to 390 B.C.

661 ##\$aa0d6
Work on the period to 300 B.C.

661 ##\$ap-r-
Work on the 12th to 14th centuries

661 ##\$ad9e3
Work on 42 B.C.-A.D. 37
661 ##\$ax2x2
Work on 1928
661 ##\$av4w1
Work on 1740-1810

APPENDIX F: CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS CODES

Introduction

The Cartographic Materials Codes defined in this appendix are used in field 131.

This list was developed by the British Library for use in UKMARC records. It is no longer used by them as UKMARC has been replaced by MARC21.

The codes can be found in Appendix D of the UKMARC format . The list is available at the following address:

<http://www.bl.uk/ukmarc/marcappd.html>

APPENDIX G: SUBJECT SYSTEMS CODES

Introduction

The following are lists of subject systems codes for published thesauri and classification schemes. Maintaining agencies are in parentheses ().

The codes are required for subfield \$2 of fields 102 (Country of Publication or Production), 600-608, 615 (thesauri) and field 686 (classification codes).

Other codes may be registered with the Permanent UNIMARC Committee by submitting registration details including suggested code, author, title, imprint and maintaining agency.

| | |
|---------|---|
| agrovoc | <i>AGROVOC thesaurus</i> . (Rome : AGRIS) |
| bic | BIC subject categories (London: BIC) (http://www.bic.org) |
| bmsi | <i>British Museum subject index</i> |
| cae | <i>National Library of Canada (English) subject headings</i> . (Ottawa : National Library of Canada) |
| caf | <i>National Library of Canada (French) subject headings</i> . (Ottawa : National Library of Canada) |
| ericd | <i>Thesaurus of ERIC descriptors</i> . (Washington : Educational Resources Information Center) |
| eudised | <i>Thesaurus</i> (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy : Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS) |
| fei | <i>Fingerprints = Empreintes = Impronte</i> . (Paris : Institut de Recherche et d'Histoire des Textes in association with the National Library of Scotland, 1984) |
| francis | <i>Thesaurus</i> (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy : Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS) |
| gmgpc | <i>Descriptive terms for graphic materials : genre and physical characteristic headings</i> . (Washington: Library of Congress) |
| gsafd | <i>Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc.</i> (Chicago : Resources and Technical Services Division, American Library Association) |
| ifremer | <i>IFREMER Thesaurus</i> (Issy-les-Moulineaux : Institut français de recherche pour l'exploitation de la mer) |
| ima | <i>Le thésaurus monde arabe</i> . (Paris : Institut du monde Arabe) |
| inist | <i>INIS: Thesaurus</i> . (Vienna : International Atomic Energy Agency) |
| inspec | <i>INSPEC thesaurus</i> . (London : Institution of Electrical Engineers) |

| | |
|--------|--|
| lc | <i>Library of Congress Subject Headings.</i> (Washington : Library of Congress) |
| lcch | <i>Library of Congress Children's Subject Headings.</i> (Washington : Library of Congress) |
| lctgm | United States. Library of Congress. Prints and Photographs Division. <i>Thesaurus for Graphic Materials.</i> (Washington : Library of Congress) |
| mesh | <i>Medical Subject Headings.</i> Bethesda, Md. : United States. National Library of Medicine |
| nal | <i>U.S. National Agricultural Library subject headings.</i> (Beltsville, Md. : National Agricultural Library) |
| nsogi | <i>Nuovo soggettario : guida al sistema italiano di indicizzazione per soggetto : thesaurus.</i> (Firenze : Biblioteca nazionale centrale) |
| pascal | <i>Thesaurus</i> (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy : Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS) |
| rameau | <i>RAMEAU : répertoire d'autorité-matière encyclopédique et alphabétique unifié.</i> (Paris : Bibliothèque nationale de France ; Montpellier : Agence bibliographique de l'enseignement supérieur) |
| rbbin | <i>Binding terms : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.</i> (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries) |
| rbgenr | <i>Genre Terms: A Thesaurus for use in Rare Book and Special Collections Cataloguing.</i> (Chicago : Association of College and Research Libraries) |
| rbpap | <i>Paper terms : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.</i> (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries) |
| rbpri | <i>Printing and publishing evidence : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.</i> (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries) |
| rbprov | <i>Provenance evidence : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.</i> (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries) |
| rbtyp | <i>Type evidence : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.</i> (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries) |
| sears | Sears, Minnie Earl. <i>Sears List of Subject Headings.</i> (New York : H.M. Wilson) |
| she | <i>SHE: subject headings for engineers.</i> (New York : Engineering Index, inc.) |
| sipor | SIPORbase : sistema de indexação em português. (Lisboa : Biblioteca nacional) |
| test | United States. Dept. of Defense. <i>Thesaurus of engineering and scientific terms.</i> (Washington : Dept. of Defense) |

| | |
|---------|--|
| watrest | United States. Bureau of Reclamation. <i>Thesaurus of water resources terms; a collection of water resources and related terms for use in indexing technical information.</i> (Washington : Bureau of Reclamation) |
|---------|--|

Classification Scheme List

| | |
|----------|--|
| ast | <i>Faceted application of subject terminology</i> (Dublin, Ohio: OCLC) (Website: http://www.oclc.org/research/projects/fast/ ; the interface to the FAST Authority File: http://fast.oclc.org) |
| basic | Book and Serials Industry Communications Subject Heading Codes (Book Industry Study Group, (http://www.bisg.org) |
| ddc | Dewey Decimal Classification |
| lcc | Library of Congress Classification |
| msc | <i>Mathematical Subject Classification</i> (American Mathematical Society) (Website : http://www.ams.org/msc/) |
| pcdm | <i>Principes de classement des documents musicaux applicables aux collections de prêt</i> (Paris : Association pour la Coopération de l'Interprofession Musicale & Médiathèque musicale de Paris) |
| rubbk | <i>Library Bibliographic Classification Schedules for Research Libraries.</i> (Moscow : Russian State Library, LBS Research Department). |
| rugasnti | <i>State Rubricator for Scientific and Technical Information.</i> (Moscow : Rector Centre for Scientific Research and Development, Interbranch Commission for Education). |
| sab | Klassifikationssystem för svenska bibliotek (SAB:s kommitté för katalogisering och klassifikation) |
| udc | Universal Decimal Classification (UDC Consortium) http://www.udcc.org |
| usnal | National Agricultural Library |
| usnlm | National Library of Medicine. <i>National Library of Medicine classification.</i> (Bethesda (Md.) : National Library of Medicine). |

Typology

| | |
|-------|---|
| frTAV | <i>France – Typologies audiovisuelles</i> (Paris : Bibliothèque nationale de France). |
|-------|---|

Local non standard code

| | |
|-------|---------------------------------------|
| local | The code list used is not a standard. |
|-------|---------------------------------------|

APPENDIX H: CATALOGUING RULES AND FORMATS CODES

Introduction

The following are lists of the codes for published cataloguing codes and formats required for subfields \$g and \$2 of field 801 ORIGINATING SOURCE and \$2 of field 886 DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT.

Other codes may be registered with the IFLA UBCIM Programme by submitting registration details including suggested code, author, title, imprint and maintaining agency.

Cataloguing Rules List

Maintaining agencies are in parentheses ().

| | |
|--------|---|
| AACR2 | Anglo-American cataloguing rules. — 2nd ed. — (Chicago : American Library Association ; London : Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals ; Ottawa; Canadian Library Association) |
| AFNOR | Normes de catalogage publiées par l'Association française de normalisation. (Paris: Afnor) |
| amim | White-Hensen, Wendy. Archival moving image materials. (Washington: Library of Congress) |
| amremm | Pass, Gregory A. Descriptive cataloging of ancient, medieval, renaissance, and early-modern manuscripts (Chicago: Association of College & Research Libraries) |
| appm | Hensen, Steven L. Archives, personal papers, and manuscripts. (Washington: Library of Congress) |
| bdrb | Library of Congress. Office for Descriptive Cataloguing Policy. Bibliographic description of rare books. (Washington: Library of Congress) |
| bm | British Museum cataloguing rules. |
| bps | McCrum, Blanche Prichard. Bibliographical procedures and style (Washington: Library of Congress, General Reference and Bibliography Division) |
| cco | Cataloging cultural objects : a guide to describing cultural works and their images (Chicago: Visual Resources Association, American Library Association) |
| dacs | Describing archives: a content standard (Chicago: Society of American Archivists) |
| dcrb | Descriptive cataloging of rare books (Washington, DC: Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress) |
| dcrmb | Descriptive cataloging of rare materials (Books). (Washington, DC: Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress) |

| | |
|----------|---|
| din1505 | Titelangaben von Dokumenten (Berlin: Beuth) |
| DKR | Katalogiseringsregler for danske biblioteker og bibliografier. (Ballerup: Bibliotekscentralen) |
| dmbssb | Dokumentation av materialets behandling i SB 1700-1829 (Stockholm: Kungl. Biblioteket) |
| enol | Ekspertiza i nauchno-tekhnicheskaia obrabotka lichnykh arkhivnykh fondov: metodicheskie rekomendatsii (Moskva: Gosudarstvennaia biblioteka SSSR im. V. I. Lenin) |
| estc | Eighteenth century short title catalogue, the cataloguing rules (London: The British Library) |
| fobidrtb | Federatie van Organisaties op het Gebied van het Bibliotheek-Informatie-en Dokumentatiewezen (FOBID) Regels voor de titelbeschrijving (Den Haag: Nederlands Bibliotheek en Lektuur Centrum) |
| gihc | Betz, Elisabeth W. Graphic materials. (Washington: Library of Congress) |
| hmstcn | Handleiding voor de medewerkers aan de STCN [Short title catalogue of the Netherlands] |
| KRS | Katalogiseringsregler för svenska bibliotek. 2nd ed. (Stockholm : SAB:s kommitté för katalogisering och klassifikation) |
| mmlcc | Manual of map library classification and cataloguing (London: Ministry of Defence) |
| ncafnor | Normes de catalogage publiées par l'Association française de normalisation (Paris: AFNOR) |
| NCRT | Nippon cataloguing rules. (Tokyo: Japan Library Association) |
| ncs | Norme per il catalogo degli stampati (Città del Vaticano: Biblioteca apostolica vaticana) |
| ohcm | Matters, Marion E. Oral history cataloging manual (Chicago: Society of American Archivists) |
| pi | Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge der preussischen Bibliotheken (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrasowitz) |
| PPIAK | Verona, Eva. Pravilnik i priruènik za izradbu abecednih kataloga. (Zagreb: Hrvatsko bibliotekarsko društvo) |
| psbo | Rules of Composition of Bibliographic Description. (Moscow : Interregional Commission on Cataloguing) |
| rad | Rules for archival description (Ottawa: Bureau of Canadian Archivists) |
| RAK | Regeln für die Alphabetische Katalogisierung (RAK). (Wiesbaden: Reichert) |
| RAK-WB | Regeln für die Alphabetische Katalogisierung an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken (RAK-WB). (Berlin: Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut) |
| rakddb | Ansetzungsform gemaess der RAK – Anwendung Der Deutschen Bibliothek |

| | |
|-------|---|
| RCAA2 | Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines. — 2e éd. (Montréal: ASTED) |
| rdc | Reglas de catalogación (Madrid: Dirección General del Libro, Archivos y Bibliotecas) |
| RICA | Regole italiane di catalogazione per autore (Roma: Istituto centrale per il catalogo unico delle biblioteche italiane e per le informazioni bibliografiche) |
| rna | <u>Regeln zur Erschließung von Nachlässen und Autographen (RNA)</u> |
| RPC | Regras Portuguesas de Catalogação |
| rpk | Rossiiskie pravila katalogizatsii (Moskva: Rossiiskaiâ Gosudarstvennaâ Biblioteka) |
| vd16 | Formalerschliessung nach dem Verzeichnis der Drucke des 16. Jahrhunderts (VD 16) |
| vd17 | Formalerschliessung nach dem Verzeichnis der Drucke des 17. Jahrhunderts (VD 16) |

Formats List

Unless the code is followed by a year of publication or edition statement the latest edition is meant. Maintaining agencies are in parentheses ().

| | |
|--------------|---|
| annamarc | ANNAMARC. (Rome: Istituto Centrale per il Catalogo Unico delle Biblioteche Italiano e per le Informazioni Bibliografiche) Obsolete. |
| ausmarc | AUSMARC Bibliographic Format. (Canberra: National Library of Australia) |
| bibsysm | BIBSYS-MARC (Trondheim : BIBSYS) |
| calco | Formato CALCO: Monografias e Publicações Seriadas. (Brasília: Ministério da Educação e Cultura) |
| canmarc | Canadian MARC Communication Format: Bibliographic Data. (Ottawa: Canadian MARC Office) |
| catmarc/1987 | Manual del CATMARC. (Barcelona: Institut Català de Bibliografia) |
| catmarc | Manual del CATMARC. (Barcelona: Generalitat de Catalunya Departament de Cultura) |
| ccf | CCF: the common communication format. (Paris: Unesco) |
| cnmarc | Zhong guo ji du mu lu ke shi shi yong shou ze = China MARC format manual (Beijing: Hua yi chu ban she) |
| comarc | COMARC/B format. – (Maribor : IZUM) |
| danmarc | DanMARC: edb-format til lagring og udveksling af bibliografiske data i maskinl'sbar form (Ballerup: Bibliotekscentralens Forlag) |
| finmarc | FINMARC-yhtenäisformaatin sovellusohje (Helsinki: Helsingin yliopiston kirjasto, Tieteellisten kirjastojen atk-uksikkö) |
| ibermarc | IBERMARC: Formato Para Monografías. (Madrid: Comisaría Nacional de Bibliotecas) |

| | |
|----------|---|
| indimarc | Indian MARC (Calcutta: Bureau of Indian Standards) |
| indomarc | Format MARC Indonesia (INDOMARC) untuk buku (Jakarta: Perpustakaan Nasional R.I.) |
| intermrc | INTERMARC (M): Format Bibliographique d'Échange Pour les Monographies: Manuel. (Paris: "Groupe INTERMARC") |
| jpnmarc | Japan/MARC Manyuaru = Japan/MARC Manual. (Tokyo: Kokuritsu Kokkai Toshokan) |
| kormarc | Han`guk munhon chadonghwa mongnokpop (Hancamok) = Korean machine readable cataloging (KOR MARC) (Seoul: Kungnip Chungang Tosogwan) |
| librism | LibrisMARC (Stockholm: Kunglige biblioteket) |
| local | Locally defined format |
| mab | Maschinelles Austauschformat für Bibliotheken (Frankfurt am Main: Die Deutsche Bibliothek) |
| malmarc | MALMARC (Penang: Universiti Sains Malaysia) |
| marc21 | MARC 21 format for bibliographic data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service) |
| marca | MARC 21 format for authority data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service) |
| marcc | MARC 21 format for classification data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service) |
| march | MARC 21 format for holdings data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service) |
| marci | MARC 21 format for community information (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service) |
| marcal | Manual abreviado para codificación en formato MARCAL (libros) (México: Consejo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnología) |
| marcsui | Manuel USMARC: version suisse ([Berne]: Bibliothèque suisse) |
| mekof | Kommunikativnyi format dlâ obmena bibliograficheskimi dannymi na magnetnoi lente (Moskva: Izdatel'stvo Standartov) |
| normarc | NORMARC: veiledning i MARC-katalogisering og kort oversikt over arbeidsrutiner (Oslo: Universitetsbiblioteket i Oslo) |
| pica | PICA+ format (s'Gravenhage: Pica-Bureau) |
| pulmarc | Zhong wen ji du bian mu ke shi = PUL MARC format (Bei jing: Bei jing da xue tu shu guan zi dong hua yan jiu shi) |
| rusmarc | Rossiyskiy Kommunikativnyi Format Predstavleniia Bibliograficheskikh Zapisei v Mashinochitaemoi Forme (Rossiyskaia versiia UNIMARC; Knigi i Serial'nye Izdaniia). (Ministerstvo Kultury Rossiyskoy Federatsii. Rossiyskaia Bibliotchnaia Assotsiatsiia) |

| | |
|----------|--|
| samarc | SAMARC Manual. (Pretoria: State Library) |
| swemarc | SWEMARC: the Swedish National Bibliography in machine-readable form: format specifications (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket) |
| swemarca | SweMARC – auktoritetsformatet (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket) |
| swemarck | SweMARC – klassifikationsformatet (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket) |
| swemarcs | SweMARC – beståndsformatet (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket) |
| trcmarc | TRC MARC jinmei tenkyoroko (Tôkyô: Toshokan Ryûtsû Sentâ) |
| ukmarc | UKMARC Manual. (Wetherby: British Library) |
| unimarc | UNIMARC Manual. (Munich : Saur) |
| unimch | Chinese MARC Format. (Taipei: National Central Library) |
| unimci | Priručnik za UNIMARC. (Zagreb: Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica) |
| unimcz | UNIMARC manuál. (Prague: Národní knihovna České republiky) |
| unimes | UNIMARC. [Spanish implementation] |
| unimfr | Manuel de l'UNIMARC. Version française. (Munich: Saur) |
| unimgw | UNIMARC. [German implementation] |
| unimit | UNIMARC [Italian implementation] |
| unimrur | Rukovodstvo po UNIMARC = UNIMARC Manual. (Moscow: Gosudarstvennaia Publichnaia Nauchno-Tekhnicheskaia Biblioteka Rossiia) |
| unimrus | see rusmarc |
| unimsi | UNIMARC. [Slovenian implementation] |
| usmarc | USMARC Bibliographic Format. (Washington: Library of Congress) |

APPENDIX I: TABLE OF VALUES

I.1 Introduction

This appendix consists of a checklist of field, indicator and subfield values. For further details see the body of the text.

I.2 Characteristics of the List

Field column. This gives all field values.

Repeat column. This states whether a field is repeatable (R) or not repeatable (NR). Mandatory fields are labelled [M]. Obsolete fields and subfields are labelled [Obs.].

Indicator columns. These give the range of values for the first and second indicators.

Subfield columns. These give first the not repeatable (NR) then the repeatable (R) subfields. Mandatory subfields are labelled [M].

Both the repeatable and not repeatable subfields are in alphabetical order. A break in the sequence is shown by a comma. A range is shown by the first subfield, a hyphen, then the last subfield in the range, e.g. bc,h-k,mn covers the values b, c, h, i, j, k, m, n

For fields and subfields with fixed length data elements, the number of character positions is given in parentheses, e.g. b(13) means that subfield \$b has thirteen character positions.

I.3 Omissions

Subfields \$6 and \$7 may be used in all fields and so are omitted from the table. For details, see Section 3.10: Treatment of Different Scripts.

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|------|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 001 | NR[M] | None | None | None | None |
| 003 | NR | None | None | None | None |
| 005 | NR | None | None | None (16) | None |
| 010 | R | # | # | ad | bz |
| 011 | R | #,0-1 | # | abf | dgyz |
| 012 | R | # | # | a,2,5[M] | |
| 013 | R | # | # | a,b,d | z |
| 014 | R | # | # | a,2 | z |
| 015 | R | # | # | a,b,d | z |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|---|-----------|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 016 | R | # | # | a,b | z |
| 017 | R | 7, 8 | 0-2 | a,b,d, 2 | z |
| 020 | R | # | # | a,b | z |
| 021 | R | # | # | a,b | z |
| 022 | R | # | # | a,b | z |
| 035 | R | # | # | a | z |
| 036 | R | # | # | a(2),b(2),c(2),d,e,g, m(3),n,o,p,r,2 | f,q,t,u,z |
| 040 | R | # | # | a | z |
| 071 | R | 0-6 | 0-1 | a,b,c,d,z | |
| 072 | R | # | 0-2 | a,b,c,d | z |
| 073 | R | # | 0-2 | a,b,c,d | z |

| | | | | | |
|-----|-------------------|-----|---|--|-----------------|
| 100 | NR[M] | # | # | a(36) | |
| 101 | NR[M] | 0-2 | # | g (3) | a-f,h-j(3 each) |
| 102 | NR | # | # | | a,b,c,2 |
| 105 | NR | # | # | a(13) | |
| 106 | NR | # | # | a(1) | |
| 110 | NR | # | # | a(11) | |
| 111 | <i>[Obsolete]</i> | | | | |
| 115 | R | # | # | a(20),b(15) | |
| 116 | R | # | # | a(17) | |
| 117 | R | # | # | a(9) | |
| 120 | NR[M] | # | # | a(13) | |
| 121 | NR | # | # | a(9),b(8) | |
| 122 | R | 0-2 | # | | a(5-11) |
| 123 | R[M] | 0-4 | # | a(1)[M],d(8),e(8), f(8),g(8),i(8),j(8), k(6),m(6),n(4),o(4), p(3) | b,c,h |
| 124 | NR | # | # | a | b-g |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|--|---|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 125 | NR | # | # | a(2),b(2),c | |
| 126 | NR | # | # | b(3) | a(15) |
| 127 | NR | # | # | a | |
| 128 | R | # | # | d | a(3),b(2)(obs), c(2)(obs), |
| 130 | R | # | # | | a(11) |
| 131 | NR | # | # | | a(2),b(3),c(2),d(2), e(2),f(2),g(2),h(4), i(4),j(2),k(4),l(4) |
| 135 | R | # | # | a (13) | |
| 140 | NR | # | # | a (28) | |
| 141 | R | # | # | a(8),b(8),c(1),d(3), e(6),f(3),5[M] | |
| 145 | R | 0-1 | #,1 | a(1) | b(8),c(8),d(8),e(4), f(4) |

| | | | | | |
|-----|------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|---------------|
| 200 | NR[M] | 0-1 | # | v | a [M],b-i,z,5 |
| 204 | <i>[Obsolete]</i> | | | | |
| 205 | R | # | # | a | b,d,fg |
| 206 | R[M] | #0 | # | a,c-f | B |
| 207 | NR | # | 0-1 | | a,z(7) |
| 208 | NR | # | # | a | D |
| 210 | R | #,0-1 | #,1 | | a-h |
| 211 | NR | # | # | a(8) | |
| 215 | R | # | # | c | Ade |
| 225 | R | 0-2 | # | a | def,hi,v,x,z |
| 230 | R[M] | # | # | a | |
| | [M for electronic resources] | | | | |

| | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|--|
| 300 | R | # | # | a | |
| 301 | R | # | # | a | |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 302 | R | # | # | a | |
| 303 | R | # | # | a | |
| 304 | R | # | # | a | |
| | [M for electronic resources] | | | | |
| 305 | R | # | # | a | |
| 306 | R | # | # | a | |
| 307 | R | # | # | a | |
| 308 | R | # | # | a | |
| 310 | R | # | # | a | |
| 311 | R | # | # | a | |
| 312 | R | # | # | a | |
| 313 | R | # | # | a | |
| 314 | R | # | # | a | |
| 315 | R | # | # | a | |
| 316 | R | # | # | a,5[M] | U |
| 317 | R | # | # | a,5[M] | U |
| 318 | R | # | # | a,5[M] | b-f,h-l,n-p,r,u |
| 320 | R | # | # | a | U |
| 321 | R | #,0-1 | # | abc,u,x,5,6 | |
| 322 | NR | # | # | a | |
| 323 | R | # | # | a | |
| 324 | NR | # | # | a | |
| 325 | R | #,1 | # | a | |
| 326 | R | # | # | ab | |
| 327 | R | #,0,1 | #,1 | | a-i,p,u,z |
| 328 | R | # | #,0,1 | a-e,t | Z |
| 330 | R | # | # | a | |
| 332 | R | # | # | a | |
| 333 | R | # | # | a | |
| 334 | R | # | # | a-d | |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|------|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 336 | R | # | # | a | |
| 337 | R | # | # | a, | U |
| 345 | NR | # | # | | a-d, |

| 4-- embedded fields technique | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|---|-----|--|-----------------|
| 410 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 (numeral one) |
| 411 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 412 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 413 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 421 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 422 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 423 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 424 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 425 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 430 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 431 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 432 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 433 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 434 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 435 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 436 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 437 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 440 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 441 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 442 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 443 | R | # | 0-1 | | 1 |
| 444 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 445 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 446 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 447 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|---|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 448 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 451 | R | # | 0-1 | | 1 |
| 452 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 453 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 454 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 455 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 456 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 456 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 461 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 462 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 463 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 464 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 470 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 481 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 482 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |
| 488 | R | # | 0,1 | | 1 |

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 4-- standard subfields technique | | | | | |
| As above | As above | As above | As above | a,c-e,p,s-v,x-z,0,5 | f-i,l,n,o,s,t,3 |

| | | | | | |
|-----|---|-----|-----|-----------------|------------------|
| 500 | R | 0,1 | 0,1 | a,k,m,q,uvw,2,3 | b,h-j,l,n,rs,xyz |
| 501 | R | 0-2 | # | a,e,k,m,u,w,2,3 | b,j,rs,xyz |
| 503 | R | 0,1 | # | ab,e-i,k-o | d,j |
| 510 | R | 0,1 | # | a,j,n,z | e,hi |
| 511 | R | 0,1 | # | a | |
| 512 | R | 0,1 | # | a | E |
| 513 | R | 0,1 | # | a | e,hi |
| 514 | R | 0,1 | # | a | E |
| 515 | R | 0,1 | # | a | |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|---|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 516 | R | 0,1 | # | a | E |
| 517 | R | 0,1 | # | a | e |
| 518 | R | 0,1 | # | a | |
| 520 | R | 0,1 | # | a,hij,n,x | E |
| 530 | R | 0,1 | # | ab,j,v | |
| 531 | R | 0,1 | # | ab,v | |
| 532 | R | 0,1 | # | a,z | |
| 540 | R | 0,1 | # | a,hi | E |
| 541 | R | 0,1 | # | a,e,h,i,z | |
| 545 | R | 0,1 | # | a | |
| 560 | R | 0,1 | # | a,5 | E |

| | | | | | |
|-----|-------------------|-------|-------|----------------|----------------|
| 600 | R | # | 0,1 | ab,d,f,g,p,2 | c,j,xyz,3 |
| 601 | R | 0,1 | 0,2 | a,d-h,2 | bc,j,xyz,3 |
| 602 | R | # | # | a,f,2 | j,xyz,3 |
| 604 | R | # | # | | 1 (numeral 1) |
| 605 | R | # | # | a,klm,q,u,w,2 | hij,n,rs,xyz,3 |
| 606 | R | 0,2,# | # | a,2 | j,xyz,3 |
| 607 | R | # | # | a,2 | j,xyz,3 |
| 608 | R | # | # | a,2,5 | j,xyz,3 |
| 610 | R | 0-2 | # | | a |
| 615 | R | # | # | a,2 | m,n,x,3 |
| 616 | R | # | # | a,f,2,3 | c,j,xyz |
| 617 | R | # | # | b,d,ghi,2,3 | a,c,ef,k,mno |
| 620 | R | #,0-5 | #,0-1 | ab,d,ghi,2,3 | c,ef,k,mno |
| 621 | R | #,0-5 | #,0-1 | ab,efghi,2,3,5 | c,d,k,mno,6 |
| 626 | <i>[Obsolete]</i> | | | abc | |
| 660 | R | # | # | a(7) | |
| 661 | R | # | # | a(4) | |
| 670 | R | # | # | b,c,z | e |

| Field | Repeat | Indicators | | Subfields | |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|-----|
| | | 1 st | 2 nd | NR | R |
| 675 | R | # | # | a,v,z,3 | |
| 676 | R | # | # | a,v,z,3 | |
| 680 | R | # | # | a,b,3 | |
| 686 | R | # | # | v,2,3 | abc |

| | | | | | |
|-----|----|-----|-----|---------------|------------|
| 700 | NR | # | 0-1 | ab,d,fg,p,3 | c,4 |
| 701 | R | # | 0-1 | ab,d,fg,p,3 | c,4 |
| 702 | R | # | 0-1 | ab,d,fg,p,3,5 | c,4 |
| 710 | NR | 0-1 | 0-2 | a,defgh,p,3 | bc,4 |
| 711 | R | 0-1 | 0-2 | a,defgh,p,3 | bc,4 |
| 712 | R | 0-1 | 0-2 | a,defgh,p,3,5 | bc,4 |
| 716 | R | # | # | a,f,3 | c |
| 720 | NR | # | # | a,f,3 | 4 |
| 721 | R | # | # | a,f,3 | 4 |
| 722 | R | # | # | a,f,3,5 | 4 |
| 730 | R | 0-2 | # | a | 4 |
| 740 | NR | # | 1-2 | a,e,t,3 | bc,f,i,l,n |
| 741 | R | # | 1-2 | a,e,t,3 | bc,f,i,l,n |
| 742 | R | # | 1-2 | a,e,t,3 | bc,f,i,l,n |

| | | | | | |
|-----|------|---------|-------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 801 | R[M] | # | 0-3 | abc,h,2 | g |
| 802 | NR | # | # | a | |
| 830 | R | # | # | a | |
| 850 | R | # | # | | a |
| 852 | R | #,0-5 | #,0-2 | a,c,d(2or3),e,g,j,k,l, m,n,p,t | b,x,y,2 |
| 856 | R | #,0-4,7 | # | e,h,j-l,n-p,q,r,u,y | a-d,f,g[Obs.],i,m,s, t,v,w,x,z,2 |
| 886 | R | 0-2 | # | a,b,2 | any other |

APPENDIX J: CHARACTER SETS

J.1 Introduction

UNIMARC records may be encoded using either 7-bit or 8-bit character code values. The specifications for identifying and using various character sets are described in the following sections of this appendix; they are in conformance with those contained in ISO 2022. That standard should also be consulted.

UNIMARC records may also be encoded using 16-bit character code values. See J.6 ISO 10646 character set.

J.2 Framework

A matrix for all character codes possible with 7-bits is constructed as illustrated. Bits 7-5 are represented by the columns, and bits 4-1 by the rows. The ISO method of numbering is used, e.g. 7/15 not 7F for DEL.

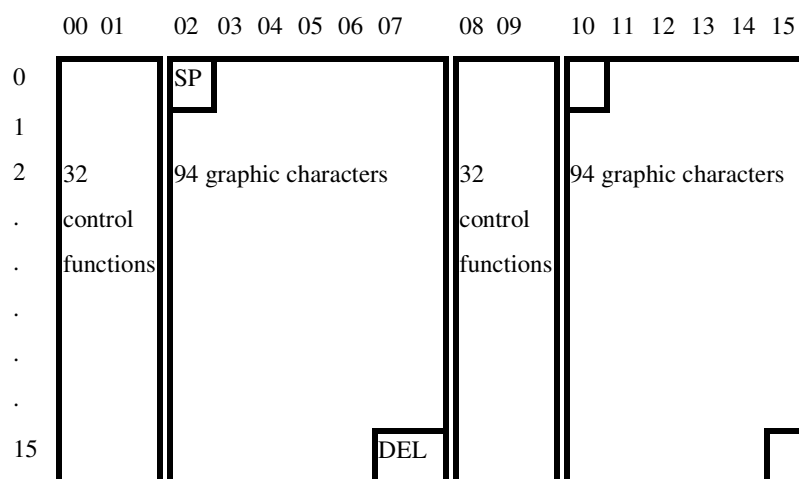
| | | | | | | | | |
|------|---------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|
| | columns | | | | | | | |
| rows | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 0 | <div>32 control functions</div> | | <div>94 graphic characters</div> | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | |
| . | | | | | | | | |
| . | | | | | | | | |
| . | | | | | | | | |
| . | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | <div>DEL</div> | | | | | |

7-bit Code Matrix

A 7-bit code set accommodates 32 control functions, 94 graphic characters, SPACE, and DELETE. The individual characters are commonly referred to by their column and row position in the matrix using the notation 'c/r', thus the SPACE character is 2/0. Code values are assigned according to the following rules. The first two columns of a code matrix are reserved for system control functions; columns 2-7 are for graphic characters. The two corner codes of the graphic columns are reserved for SPACE and DELETE characters.

Data may also be encoded using 8-bits per character, in which case the number of possible codes doubles, hence the code matrix doubles. Bits 8-5 are represented by the column and bits

4-1 by the rows. The 8-bit matrix has four parts which are specified for control functions and graphic characters as illustrated.



8-bit Code Matrix

The additional bit is the left-most bit and it is 0 for a left-hand part and 1 for a right-hand part. Graphic sets may be represented by either one 7 or 8 bit combination per character or, where there are a large number of characters in the set, by multiple 7 or 8 bit combinations per character.

Use of code sets require first the designation of the sets, then the invocation of a designated set as the working set. For both 7-bit and 8-bit codes, two sets of control functions and four graphic character sets may be designated at any given time. These designated sets are called the C0, C1 and G0, G1, G2, G3 sets. In 7-bits, two *Cn* sets and one *Gn* set may have invoked, working set status at a given time. In 8-bits, two *Cn* and two *Gn* sets may be in an invoked, working set, status at a given time. The following appendix sections specify the designation and invocation of code sets in UNIMARC.

J.3 Control Function Sets

The C0 and C1 control function sets are fixed for UNIMARC. Thus they do not need to be designated and invoked in the record.

The C0 set is the set of 32 control functions defined in ISO 646. This set contains the basic transmission controls and the subfield delimiter, field terminator, and record terminator.

The C1 set is the set of control functions defined in ISO 6630, Bibliographic Control Characters. Only the NSB 'Non-sorting character(s) beginning', NSE 'Non-sorting character(s) ending', PLD 'Partial Line Down' and PLU 'Partial Line Up' functions from that set are currently allowed in UNIMARC.

In the 7-bit and 8-bit environment, the C0 set occupies columns 0 and 1 at all times. In a 7-bit record, the characters from the C1 set are represented by the two character 'ESC F' where ESC is the 1/11 control function in the C0 set and F is a bit combination from columns 4 and 5. The F bit combinations associated with each of the functions defined in ISO 6630 were assigned by ISO at the time of registration of the set and are identified for ISO 6630 in section J.7 of this appendix. Note especially that in the 7-bit environment the 'ESC F' substitutes for the code table bit combinations of the ISO 6630 functions.

In an 8-bit record, the C1 set resides in columns 08 and 09, and the functions are represented by their code table bit combinations.

J.4 Graphic Character Sets

The G0 graphic set for UNIMARC is always ISO 646. All of the characters in the RECORD LABEL, the DIRECTORY, and the coded fields/subfields are from ISO 646, as are the field indicators and subfield codes. Thus a record always begins with ISO 646 as the working set. Up to three additional graphic sets may be designated as G1, G2 and G3 in field 100, subfield \$a, character positions 28-29, Character Sets, and positions 30-33, Additional Character Sets. If no more than four sets are used in a record, the field 100 information is all that is required to designate the graphic sets. The0y can then be invoked as needed. Note that since the RECORD LABEL, DIRECTORY, and coded data fields are all coded using ISO 646, the G1, G2, and G3 designations in field 100 can be accessed before any additional graphic sets are encountered in the record.

J.4.1 7-Bit Environment

In a 7-bit character record the four designated sets are invoked using the following ISO 2022 locking shifts:

| Acronym | Full Name | Bit Combination(s) | Set Invoked |
|---------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| SI | Shift in | 0/15 | G0 |
| SO | Shift out | 0/14 | G1 |
| LS2 | Locking shift two | ESC 6/14 | G2 |
| LS3 | Locking shift three | ESC 6/15 | G3 |

These shifts are locking, so the set invoked remains the working set until another set is specified by a shift function.

Since the record begins with the G0 (ISO 646) set as the working set, the SI shift to the G0 set will only be used when there has been an invocation of one of the other *Gn* sets as the working set. The G0 (ISO 646) set must be the working set at the end of each subfield and field since the succeeding subfield codes or directory processing require ISO 646 as the working set. This shift back to the G0 (ISO 646) set should take place before the subfield delimiter or end of field mark.

In 7-bits, a non-locking invocation of single characters from the designated G2 or G3 set is also possible. The following non-locking shifts are defined by ISO 2022:

| Acronym | Full Name | Bit Combinations | Set from which Single Character Invoked |
|---------|-----------|------------------|---|
|---------|-----------|------------------|---|

| | | | |
|-----|------------------|----------|----|
| SS2 | Single shift two | ESC 4/14 | G2 |
|-----|------------------|----------|----|

| | | | |
|-----|--------------------|----------|----|
| SS3 | Single shift three | ESC 4/15 | G3 |
|-----|--------------------|----------|----|

There is no need to reinvoke the working set after the single shifts as it is automatically reinstated after one character from the G2 or G3 set.

Examples (for clarity, bit combinations are in bold)

EX 1

SO SI

500 11\$aEdda **S0/14**æ**S0/15**mundar.\$mEnglish.\$1Selections.

In this record, the ISO 5426 Extended Latin set has been designated the G1 set and the single character 'æ' is accessed via an invocation of that set.

EX 2

SS2

500 11\$aEdda **S1/11 4/14**æmundar.\$mEnglish.\$1Selections.

If in EX 1 ISO 5426 had been designated a G2 set, the single shift function could be used to invoke the 'æ'.

EX 3

LS2 SI LS2 SI

210 ##\$a**1/11 6/14**Москва**0/15**\$c"1/11 6/14Правда**0/15**"\$d1968

In this record, ISO 5426 has been designated the G1 set and the basic Cyrillic set has been designated the G2 set. This field contains a Cyrillic name. Shifts into the G2 set must be made at the beginning of each subfield with shifts back into the G0 set at the end of each.

J.4.2 8-bit Environment

In an 8-bit code record the four designated sets are invoked using the following ISO 2022 locking shifts:

| Acronym | Full Name | Bit Combinations | Set Invoked/ Into Columns |
|---------|---------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| LS0 | Locking shift zero | 00/15 | G0/02-07 |
| LS1 | Locking shift one | 00/14 | G1/02-07 |
| LS1R | Locking shift one right | ESC 7/14 | G1/10-15 |
| LS2 | Locking shift two | ESC 6/14 | G2/02-07 |
| LS2R | Locking shift two right | ESC 7/13 | G2/10-15 |
| LS3 | Locking shift three | ESC 6/15 | G3/02-07 |
| LS3R | Locking shift three right | ESC 7/12 | G3/10-15 |

These shifts are locking, so the set invoked remains the working set until another set is invoked by a shift function.

Since the record begins with the G0 set (ISO 646) in columns 02-07 and the G1 set in columns 10-15, the shift functions to those sets will only be used when there has been an invocation of the G2 or G3 set into those columns. The G0 set must be the working set in columns 02-07 at the end of each subfield and each field. The shift back to the G0 set when it has been temporarily displaced should occur before the subfield delimiter or end of field mark. The G1 set designated in field 100 is considered the default set for columns 10-15; thus it should always be restored at the end of a field that has shifted another set into those columns.

In 8-bits, non-locking single shifts are not used in UNIMARC.

Examples (for clarity, bit combinations are in bold)

EX 1: 500 11\$aEdda Sæmundar.\$mEnglish.\$1 Selections.

The ISO 5426 Extended Latin set has been designated the G1 set. No shift is required to use it in the 8-bit environment.

EX 2: LS2R LS1R

500 11\$aEdda **S1/11 7/13æ1/11 7/14**mundar.\$mEnglish.\$1Selections.

The basic Cyrillic set has been designated the G1 set and the ISO 5426 Extended Latin set has been designated the G2 set. The G2 set is invoked to columns 10-15 using the LS2R, displacing the default G1 set. Following the use of the G2 set, the G1 set is reinvoked into columns 10-15.

EX 3: LS2R LS1R

210 #**\$a1/11 7/13Москва\$c"Правда1/11 7/14"**\$d1968

ISO 5426 is the default G1 set and the basic Cyrillic set has been designated the G2 set. The G2 set is invoked into columns 10-15 when needed. Since the subfield code comes from the G0 set and it is still the column 02-07 working set at the end of the \$a subfield, no shift need take place before the '\$c'. The default G1 set is restored to columns 10-15, however, at the end of the use of the Cyrillic set in this field.

EX 4: 305 ##\$aВпервые издано в С.петербурге на нем. яз. в 1770-1784 в 4-х

LS2R LS1R

частях под заглавием "Reise durch Ru1/11 7/1381/11 7/14land zur Untersuchung der drey Natur-Reiche". Ч.4 на рус. яз. не переведена

Basic Latin and Basic Cyrillic are the designated G0 and G1sets, and Extended Latin the G2 set (100 \$a/26-33 = 010203##). The Basic Latin and Cyrillic characters can be accessed without change to the settings. The German 'ss' character (ß) is found in the Extended Latin set, which is invoked into columns 10-15 byLS2R (ESC 7/13), temporarily displacing Basic Cyrillic. This is then restored by LS1R(ESC 7/14).

J.5 Additional Graphic sets

In some instances more than the four graphic sets designated in field 100 may be required in a UNIMARC record. Additional sets may be substituted for the sets designated in field 100 through an escape of the form 'ESC I F'. 'I', which may be one or more characters in length, indicates the *Gn* designation of the set according to the following values:

| Single Byte per Character | Multiple Bytes per Character | <i>Gn</i> Designation |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 2/8 or 2/12 | 2/4 2/8 or 2/4 2/12 | G0 |
| 2/9 or 2/13 | 2/4 2/9 or 2/4 2/13 | G1 |
| 2/10 or 2/14 | 2/4 2/10 or 2/4 2/14 | G2 |
| 2/11 or 2/15 | 2/4 2/11 or 2/4 2/15 | G3 |

F', the Final character, indicates the graphic set being designated. It is a bit combination from columns 4 to 7 that is assigned by ISO when the set is registered. The Final characters for the sets approved for use with UNIMARC are listed below. Final characters for other approved sets have not yet been assigned.

| F | Graphic Set |
|------|--|
| 4/0 | ISO 646 (IRV), Basic Latin set |
| 5/0 | ISO 5426-1980, Extended Latin set |
| 4/14 | ISO Registration #37, Basic Cyrillic |
| 5/1 | ISO 5427-1984, Extended Cyrillic set |
| 5/3 | ISO 5428-1980, Greek set |
| 4/13 | ISO 6438-1983, African coded character set |

If a fifth, etc., graphic set is needed in a UNIMARC field, it must first be designated through the escape sequence, then it may be invoked with shift functions as specified in Section J.4. When an additional set has been designated and invoked in a field, before the end of the field the original set specified in field 100 should be redesignated for the *Gn* via an escape sequence. When a field is exited, the G0, G1, G2, G3 designated sets must be those specified in field 100.

Example (for clarity, bit combinations are alternately bold and italic)

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| | Designation of | <i>LSIR</i> |
| | Greek set as G1 | |
| 454 #0\$1700#0\$aXenophon.\$150010\$a1 | 1/11 2/9 5/3 1/11 7/14 | <i>Άπομνημονευματα</i> |
| | 1/11 2/9 5/0 1/11 7/14 | |
| | Redesignation of | <i>LSIR</i> |
| | Extended Latin set | |
| | as G1 set | |

The record is for a Bulgarian translation of a Greek work and the language of cataloguing is English. The agency has designated in field 100 the following sets:

| | |
|----|--------------------------------------|
| G0 | ISO 646, Basic Latin |
| G1 | ISO 5426, Extended Latin |
| G2 | ISO Registration #37, Basic Cyrillic |
| G3 | ISO DIS 5427, Extended Cyrillic |

When the Greek set is needed in the 454 field to give the original title in Greek, it is designated as the G1 set via the sequence ESC 2/9 5/3 and then invoked into columns 10-15 via the sequence ESC 7/14. Before exiting the field, the Extended Latin set is restored to the G1 designation via ESC 2/9 5/0 and it is reinvoked into columns 10-15 via ESC 7/14.

J.6 ISO 10646 character set

ISO 10646, being a 16-bit character set, contains all necessary characters. This will be used for the C0, C1 and all G sets.

J.7 Character set tables

Sections J.8 through J.10 contain the code tables for some of the character sets specified for use in UNIMARC records. These character sets are reproduced with the permission of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). Copies of the complete standards can be obtained from the ISO Central Secretariat, Case postale 56, 1211 GENEVA 20, Switzerland, and from any ISO Member Body.

J.8 Basic Control Set – ISO 646 (IRV)

This control set is the C0 set for UNIMARC records.

The following positions are the only ones to be used in UNIMARC

| Position | Acronym | Name |
|----------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 0/14 | SO | Shift Out |
| 0/15 | SI | Shift In |
| 1/11 | ESC | Escape |
| 1/13 | IS3 | Information Separator Three |
| 1/14 | IS2 | Information Separator Two |
| 1/15 | IS1 | Information Separator One |

In this Manual, the symbols for the Information Separators are :

| | | |
|-----|----|---|
| IS1 | \$ | (Subfield delimiter) |
| IS2 | @ | (Field separator) |
| | | In most examples the end of field mark is not shown |
| IS3 | % | (Record terminator) |

J.9 Bibliographic Control Set – ISO 6630: 1986

This control set contains control functions required for filing, sorting, permuting, etc. It is the C1 set for UNIMARC records.

The following positions are the only ones to be used in UNIMARC:

| Position | Acronym | Name |
|----------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| 08/08 | NSB | Non-Sorting Character(s), Beginning |
| 08/09 | NSE | Non-Sorting Character(s), End |
| 08/11 | PLD | Partial Line Down |
| 08/12 | PLU | Partial Line Up |

In this Manual, the symbols for the non-sorting characters are:

NSB ≠NSB≠

NSE ≠NSE≠

PLU is used both to produce superscript text and to restore to the previous position subscript text created by the use of PLD. The reverse is also true, as is shown in the following example:

2³+3² is expressed as 2≠PLU≠3≠PLD≠+3≠PLU≠2≠PLD≠

J.10 Basic Latin Set – ISO 646 (IRV)

This graphic set is specified in ISO 646. It is the default G0 set for UNIMARC records.

| Position | Name | Position | Name |
|----------|--------------------|----------|----------------------|
| 2/0 | Space, Blank | 5/0 | Capital Letter P |
| 2/1 | Exclamation Mark | 5/1 | Capital Letter Q |
| 2/2 | Quotation Mark | 5/2 | Capital Letter R |
| 2/3 | Number Sign | 5/3 | Capital Letter S |
| 2/4 | Dollar Sign | 5/4 | Capital Letter T |
| 2/5 | Per Cent Sign | 5/5 | Capital Letter U |
| 2/6 | Ampersand | 5/6 | Capital Letter V |
| 2/7 | Apostrophe | 5/7 | Capital Letter W |
| 2/8 | Left Parenthesis | 5/8 | Capital Letter X |
| 2/9 | Right Parenthesis | 5/9 | Capital Letter Y |
| 2/10 | Asterisk | 5/10 | Capital Letter Z |
| 2/11 | Plus Sign | 5/11 | Left Square Bracket |
| 2/12 | Comma | 5/12 | Reverse Solidus |
| 2/13 | Hyphen, Minus Sign | 5/13 | Right Square Bracket |
| 2/14 | Full Stop, Period | 5/14 | Circumflex Accent |
| 2/15 | Solidus | 5/15 | Underline |
| 3/0 | Digit Zero | 6/0 | Grave Accent |
| 3/1 | Digit One | 6/1 | Small Letter a |
| 3/2 | Digit Two | 6/2 | Small Letter b |
| 3/3 | Digit Three | 6/3 | Small Letter c |
| 3/4 | Digit Four | 6/4 | Small Letter d |
| 3/5 | Digit Five | 6/5 | Small Letter e |
| 3/6 | Digit Six | 6/6 | Small Letter f |
| 3/7 | Digit Seven | 6/7 | Small Letter g |
| 3/8 | Digit Eight | 6/8 | Small Letter h |

| Position | Name | Position | Name |
|----------|-------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 3/9 | Digit Nine | 6/9 | Small Letter i |
| 3/10 | Colon | 6/10 | Small Letter j |
| 3/11 | Semi-colon | 6/11 | Small Letter k |
| 3/12 | Less than Sign | 6/12 | Small Letter l |
| 3/13 | Equals Sign | 6/13 | Small Letter m |
| 3/14 | Greater than Sign | 6/14 | Small Letter n |
| 3/15 | Question Mark | 6/15 | Small Letter o |
| 4/0 | Commercial At | 7/0 | Small Letter p |
| 4/1 | Capital Letter A | 7/1 | Small Letter q |
| 4/2 | Capital Letter B | 7/2 | Small Letter r |
| 4/3 | Capital Letter C | 7/3 | Small Letter s |
| 4/4 | Capital Letter D | 7/4 | Small Letter t |
| 4/5 | Capital Letter E | 7/5 | Small Letter u |
| 4/6 | Capital Letter F | 7/6 | Small Letter v |
| 4/7 | Capital Letter G | 7/7 | Small Letter w |
| 4/8 | Capital Letter H | 7/8 | Small Letter x |
| 4/9 | Capital Letter I | 7/9 | Small Letter y |
| 4/10 | Capital Letter J | 7/10 | Small Letter z |
| 4/11 | Capital Letter K | 7/11 | Left Curly Bracket |
| 4/12 | Capital Letter L | 7/12 | Vertical Line |
| 4/13 | Capital Letter M | 7/13 | Right Curly Bracket |
| 4/14 | Capital Letter N | 7/14 | Tilde |
| 4/15 | Capital Letter O | | |

N.B. If this set is used in combination with ISO 5426 positions 5/15, 6/0 and 7/14 in ISO 646 should not be used. Positions 5/8, 4/1 and 4/5 in ISO 5426 should be used instead.

APPENDIX K: DOCUMENTATION TO ACCOMPANY EXCHANGE RECORDS

Purpose

As well as containing the basic exchange information about the physical medium (tape, diskette, etc.), the documentation should enable the receiving agency to tell, without a detailed examination of the records, which UNIMARC options have been chosen. The following is an indication of the areas which could be helpfully included.

Basic information

Numbers of records.

Record label specifications.

For tape exchange, options under ISO 1001 that have been followed for tape structure.

Nature of documents catalogued

A description of their nature would state the type of materials, e.g. monographs only, all materials except computer files.

Fill character

Indicate where the fill character has been consistently used instead of a value.

Mandatory fields

Indicate if any mandatory fields are omitted or contain less than full information (see also Section 3, 3.5).

Record label

Character position 5: Record Status Code. Indicate the range of values.

Character position 8: Hierarchical Level Code. Indicate whether the tape links records hierarchically. (See also 4-- below)

Character positions 17 & 18: Encoding Level and Descriptive Cataloguing Form codes. Indicate the range of values.

0-- Identification Block

Give information on any of the possible fields not used at all.

014 Article Identifier

Name the code used.

100 General Processing Data

Character positions 22-24: Language of Cataloguing. Indicate languages used.

Character positions 25, 26-33: Transliteration Code and Character Sets codes. Indicate transliterations and character sets used.

102 Country of Publication or Production

If \$b Locality of Publication has been used, give information on the code list.

2-- Descriptive Information Block

In cases where the full range of subfields cannot be used (for example, when a record is converted from another format), give details.

3-- Notes Block

Indicate the extent to which field 300 General Notes has been used instead of any of the more specific fields in this block.

4-- Linking Entry Block

Indicate whether this block has been used at all. If so, indicate which of the two methods has been used and give the sort of detail which has been included. The guidelines for contents of the block should be examined as an indication of the possible options.

5-- Related Title Block

No details needed.

6-- Subject Analysis Block

Indicate which of the lists in Appendix G have been used for subject data.

7-- Responsibility Block

Indicate the policy over the inclusion or exclusion of punctuation at subfield boundaries. If punctuation is not included, give examples of typical fields.

If \$3 Authority Record Number has been used, give information on the name authority list.

Some information on cataloguing practice could be helpfully included, such as an indication of whether the cataloguing code recognises the practice of main entry. But a full description of the characteristics of the code, e.g. a categorisation of which types of corporate bodies are entered under place or jurisdiction, is not necessary.

801\$g Cataloguing Code

Indicate which cataloguing code(s) listed in Appendix H have been used.

9-- Local fields

Indicate whether local fields (9--, -9- or --9) have been used and give details.

Local practice

Give details of cases where the *UNIMARC Manual* standard has not been followed.

APPENDIX L: COMPLETE EXAMPLES

Introduction

In this Manual, examples of individual data elements are provided with each field. This Appendix provides complete examples illustrating, in particular, parallel data elements and links between records, since these features cannot easily be illustrated under a single field. These examples reflect the different origins of the records and are in no way intended to be prescriptive with respect to the form of the data.

Examples

EX 1

| RECORD LABEL: | Character Pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|---------------|--|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| Values | | p | a | m | 0 | # | # |
| 001 | 83.041470.3 | | | | | | |
| 010 | ## \$a3-515-02355-0\$bkart.\$dDM46.0 0 | | | | | | |
| 020 | ## \$aDE\$b88,A22,0260 | | | | | | |
| 020 | ## \$aDE\$b76,N46,0054 | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a19801020d1976####lly0gery01#####ba | | | | | | |
| 101 | 0# \$aeng | | | | | | |
| 102 | ## \$aDE | | | | | | |
| 105 | ## \$a 0ly | | | | | | |
| 200 | 1# \$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠phonology of Old High German\$ee. Veroff. in Verbindung mit d. Forschungsinst. fur Dt. Sprache, Dt. Sprachatlas, Marburg, Lahn\$fby Joseph B. Voyle\$g(Skizzen u. Sonderzeichen: Hans-Jurgen Jenkel. Kt.: Margot Schrey) | | | | | | |
| 210 | ## \$aWiesbaden\$eSteiner\$d1976 | | | | | | |
| 215 | ## \$aXII, 323S.\$c1 Kt.\$d24cm | | | | | | |
| 225 | 0# \$aZeitschrift fur Dialektologie und Linguistik / Beihefte | | | | | | |
| 300 | ## \$aLiteraturverz. S. 321-323 | | | | | | |
| 410 | #1 \$154011\$aZeitschrift fur Dialektologie und Linguistik / Beihefte | | | | | | |
| 606 | ## \$aPhonologie | | | | | | |
| 606 | ## \$aAlthochdeutsche\$xo. a. Sprache | | | | | | |
| 700 | #1 \$aVoyle,\$bJoseph B. | | | | | | |
| 801 | #3 \$aDE\$bGyFmDB | | | | | | |

In this example the fill character is used in fields 100 and 105 since the source format does not provide the data. The title of the series containing the work is entered in an embedded field within the 410 SERIES linking entry field.

EX 2:

| RECORD LABEL: | Character Pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|---------------|--|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| Values | | n | a | m | 0 | # | # |
| 001 | 82-119342 | | | | | | |
| 010 | ## \$a0-96905-830-6\$bpbk | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a19820526d1981####lly0engy01#####ba | | | | | | |

101 0# \$aeng\$aFRE
 102 ## \$aCA
 200 1# \$aUnion list of music periodicals in Canadian libraries\$d= Inventaire des publications en série sur la musique dans les bibliothèques canadiennes
 205 ## \$a2nd ed.\$fedited by Larry C. Lewis\$d= 2e éd.\$frédigé par Larry C. Lewis
 210 ## \$aOttawa\$cCanadian Association of Music Libraries\$c= Association canadienne des bibliothèques musicales\$d1981
 215 ## \$a293 columns\$d22 x 36cm
 225 ## \$aPublications\$fCanadian Association of Music Libraries\$f= Association canadienne des bibliothèques musicales\$v2
 300 ## \$aEnglish and French
 305 ## \$aRev. ed. of: Union list of music periodicals in Canadian libraries / compiled by a committee of the Canadian Library Association
 410 1# \$1200#0\$aPublications (Canadian Association of Music Libraries)\$v2
 510 1# \$aInventaire des publications en série sur la musique dans les bibliothèques canadiennes
 606 ## \$aMusic\$xPeriodicals\$xBibliograph y\$xUnion lists
 702 #1 \$aLewis,\$bLarry C.
 712 02 \$aCanadian Association of Music Libraries
 712 02 \$aCanadian Library Association
 801 #0 \$aCA\$bCaOONL\$c19820519
 801 #3 \$aCA\$bCaOONL\$c19820526

Parallel data transcribed from the item occurs in fields 200, 205, 210 and 225. The access point form of the parallel title is entered in field 510. The title of the series containing the record is entered in an embedded field within the 410 SERIES linking entry field.

EX 3

This example consists of the records of two continuing resources (3a, 3b) which merge to form a new continuing resource (3c). In addition the first continuing resource has a supplement (3d).

EX 3a:

| | | | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| RECORD LABEL: | Character Pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
| | Values | n | a | s | 0 | 1 | # |

001 B8132254
 011 ## \$a0261-6726\$d£0.20 per issue
 020 ## \$aGB\$bB8132254
 100 ## \$a19811005b19811982lly0engy0 1#####ba
 101 0# \$aeng
 102 ## \$aGB
 110 ## \$aacaz###0yy0
 200 1# \$aGirl
 207 #1\$aNo. 1 (14th Feb. 1981) -no. 65 (26th Apr. 1982)
 210 ## \$aLondon\$cIPC Magazines\$d1981-1982
 215 ## \$av.\$cchiefly ill.\$d30cm
 326 ## \$aWeekly
 421 ## \$1001B8211156
 447 #1 \$1001B8207648
 447 #1 \$1001B8233867
 530 1# \$aGirl\$b(London. 1981)

676 ## \$a052\$v18
 676 ## \$a052\$v19
 801 #3 \$aGB\$bUk\$19821215

EX 3b

| | | | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| RECORD LABEL: | Character Pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
| | Values | n | a | s | 0 | 1 | # |

001 B8207648
 011 ## \$a0262-1185\$d£0.20 per issue
 020 ## \$aGB\$b8207648
 100 ## \$a19820301b19811982||l0engy01#####ba
 101 0# \$aeng
 102 ## \$aGB
 110 ## \$aacazzsz0yy0
 200 1# \$aDreamer
 207 #1 \$aNo.1 (19th Sept. 1981) -no.35 (17th May 1982)
 210 ## \$aLondon\$ciPC Magazines\$d1981-1982
 215 ## \$av.\$cchiefly ill. (some col.), ports. (some col.)\$d30cm
 326 ## \$aWeekly
 447 #1 \$1001B8132254
 447 #1 \$1001B8238867
 530 #1 \$aDreamer\$b (London)
 676 ## \$a741.5942\$v18
 676 ## \$a741.5942\$v19
 801 #3 \$aGB\$bUk\$c19821216

EX 3c

| | | | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| RECORD LABEL: | Character Pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
| | Values | n | a | s | 0 | 1 | # |

001 B8238867
 011 ## \$a0000-0000\$d£0.22
 020 ## \$aGB\$b8238867
 100 ## \$a19821025a19829999||lyengy0 1#####ba
 101 0# \$aeng
 102 ## \$aGB
 110 ## \$aacax###0yy0
 200 1# \$aGirl & dreamer
 207 #1 \$aNo. 67 (22nd May 1982)-
 210 ## \$aLondon\$ciPC Magazines\$d1982-
 215 ## \$av.\$cill. (some col.), ports. (some col.)\$d30cm
 326 ## \$aWeekly
 436 #1 \$1001B8132254
 436 #1 \$1001B8207648
 532 13 \$aGirl and dreamer
 676 ## \$a052\$v18
 676 ## \$a052\$v19
 801 #3 \$aGB\$bUk\$c19821216

No key title or ISSN has yet been assigned to this record

EX 3d

| | | | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| RECORD LABEL: | Character Pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
| | Values | n | a | s | 0 | 1 | # |

```
001 B8211156
011 ##$a0262-9208$d$2.25
020 ## $aGB$bB8211156
100 ## $a19820402a19819999lly0engy 01#####ba
101 0# $aeng
102 ## $aGB
110 ## $azkaz###0yy0
200 1# $aGirl annual
207 #1 $a1982-
210 ## $aLondon$cIPC Magazines$d1981-
315 ## $ay,$cill. (some col.), ports$d28cm
326 ## $aAnnual
422 #1 $1001B8132254
530 0# $aGirl annual
676 ## $a823.91$v18
676 ## $a082$v19
801 #3 $aGB$bUk$c19821216
```

This is treated as a supplement to the periodical.

EX 4

The following illustrates a complete record as entered on tape. In this example, '\$' stands for the subfield identifier IS1, '@' stands for the field separator control character IS2, and '%' stands for the record separator IS3.

RECORD LABEL

```
00798nas0#22002531##450#
```

DIRECTORY (commas separate tag, length of field and starting position. These (and the spaces) have been added for clarity: they do not appear in the record)

```
001,0009,00000 011,0031,00009 020,0017,00040 100,0041,00057 101,0008,00098
102,0007,00106 110,0016,00113 200,0009,00129 207,0051,00138 210,0037,00189
215,0027,00226 326,0011,00253 421,0054,00264 447,0050,00318 447,0041,00368
530,0025,00409 670,0077,00434 676,0012,00511 801,0021,00523@
```

DATA FIELDS (the tags have been added above the data for clarity: they do not appear in the record)

```
001      011      020
B8132254@###$a0261-6726$d£0.20 per issue@###$aGB$bB8132254@
100      101      102      110
##$a19811005b19811982lly0engy01#####a@0#$aeng@##$aGB@##$aacaz###0yy0@
200      207
1#$aGirl@#1$aNo. 1 (14th Feb. 1981) – no. 65 (26th Apr. 1982)@
210      215      326
##$aLondon$cIPC Magazines$d1981-1982@##$av.$cchiefly ill.$d30cm@##$aWeekly@
```

421

#1\$1001B8211156\$1011##\$a0262-9208\$12001#\$aGirl annual@

447

#1\$1001B8207648\$1011##\$a0262-1185\$12001#\$aDreamer@

447

530

#1\$1001B8233867\$12001#\$aGirl and dreamer@1#\$aGirl\$b(London, 1981)@

670

##\$b0225398\$c*z11030*serials in English*igirls'*z60030*atexts\$e0000167\$ztexts

676

801

##\$a052\$v19@#3\$aGB\$bUk\$c19821216@%

EX 5

In this example, from the *Bibliographie nationale française – Livres*, the fill characters are used in field 105 since the source format does not provide the data. The title of the series containing the work is entered in 410 field according to the standard subfields technique.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 0 | # | # |
| 001 frBN001148436 | | | | | | | |
| 010 ## \$bRel.\$d76,64 F | | | | | | | |
| 020 ## \$aFR\$b08009319 | | | | | | | |
| 021 ## \$aFR\$bD.L. 80-01212 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a19800404d1979####m##y0frey0103####ba | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$afre | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aFR | | | | | | | |
| 105 ## \$aa###zz 00lal | | | | | | | |
| 106 ## \$ar | | | | | | | |
| 200 1# \$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠mains sales\$fJean-Paul Sartre\$gillustrations... de Tibor Csernus | | | | | | | |
| 210 ## \$aParis\$b5, rue Sébastien Bottin, 75007\$cBibliothèque des chefs-d'oeuvre\$a[Paris] | | | | | | | |
| \$cdiffusion Rombaldi\$d1979\$eimpr. en Espagne | | | | | | | |
| 215 ## \$a299 p.-[8] f. de pl. en coul.\$d24 cm | | | | | | | |
| 225 2# \$aPrésence de la littérature | | | | | | | |
| 410 #0 \$3frBN004096788\$tPrésence de la littérature\$x0245-4335\$v3 | | | | | | | |
| 675 ## \$a82\$vÉd. 1967 | | | | | | | |
| 676 ## \$a820 | | | | | | | |
| 700 #1 \$3frBN001331875\$aSartre\$bJean-Paul | | | | | | | |
| 702 #1 \$3frBN00064443X\$aCsernus\$bTibor\$4440 | | | | | | | |
| 801 #3 \$aFR\$bBN\$c20010319\$gAFNOR | | | | | | | |

EX 6

Note that the language code "hrv" used in these examples is a local system code, not an ISO 639-2 code.

BOUND ITEMS (Linking records using the embedded fields technique)

The copy of Georg Werner's work *De admirandis Hungariae aquis hypomnematum* (Wien, 1551) has two bound works: Feliks Petančić's *De itineribus in Turciam libellus* (Wien, 1522) and Franjo Crnko's *Historia Sigethi* (Wien, 1568). Each item was originally published/printed separately and is thus considered a separate bibliographic item that is described in a separate bibliographic record. The link between bibliographic records is established by using linking fields 481 Also Bound in this volume and 482 Bound with. They are used according to Option 1 described in UNIMARC Guideline no. 3.

RECORD 6a

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|--|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | i | a | m | 0 | # | # |
| 001 | 950801013 | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a19950801d1551.....y0hrvy0103....ba | | | | | | |
| 101 | 0# \$alat | | | | | | |
| 102 | ## \$aAT | | | | | | |
| 140 | ## \$aa.....a.....yyyb.1000 | | | | | | |
| 141 | ## \$ab..b1dd\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| 200 | 1# \$aDe admirandis Hungariae aquis hypomnematum\$fGeorgio Wernhero autore | | | | | | |
| 210 | ## \$aViennae Austriae\$cxexcudebat Egidius Aquila\$danno Domini 1551. mense Septembri | | | | | | |
| 215 | ## \$a[5], 20 listova\$scilustr.\$d8o (19 cm) | | | | | | |
| 300 | ## \$aPodaci o izdavanju iz kolofona | | | | | | |
| 316 | ## \$aPrivezano: 1. Petančić, Feliks. De itineribus in Turciam libellus. Viennae Austriae, 1522. 2. Črnko, Franjo. Historia Sigethi. Viennae Austriae, 1568. | | | | | | |
| 316 | ## \$aN2. oštećenom knjigoveškom listu bilješka iz 1672.\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| 318 | ## \$aPregledano\$c19950801\$I0štećene korice, nasl. list i rubovi ostalih listova | | | | | | |
| | \$nRestaurirani uvez i knjižni blok\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| 481 | #0 \$1001950801022\$12000#\$aDe itineribus in Turciam libellus\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| | privez 1 | | | | | | |
| 481 | #0 \$1001 950801023\$1200 0#\$aHistoria Sigethi\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| | privez 2 | | | | | | |
| 620 | ## \$3210705074\$dWien\$aAustrija | | | | | | |
| 686 | ## \$a320-8a\$2NSK | | | | | | |
| 700 | #1 \$3950801021\$aWerner\$bGeorg | | | | | | |
| 702 | 11 \$3930323099\$aAdler\$bAegidius\$4750 | | | | | | |
| 801 | #0 \$aHR\$bNSK, R\$gHR PPIAK | | | | | | |
| 980 | ## \$bC | | | | | | |
| 990 | ## \$aRIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| 990 | ## \$aR 2.632 (st. sig.) | | | | | | |

RECORD 6b

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | i | a | m | 0 | # | # |
| 001 | 950801022 | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a19950801d1522.....y0hrvy0103....ba | | | | | | |
| 101 | 0# \$alat | | | | | | |
| 102 | ## \$aAT | | | | | | |
| 140 | ## \$aa.....a.....yyya.1000 | | | | | | |
| 141 | ## \$ab..b1dd\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | |
| | privez 1 | | | | | | |
| 200 | 1# \$aDe itineribus in Turciam libellus\$fFelice Petantio canellario Segniae autore | | | | | | |

210 ## \$aImprimebat Viennae Austriae\$cIoannes Singrenius chalcographus\$danno sal. 1522.
 pridie callendas Iulii
 215 ## \$a[10] listova\$d8o (19 cm)
 300 ## \$aJed. oblik autorova imena: Feliks Petančić
 300 ## \$aSig: A2-C4
 321 1# \$aJurić. Scriptores, sv. 1/1, str. 438
 482 #0 \$1001950801013\$1200 0#\$aDe admirandis Hungariae aquis hypomnematum
 \$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124
 620 ## \$3210705074\$dWien\$aAustrija
 686 ## \$a143\$2NSK
 700 #1 \$3950801022\$aPetančić\$bFeliks
 702 11 \$3950801023\$aSingriener\$bJohann\$4750
 801 #0 \$aHR\$bNSK, R\$gHR PPIAK
 980 ## \$bC
 990 ## \$aRIIF-8o-124 privez 1

RECORD 6c

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | i | a | m | 0 | # | # |
| 001 950801023 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a19950801d1568.....y0hrvy0103....ba | | | | | | | |
| 101 1# \$alat\$chr | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aAT | | | | | | | |
| 140 ## \$aa.....a.....yya.1000 | | | | | | | |
| 141 ## \$ab..b1dd\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 privez 2 | | | | | | | |
| 200 1# \$aHistoria Sigethi, totius Sclavoniae fortissimi propugnaculi, quod a Solymano Turcarum Imperatore nuper captum Christianisq. eruptum est\$fex Croatico sermone in Latinum conuersa per m. Samuelem Budinam Labacensem | | | | | | | |
| 205 ## \$a[2. izd.] | | | | | | | |
| 210 ## \$aViennae Austriae\$cex officina Caspari Stainhoferi\$d1568. | | | | | | | |
| 215 ## \$a[38] listova\$d8o (19 cm) | | | | | | | |
| 300 ## \$aIzv. stv. nasl.: Podsjeđanje i osvojenje Sigeta / Franjo Črnko | | | | | | | |
| 300 ## \$a1. izd.: Viennae, 1567. → Jurić. Scriptores, sv. 1/1, str. 138 | | | | | | | |
| 300 ## \$aSig.: A4-I6 | | | | | | | |
| 316 ## \$aNa dnu nasl. str. bilješka na lat. jeziku\$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 privez 2 | | | | | | | |
| 321 1# \$aJurić. Scriptores, sv. 1/1, str. 138 | | | | | | | |
| 482 #0 \$1001950801013\$12000#\$aDe admirandis Hungariae aquis hypomnematum \$5CiZaNSK: RIIF-8o-124 | | | | | | | |
| 500 10 \$3950801040\$aPodsjeđanje i osvojenje Sigeta\$mlatinski prijevod | | | | | | | |
| 620 ## \$3210705074\$dWien\$aAustrija | | | | | | | |
| 686 ## \$a147/146\$2NSK | | | | | | | |
| 700 #1 \$3930302138\$aČrnko\$bFranjo | | | | | | | |
| 702 11 \$3950801039\$aBudina\$bSamuel\$4730 | | | | | | | |
| 702 11 \$3930511051\$aStainhofer\$bKaspar\$4750 | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aHR\$bNSK, R\$gHR PPIAK | | | | | | | |
| 980 ## \$bC | | | | | | | |
| 990 ## \$aNSK Zagreb RIIF-8o-124 privez 2 | | | | | | | |

EX 7

Note that the language code "hrv" used in these examples is a local system code, not an ISO 639-2 code.

RECORD 7a Remotely accessed serial publication

Record Identifier, ISSN and Key Title are entered in embedded fields in the field 452, Other Edition in Another Medium, to link the record for the remotely accessed serial publication to its printed version.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|---------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | 1 | s | 0 | # | # |

```
001 400317053
011 ## $a1332-702X
100 ## $a20000317a19979999...y0hrvy0103....ba
101 0# $ahrv
102 ## $aHR
110 ## $aaaaz...0xx0co
135 ## $avr
200 1# $aInternet monitor$bElektronička grada$f[glavni urednik Željko Anderlon]
207 #0 $a1997, [br.1](rujan)-
210 ## $aZagreb$cMonitor plus$d1997-
230 ## $aNovine
300 ## $aOpis građe dana 24. 08. 2000.
304 ## $aStv. nasl. preuzet iz HTML zaglavlja
326 ## $aDnevno
452 #1 $1001971111072$1011##$a1331-3843$15301#$aInternet monitor$bTisak $vgod. 1,
      br. 1(1997)-god. 2, br. 1(1998)
530 1# $aInternet monitor$bOnline
531 ## $aInternet monit.$bOnline
675 ## $a681.3
802 ## $a30
856 4# $uhttp://www.monitor.hr
```

RECORD 7b Printed continuing resource: Other edition in another medium (ceased)

Record Identifier, ISSN and Key Title are entered in embedded fields in the field 452, Other Edition in Another Medium to link the record for the printed version to its remotely accessed serial publication. The link from this record is also made to the record describing supplement on CD-ROM which is itself treated as a separate continuing resource (separate ISSN and Key Title). Record Identifier, ISSN and Key Title are entered in embedded fields in the field 421, Supplement. Both the printed continuing resource and the supplement ceased to be published.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|---------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | s | 1 | # | # |

```
001 971111072
011 ## $a1331-3843
020 ## $aHR$b HS97-0493
100 ## $a19971111b19971998...y0hrvy0103....ba
101 0# $ahrv
```


102 ## \$aHR
 110 ## \$aafa...0xx0tx
 200 1# \$aInternet monitor\$e magazin za Internet, shareware, multimediju i pop kulturu
 \$f[glavni i odgovorni urednik Željko Anderlon]
 207 #0 \$a[God.]1, br. 1(rujan 1997)-[god.] 2, br. 1(travanj 1998)
 210 ## \$aZagreb\$c Monitor informatika\$d 1997-1998
 215 ## \$cIlustr. (pretežno u bojama)\$d 29 cm
 326 ## \$aMjesečno
 421 #1 \$1001 980710006\$1011##\$a1332-7038\$15301#\$aInternet monitor off-line
 452 #1 \$1001 400317053\$1011##\$a1332-702X\$15301#\$aInternet monitor\$bOnline
 530 1# \$aInternet monitor\$bTisak
 531 ## \$aInternet monit.\$bTisak
 675 ## \$a681.3
 801 #0 \$aHR\$bNSK\$gHR PPIAK
 802 ## \$a30

RECORD 7c Supplement (CD-ROM) of printed edition (ceased)

The link from this record is made to the record describing the printed parent of supplement.
 Record Identifier, ISSN and Key Title are entered in embedded fields in the field 422, Parent of Supplement

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|---|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| Values | | n | 1 | s | 0 | # | # |
| 001 980710006 | | | | | | | |
| 011 ## \$a1332-7038 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a19980710b19971998...y0hrvy0103....ba | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$aeng | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aHR | | | | | | | |
| 110 ## \$aafaz...0xx0cd | | | | | | | |
| 135 ## \$avo | | | | | | | |
| 200 1# \$aInternet monitor off-line\$bElektronička grada | | | | | | | |
| 207 #0 \$a1997, [br. 1](rujan)-1998, br. 6(travanj) | | | | | | | |
| 210 ## \$aZagreb\$cMonitor informatika\$d1997-1998 | | | | | | | |
| 215 ## \$a6 optičkih diskova (CD-ROM)\$d12 cm | | | | | | | |
| 230 ## \$aProgrami i podaci | | | | | | | |
| 300 ## \$aOpis prema 1998, br.6 | | | | | | | |
| 304 ## \$aStv. nasl. s naljepnice diska | | | | | | | |
| 326 ## \$aMjesečno | | | | | | | |
| 337 ## \$aZahtijeva: IBM PC ili kompatibilni; Windows; 4 MB RAM-a; čitač CD-ROM-a | | | | | | | |
| 422 #1 \$1001 971111072\$1011##\$a1331-3843\$15301#\$aInternet monitor\$bTisak | | | | | | | |
| 530 0# \$aInternet monitor off-line | | | | | | | |
| 531 ## \$aInternet monit. off-line | | | | | | | |
| 675 ## \$a681.3 | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aHR\$bNSK\$gHR PPIAK | | | | | | | |
| 802 ## \$a30 | | | | | | | |

EX 8

An example from the catalogue of Judaica of the Lithuanian National M. Mazvidas Library

```
nam0 22 3 450
001C1BJ0000000122
005200111110131929
100##$a20011107d1857#####11#U8 ha
1010#$aheb
102##$aLT
140##$a#####za#####ya#0000
141##$51154376 $ab#A0cec
2001#$aמנחת המעלות $eספר מנחת המעלות אשר מראה בדרך $cפרנקפורט $d1857
וכעטף עם פירוש מספיק נפש יהודה ליקטו החכם המורני מהר"ר משה פרנקפורט $cיצחק אברהם הספרדי ז"ל
הוספנו להדפיס ג"כ פירוש נייטש-עבר למען יהיה הדבר השווה לכל נפש
210##$a[ראו] $d1857
215##$a466 p. $cillustr. $d28 cm
3211#$aFriedberg Ch.B. Bet eked sefarim. Israel : [s.a.]. [H.] 1.
675##$a29
700#1$3LNB:WRQ:=BW $אברהם יצחק $4070
702#1$3LNB:Wbw:=CA $משה פרנקפורט $4210
801#0$aLT$bC1BJ$c20011107
940##$a5
990##$aC17 $cE 223447 $cl154376
```

EX 9

An example of a multivolume work, provided by the National Library of Russia.

RECORD 9A: Collective set (common part of description)

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|--|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 1 | # | i |
| 001 | RU\NLR\bibl\154933 | | | | | | |
| 005 | 20010517120627.0 | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a20010514g20009999k##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | |
| 101 | 0# \$arus\$aeng | | | | | | |
| 102 | ## \$aRU | | | | | | |
| 105 | ## \$alllz###100yy | | | | | | |
| 200 | 1# \$aНаучные труды IV Международного семинара "Современные проблемы прочности" имени В.А. Лихачева, Старая Русса, 18-22 сентября 2000 года | | | | | | |
| 210 | ## \$aБольшой Новгород\$cНовГУ\$d2000 | | | | | | |
| 215 | ## \$d20 см | | | | | | |
| 300 | ## \$aВ надзаг.: М-во образования Рос. Федерации. Голов. совет "Машиностроение", Межгос. координац. совет по физике прочности и пластичности, Междунар. акад. информатизации и др. | | | | | | |
| 606 | 0# \$3RU\NLR\auth-sh\1265762\$aПрочность\$jСъезды, совещания и т.п.\$2nlr-sh1 | | | | | | |
| 686 | ## \$aЖ121.03я431\$2rubbk | | | | | | |
| 710 | 12 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ka\10031193\$a"Современные проблемы прочности", международный семинар\$d4\$f2000\$cСтарая Русса | | | | | | |
| 801 | #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010514\$gPSBO | | | | | | |

RECORD 9b: Volume 1 in set (specification).

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|--|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |
| 001 | RU\NLR\bibl\153539 | | | | | | |
| 005 | 20010517121457.0 | | | | | | |
| 021 | ## \$aRU\$b2001-3894п | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a20010507d2000####k##yOrusy0102####ca | | | | | | |
| 101 | 0# \$arus\$aeng | | | | | | |
| 102 | ## \$aRU | | | | | | |
| 105 | ## \$aa###z###100yy | | | | | | |
| 200 | 0# \$aT. 1 | | | | | | |
| 210 | ## \$d2000 | | | | | | |
| 215 | ## \$a316 с.\$сил. | | | | | | |
| 300 | ## \$aЧасть текста на англ. яз. | | | | | | |
| 320 | ## \$aБиблиогр. в конце ст. | | | | | | |
| 461 | #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bibl\154933\$12001#\$aНаучные труды IV Международного семинара "Современные проблемы прочности" имени В.А. Лихачева, 18-22 сентября 2000 года, Старая Русса\$vT. 1 | | | | | | |
| 801 | #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010507\$gPSBO | | | | | | |

EX 10

RECORD 10a: Collective set (common part of description)

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 1 | # | i |
| 001 | RU\NLR\bibl\153030 | | | | | | |
| 005 | 20010518133242.0 | | | | | | |
| 100 | ## \$a20010504g20009999k##yOrusy0102####ca | | | | | | |
| 101 | 0# \$arus | | | | | | |
| 102 | ## \$aRU | | | | | | |
| 105 | ## \$alllz###100yy | | | | | | |
| 200 | 1# \$aНепрерывное педагогическое образование: состояние, тенденции, перспективы развития\$Материалы междунар. науч.-практ. конф., 16-18 нояб. 2000 г. \$f[Редкол.: В.А. Сластенин (науч. ред.) и др.] | | | | | | |
| 210 | ## \$aЛипецк\$aМосква\$cЛГПУ\$d2000 | | | | | | |
| 215 | ## \$d20 см | | | | | | |
| 300 | ## \$aВ надзаг.: Междунар. акад. наук пед. образования, Совет по пед. образованию при МО РФ, Липец. гос. пед. ун-т, Науч.-метод. центр непрерыв. пед. образования МАНПО на базе ЛГПУ | | | | | | |
| 606 | 0# \$3RU\NLR\auth-sh\1271983\$aПедагогическое образование непрерывное \$jСборники\$2nlr-sh1 | | | | | | |
| 606 | 0# \$3RU\NLR\auth-sh\1271984\$aПедагогическое образование непрерывное \$jСъезды, совещания и т.п.\$2nlr-sh1 | | | | | | |
| 686 | ## \$aЧ489.514(2)7\$2rubbk | | | | | | |
| 702 | #1 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ind\952\$aСластенин\$bВ. А.\$gВиталий Алексанлрович \$f1930 - \$4340 | | | | | | |
| 712 | 02 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ka\9992507\$aМеждународная академия наук педагогического образования\$4570 | | | | | | |
| 712 | 01 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ka\10014312\$aРоссийская Федерация\$bМинистерство общего и профессионального образования\$bСовет по педагогическому образованию\$4570 | | | | | | |

712 02 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ka\9929811\$aЛипецкий педагогический университет\$4570
 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010504\$gPSBO

RECORD 10b: Part 1 in set (specification).

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |

001 RU\NLR\bib\152242
 005 20010518133827.0
 100 ## \$a20010427d2000####k##y0rusy0102####ca
 101 0# \$arus
 102 ## \$aRU
 105 ## \$ay###z###100yy
 200 0# \$aЧ. 1
 210 ## \$d2000
 215 ## \$a67,[1] с.
 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bib\153030\$12001#\$aНепрерывное педагогическое образование:
 состояние, тенденции, перспективы развития \$eМатериалы междунар. науч.-
 практ. конф., 16-18 нояб. 2000 г.\$f[Редкол.: В.А. Слостенин (науч. ред.) и др.]
 \$vЧ. 1
 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gPSBO

RECORD 10c: Part 2 in set.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |

001 RU\NLR\bib\152246
 005 20010518134020.0
 100 ## \$a20010427d2000####k##y0rusy0102####ca
 101 0# \$arus
 102 ## \$aRU
 105 ## \$aa###z###100yy
 200 0# \$aЧ. 2
 210 ## \$d2000
 215 ## \$a35,[1] с.\$сил.
 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bib\153030\$12001#\$aНепрерывное педагогическое образование:
 состояние, тенденции, перспективы развития \$eМатериалы междунар. науч.-
 практ. конф., 16-18 нояб. 2000 г.\$f[Редкол.: В.А. Слостенин (науч. ред.) и
 др.]\$vЧ. 2
 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gPSBO

RECORD 10d: Part 3 in set.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |

001 RU\NLR\bib\152249
 005 20010518134218.0
 100 ## \$a20010427d2000####k##y0rusy0102####ca
 101 0# \$arus
 102 ## \$aRU
 105 ## \$aa###z###100yy

200 0# \$aЧ. 3
 210 ## \$d2000
 215 ## \$a46,[1] с.\$сил.
 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bib\153030\$12001#\$aНепрерывное педагогическое образование:
 состояние, тенденции, перспективы развития \$eМатериалы междунар. науч.-
 практ. конф., 16-18 нояб. 2000 г.\$f[Редкол.: В.А. Сластенин (науч. ред.) и
 др.]\$vЧ. 3
 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gPSBO

RECORD 10e: Part 4 in set.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|---|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |
| 001 RU\NLR\bib\152252 | | | | | | | |
| 005 20010518134438.0 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a20010427d2000####k##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$arus | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aRU | | | | | | | |
| 105 ## \$aa###z###100yy | | | | | | | |
| 200 0# \$aЧ. 4 | | | | | | | |
| 210 ## \$d2000 | | | | | | | |
| 215 ## \$a46,[2] с.\$сил. | | | | | | | |
| 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bib\153030\$12001#\$aНепрерывное педагогическое образование: состояние, тенденции, перспективы развития \$eМатериалы междунар. науч.- практ. конф., 16-18 нояб. 2000 г.\$f[Редкол.: В.А. Сластенин (науч. ред.) и др.] \$vЧ. 4 | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gPSBO | | | | | | | |

RECORD 10f: Part 5 in set.

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|---|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |
| 001 RU\NLR\bib\152255 | | | | | | | |
| 005 20010518134654.0 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a20010427d2000####k##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$arus | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aRU | | | | | | | |
| 105 ## \$ay###z###100yy | | | | | | | |
| 200 0# \$aЧ. 5 | | | | | | | |
| 210 ## \$d2000 | | | | | | | |
| 215 ## \$a39,[2] с. | | | | | | | |
| 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bib\153030\$12001#\$aНепрерывное педагогическое образование: состояние, тенденции, перспективы развития \$eМатериалы междунар. науч.- практ. конф., 16-18 нояб. 2000 г.\$f[Редкол.: В.А. Сластенин (науч. ред.) и др.] \$vЧ. 5 | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gPSBO | | | | | | | |

EXAMPLE 11.

Example of a record of a continuing resource provided by the National Library of Russia.

RECORD 11a: Collective set (common part of description)

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | s | 1 | # | i |
| 001 RU\NLR\bib\1896 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a20010427a20009999u##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$arus | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aRU | | | | | | | |
| 110 ## \$aahuzlll0uu0 | | | | | | | |
| 200 1# \$aРыбное хозяйство\$i<NSB>Сер. "<NSE>Корма и кормление в аквакультуре" | | | | | | | |
| \$eИнформационный пакет\$fВсероссийский научно-исследовательский и | | | | | | | |
| проектно-конструкторский институт экономики, информации и | | | | | | | |
| автоматизированных систем управления рыбного хозяйства | | | | | | | |
| 210 ## \$aM.\$cВсероссийский научно-исследовательский и проектно-конструкторский | | | | | | | |
| институт экономики, информации и автоматизированных систем управления | | | | | | | |
| рыбного хозяйства\$d2000 - | | | | | | | |
| 326 ## \$aВыходит 4 раза в год | | | | | | | |
| 606 1#\$3RU\NLR\auth-sh\127547\$aКорма для рыб\$jСборники\$2nlr-sh1 | | | | | | | |
| 686 ## \$aП728-45я54\$2rubbk | | | | | | | |
| 712 02 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ka\4224\$aВсероссийский научно-исследовательский и проектно- | | | | | | | |
| конструкторский институт экономики, информации и автоматизированных | | | | | | | |
| систем управления рыбного хозяйства | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010420\$gpsbo | | | | | | | |
| 801 #1 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427 | | | | | | | |

RECORD 11b: Issue in set (specification).Record of single part

| RECORD LABEL | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |
| 001 RU\NLR\bib\1896.1 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a20010427d2000####u##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$arus | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aRU | | | | | | | |
| 105 ## \$aa###z###000yy | | | | | | | |
| 200 0# \$a2000, вып. 1 | | | | | | | |
| 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bib\1896\$1200 1#\$aРыбное хозяйство\$i<NSB>Сер. "<NSE>Корма | | | | | | | |
| и кормление в аквакультуре" | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010420\$gpsbo | | | | | | | |
| 801 #1 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427 | | | | | | | |

EXAMPLE 12

This example illustrates the link from a piece to the parent item using linking field 461.

RECORD 12a: Collective set (common part of description).

| RECORD LABEL . | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|---|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| | Values | n | a | s | 1 | # | i |
| 001 RU\NLR\bib\4921 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ##\$a20010514a20009999u##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$arus | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aRU | | | | | | | |
| 110 ## \$aayuzlll0uy0 | | | | | | | |

200 1# \$aВестник Хабаровской государственной академии экономики и права
 \$bНаучный и общественно-публицистический журнал\$fХабаровская
 государственная академия экономики и права
 210 ## \$aХабаровск\$cХГАЭП\$d2000 -
 606 1# \$3RU\NLR\auth-sh\980078\$aЭкономика\$jПериодические издания\$2nlr-sh1
 606 1# \$3RU\NLR\auth-sh\4055\$aПраво\$jПериодические издания\$2nlr-sh1
 686 ## \$aУ.я54\$2rubbk
 686 ## \$aХ.я54\$2rubbk
 710 02 \$3RU\NLR\auth-ka\9925966\$aХабаровская академия экономики и права
 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gpsbo
 801 #1 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010514

RECORD 12b: Piece in set (specification).

| RECORD LABEL . | Character pos. | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 17 | 18 |
|--|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| Values | | n | a | m | 2 | # | i |
| 001 RU\NLR\bibl\4921.1 | | | | | | | |
| 021 ## \$aRU\$b2000-15628 | | | | | | | |
| 100 ## \$a20010514j200004##u##y0rusy0102####ca | | | | | | | |
| 101 0# \$arus | | | | | | | |
| 102 ## \$aRU | | | | | | | |
| 105 ## \$aa###z###001yy | | | | | | | |
| 200 0# \$a2000, N 1 (апрель) | | | | | | | |
| 461 #0 \$1001RU\NLR\bibl\4921\$1200 1#\$aВестник Хабаровской государственной академии экономики и права | | | | | | | |
| 801 #0 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010427\$gpsbo | | | | | | | |
| 801 #1 \$aRU\$bNLR\$c20010514 | | | | | | | |

APPENDIX M: BIBLIOGRAPHY

American National Standards Institute. *Serial Item and Contributor Identifier*. New Brunswick : Transaction Publishers, 1991. (ANSI/NISO Z39.56 – 1991). ISSN 1041-5653. Obtainable from: NISO Press, P.O. Box 338, Oxon Hill, Maryland 20750, U.S.A. Fax number: (301)567-9553

Chemical Abstracts Service. *International CODEN Directory*. Columbus (Ohio) : C.A.S. ISSN 0364-3670

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Anonymous Classics : a List of Uniform Headings for European Literatures*. London : IFLA International Office for UBC, 1978. ISBN 0-903043-15-7

———. *Form and Structure of Corporate Headings*. London : IFLA International Office for UBC, 1980. ISBN 0-903043-28-9

———. *ISBD(CM) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Cartographic Materials*. Rev. ed. London : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme ; München : Saur [distributor], 1987. ISBN 3-598-10952-0

———. *ISBD(ER) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Electronic Resources*. London : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme ; München : Saur [distributor], 1997. ISBN 3-598-11369-2. [A revision of ISBD(CF)]. Also available on <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/pubs/isbd.htm>.

———. *ISBD(G) : General International Standard Bibliographic Description*. Rev. ed. München : K.G. Saur, 1991. ISBN 3-598-11084-7

———. *ISBD(M) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographs*. Rev. ed. London : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme ; [München : Saur, distributor], 1987. ISBN 3-598-10953-9

———. *ISBD(NBM) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Non-Book Materials*. Rev. ed. London : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme ; [München : Saur, distributor], 1987. ISBN 3-598-10954-7

———. *ISBD(PM) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Printed Music*. 2nd rev. ed. München : K.G. Saur, 1991. ISBN 3-598-10985-7

———. *ISBD(S) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Serials*. Rev. ed. London : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme ; [München : Saur, distributor], 1988. ISBN 3-598-10955-5

———. *Names of Persons : National Usages for Entry in Catalogues*. 4th ed. München : K.G. Saur, 1996. ISBN 3-598-11342-0.

———. *UNIMARC/Authorities*. München : K.G. Saur, 1991. ISBN 3-598-10986-5

International ISBN Agency. *ISBN Review*. Berlin : International ISBN Agency, 1977-. ISSN 0342-4634

———. *The ISBN System : Users' Manual*. 3rd ed. Berlin : International ISBN Agency, 1986. ISBN 3-88053-026-2

ISDS International Centre. *See* ISSN International Centre.

ISSN International Centre. *ISSN Manual*. Paris : International Centre, 2003. ISBN 92-9114-004-X

———. *Liste d'abréviations de mots des titres = List of title word abbreviations*. Paris : ISDS International Centre, 2003. ISBN 92-9114-003-1. This list is available online at <http://www.issn.org>

International Organization for Standardization. *Documentation and information*. 3rd ed. Genève : ISO, 1988. (ISO standards handbook; 1) ISBN 92-67-10144-7

For the following ISO publications agencies should contact their national standards agency.

———. *ISO 4 – 1997 : Documentation – Rules for the abbreviation of title words and titles of periodicals*.

———. *ISO 639-2 – 1998 : Codes for the representation of names of languages: alpha-3 code*

———. *ISO 646 – 1991 : Information processing – ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange*.

———. *ISO 962 – 1974 : Information processing – Implementation of the 7-bit coded character and its 7-bit extensions on 9-track 12.7mm (0.5 in) magnetic tape*.

———. *ISO 1001 – 1986 : Information processing – Magnetic tape labelling and file structure for information interchange*.

———. *ISO 1863 – 1990 : Information processing – 9-track, 12.7mm (0.5 in) wide magnetic tape for information interchange recorded at 32 rpmm (800 rpi)*

———. *ISO 2022 – 1994 : Information technology – character code structure and extension techniques*.

———. *ISO 2108 – 1992 : Information and Documentation – International standard book numbering (ISBN)*.

———. *ISO 2375 – 1985 : Data processing – Procedure for registration of escape sequences*.

———. *ISO 2709 – 1996 : Information and Documentation : Format for Information Exchange*.

———. *ISO 3166-1 – 1997 : Codes for the representation of names of countries*. Amendments issued occasionally in *Country code newsletter*, available only from ISO 3166 Maintenance Agency, DIN, Burggrafenstrasse 6, D-10772, Berlin. Also available on <http://www.din.de/gremien/nas/nabd/iso3166ma/codlstp1.html>

———. *ISO 3297 – 1986 : Documentation – International standard serial numbering (ISSN)*.

———. *ISO 3901 – 1986 : Documentation – International standard recording code (ISRC)*.

———. *ISO 5426 – 1983 : Extension of the Latin alphabet coded character set for bibliographic information interchange*

———. *ISO 5426-2 – 1996 : Information and documentation -- Extension of the Latin alphabet coded character set for bibliographic information interchange -- Part 2: Latin characters used in minor European languages and obsolete typography*

———. *ISO 5427:1984 : Extension of the Cyrillic alphabet coded character set for bibliographic information interchange*

———. *ISO 5428:1984 : Greek alphabet coded character set for bibliographic information interchange*

———. *ISO 6438:1983 : Documentation -- African coded character set for bibliographic information interchange*

———. *ISO 6630:1986 : Documentation -- Bibliographic control characters*

———. *ISO 6861:1996 Information and documentation -- Glagolitic alphabet coded characters*

———. *ISO 6862:1996 Information and documentation -- Mathematical coded character set for bibliographic information interchange.*

———. *ISO 8601 – 2004 : Data elements and interchange formats -- Information interchange -- Representation of dates and times.*

———. *ISO 8957 – 1996 : Information and documentation – Hebrew alphabet coded character sets for bibliographic information interchange.*

———. *ISO 9115 – 1987 : Code for bibliographic identification (biblid) of contributions in serials and books.* [Withdrawn]

———. *ISO 10444 – 1994 : Information and documentation – International standard technical report number (ISR).*

———. *ISO 10586 – 1996 : Information and documentation – Georgian alphabet coded character set for bibliographic information interchange.*

———. *ISO 15511 – 2005 : International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL).*

———. *ISO 15924 – 2004 : Information and documentation – Codes for the representation of names of scripts.*

Library of Congress. *USMARC Code List for Languages*. Washington : Library of Congress, 1996. ISBN 0-8444-0856-2

———. *USMARC Code List for Organizations*. 1996 ed. Washington : Library of Congress, 1996. ISBN 0-8444-0883-2 Updated: <http://www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/orgshome.html>

APPENDIX N: USEFUL ADDRESSES

The following addresses may be useful for obtaining items referred to in the text and other related information.

UNIMARC:

IFLA UNIMARC Core Activity
Maria Inês Cordeiro
Biblioteca Nacional
Campo Grande, 83
1749-081 LISBON
Portugal

Website: <http://www.ifla.org/VI/8/up.htm>

ISO Standards (but where possible refer to the national member body):

ISO Central Secretariat
1 rue de Varembé
Case Postale 56
1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland

Website: <http://www.iso.org>

ISBN:

International ISBN Agency
c/o EDItEUR
39-41 North Road
London N7 9DP
UK

Website: <http://isbn-international.org>

ISSN and Key Title:

ISSN International Centre
20 Rue Bachaumont
75002 Paris
France

Website: <http://www.issn.org/>

Code Lists Originating in the Library of Congress:

Library of Congress
Library Services
Network Development & MARC Standards Office
Washington DC 20540-4102
U.S.A.

Website for document order information: <http://www.loc.gov/cds/>

APPENDIX O: FORMAT CHANGES

This appendix summarizes changes to the format since the 5th update of the 2nd edition. The text of the fields themselves should be referred to for precise information, these notes are only a guideline.

3rd edition (2008)

This list consists of changes to the format since the 2005 update of the second edition of the *UNIMARC manual*. The changes resulted from the meetings of the Permanent UNIMARC Committee from March 2006 to March 2008. Many more examples have been added to the text. This list does not include changes of content in the 3rd edition which are not directly related to changes to the format, for example the Bibliography, Appendix M, has been updated

New paragraphs

Section 3.12 Copy specific data (relevant to 012, 141, 316, 317, 318, 481, 482, 560, 600, 601, 602, 606, 610, 621, 702, 712 and 722)

Section 3.13 Changes to \$6

New field

- 003 Persistent Record Identifier
- 511 Half-title
- 560 Artificial title
- 617 Hierarchical Geographical Name used as Subject
- 621 Place and date of provenance
- 740 Uniform Conventional Heading for legal and religious texts – primary responsibility
- 741 Uniform Conventional Heading for legal and religious texts – alternative responsibility
- 742 Uniform Conventional Heading for legal and religious texts – secondary responsibility

Changes in name and function of field

- 010 Extensive changes to reflect change of ISBN to 13-digit
- 011 Change of name and subfields added to reflect new ISSN standard
- 314 Change of title ('Intellectual' removed)
- 316 Text revised
- 461 Definition changed
- 530 Key-Title (Serials) – Revisions to take into account ISSN practices.
- 531 Abbreviated Title (Serials) –as for 530 above.
- 604 Changes made to illustrate alternative linking techniques

- 620 Place and date of performance, etc. Extensive revisions including change of name.
675 UDC. Extensive revision to text

Changes to indicator values

- 210 Indicator 2 to indicate type of release
328 Change of indicators; Indicator 1 defined

New subfields/values

\$6 added explicitly to those fields where it is most likely to be used

- 016 \$d made obsolete

316/317 New code value b added to \$6

503 \$o Place in Locality

602 New \$j

702, 712, 722 \$5 added

801 \$h

Appendix C: Relator codes - New values

Changes to coded subfields

100 \$a 34/35. Recognition of ISO 15924 and note that its codes may be accommodated in a future edition of UNIMARC Bibliographic

ISO ISIL added as preferred institution code in place of MARC Code List for Organizations throughout and \$5 added explicitly where appropriate

145 Code lists revised

Changes of status

Errors in repeatability fixed throughout